

AN INTRODUCTION TO  
**Geotechnical  
Engineering**

---

Robert D. Holtz  
William D. Kovacs

---

---

# **An Introduction to Geotechnical Engineering**

---

**ROBERT D. HOLTZ, PH.D., P.E.**  
University of Washington

**WILLIAM D. KOVACS, PH.D., P.E.**  
University of Rhode Island



**PRENTICE HALL, Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey 07632**

*Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data*

**HOLTZ, ROBERT D.**

*An introduction to geotechnical engineering.*

*Includes index.*

1. Soil properties. 2. Soil mechanics. I. Kovacs,

William D., joint author. II. Title.

TA710.H564 624.1'513 80-23292

ISBN 0-13-484394-0

**DEDICATION: To Our Teachers, Past and Present**

*Editorial/production supervision*

*and interior design by Karen Skrable*

*Manufacturing buyers: Anthony Caruso and Joyce Levatino*

*Cover design by Edsal Enterprises*



© 1981 by Prentice-Hall, Inc.  
A Paramount Communications Company  
Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey 07632

All rights reserved. No part of this book may  
be reproduced, in any form or by any means,  
without permission in writing from the publisher.

Printed in the United States of America  
30 29 28 27 26

90000  
9780134843940

ISBN 0-13-484394-0

Prentice-Hall International (UK) Limited, London  
Prentice-Hall of Australia Pty. Limited, Sydney  
Prentice-Hall Canada Inc., Toronto  
Prentice-Hall Hispanoamericana, S.A., Mexico  
Prentice-Hall of India Private Limited, New Delhi  
Prentice-Hall of Japan, Inc., Tokyo  
Simon & Schuster Asia Pte. Ltd., Singapore  
Editora Prentice-Hall do Brasil, Ltda., Rio de Janeiro

---

# **Contents**

---

**PREFACE xi****1 INTRODUCTION TO GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING 1**

- 1.1 Geotechnical Engineering 1
- 1.2 The Unique Nature of Soil and Rock Materials 3
- 1.3 Suggested Approach to the Study of Geotechnical Engineering 4
- 1.4 Scope of this Book 5
- 1.5 Soil Formation and the Nature of Soil Constituents 6
- 1.6 Historical Development of Geotechnical Engineering 7
- 1.7 Notes on Symbols and Units 9

**2 INDEX AND CLASSIFICATION PROPERTIES OF SOILS 10**

- 2.1 Introduction 10
- 2.2 Basic Definitions and Phase Relations 11
- 2.3 Solution of Phase Problems 16
- 2.4 Soil Texture 25
- 2.5 Grain Size and Grain Size Distribution 26
- 2.6 Particle Shape 32
- 2.7 Atterberg Limits and Consistency Indices 34
- 2.8 Activity 41
- Problems 41

**3 SOIL CLASSIFICATION 47**

- 3.1 Introduction 47
- 3.2 The Unified Soil Classification System (USCS) 49

- 3.3 The AASHTO Soil Classification System 64
- 3.4 Comparison of the USCS and AASHTO Classification Systems 72
- Problems 72

#### **4 CLAY MINERALS AND SOIL STRUCTURE 77**

- 4.1 Introduction 77
- 4.2 Clay Minerals 78
- 4.3 Identification of Clay Minerals 88
- 4.4 Specific Surface 89
- 4.5 Interaction Between Water and Clay Minerals 90
- 4.6 Interaction of Clay Particles 95
- 4.7 Soil Structure and Fabric 96
- 4.8 Cohesive Soil Fabrics 96.
- 4.9 Cohesionless Soil Fabrics 102
- Problems 107

#### **5 COMPACTION 109**

- 5.1 Introduction 109
- 5.2 Compaction 110
- 5.3 Theory of Compaction 111
- 5.4 Properties and Structure of Compacted Cohesive Soils 117
- 5.5 Field Compaction Equipment and Procedures 124
- 5.6 Field Compaction Control and Specifications 141
- 5.7 Estimating Performance of Compacted Soils 153
- Problems 161

#### **6 WATER IN SOILS, I: CAPILLARITY, SHRINKAGE, SWELLING, FROST ACTION 166**

- 6.1 Introduction 166
- 6.2 Capillarity 167
- 6.3 Shrinkage Phenomena in Soils 178
- 6.4 Engineering Significance of Shrinkage and Swelling 186
- 6.5 Frost Action 190
- Problems 195

**7 WATER IN SOILS, II:  
PERMEABILITY, SEEPAGE, EFFECTIVE STRESS 199**

- 7.1 Introduction 199
- 7.2 Dynamics of Fluid Flow 200
- 7.3 Darcy's Law for Flow Through Porous Media 203
- 7.4 Measurement of Permeability 206
- 7.5 Intergranular or Effective Stress 213
- 7.6 Relationship between Horizontal and Vertical Stresses 225
- 7.7 Heads and One-Dimensional Flow 227
- 7.8 Seepage Forces, Quicksand, and Liquefaction 232
- 7.9 Seepage and Flow Nets: Two-Dimensional Flow 246
- 7.10 The Method of Fragments 258
- 7.11 Control of Seepage and Filters 270
- Problems 273

**8 CONSOLIDATION AND CONSOLIDATION  
SETTLEMENTS 283**

- 8.1 Introduction 283
- 8.2 Components of Settlement 284
- 8.3 Compressibility of Soils 285
- 8.4 The Oedometer and Consolidation Testing 289
- 8.5 Preconsolidation Pressure; Normal, Overconsolidation, Underconsolidation 294
- 8.6 Consolidation Behavior of Natural Soils 299
- 8.7 Settlement Calculations 309
- 8.8 Factors Affecting the Determination of  $\sigma'_p$  326
- 8.9 Prediction of Field Consolidation Curves 328
- 8.10 Soil Profiles 335
- 8.11 Approximate Methods and Typical Values of Compression Indices 341
- 8.12 Stress Distribution 342
- Problems 367

**9 TIME RATE OF CONSOLIDATION 376**

- 9.1 Introduction 376
- 9.2 The Consolidation Process 377
- 9.3 Terzaghi's One-Dimensional Consolidation Theory 380
- 9.4 Determination of the Coefficient of Consolidation  $c_v$  395
- 9.5 Determination of the Coefficient of Permeability 402
- 9.6 Typical Values of  $c_v$  405

- 9.7 Evaluation of Secondary Settlement 405
- 9.8 Comprehensive Example of a Time Rate of Settlement Problem 414
- Problems 423

## 10 THE MOHR CIRCLE, FAILURE THEORIES, AND STRESS PATHS 431

- 10.1 Introduction 431
- 10.2 Stress at a Point 432
- 10.3 Stress-Strain Relationships and Failure Criteria 446
- 10.4 The Mohr-Coulomb Failure Criterion 449
- 10.5 Tests for the Shear Strength of Soils 458
- 10.6 Stress Paths 473
- Problems 485

## 11 SHEAR STRENGTH OF SANDS AND CLAYS 490

- 11.1 Introduction 490
- 11.2 Angle of Repose of Sands 492
- 11.3 Behavior of Saturated Sands During Drained Shear 493
- 11.4 Effect of Void Ratio and Confining Pressure on Volume Change 496
- 11.5 Behavior of Saturated Sand During Undrained Shear 504
- 11.6 Factors that Affect the Shear Strength of Sands 514
- 11.7 The Coefficient of Earth Pressure at Rest for Sands 519
- 11.8 Liquefaction and Cyclic Mobility Behavior of Saturated Sands 521
- 11.9 Stress-Deformation and Strength Characteristics of Saturated Cohesive Soils 536
  - 11.9.1 Consolidated-Drained (CD) Test Behavior 538
  - 11.9.2 Typical Values of Drained Strength Parameters 543
  - 11.9.3 Use of CD Strength in Engineering Practice 545
  - 11.9.4 Consolidated-Undrained (CU) Test Behavior 545
  - 11.9.5 Typical Values of the Undrained Strength Parameters 553
  - 11.9.6 Use of CU Strength in Engineering Practice 556
  - 11.9.7 Unconsolidated-Undrained (UU) Test Behavior 559
  - 11.9.8 Typical Values of UU Strengths 566
  - 11.9.9 Unconfined Compression Test 566
  - 11.9.10 Other Ways to Determine the Undrained Shear Strength 570
  - 11.9.11 Sensitivity 585
  - 11.9.12 Use of Undrained (UU) Shear Strength in Engineering Practice 586
  - 11.9.13 Special Problems of the Shear Strength of Cohesive Soils 595

- 11.10 Pore Pressure Parameters 599
- 11.11 The Coefficient of Earth Pressure at Rest for Clays 605
- 11.12 Stress Paths During Undrained Loading—Normally Consolidated Clays 610
- 11.13 Stress Paths During Undrained Loading—Overconsolidated Clays 630
- 11.14 Applications of Stress Paths to Engineering Practice 634  
Problems 640

**APPENDIX A APPLICATION OF THE "SI" SYSTEM  
OF UNITS TO GEOTECHNICAL  
ENGINEERING 665**

- A.1 Introduction 665
- A.2 The SI Metric System 666
- A.3 Basic and Derived SI Metric Units 667
- A.4 SI Units of Interest to Geotechnical Engineers and Their Conversion Factors 669

**APPENDIX B-1 DERIVATION OF LAPLACE'S EQUATION 681**

**APPENDIX B-2 DERIVATION AND SOLUTION OF  
TERZAGHI'S ONE-DIMENSIONAL  
CONSOLIDATION THEORY 683**

- B-2.1 Assumptions 683
- B-2.2 Derivation 683
- B-2.3 Mathematical Solution 686

**APPENDIX B-3 PORE PRESSURE PARAMETERS 691**

- B-3.1 Derivation of Skempton's Pore Pressure Equation 691
- B-3.2 Definition of  $\Delta\sigma_1$  and  $\Delta\sigma_3$  for Rotation of Principal Stresses 693
- B-3.3 Formulas for Pore Pressure Parameters for Different Stress Path Tests 694
- B-3.4 Proof that  $A_{ac} = A_{le}$  and  $A_{ae} = A_{lc}$  696
- B-3.5 Derivation of the Henkel Pore Pressure Equation and Coefficients 696

**REFERENCES 701**

**INDEX 719**



---

## Preface

---

*An Introduction to Geotechnical Engineering* is intended for use in the first of a two-course sequence in geotechnical engineering usually taught to third- and fourth-year undergraduate Civil Engineering students. We assume the students have a working knowledge of undergraduate mechanics, especially statics and mechanics of materials (including fluids). A knowledge of basic geology, although helpful, is not essential. We introduce the "language" of geotechnical engineering in the first course, that is, the classification and engineering properties of soils. Once the student has a working knowledge of how soil behaves as an engineering material, he/she can begin to predict soil behavior and, in the second course, to carry out the design of simple foundations and earthwork systems.

We feel that there is a need for more detailed and modern coverage of the engineering properties of soils than is found in most undergraduate texts. This applies to both the students "majoring" in geotechnical engineering and the general civil engineering undergraduate student. We find that our students are involved in increasingly more complex projects, especially in transportation, structural, and construction engineering. Environmental, economic, and political constraints demand innovative solutions to civil engineering problems. The availability of modern analytical techniques and the digital computer has had an almost revolutionary effect on engineering design practice. This development demands a better knowledge of site conditions as well as better defined geotechnical engineering design parameters.

We have tried to make the text easily readable by the average undergraduate. To this end, *An Introduction to Geotechnical Engineering* is written at a simple rather than sophisticated level, although the material covered may be rather sophisticated at times. Involved derivations, unread

by the typical student, are relegated to appendices where they are available to the interested student.

The emphasis throughout is on the practical, and admittedly empirical, knowledge of soil behavior required by the geotechnical engineer for the design and construction of foundations and embankments. Most of the material in the text is descriptive, since most of the engineering design applications are usually left to the second course in Foundation Engineering. Consequently, in order to interest the student, we have tried to indicate wherever possible the engineering significance and specific design applications of the soil property being discussed. We have tried to emphasize why such a property is needed, how it is determined or measured, and, to some extent, how it is actually used in practice. The only "design"-type problem we cover in a one-semester course (15 weeks) is estimating the settlement of shallow foundations on saturated clays. The text is sufficiently flexible that innovative instructors can add additional design examples should they so desire. It seems that units are always a problem with geotechnical engineers. In line with the trend towards the use of S.I. units encouraged by the American Society of Civil Engineers and American Society for Testing and Materials, we have used this system in the text. The uninitiated may find the discussion of S.I. in Appendix A helpful. In addition to the almost exclusive use of S.I. units in examples and problems, we have been careful to use the latest definition of density (mass/unit volume) in phase relationships as well as in geostatic and hydrostatic pressure computations.

We consider the laboratory portion of the first course to be an essential part of the neophyte engineer's experience with soils as a unique engineering material. How else is the young engineer to begin to develop a "feel" for soils and soil behavior, so essential for the successful practice of geotechnical engineering? Thus, an emphasis on laboratory and field testing is found throughout the text. The order of the laboratory portion of our first course has dictated the organization and development of the material in the text. We begin with phase relations, visual classification of soils, and simple classification tests. Thus, the early chapters introduce the discipline of Geotechnical Engineering, Phase Relationships and Index Properties, Soil Classification, and Clay Minerals and Soil Structure. This material provides the background and terminology for the later chapters. Following a very practical discussion of Compaction in Chapter 5, Chapters 6 and 7 describe how water influences and affects soil behavior. Topics presented include capillarity, shrinkage, swelling, and frost action as well as permeability, seepage, and effective stress. These two chapters again serve as background for the next four chapters which deal with consolidation and shear strength.

The treatment of these latter topics is quite modern and up-to-date. The Schmertmann procedure for determining field compressibility is included as is a modern treatment of secondary compression developed by Prof. Mesri and his co-workers. Prof. Lambe's stress path method is introduced in Chapter 10 and used to advantage in Chapter 11, especially when practical engineering applications of shear strength theory are discussed. The pioneering work of Profs. Seed and Lee on the drained and undrained strength of sands is presented in Chapter 11. Also in this chapter we discuss the stress-deformation and strength characteristics of cohesive soils. Although the treatment is modern, because this is primarily an undergraduate textbook, considerations of strength anisotropy, critical state concepts, the Jürgenson-Rutledge hypothesis, and Hvorslev's strength parameters have been left to more advanced texts.

Even though the book is primarily for the beginning student in geotechnical engineering, advanced students in other disciplines and engineers desiring a refresher in engineering properties may find the book helpful. Because of the many fully-worked example problems, the book is almost "self-teaching." This aspect of the text also frees the instructor in a formal course from the necessity of working example problems during lectures. It allows the instructor to concentrate on explaining basic principles and illustrating specific engineering applications of the points in question. The third group we hope will find this book useful are practicing geotechnical engineers. Typical values are given for all classification and engineering properties for a wide variety of soils; we have found such a compendium very useful in our own engineering practice.

To acknowledge all who have contributed to this book is a formidable task. We have tried whenever possible to indicate by references or quotations, concepts and ideas originating in the literature or with our former teachers, especially Profs. A. Casagrande and H. B. Seed. We apologize for any omissions. We must also mention the students in our beginning geotechnical engineering course at Purdue who have graciously suffered through several versions of *An Introduction to Geotechnical Engineering* in note form. Their criticism and helpful comments on the text have been very valuable. The authors have greatly benefited from discussions with Prof. M. E. Harr of Purdue University regarding the section on the method of fragments in Chapter 7. We hope to bring further attention to the profession of this powerful design method. Dr. E. Simiu of the U.S. National Bureau of Standards critically read a recent version of the manuscript and provided many helpful comments. It should be noted that *An Introduction to Geotechnical Engineering* was written while William D. Kovacs was on the faculty of Purdue University. The text has no connection with Kovacs' present affiliation with the National Bureau of Stan-

dards. Our faithful secretaries Mrs. Janice Wait Bollinger, Miss Cathy Minth and Mrs. Edith Vanderwerp deserve special thanks for typing and correcting the several drafts. The first author also wishes to gratefully acknowledge the interest and encouragement of his wife Cricket Morgan. Her work with the proofreading and corrections is especially appreciated. We of course will appreciate any comments and criticism of readers.

**R. D. Holtz  
W. D. Kovacs**

**West Lafayette, Indiana**

## **Introduction to Geotechnical Engineering**

---

### **1.1 GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING**

*Geotechnical engineering*, as the name implies, concerns the application of civil engineering technology to some aspect of the earth. Usually, the geotechnical engineer is concerned only with the natural materials found at or near the surface of the earth. Civil engineers call these earthen materials *soil* and *rock*. *Soil*, in an engineering sense, is the relatively loose agglomerate of mineral and organic materials and sediments found above the bedrock. Soils can be relatively easily broken down into their constituent mineral or organic particles. *Rocks*, on the other hand, have very strong internal cohesive and molecular forces which hold the constituent mineral grains together. This is true whether the rock is massive bedrock or a piece of gravel found in a clay soil. The dividing line between soil and rock is arbitrary, and many natural materials encountered in engineering practice cannot be easily classified. They may be either a "very soft rock" or a "very hard soil." Other scientific disciplines have different meanings for the terms soil and rock. In geology, for example, *rock* means all the materials found in the earth's crust, independently of how much the mineral particles are bound together. Soils to a geologist are just decomposed and disintegrated rocks generally found in the very thin upper part of the crust and capable of supporting plant life. Similarly, pedology (soil science) and agronomy are concerned with only the very uppermost layers of soil, that is, those materials relating to agriculture and forestry. Geotechnical engineers can learn much from both geology and pedology. Both sciences, especially engineering geology, are important adjuncts to geotechnical engineering and there is considerable overlap between these fields. But differences in terminology, approach, and objectives may cause some confusion, especially for the beginner.

Geotechnical engineering has several different aspects or emphases. *Soil mechanics* is the branch of geotechnical engineering concerned with the engineering mechanics and properties of soil, whereas *rock mechanics* is concerned with the engineering mechanics and properties of rock, usually but not necessarily the bedrock. Soil mechanics applies the basic principles of mechanics including kinematics, dynamics, fluid mechanics, and the mechanics of materials to soils. In other words, soil rather than water or steel or concrete, for example, now becomes the engineering material whose properties and behavior we must understand in order to build with it or upon it. A similar comment could also be made for rock mechanics. It should be noted, however, that there are significant differences between the behavior of soil masses and rock masses, and in principle there is not much overlap between the two disciplines.

*Foundation engineering* applies geology, soil mechanics, rock mechanics, and structural engineering to the design and construction of foundations for civil engineering and other structures. The foundation engineer must be able to predict the performance or response of the foundation soil or rock to the loads imposed by the structure. Some examples of the kinds of problems faced by the foundation engineer include foundations for industrial, commercial, and residential buildings, and other types of support structures for radar towers, as well as foundations for oil and other kinds of tanks and offshore structures. Even ships must have a dry dock during construction or repairs, and the dry dock must have a foundation. The support of rockets and appurtenant structures during construction and launch have led to very interesting and challenging foundation engineering problems. Related geotechnical engineering problems facing the foundation engineer are the stability of natural and excavated slopes, the stability of permanent and temporary earth-retaining structures, problems of construction, controlling water movement and pressures, and even the maintenance and rehabilitation of old buildings. Not only must the foundation safely support the static structural and construction loads, but it must also adequately resist dynamic loads due to blasting, earthquakes, etc.

If you think about it, it is impossible to design or construct any civil engineering structure without ultimately considering the foundation soils and rocks to some extent, and this is true whether the structure is built on the earth or is extraterrestrial. The performance, economy, and safety of any civil engineering structure ultimately is affected or may even be controlled by its foundation.

Earth materials are often used as a construction material because they are the cheapest possible building material. However, its engineering properties such as strength and compressibility are often naturally poor, and measures must be taken to densify, strengthen, or otherwise stabilize and reinforce soils so that they will perform satisfactorily in service.

Highway and railway embankments, airfields, earth and rock dams, levees, and aqueducts are examples of earth structures, and the geotechnical engineer is responsible for their design and construction. Dam safety and rehabilitation of old dams are important aspects of this phase of geotechnical engineering. Also related, especially for highway and airfield engineers, is the design of the final surface layer on the earth structure, the pavement. Here the overlap between the transportation and geotechnical disciplines is apparent.

*Rock engineering*, analogous to foundation engineering for soils, is concerned with rock as a foundation and construction material. Because most of the earth's surface is covered with soil (or water), rock engineering usually occurs underground (tunnels, underground power houses, petroleum storage rooms, mines, etc.). But sometimes rock engineering occurs at the surface, such as in the case of building and dam foundations carried to bedrock, deep excavations to bedrock, stability of rock slopes, etc.

In presenting some of the typical problems facing the geotechnical engineer, we wanted you to see, first, how broad the field is and, second, how important it is to the design and construction of civil engineering structures. In a very real sense, geotechnical engineering combines the basic physical sciences, geology and pedology, with hydraulic, structural, transportation, construction, and mining engineering.

## 1.2 THE UNIQUE NATURE OF SOIL AND ROCK MATERIALS

Geotechnical engineering is highly empirical and is perhaps much more of an "art" than the other disciplines within civil engineering because of the basic nature of soil and rock materials. They are often highly variable, even within a distance of a few millimetres. Another way of saying this is that soils are *heterogeneous* rather than *homogeneous* materials. That is, their material or engineering properties may vary widely from point to point within a soil mass. Furthermore, soils in general are *nonlinear* materials; their stress-strain curves are not straight lines. To further complicate things (as well as to make them interesting!) soils are *nonconservative* materials; that is, they have a fantastic memory—they remember almost everything that ever happened to them, and this fact strongly affects their engineering behavior. Instead of being *isotropic*, soils are typically *anisotropic*, which means that their material or engineering properties are not the same in all directions. Most of the theories we have for the mechanical behavior of engineering materials assume that the materials are homogeneous and isotropic, and that they obey linear stress-strain laws. Common engineering materials such as steel and concrete do

not deviate too significantly from these ideals, and consequently we can use, with discretion, simple linear theories to predict their response under engineering loads. With soils and rock, we are not so fortunate. As you shall see in your study of geotechnical engineering, we may assume a linear stress-strain response, but then we must apply large empirical correction or "safety" factors to our designs to account for the real material behavior. Furthermore, the behavior of soil and rock materials in situ is often governed or controlled by joints, fractures, weak layers and zones, and other "defects" in the material; yet our laboratory tests and simplified methods of analysis often do not take into account such real characteristics of the soil and rock. That is why geotechnical engineering is really an "art" rather than an engineering science. Successful geotechnical engineering depends on the good judgment and practical experience of the designer, constructor, or consultant. Put another way, the successful geotechnical engineer must develop a "feel" for soil and rock behavior before a safe and economic foundation design can be made or an engineering structure can be safely built.

### **1.3 SUGGESTED APPROACH TO THE STUDY OF GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING**

Because of the nature of soil and rock materials, both laboratory and field testing are very important in geotechnical engineering. One way that student engineers can begin to develop a feel for soil and rock behavior is to get some experience in the laboratory by performing the standard tests for classification and engineering properties on many different types of soils and rocks. In this way the novice begins building up a "mental data bank" of how certain soils and rocks actually look, how they might behave should, for example, the amount of water present change, how they might behave under different kinds of engineering loads, and what the range of probable numerical values is for the different tests. This is sort of a self-calibration process, so that when you are faced with a new soil deposit or rock type, you will in advance have some idea as to the engineering problems you will encounter at that site. You can also begin to judge, at least qualitatively, the validity of laboratory and field test results for the materials at that site. So laboratory as well as field experience is important for you to help develop a "feel" for soil and rock behavior. Of course, just as with any other subject, this exposure in the laboratory to soil and rock properties and behavior must be complemented by a diligent study of the theoretical, empirical, and design components of geotechnical engineering practice.

## 1.4 SCOPE OF THIS BOOK

Rather than attempt an all-inclusive approach to geotechnical engineering, the primary emphasis in this text will be on the *engineering behavior of soil materials*. Soil mechanics and the analysis and design of foundations and earth structures is generally a fairly straightforward, but creative, application of mechanics, strength of materials, and elementary structural engineering. Often the key in the successful practice and application of geotechnical engineering lies in a sound knowledge and understanding of the engineering properties and behavior of soils *in situ*, when they are subjected to their engineering loads and environmental conditions. Therefore we feel that the beginning student must first develop an appreciation for the engineering properties of soils as distinct from other common civil engineering materials before proceeding to instruction in the analysis and design phases of foundation and earthwork engineering.

This is an elementary text, and the approach we have tried to follow is to emphasize the fundamentals, with an eye toward the practical applications that you as a practicing civil engineer are likely to encounter in your engineering practice. Finally, we hope you will know enough about soils and soil deposits to avoid serious mistakes or blunders in those aspects of your professional career that involve soil and soil materials.

In the first part of the book, we introduce some of the basic definitions and index properties of soil that are used throughout the book. Then some common soil classification schemes are presented. *Classification* of soils is important because it is the "language" engineers use to communicate certain general knowledge about the engineering behavior of the soils at a particular site. The rest of the book is concerned with the *engineering properties* of soil, properties that are necessary for the design of foundations and earth structures. Topics covered include how water affects soil behavior, their shrinkage and swelling characteristics, and their permeability (how water flows through soils). Then we get into the compressibility of soil, which is the important engineering property one needs to predict the settlement of engineering structures constructed on soil masses. Finally, we describe some of the elementary strength characteristics of both granular and cohesive soils. Soil strength is important, for example, for the design of foundations, retaining walls, and slopes.

Much of the practice of geotechnical engineering depends on topics that include geology and the nature of landforms and soil deposits. You are strongly encouraged to take a physical geology or an engineering geology course in connection with your studies of geotechnical engineering.

It is hoped that with the background of this text, you will be prepared for a follow-up course in foundation and earthwork engineering; you should know how to obtain the soil properties required for most designs, and you should have a pretty good idea as to the probable range of values for a given property if you know the general classification of the soil. Finally, you should have a fairly good idea of what to look for at a site, how to avoid costly and dangerous mistakes, and be aware of your own limitations and knowledge of soils as an engineering material.

### 1.5 SOIL FORMATION AND THE NATURE OF SOIL CONSTITUENTS

We mentioned earlier that soil from a civil engineering point of view is the relatively loose agglomeration of mineral and organic materials found above the bedrock. In a broader sense, of course, even shallow bedrock is of interest to geotechnical engineers and some of these applications have already been mentioned.

You may remember from your basic science courses that the earth has a crust of granitic and basaltic rocks 10 to 40 km thick. Overlying this more or less solid rock is a relatively thin layer of variable thickness of what geologists call *unconsolidated* materials. These materials can vary in size from sub-microscopic mineral particles to huge boulders. *Weathering* and other geologic processes act on the rocks at or near the earth's surface to form these unconsolidated materials, or soil. Weathering, which usually results from atmospheric processes, alters the composition and structure of these rocks by chemical and physical means. *Physical* or *mechanical weathering* causes disintegration of the rocks into smaller particle sizes. Physical weathering agents include freezing and thawing, temperature changes, erosion, and the activity of plants and animals including man. *Chemical weathering* decomposes the minerals in the rocks by oxidation, reduction, carbonation, and other chemical processes. Generally, chemical weathering is much more important than physical weathering in soil formation. In short then, soils are the products of the weathering of rocks. Soils at a particular site can be *residual* (that is, weathered in place) or *transported* (moved by water, wind, glaciers, etc.), and the geologic history of a particular deposit significantly affects its engineering behavior.

The nature of soil constituents is discussed in greater detail throughout this text. For now, we want to make a few points just to set the stage for what we are about to study. You already have a layman's idea about soil. At least you know in general what *sand* and *gravel* are, and perhaps you even have a general idea about fine-grained soils such as *silts* and *clays*. These terms have quite precise engineering definitions, as we shall later

see, but for now the general concept that soils are particles will suffice. Particles of what? Well, usually particles of mineral matter or, more simply, broken up pieces of rock that result from the weathering processes we spoke of previously. If we just talk for now about the size of the particles, gravels are small pieces of rock that typically contain several minerals, whereas sands are even smaller and each grain usually contains only a single mineral. If you cannot see each grain of a soil, then the soil is either a silt or a clay or a mixture of each. In fact, natural soils generally are a mixture of several different particle sizes and may even contain organic matter. Some soils such as *peat* may be almost entirely organic. Furthermore, because soils are a particulate material, they have voids, and the voids are usually filled with water and air. It is the physical and chemical interaction of the water and air in the voids with the particles of soil, as well as the interaction of the particles themselves, that makes soil behavior so complicated and leads to the nonlinear, nonconservative, and anisotropic mechanical behavior we mentioned previously. Now, if you add the variability and heterogeneity of natural soil deposits due to the capriciousness of nature, you probably can begin to see that soils are indeed complex engineering and construction materials. Helping you put some order into this potentially chaotic situation is our primary objective in this book.

## 1.6 HISTORICAL DEVELOPMENT OF GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING

As long as people have been building things, they have used soils as a foundation or construction material. The ancient Egyptians, Babylonians, Chinese, and Indians knew about constructing dikes and levees out of the soils found in river flood plains. Ancient temples and monuments built all around the world involved soil and rock in some way. The Aztecs constructed temples and cities on the very poor soils in the Valley of Mexico long before the Spaniards arrived in the New World. European architects and builders during the Middle Ages learned about the problems of settlements of cathedrals and large buildings. The most noteworthy example is, of course, the Leaning Tower of Pisa. Scandinavians used timber piles to support houses and wharf structures on their soft clays. The "design" of foundations and other constructions involving soil and rock was by rule of thumb, and very little theory as such was developed until the mid-1700's.

Coulomb is the most famous name of that era. He was interested in the problems of earth pressures against retaining walls, and some of his calculation procedures are still in use today. The most common theory for

the shear strength of soils is named after him. During the next century, the French engineers Collin and Darcy (D'Arcy) and the Scotsman Rankine made important discoveries. Collin was the first engineer to be concerned with failures in clay slopes as well as the measurement of the shear strength of clays. Darcy established his law for the flow of water through sands. Rankine developed a method for estimating the earth pressure against retaining walls. In England, Gregory utilized horizontal subdrains and compacted earth-fill buttresses to stabilize railroad cut slopes.

By the turn of the century, important developments in the field took place in Scandinavia, primarily in Sweden. Atterberg defined the consistency limits for clays that are still in use today. During the period 1914–1922, in connection with investigations of some important failures in harbors and railroads, the Geotechnical Commission of the Swedish State Railways developed many important concepts and apparatuses in geotechnical engineering. Methods for calculating the stability of slopes were developed. They developed subsurface investigation techniques such as weight sounding and piston and other types of samplers. They understood important concepts such as sensitivity of clays and consolidation, which is the squeezing of water out of the pores of the clay. At that time, clays were thought to be absolutely impervious, but the Swedes made field measurements to show that they weren't. The Commission was the first to use the word *geotechnical* (Swedish: *geotekniska*) in the sense that we know it today: the combination of geology and civil engineering technology.

Even with these early developments in Sweden, the father of soil mechanics is really an Austrian, Prof. Karl Terzaghi. He published in 1925 the first modern textbook on soil mechanics, and in fact the name "soil mechanics" is a direct translation of the German word *erdbaumechanik*, which was part of the title of that book. Terzaghi was an outstanding and very creative engineer. He wrote several important books and over 250 technical papers and articles, and his name will appear many times in this book. He was a professor at Robert College in Istanbul, Technische Hochschule in Vienna, M. I. T., and at Harvard University from 1938 until his retirement in 1956. He continued to be active as a consultant until his death in 1963 at the age of 80.

Another important contributor to the advancement of modern soil mechanics is Prof. Arthur Casagrande, who was at Harvard University from 1932 until 1969. You will see his name often in this book because he made many important contributions to the art and science of soil mechanics and foundation engineering. Other important contributors to the field include Taylor, Peck, Tschebotarioff, Skempton, and Bjerrum. Since the 1950's the field has grown substantially and the names of those responsible for its rapid advancement are too numerous to mention.

Both Terzaghi and Casagrande began the teaching of soil mechanics and engineering geology in the United States. Before the Second World War, the subject was offered only as a graduate course in very few universities. After the war, it became common for at least one course in the subject to be required in most schools of civil engineering. In recent years graduate programs in all phases of geotechnical engineering have been implemented at many universities, and there has been a real information explosion in the number of conferences, technical journals, and textbooks published during the past two decades.

Important recent developments you should know about include developments in earthquake engineering and soil dynamics, the use of digital computers for the solution of complex engineering problems, and the introduction of probability and statistics into geotechnical engineering analysis and design.

## 1.7 NOTES ON SYMBOLS AND UNITS

At the beginning of each chapter, we list the pertinent symbols introduced in the chapter. As with most disciplines, a standard notation is not universal in geotechnical engineering, so we have tried to adopt the symbols most commonly used. For example, the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM, 1979) has a list of Standard Definitions of Terms and Symbols Relating to Soil and Rock Mechanics, Designation D 653, which was prepared jointly some years ago with the American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE) and the International Society of Rock Mechanics (ISRM). Recently the International Society for Soil Mechanics and Foundation Engineering (ISSMFE, 1977) published an extensive list of symbols. Although there are some deviations from this list because of our personal preference, we have generally tried to follow these recommendations.

Units used in geotechnical engineering can be politely called a mess and, less politely, several worse things. There has developed in practice a jumbled mixture of cgs-metric, Imperial or British Engineering units and hybrid European metric units. With the introduction of the universal and consistent system of units, "Le Système International d'Unités" (SI) in the United States and Canada, we believe it is important that you learn to use those units in geotechnical engineering practice. However since British Engineering units are still commonly used, it is important that you become familiar with the typical values of both sets of units. To assist you with unit conversion where necessary, we have included a brief explanation of SI units as applied to geotechnical engineering in Appendix A.

# Index and Classification Properties of Soils

## 2.1 INTRODUCTION

In this chapter we introduce the basic terms and definitions used by geotechnical engineers to index and classify soils. The following notation is used in this chapter.

Symbol	Dimension	Unit	Definition
$A$	—	—	Activity (Eq. 2-23)
$C_c$	—	—	Coefficient of curvature (Eq. 2-20)
$C_u$	—	—	Coefficient of uniformity (Eq. 2-19)
$D_{10}$	$L$	mm	Diameter for 10% finer by weight
$D_{30}$	$L$	mm	Diameter for 30% finer by weight
$D_{60}$	$L$	mm	Diameter for 60% finer by weight
$e$	—	(decimal)	Void ratio (Eq. 2-1)
LI or $I_L$	—	—	Liquidity index (Eq. 2-23)
LL or $w_L$	—	—	Liquid limit
$M_t$	$M$	kg	Total mass
$M_s$	$M$	kg	Mass of solids
$M_w$	$M$	kg	Mass of water
$n$	—	(%)	Porosity (Eq. 2-2)
PI or $I_P$	—	—	Plasticity index (Eq. 2-22)
PL or $w_P$	—	—	Plastic limit
$S$	—	(%)	Degree of saturation (Eq. 2-4)
SL or $w_S$	—	—	Shrinkage limit
$V_a$	$L^3$	$m^3$	Volume of air
$V_s$	$L^3$	$m^3$	Volume of solids
$V_t$	$L^3$	$m^3$	Total volume
$V_v$	$L^3$	$m^3$	Volume of voids
$w$	—	(%)	Water content (Eq. 2-5)
$\rho$	$M/L^3$	$kg/m^3$	Total, wet, or moist density (Eq. 2-6)
$\rho'$	$M/L^3$	$kg/m^3$	Buoyant density (Eq. 2-11)
$\rho_d$	$M/L^3$	$kg/m^3$	Dry density (Eq. 2-9)
$\rho_s$	$M/L^3$	$kg/m^3$	Density of solids (Eq. 2-7)
$\rho_{sat}$	$M/L^3$	$kg/m^3$	Saturated density (Eq. 2-10)
$\rho_w$	$M/L^3$	$kg/m^3$	Density of water (Eq. 2-8)

In this list,  $L$  = length and  $M$  = mass. When densities of soils and water are expressed in  $\text{kg}/\text{m}^3$ , the numbers are rather large. For instance, the density of water  $\rho_w$  is  $1000 \text{ kg}/\text{m}^3$ . Since  $1000 \text{ kg} = 1 \text{ Mg}$ , to make the numbers more manageable, we will usually use  $\text{Mg}/\text{m}^3$  for densities. If you are unfamiliar with SI metric units and their conversion factors, it would be a good idea to read Appendix A before proceeding with the rest of this chapter.

## 2.2 BASIC DEFINITIONS AND PHASE RELATIONS

In general, any mass of soil consists of a collection of solid particles with voids in between. The soil solids are small grains of different minerals, whereas the voids can be filled either with water, air, or filled partly with both water and air (Fig. 2.1). In other words, the total volume  $V_t$  of the soil mass consists of the volume of soil solids  $V_s$  and the volume of voids  $V_v$ .

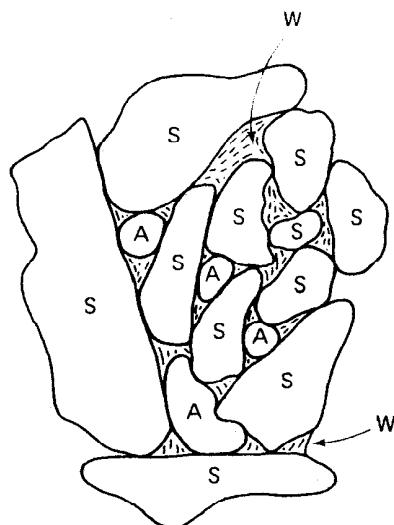


Fig. 2.1 Soil skeleton containing solid particles (S) and voids with air (A) and water (W).

The volume of voids is in general made up of the volume of water  $V_w$  and the volume of air  $V_a$ . We can schematically represent these three phases in a *phase diagram* (Fig. 2.2) in which each of the three phases is shown separately. On the left side we usually indicate the volumes of the three phases; on the right side we show the corresponding masses of the phases. Even though only two dimensions are shown in the phase diagram, total volume is any convenient unit volume such as  $\text{m}^3$  or  $\text{cm}^3$ .

In engineering practice, we usually measure the total volume  $V_t$ , the mass of water  $M_w$ , and the mass of dry solids  $M_s$ . Then we calculate the rest of the values and the mass-volume relationships that we need. Most of these relationships are independent of sample size, and they are often dimensionless. They are very simple and easy to remember, especially if

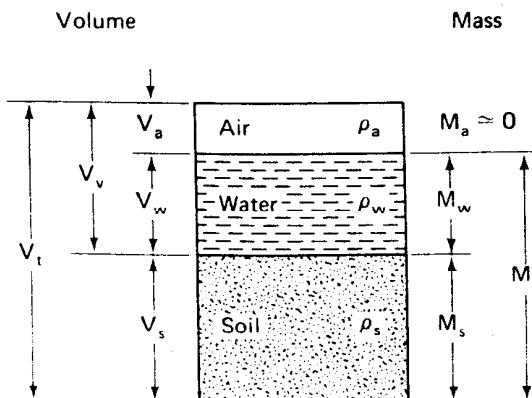


Fig. 2.2 Volumetric and mass relationships for a soil shown in a phase diagram.

you draw the phase diagram. They probably should be memorized, but as you work phase problems memorization will occur almost automatically.

There are three volumetric ratios that are very useful in geotechnical engineering, and these can be determined directly from the phase diagram, Fig. 2.2.

1. The *void ratio*,  $e^*$ , is defined as

$$e = \frac{V_v}{V_s} \quad (2-1)$$

where  $V_v$  = volume of the voids, and  
 $V_s$  = volume of the solids.

The void ratio  $e$  is normally expressed as a *decimal*. The maximum possible range of  $e$  is between 0 and  $\infty$ . However typical values of void ratios for sands may range from 0.4 to about 1.0; typical values for clays vary from 0.3 to 1.5 and even higher for some organic soils.

2. The *porosity*  $n$  is defined as

$$n = \frac{V_v}{V_t} \times 100 (\%) \quad (2-2)$$

where  $V_v$  = volume of voids, and  
 $V_t$  = total volume of soil sample.

Porosity is traditionally expressed as a *percentage*. The maximum range of  $n$  is between 0 and 100%. From 2.2 and Eqs. 2-1 and 2-2, it can be shown that

$$n = \frac{e}{1 + e} \quad (2-3a)$$

and

$$e = \frac{n}{1 - n} \quad (2-3b)$$

\*Readers with British backgrounds will note the correct terminology is voids ratio.

3. The *degree of saturation*  $S$  is defined as

$$S = \frac{V_w}{V_v} \times 100 (\%) \quad (2-4)$$

The degree of saturation tells us what *percentage* of the total volume of voids contains water. If the soil is completely dry then  $S = 0\%$ , and if the pores are completely full of water, then the soil is fully saturated and  $S = 100\%$ .

Now let us look at the other side, the mass side, of the phase diagram in Fig. 2.2. First, let us define a mass ratio that is probably the single most important thing we need to know about a soil. We want to know how much water is present in the voids relative to the amount of solids in the soil, so we define a ratio called the *water content*  $w$  as

$$w = \frac{M_w}{M_s} \times 100 (\%) \quad (2-5)$$

where  $M_w$  = mass of water, and

$M_s$  = mass of soil solids.

The ratio of the amount of water present in a soil volume to the amount of soil grains is based on the *dry mass* of the soil and not on the total mass. The water content, which is usually expressed as a *percentage*, can range from zero (dry soil) to several hundred percent. The natural water content for most soils is well under 100%, although it can range up to 500% or higher in some marine and organic soils.

The water content is easily determined in the laboratory. ASTM (1980), Designation D 2216, explains the standard procedure. A representative sample of soil is selected and its total or wet mass is determined. Then the soil sample is dried to constant mass in an oven at 110°C. Normally a constant mass is obtained after the sample is left in the oven overnight. The mass of the drying dish must, of course, be subtracted from both the wet and dry masses. Then the water content is calculated according to Eq. 2-5. Example 2.1 illustrates how the calculations for water content are actually done in practice.

---

### EXAMPLE 2.1

Given:

A sample of wet soil in a drying dish has a mass of 462 g. After drying in an oven at 110°C overnight, the sample and dish have a mass of 364 g. The mass of the dish alone is 39 g.

**Required:**

Determine the water content of the soil.

**Solution:**

Set up the following calculation scheme; fill in the "given" or measured quantities (a), (b), and (d), and make the calculations as indicated for (c), (e), and (f).

- a. Mass of total (wet) sample + dish = 462 g
- b. Mass of dry sample + dish = 364 g
- c. Mass of water ( $a - b$ ) = 98 g
- d. Mass of dish = 39 g
- e. Mass of dry soil ( $b - d$ ) = 325 g
- f. Water content ( $c/e$ )  $\times 100\% = 30.2\%$

In the laboratory, masses are usually determined in grams (g) on an ordinary chemical balance.

Another very useful concept in geotechnical engineering is density. You know from physics that density is mass per unit volume, so its units are kg/m<sup>3</sup>. (See Appendix A for the corresponding units in the cgs and British Engineering systems.) The *density* is the ratio that connects the volumetric side of the phase diagram with the mass side. There are several commonly used densities in geotechnical engineering practice. First, we define the total, wet, or moist density  $\rho$ , the density of the particles, solid density  $\rho_s$ , and the density of water  $\rho_w$ . Or, in terms of the basic masses and volumes of Fig. 2.2:

$$\rho = \frac{M_t}{V_t} = \frac{M_s + M_w}{V_t} \quad (2-6)$$

$$\rho_s = \frac{M_s}{V_s} \quad (2-7)$$

$$\rho_w = \frac{M_w}{V_w} \quad (2-8)$$

In natural soils, the magnitude of the total density  $\rho$  will depend on how much water happens to be in the voids as well as the density of the mineral grains themselves, but  $\rho$  could range from slightly above 1000 kg/m<sup>3</sup> to as high as 2400 kg/m<sup>3</sup> (1.0 to 2.4 Mg/m<sup>3</sup>). Typical values of  $\rho_s$  for most soils range from 2500 to 2800 kg/m<sup>3</sup> (2.5 to 2.8 Mg/m<sup>3</sup>). Most sands have  $\rho_s$  ranging between 2.6 and 2.7 Mg/m<sup>3</sup>. For example, a

common mineral in sands is quartz; its  $\rho_s = 2.65 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ . Most clay soils have a value of  $\rho_s$  between  $2.65$  and  $2.80 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ , depending on the predominant mineral in the soil, whereas organic soils may have a  $\rho_s$  as low as  $2.5 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ . Consequently, it is usually close enough for geotechnical work to assume a  $\rho_s$  of  $2.65$  or  $2.70 \text{ Mg/m}^3$  for most phase problems, unless a specific value of  $\rho_s$  is given.

The density of water varies slightly, depending on the temperature. At  $4^\circ\text{C}$ , when water is at its densest,  $\rho_w$  exactly equals  $1000 \text{ kg/m}^3$  ( $1 \text{ g/cm}^3$ ), and this density is sometimes designated by the symbol  $\rho_o$ . For ordinary engineering work, it is sufficiently accurate to take  $\rho_w \approx \rho_o = 1000 \text{ kg/m}^3 = 1 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ .

There are three other useful densities in soils engineering. They are the dry density  $\rho_d$ , the saturated density  $\rho_{\text{sat}}$ , and the submerged or buoyant density  $\rho'$ .

$$\rho_d = \frac{M_s}{V_t} \quad (2-9)$$

$$\rho_{\text{sat}} = \frac{M_s + M_w}{V_t} (V_a = 0, S = 100\%) \quad (2-10)$$

$$\rho' = \rho_{\text{sat}} - \rho_w \quad (2-11)$$

Strictly speaking, total  $\rho$  should be used instead of  $\rho_{\text{sat}}$  in Eq. 2-11, but in most cases completely submerged soils are also completely saturated, or at least it is reasonable to assume they are saturated. The dry density  $\rho_d$  is a common basis for judging the degree of compaction of earth embankments (Chapter 5). A typical range of values of  $\rho_d$ ,  $\rho_{\text{sat}}$ , and  $\rho'$  for several soil types is shown in Table 2-1.

From the basic definitions provided in this section, other useful relationships can be derived, as we show in the examples in the next section.

**TABLE 2-1 Some Typical Values for Different Densities of Some Common Soil Materials\***

Soil Type	Density ( $\text{Mg/m}^3$ )		
	$\rho_{\text{sat}}$	$\rho_d$	$\rho'$
Sands and gravels	1.9–2.4	1.5–2.3	1.0–1.3
Silts and clays	1.4–2.1	0.6–1.8	0.4–1.1
Glacial tills	2.1–2.4	1.7–2.3	1.1–1.4
Crushed rock	1.9–2.2	1.5–2.0	0.9–1.2
Peats	1.0–1.1	0.1–0.3	0.0–0.1
Organic silts and clays	1.3–1.8	0.5–1.5	0.3–0.8

\*Modified after Hansbo (1975).

## 2.3 SOLUTION OF PHASE PROBLEMS

Phase problems are very important in soils engineering, and in this section, with the help of some numerical examples, we illustrate how most phase problems can be solved. As is true for many disciplines, practice helps; the more problems you solve, the simpler they become and the more proficient you will become. Also, with practice you soon memorize most of the important definitions and relationships, thus saving the time of looking up formulas later on.

Probably the single most important thing you can do in solving phase problems is *to draw a phase diagram*. This is especially true for the beginner. Don't spend time searching for the right formula to plug into. Instead, always draw a phase diagram and show both the given values and the unknowns of the problem. For some problems, simply doing this leads almost immediately to the solution; at least the correct approach to the problem is usually indicated. Also, you should note that there often are alternative approaches to the solution of the same problem as illustrated in Example 2.2.

### EXAMPLE 2.2

Given:

$$\rho = 1.76 \text{ Mg/m}^3 \text{ (total density)}$$

$$w = 10\% \text{ (water content)}$$

Required:

Compute  $\rho_d$  (dry density),  $e$  (void ratio),  $n$  (porosity),  $S$  (degree of saturation), and  $\rho_{sat}$  (saturated density).

Solution:

Draw the phase diagram (Fig. Ex. 2.2a). Assume that  $V_t = 1 \text{ m}^3$ .

From the definition of water content (Eq. 2-5) and total density (Eq. 2-6) we can solve for  $M_s$  and  $M_w$ . Note that in the computations water content is expressed as a decimal.

$$w = 0.10 = \frac{M_w}{M_s}$$

$$\rho = 1.76 \text{ Mg/m}^3 = \frac{M_t}{V_t} = \frac{M_w + M_s}{1.0 \text{ m}^3}$$

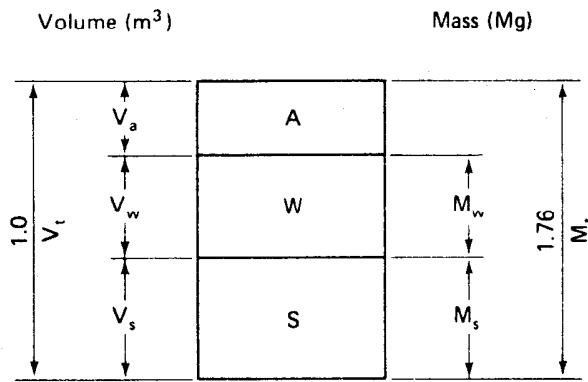


Fig. Ex. 2.2a

Substituting  $M_w = 0.10M_s$ , we get

$$1.76 \text{ Mg/m}^3 = \frac{0.10M_s + M_s}{1.0 \text{ m}^3}$$

$$M_s = 1.60 \text{ Mg} \quad \text{and} \quad M_w = 0.16 \text{ Mg}$$

These values are now placed on the mass side of the phase diagram (Fig. Ex. 2.2b), and the rest of the desired properties are calculated.

From the definition of  $\rho_w$  (Eq. 2-8) we can solve for  $V_w$ .

$$\rho_w = \frac{M_w}{V_w},$$

or

$$V_w = \frac{M_w}{\rho_w} = \frac{0.16 \text{ Mg}}{1 \text{ Mg/m}^3} = 0.160 \text{ m}^3$$

Place this numerical value on phase diagram, Fig. Ex. 2.2b.

To calculate  $V_s$ , we must assume a value of the density of the solids  $\rho_s$ . Here assume  $\rho_s = 2.70 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ . From the definition of  $\rho_s$  (Eq. 2-7) we

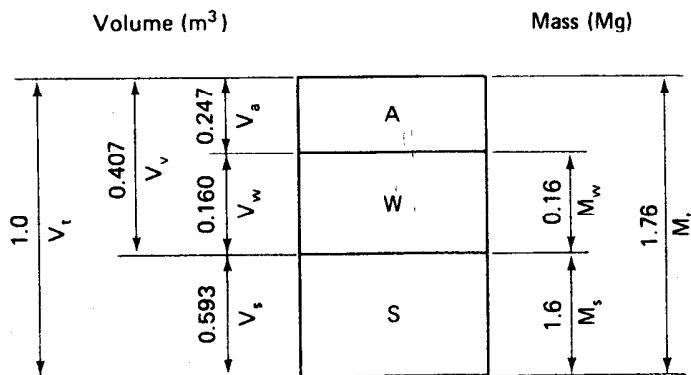


Fig. Ex. 2.2b

can solve for  $V_s$  directly, or

$$V_s = \frac{M_s}{\rho_s} = \frac{1.6 \text{ Mg}}{2.70 \text{ Mg/m}^3} = 0.593 \text{ m}^3$$

Since  $V_t = V_a + V_w + V_s$ , we can solve for  $V_a$ , since we know the other terms.

$$V_a = V_t - V_w - V_s = 1.0 - 0.593 - 0.160 = 0.247 \text{ m}^3$$

Once the phase diagram has been filled in, solution of the rest of the problem involves just plugging in the respective numbers into the appropriate definition equations. We recommend that when you make the computations, you write out the equations in symbol form and then insert the numbers in the same order as written in the equation. Also, it is a good idea to have the units accompany the calculations.

Solving for the remainder of the required items is easy.

From Eq. 2-9,

$$\rho_d = \frac{M_s}{V_t} = \frac{1.6 \text{ Mg}}{1 \text{ m}^3} = 1.6 \text{ Mg/m}^3$$

From Eq. 2-1,

$$e = \frac{V_v}{V_s} = \frac{V_a + V_w}{V_s} = \frac{0.247 + 0.160}{0.593} = 0.686$$

From Eq. 2-2,

$$n = \frac{V_v}{V_t} = \frac{V_a + V_w}{V_t} 100 = \frac{0.247 + 0.160}{1.0} 100 = 40.7\%$$

From Eq. 2-4,

$$S = \frac{V_w}{V_v} = \frac{V_w}{V_a + V_w} 100 = \frac{1.160}{0.247 + 0.160} 100 = 39.3\%$$

The saturated density  $\rho_{sat}$  is the density when all the voids are filled with water, that is, when  $S = 100\%$  (Eq. 2-10). Therefore, if the volume of air  $V_a$  were filled with water, it would weigh  $0.247 \text{ m}^3 \times 1 \text{ Mg/m}^3$  or 0.247 Mg. Then

$$\rho_{sat} = \frac{M_w + M_s}{V_t} = \frac{(0.247 \text{ Mg} + 0.16 \text{ Mg}) + 1.6 \text{ Mg}}{1 \text{ m}^3} = 2.01 \text{ Mg/m}^3$$

Another, and perhaps even easier way to solve this example problem, is to assume  $V_s$  is a unit volume, 1 m<sup>3</sup>. Then, by definition,  $M_s = \rho_s = 2.7$  (when  $\rho_s$  is assumed to be equal to 2.70 Mg/m<sup>3</sup>). The completed phase diagram is shown in Fig. Ex. 2.2c.

Since  $w = M_w/M_s = 0.10$ ,  $M_w = 0.27 \text{ Mg}$  and  $M_t = M_w + M_s = 2.97 \text{ Mg}$ . Also  $V_w = M_w$  since  $\rho_w = 1 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ ; that is, 0.27 Mg of water occupies

a volume of  $0.27 \text{ m}^3$ . Two unknowns remain to be solved before we can proceed: they are  $V_a$  and  $V_t$ . To obtain these values, we must use the given information that  $\rho = 1.76 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ . From the definition of total density (Eq. 2-6),

$$\rho = 1.76 \text{ Mg/m}^3 = \frac{M_t}{V_t} = \frac{2.97 \text{ Mg}}{V_t}$$

Solving for  $V_t$ ,

$$V_t = \frac{M_t}{\rho} = \frac{2.97 \text{ Mg}}{1.76 \text{ Mg/m}^3} = 1.688 \text{ m}^3$$

Therefore

$$V_a = V_t - V_w - V_s = 1.688 - 0.27 - 1.0 = 0.418 \text{ m}^3$$

You can use Fig. Ex. 2.2c to verify that the remainder of the solution is identical to the one using the data of Fig. Ex. 2.2b.

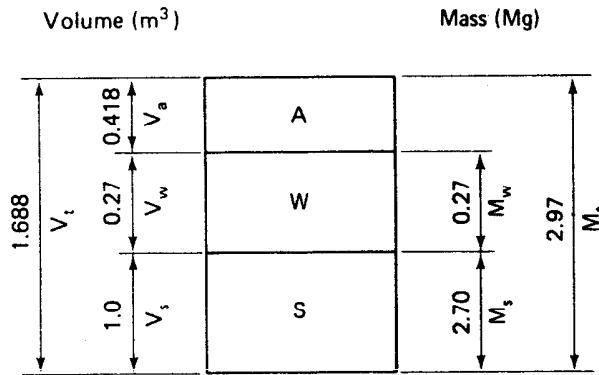


Fig. Ex. 2.2c

### EXAMPLE 2.3

**Required:**

Express the porosity  $n$  in terms of the void ratio  $e$  (Eq. 2-3a) and the void ratio in terms of the porosity (Eq. 2-3b).

**Solution:**

Draw a phase diagram (Fig. Ex. 2.3a).

For this problem, assume  $V_s = 1$  (units arbitrary). From Eq. 2-1,  $V_v = e$  since  $V_s = 1$ . Therefore  $V_t = 1 + e$ . From Eq. 2-2, the definition of

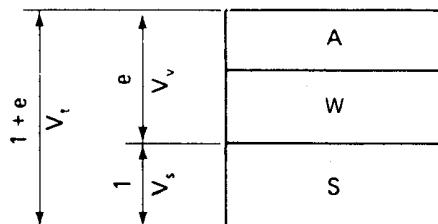


Fig. Ex. 2.3a

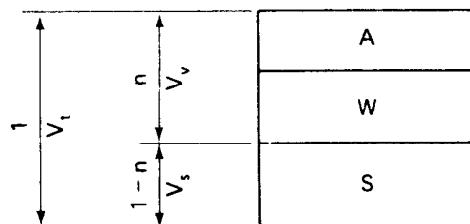


Fig. Ex. 2.3b

$n$  is  $V_v/V_t$ , or

$$n = \frac{e}{1+e} \quad (2-3a)$$

Equation 2-3b can be derived algebraically or from the phase diagram (Fig. Ex. 2.3b). For this case, assume  $V_t = 1$ .

From Eq. 2-2,  $V_v = n$  since  $V_t = 1$ . Therefore  $V_s = 1 - n$ . From Eq. 2-1, the definition of  $e = V_v/V_s$ . So

$$e = \frac{n}{1-n} \quad (2-3b)$$

#### EXAMPLE 2.4

Given:

$$e = 0.62, \quad w = 15\%, \quad \rho_s = 2.65 \text{ Mg/m}^3.$$

Required:

- a.  $\rho_d$
- b.  $\rho$
- c.  $w$  for  $S = 100\%$
- d.  $\rho_{sat}$  for  $S = 100\%$

Solution:

Draw phase diagram (Fig. Ex. 2.4).

- a. Since no volumes are specified, assume  $V_s = 1 \text{ m}^3$ . Just as in

Example 2.3, this makes the  $V_o = e = 0.62 \text{ m}^3$  and  $V_t = 1 + e = 1.62 \text{ m}^3$ . From Eq. 2-9,

$$\rho_d = \frac{M_s}{V_t}$$

and  $M_s = \rho_s V_s$  (from Eq. 2-7). So

$$\begin{aligned}\rho_d &= \frac{\rho_s V_s}{V_t} = \frac{\rho_s}{1+e} \quad \text{since } V_s = 1 \text{ m}^3 \text{ in Fig. Ex. 2-4} \\ &= \frac{2.65}{1+0.62} = 1.636 \text{ Mg/m}^3\end{aligned}$$

Note: The relationship

$$\rho_d = \frac{\rho_s}{1+e} \quad (2-12)$$

is often very useful in phase problems.

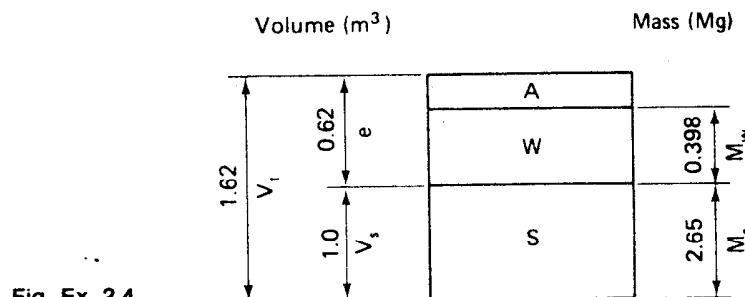


Fig. Ex. 2.4

b. Now for  $\rho$ :

$$\rho = \frac{M_t}{V_t} = \frac{M_s + M_w}{V_t}$$

We know that

$$M_w = wM_s \quad (\text{from Eq. 2-5}) \quad \text{and} \quad M_s = \rho_s V_s$$

$$\rho = \frac{\rho_s V_s + w\rho_s V_s}{V_t} = \frac{\rho_s(1+w)}{1+e} \quad \text{since } V_s = 1 \text{ m}^3$$

Plug in the numbers.

$$\rho = \frac{2.65(1+0.15)}{1+0.62} = 1.88 \text{ Mg/m}^3$$

This relationship is often useful to know.

$$\rho = \frac{\rho_s(1+w)}{(1+e)} \quad (2-13)$$

**Check:**

$$\begin{aligned}\rho_d &= \frac{\rho}{1+w} \\ &= \frac{1.88}{1.15} = 1.636 \text{ Mg/m}^3\end{aligned}\quad (2-14)$$

You should verify that  $\rho_d = \rho/(1+w)$ , which is another very useful relationship to remember.

c. Water content for  $S = 100\%$ . From Eq. 2-4, we know that  $V_w = V_o = 0.62 \text{ m}^3$ . From Eq. 2-8,  $M_w = V_w \rho_w = 0.62 \text{ m}^3 (1 \text{ Mg/m}^3) = 0.62 \text{ Mg}$ . Therefore  $w$  for  $S = 100\%$  must be

$$w_{(S=100\%)} = \frac{M_w}{M_s} = \frac{0.62}{2.65} = 0.234 \text{ or } 23.4\%$$

d.  $\rho_{sat}$ . From Eq. 2-10, we know  $\rho_{sat} = (M_s + M_w)/V_t$ , or

$$\rho_{sat} = \frac{2.65 + 0.62}{1.62} = 2.019 \text{ or } 2.02 \text{ Mg/m}^3$$

Check, by Eq. 2-13:

$$\rho_{sat} = \frac{\rho_s(1+w)}{1+e} = \frac{2.65(1+0.234)}{1.62} = 2.02 \text{ Mg/m}^3$$

### EXAMPLE 2.5

**Required:**

Derive a relationship between  $S$ ,  $e$ ,  $w$ , and  $\rho_s$ .

**Solution:**

Look at the phase diagram with  $V_s = 1$  (Fig. Ex. 2.5).

From Eq. 2-4 and Fig. 2.5, we know that  $V_w = SV_o = Se$ . From the definitions of water content (Eq. 2-5) and  $\rho_s$  (Eq. 2-7), we can place the

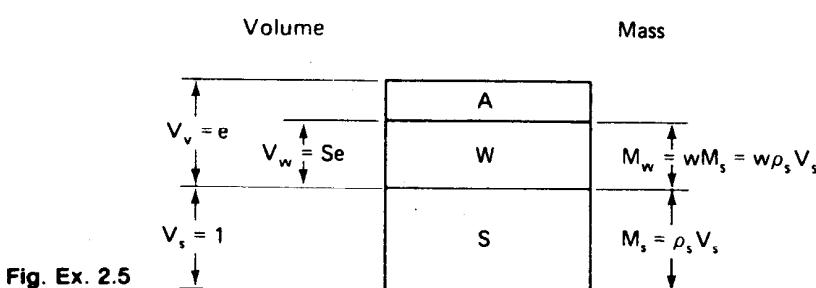


Fig. Ex. 2.5

equivalents for  $M_s$  and  $M_w$  on the phase diagram. Since from Eq. 2-8,  $M_w = \rho_w V_w$ , we now can write the following equation:

$$M_w = \rho_w V_w = w M_s = w \rho_s V_s$$

or

$$\rho_w S e = w \rho_s V_s$$

Since  $V_s = 1 \text{ m}^3$ ,

$$\rho_w S e = w \rho_s \quad (2-15)$$

Equation 2-15 is one of the most useful of all equations for phase problems. You can also verify its validity from the fundamental definitions of  $\rho_w$ ,  $S$ ,  $e$ ,  $w$ , and  $\rho_s$ .

Note that using Eq. 2-15 we can write Eq. 2-13 another way:

$$\rho = \frac{\rho_s \left( 1 + \frac{\rho_w S e}{\rho_s} \right)}{1 + e} = \frac{\rho_s + \rho_w S e}{1 + e} \quad (2-16)$$

When  $S = 100\%$ , Eq. 2-16 becomes

$$\rho_{\text{sat}} = \frac{\rho_s + \rho_w e}{1 + e} \quad (2-17)$$

### EXAMPLE 2.6

**Given:**

A silty clay soil with  $\rho_s = 2700 \text{ kg/m}^3$ ,  $S = 100\%$ , and the water content = 46%.

**Required:**

Compute the void ratio  $e$ , the saturated density, and the buoyant or submerged density in  $\text{kg/m}^3$ .

**Solution:**

Place given information on a phase diagram (Fig. Ex. 2.6).

Assume  $V_s = 1 \text{ m}^3$ ; therefore  $M_s = V_s \rho_s = 2700 \text{ kg}$ . From Eq. 2-15, we can solve for  $e$  directly:

$$e = \frac{w \rho_s}{\rho_w S} = \frac{0.46 \times 2700}{1000 \times 1.0} = 1.242$$

But  $e$  also equals  $V_v$  since  $V_s = 1.0$ ; likewise  $M_w = 1242 \text{ kg}$  since  $M_w$  is

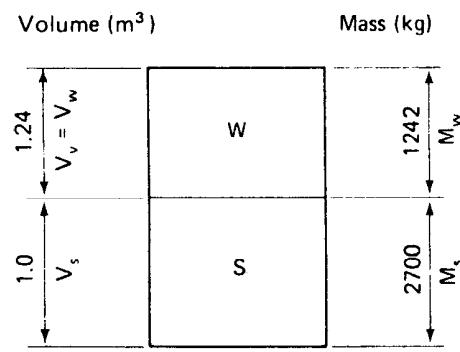


Fig. Ex. 2.6

numerically equal to  $V_w$  because  $\rho_w = 1000 \text{ kg/m}^3$ . Now that all the unknowns have been found, we may readily calculate the saturated density (Eq. 2-10).

$$\rho_{\text{sat}} = \frac{M_t}{V_t} = \frac{M_w + M_s}{1 + e} = \frac{(1242 + 2700) \text{ kg}}{(1 + 1.24) \text{ m}^3} = 1758 \text{ kg/m}^3$$

We could also use Eq. 2-17 directly.

$$\rho_{\text{sat}} = \frac{\rho_s + \rho_w e}{1 + e} = \frac{2700 + 1000(1.242)}{1 + 1.242} = 1758 \text{ kg/m}^3$$

When a soil is submerged, the actual unit weight is reduced by the buoyant effect of the water. The buoyancy effect is equal to the weight of the water displaced. Thus, in terms of densities, (Eqs. 2-11 and 2-17):

$$\rho' = \rho_{\text{sat}} - \rho_w = 1758 \text{ kg/m}^3 - 1000 \text{ kg/m}^3 = 758 \text{ kg/m}^3$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} \rho' &= \frac{\rho_s + \rho_w e}{1 + e} - \rho_w \\ &= \frac{\rho_s - \rho_w}{1 + e} \end{aligned} \quad (2-18)$$

$$\rho' = 758 \text{ kg/m}^3$$

In this example,  $\rho'$  is less than the density of water. Go back and look at Table 2-1 for typical values of  $\rho'$ . The submerged or buoyant density of soil will be found to be very important later on in our discussion of consolidation, settlement, and strength properties of soils.

In summary, for the easy solution of phase problems, you don't have to memorize lots of complicated formulas. Most of them can easily be

derived from the phase diagram as was illustrated in the preceding examples. Just remember the following simple rules:

1. Remember the basic definitions of  $w$ ,  $e$ ,  $\rho_s$ ,  $S$ , etc.
2. Draw a phase diagram.
3. Assume either  $V_s = 1$  or  $V_t = 1$ , if not given.
4. Often use  $\rho_w S e = w \rho_s$ .

## 2.4 SOIL TEXTURE

So far we haven't said very much about what makes up the "solids" part of the soil mass. In Chapter 1 we gave the usual definition of soil from an engineering point of view: the relatively loose agglomeration of mineral and organic materials found above the bedrock. We briefly described how weathering and other geologic processes act on the rocks at or near the earth's surface to form soil. Thus the solid part of the soil mass consists primarily of particles of mineral and organic matter in various sizes and amounts.

The *texture* of a soil is its appearance or "feel," and it depends on the relative sizes and shapes of the particles as well as the range or distribution of those sizes. Thus coarse-grained soils such as *sands* or *gravels* obviously appear coarse textured, while a fine-textured soil might be composed of predominantly very tiny mineral grains which are invisible to the naked eye. *Silts* and *clay* soils are good examples of fine-textured soils.

The soil texture, especially of coarse-grained soils, has some relation to their engineering behavior. In fact, soil texture has been the basis for certain soil classification schemes which are, however, more common in agronomy than in soils engineering. Still, textural classification terms (gravels, sands, silts, and clays) are useful in a general sense in geotechnical engineering practice. For fine-grained soils, the presence of water greatly affects their engineering response—much more so than grain size or texture alone. Water affects the interaction between the mineral grains, and this may affect their *plasticity* and their *cohesiveness*.

Texturally, soils may be divided into coarse-grained versus fine-grained soils. A convenient dividing line is the smallest grain that is visible to the naked eye. Soils with particles larger than this size (about 0.05 mm) are called coarse-grained, while soils finer than the size are (obviously) called fine-grained. Sands and gravels are coarse grained while silts and clays are fine grained. Another convenient way to separate or classify soils is according to their plasticity and cohesion (physics: cohesion—sticking

**TABLE 2-2** Textural and Other Characteristics of Soils

Soil name:	Gravels, Sands	Silts	Clays
Grain size:	Coarse grained Can see individual grains by eye	Fine grained Cannot see individual grains	Fine grained Cannot see individual grains
Characteristics:	Cohesionless Nonplastic Granular	Cohesionless Nonplastic Granular	Cohesive Plastic
Effect of water on engineering behavior:	Relatively unimportant (exception: loose saturated granular materials and dynamic loadings)	Important	Very important
Effect of grain size distribution on engineering behavior:	Important	Relatively unimportant	Relatively unimportant

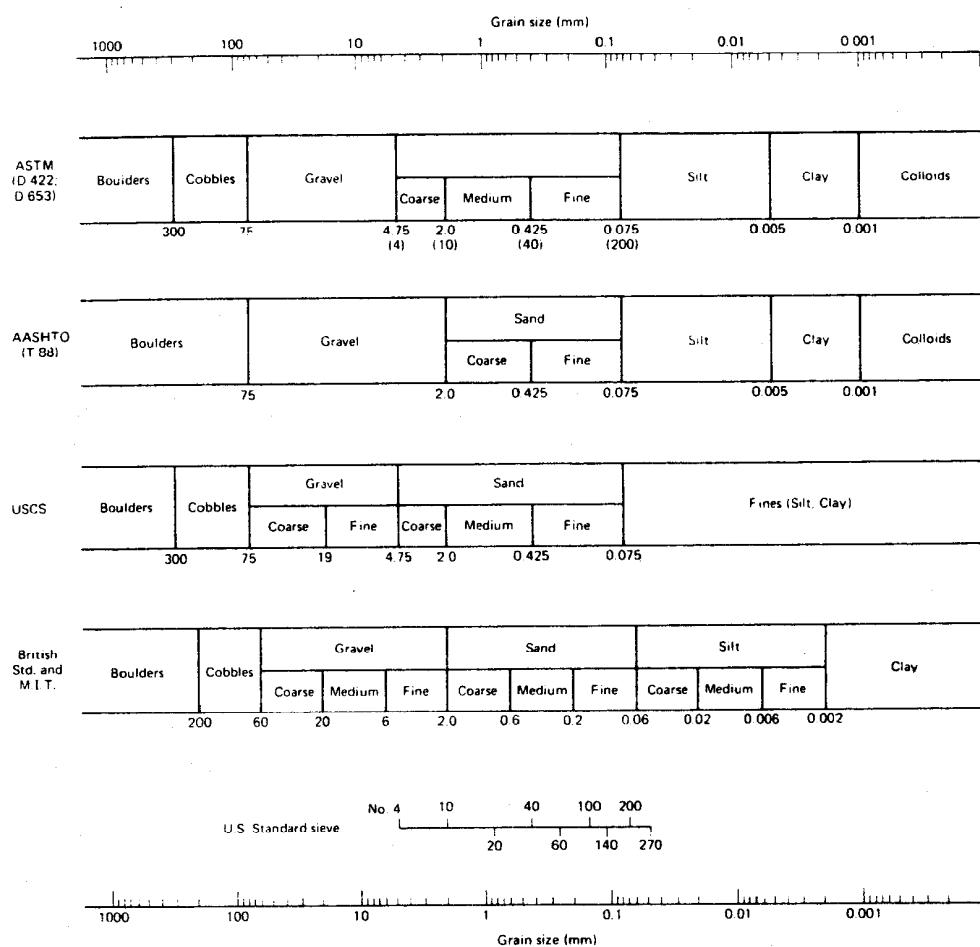
together of like materials). For example, sands are nonplastic and non-cohesive (cohesionless) whereas clays are both plastic and cohesive. Silts fall between clays and sands: they are at the same time fine-grained yet nonplastic and cohesionless. These relationships as well as some general engineering characteristics are presented in Table 2-2. You will need to obtain some practice, best done in the laboratory, in identifying soils according to texture and some of these other general characteristics such as plasticity and cohesiveness. Also you should note that the term *clay* refers both to specific minerals called *clay minerals* (discussed in Chapter 4) and to soils which contain clay minerals. The behavior of some soils is strongly affected by the presence of clay minerals. In geotechnical engineering, for simplicity such soils are usually called *clays*, but we really mean *soils in which the presence of certain clay minerals affects their behavior*.

## 2.5 GRAIN SIZE AND GRAIN SIZE DISTRIBUTION

As suggested in the preceding section, the size of the soil particle, especially for granular soils, has some effect on engineering behavior. Thus, for classification purposes, we are often interested in the particle or grain sizes present in a particular soil as well as the distribution of those sizes.

## 2.5 Grain Size and Grain Size Distribution

27



ASTM = American Society for Testing and Materials (1980)  
 AASHTO = American Association for State Highway and  
           Transportation Officials (1978)  
 USCS = Unified Soil Classification System (U.S. Bureau of  
           Reclamation, 1974; U.S. Army Engineer WES, 1960)  
 M.I.T. = Massachusetts Institute of Technology (Taylor, 1948)

Fig. 2.3 Grain size ranges according to several engineering soil classification systems (modified after Al-Hussaini, 1977).

The range of possible particle sizes in soils is tremendous. Soils can range from boulders or cobbles of several centimetres in diameter down to ultrafine-grained colloidal materials. The maximum possible range is on the order of  $10^8$ , so usually we plot grain size distributions versus the *logarithm* of average grain diameter. Figure 2.3 indicates the divisions between the various textural sizes according to several common engineering classification schemes. It should be noted that traditionally in the

United States the units for the various sizes depend on the grain size. For materials greater than about 5 mm (about 1/4 in.), inches are commonly used, although millimetres could be used just as well. Grain sizes between 5 mm and 0.074 mm are classified according to U.S. Standard sieve number, which of course can be related to a specific grain size as shown in Fig. 2.3. Soils finer than the No. 200 sieve are usually dimensioned in millimetres or, for the very fine-grained colloidal particles, in micrometres.

How is the particle size distribution obtained? The process is called *mechanical analysis* or the *gradation test*. For coarse-grained soils, a *sieve analysis* is performed in which a sample of dry soil is shaken mechanically through a series of woven-wire square-mesh sieves with successively smaller openings. Since the total mass of sample is known, the percentage retained or passing each size sieve can be determined by weighing the amount of soil retained on each sieve after shaking. Detailed procedures for this test are specified by ASTM (1980), Designations C 136 and D 422. The corresponding AASHTO (1978) test standards are T 27 and T 88. The U.S. Standard sieve numbers commonly employed for the particle size analysis of soils are shown in Table 2-3. Since soil particles are rarely perfect spheres, when we speak of particle diameters, we really mean an *equivalent* particle diameter as determined by the sieve analysis.

**TABLE 2-3 U.S. Standard Sieve Sizes and Their Corresponding Open Dimension**

U.S. Standard Sieve No.	Sieve Opening (mm)
4	4.75
10	2.00
20	0.85
40	0.425
60	0.25
100	0.15
140	0.106
200	0.075

It turns out that the sieve analysis is impractical for sieve openings less than about 0.05 to 0.075 mm (No. 200 U.S. Standard sieve). Thus for the fine-grained soils, silts, and clays, the *hydrometer analysis* is commonly used. The basis for this test is Stoke's law for falling spheres in a viscous fluid in which the terminal velocity of fall depends on the grain diameter and the densities of the grains in suspension and of the fluid. The grain diameter thus can be calculated from a knowledge of the distance and time of fall. The hydrometer also determines the specific gravity (or density) of the suspension, and this enables the percentage of particles of a certain equivalent particle diameter to be calculated. As with the sieve analysis,

the percentage of total sample still in suspension (or already out of suspension) can therefore readily be determined. Detailed procedures for the hydrometer test are given by ASTM (1980), Designation D 422, and AASHTO (1978) Standard Method T 88. The U.S.B.R. (1974) and U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (1970) also have similar standardized procedures for this test.

The distribution of the percentage of the total sample less than a certain sieve size or computed grain diameter can be plotted in either a histogram or, more commonly, in a cumulative frequency diagram. The equivalent grain sizes are plotted to a logarithmic scale on the abscissa, whereas the percentage by weight (or mass) of the total sample either passing (finer than) or retained (coarser than) is plotted arithmetically on the ordinate (Fig. 2.4). Note that this figure could just as well be plotted with the smaller grain sizes going towards the right. Some typical grain size distributions are shown in Fig. 2.4. The *well-graded* soil has a good representation of particle sizes over a wide range, and its gradation curve is smooth and generally concave upward. On the other hand, a *poorly graded* soil would be one where there is either an excess or deficiency of certain sizes or if most of the particles are about the same size. The *uniform* gradation shown in Fig. 2.4 is an example of a poorly graded soil. The *gap-graded* or *skip-graded* soil in that figure is also poorly graded; in this case, the proportion of grain sizes between 0.5 and 0.1 mm is relatively low.

We could, of course, obtain the usual statistical parameters (mean, median, standard deviation, etc.) for the grain size distributions, but this is more commonly done in sedimentary petrology than in soil mechanics. Of course the *range* of particle diameters found in the sample is of interest. Besides that, we use certain grain diameters  $D$  which correspond to an equivalent "percent passing" on the grain size distribution curve. For example,  $D_{10}$  is the grain size that corresponds to 10% of the sample passing by weight. In other words, 10% of the particles are smaller than the diameter  $D_{10}$ . This parameter locates the grain size distribution curve (GSD) along the grain size axis, and it is sometimes called the *effective size*. The *coefficient of uniformity*  $C_u$  is a crude shape parameter, and it is defined as

$$C_u = \frac{D_{60}}{D_{10}} \quad (2-19)$$

where  $D_{60}$  = grain diameter (in mm) corresponding to 60% passing, and  $D_{10}$  = grain diameter (in mm) corresponding to 10% passing, by weight (or mass).

Actually, the uniformity coefficient is misnamed since the smaller the number, the more *uniform* the gradation. So it is really a coefficient of

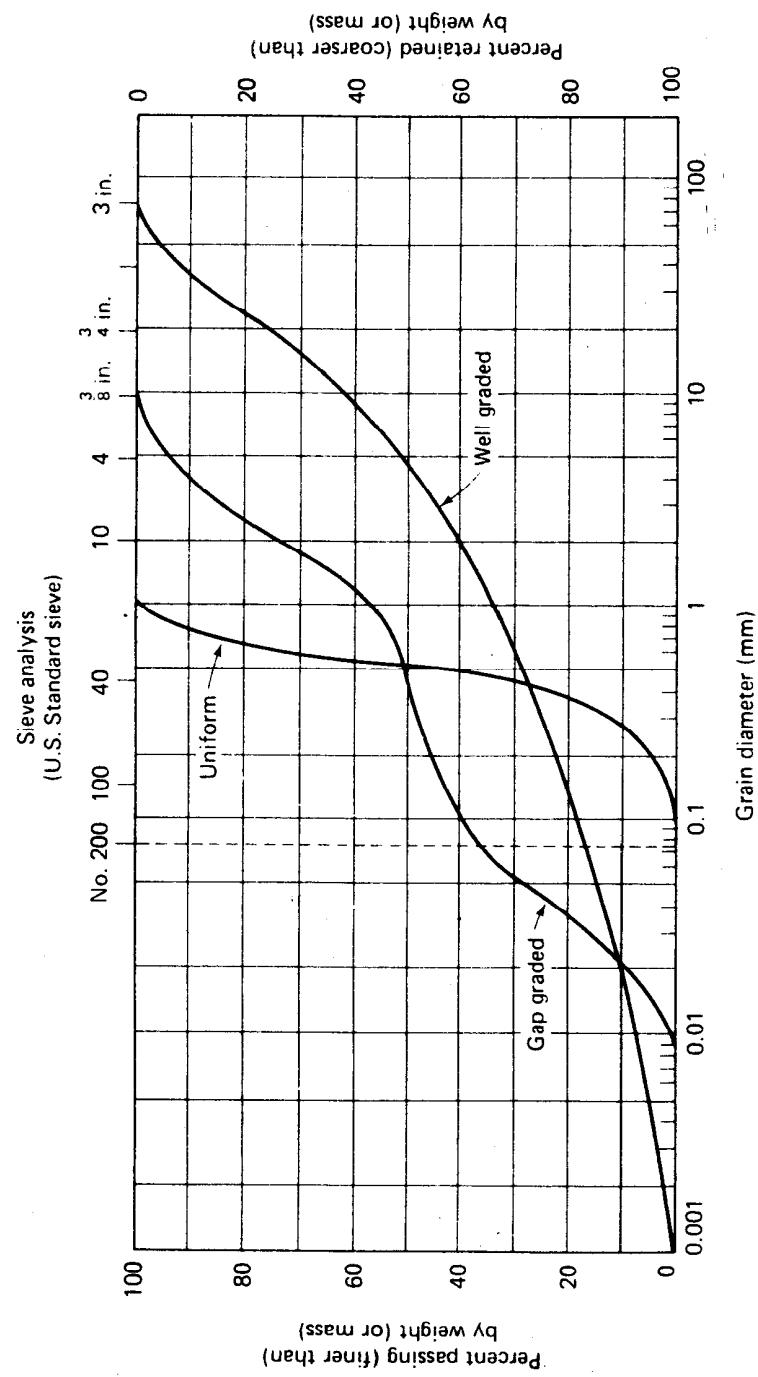


Fig. 2.4 Typical grain size distributions.

"disuniformity." For example, a  $C_u = 1$  would be a soil with only one grain size. Very poorly graded soils, for example, beach sands, have  $C_u$ 's of 2 or 3, whereas very well-graded soils may have a  $C_u$  of 15 or greater. Occasionally, the  $C_u$  can range up to 1000 or so. As an example, the clay core material for Oroville Dam in California has a  $C_u$  of between 400 and 500; the sizes range from large boulders down to very fine-grained clay particles.

Another shape parameter that is sometimes used for soil classification is the *coefficient of curvature* defined as

$$C_c = \frac{(D_{30})^2}{(D_{10})(D_{60})} \quad (2-20)$$

where  $D_{30}$  = grain diameter (in mm) corresponding to 30% passing by weight (or mass). The other terms were defined previously.

A soil with a coefficient of curvature between 1 and 3 is considered to be well graded as long as the  $C_u$  is also greater than 4 for gravels and 6 for sands.

---

### EXAMPLE 2.7

**Given:**

The grain size distribution shown in Fig. 2.4.

**Required:**

Determine  $D_{10}$ ,  $C_u$ , and  $C_c$  for each distribution.

**Solution:**

For Eqs. 2-19 and 2-20 we need  $D_{10}$ ,  $D_{30}$ , and  $D_{60}$  for each gradation curve in Fig. 2.4.

- a. Well-graded soil; simply pick off the diameters corresponding to 10%, 30%, and 60% passing.

$$D_{10} = 0.02 \text{ mm}, \quad D_{30} = 0.6 \text{ mm}, \quad D_{60} = 9 \text{ mm}$$

From Eq. 2-19,

$$C_u = \frac{D_{60}}{D_{10}} = \frac{9}{0.02} = 450$$

From Eq. 2-20,

$$C_c = \frac{(D_{30})^2}{(D_{10})(D_{60})} = \frac{(0.6)^2}{(0.02)(9)} = 2$$

Since  $C_u > 15$  and  $C_c$  is between 1 and 3, this soil is indeed well graded.

b. Gap-graded soil; use same procedure as in (a):

$$D_{10} = 0.022, \quad D_{30} = 0.052, \quad D_{60} = 1.2$$

From Eq. 2-19,

$$C_u = \frac{D_{60}}{D_{10}} = \frac{1.2}{0.022} = 55$$

From Eq. 2-20,

$$C_c = \frac{(D_{30})^2}{(D_{10})(D_{60})} = \frac{(0.052)^2}{(0.022)(1.2)} = 0.1$$

Even though by the uniformity coefficient criterion, this soil is well graded, it fails the coefficient of curvature criterion. Therefore it is indeed poorly graded.

c. Uniform soil; use same procedure as in (a):

$$D_{10} = 0.3, \quad D_{30} = 0.43, \quad D_{60} = 0.55$$

From Eq. 2-19,

$$C_u = \frac{D_{60}}{D_{10}} = \frac{0.55}{0.3} = 1.8$$

$$C_c = \frac{(D_{30})^2}{(D_{10})(D_{60})} = \frac{(0.43)^2}{(0.3)(0.55)} = 1.12$$

This soil is still poorly graded even though the  $C_c$  is slightly greater than unity; the  $C_u$  is very small.

## 2.6 PARTICLE SHAPE

The shape of the individual particles is at least as important as the grain size distribution in affecting the engineering response of granular soils. It is possible to quantify shape according to rules developed by sedimentary petrologists, but for geotechnical engineering purposes such

refinements are rarely warranted. Only a qualitative shape determination is usually made as part of the visual classification of soils. Coarse-grained soils are commonly classified according to the shapes shown in Fig. 2.5.

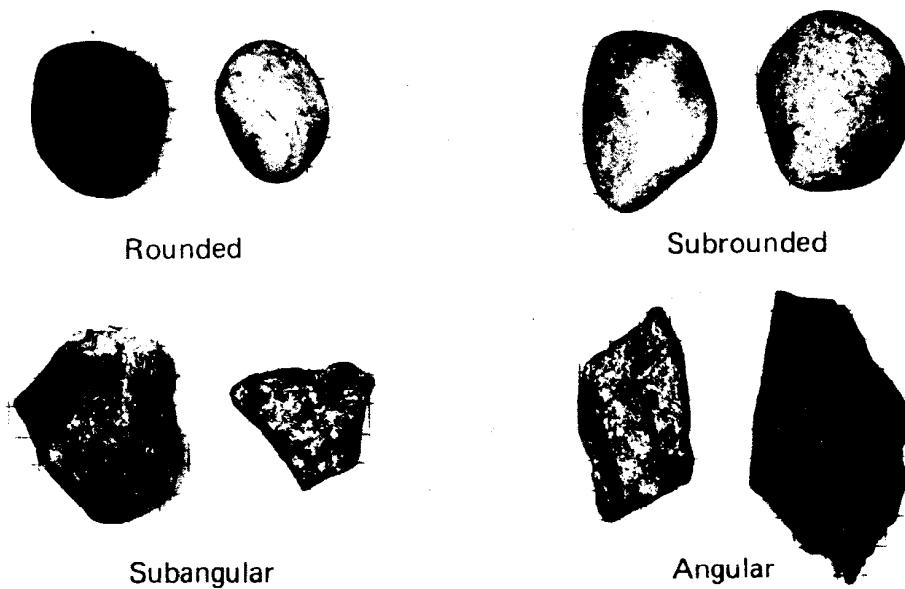


Fig. 2.5 Typical shapes of coarse-grained bulky particles. (Photograph by M. Surendra.)

A distinction can also be made between particles that are *bulky* and those which are *needlelike* or *flaky*. Mica flakes are an excellent example of the latter, and Ottawa sand is an example of the former. Cylinders of each differ drastically in behavior when compressed by a piston. The bulky grains hardly compress at all, even when in a very loose state, but the mica flakes will compress, even under small pressures, up to about one-half of their original volume. When we discuss the shear strength of sands, you will learn that grain shape is very significant in determining the frictional characteristics of granular soils.

## 2.7 ATTERBERG LIMITS AND CONSISTENCY INDICES

We mentioned (Table 2-2) that the presence of water in the voids of a soil can especially affect the engineering behavior of fine-grained soils. Not only is it important to know how much water is present in, for example, a natural soil deposit (the water content), but we need to compare or scale this water content against some standard of engineering behavior. This is what the Atterberg limits do—they are important limits of engineering behavior. If we know where the water content of our sample is relative to the Atterberg limits, then we already know a great deal about the engineering response of our sample. The Atterberg limits, then, are water contents at certain limiting or critical stages in soil behavior. They, along with the natural water content, are the most important items in the description of fine-grained soils. They are used in classification of such soils, and they are useful because they correlate with the engineering properties and engineering behavior of fine-grained soils.

The Atterberg limits were developed in the early 1900's by a Swedish soil scientist, A. Atterberg (1911). He was working in the ceramics industry, and at that time they had several simple tests to describe the plasticity of a clay, which was important both in molding clay into bricks, for example, and to avoid shrinkage and cracking when fired. After many experiments, Atterberg came to the realization that at least two parameters were required to define plasticity of clays—the upper and lower limits of plasticity. In fact, he was able to define several limits of consistency or behavior and he developed simple laboratory tests to define these limits. They are:

1. Upper limit of viscous flow.
2. Liquid limit—lower limit of viscous flow.
3. Sticky limit—clay loses its adhesion to a metal blade.
4. Cohesion limit—grains cease to cohere to each other.
5. Plastic limit—lower limit of the plastic state.
6. Shrinkage limit—lower limit of volume change.

He also defined the *plasticity index*, which is range of water content where the soil is plastic, and he was the first to suggest that it could be used for soil classification. Later on, in the late 1920's K. Terzaghi and A. Casagrande (1932b), working for the U.S. Bureau of Public Roads, standardized the Atterberg limits so that they could be readily used for soils classification purposes. In present geotechnical engineering practice we usually use the liquid limit (LL or  $w_L$ ), the plastic limit (PL or  $w_P$ ), and sometimes the shrinkage limit (SL or  $w_S$ ). The sticky and the cohesion limits are more useful in ceramics and agriculture.

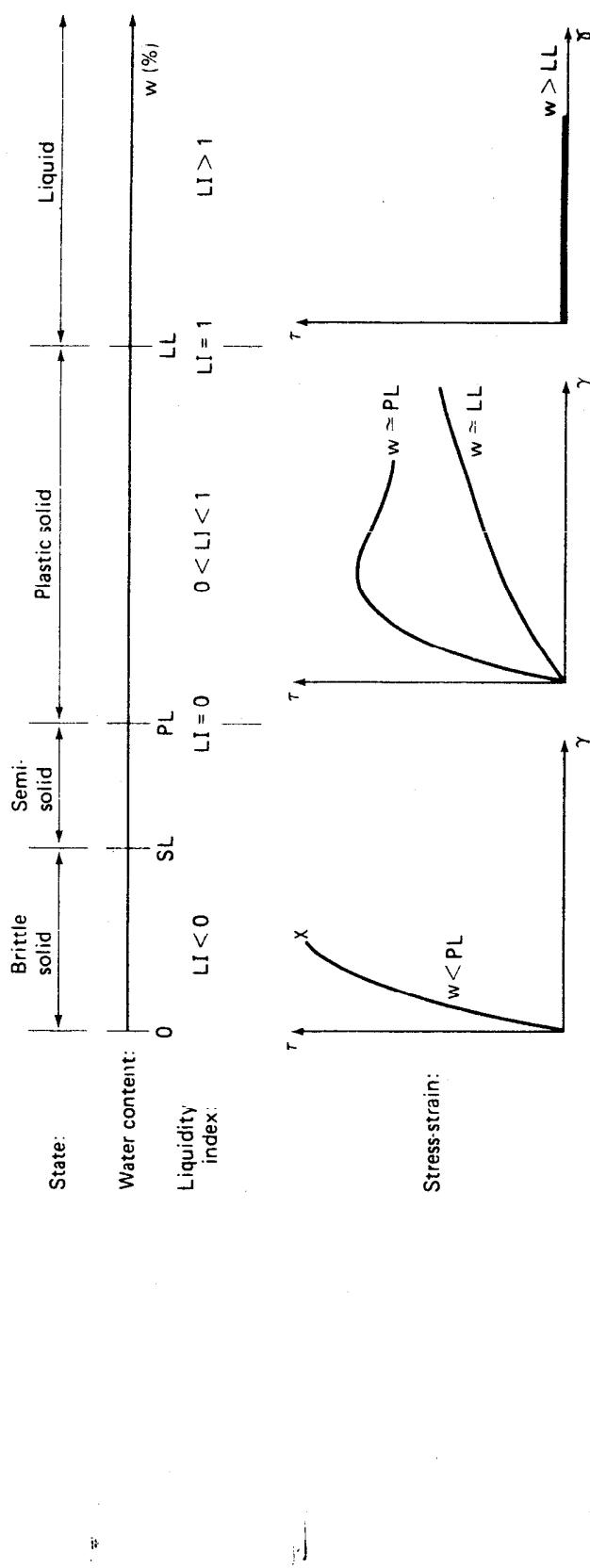


Fig. 2.6 Water content continuum showing the various states of a soil as well as the generalized stress-strain response.

Since the Atterberg limits are *water contents* where the soil behavior changes, we can show these limits on a water content continuum as in Fig. 2.6. Also shown are the types of soil behavior for the given ranges of water contents. As the water content increases, the state of the soil changes from a brittle solid to a plastic solid and then to a viscous liquid. We can also show on the same water content continuum the generalized material response (stress-strain curves) corresponding to those states.

You may recall the curves shown in Fig. 2.7 from fluid mechanics, where the shear velocity gradient is plotted versus the shear stress. Depending on the water content, it is possible for soils to have a response represented by all of those curves (except possibly the ideal Newtonian liquid). Note, too, how different this response is from the stress-strain behavior of other engineering materials such as steel, concrete, or wood.

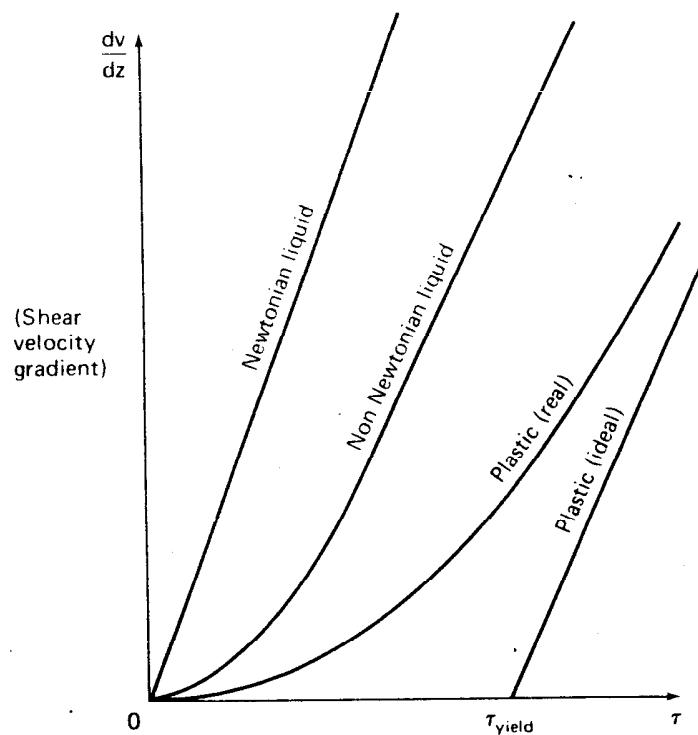
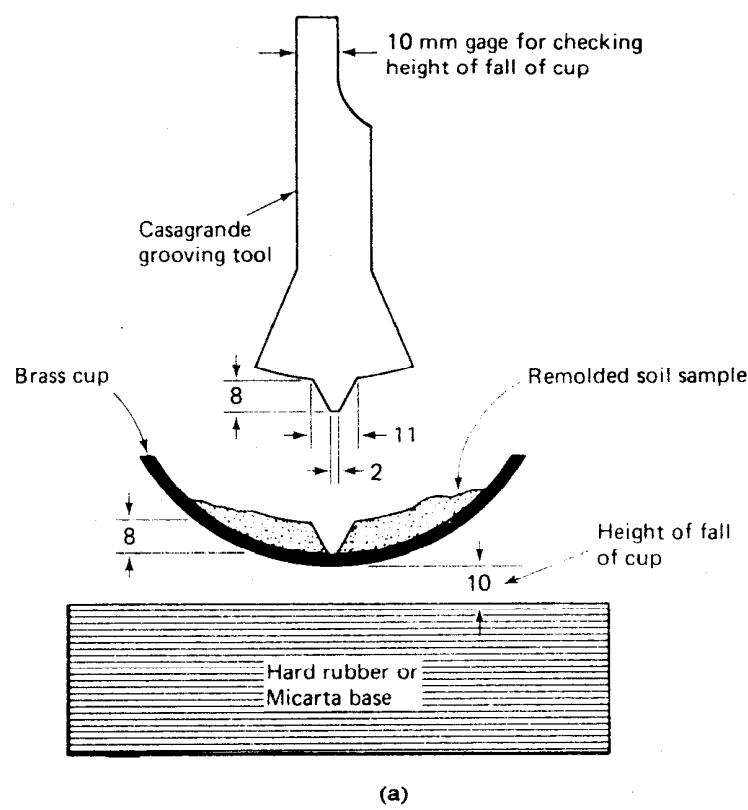


Fig. 2.7 Behavior of several materials including soils over a range of water contents.

Atterberg's original consistency limit tests were rather arbitrary and not easily reproducible, especially by inexperienced operators. As mentioned, Casagrande (1932b, 1958) worked to standardize the tests, and he developed the liquid limit device (Fig. 2.8) so that the test became more



(a)

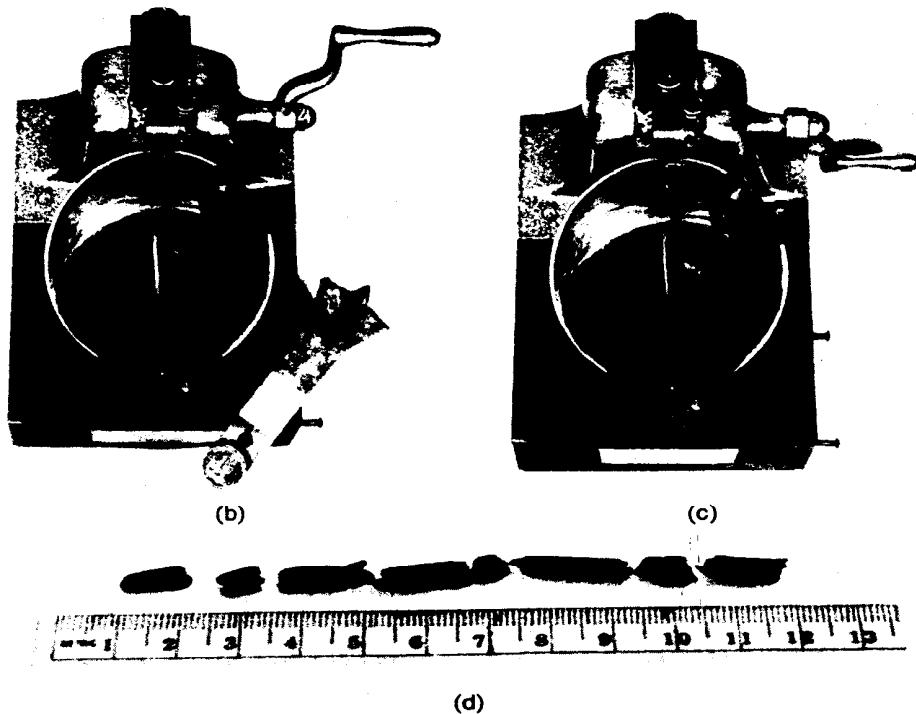


Fig. 2.8 (a) Schematic diagram of the Casagrande liquid limit device and grooving tool; dimensions in millimetres. (b) Cut groove prior to turning the crank. (c) After turning the crank to apply sufficient blows of the cup to close the groove 13 mm. (d) Plastic limit threads. Parts (a) through (c) after Hansbo (1975). (Photographs by M. Surendra.)

operator-independent. He defined the LL as that water content at which a standard groove cut in the remolded soil sample by a grooving tool (Figs. 2.8a, b) will close over a distance of 13 mm ( $\frac{1}{2}$  in.) at 25 blows of the LL cup falling 10 mm on a hard rubber or micarta plastic base (Fig. 2.8c). In practice, it is difficult to mix the soil so that the groove closure occurs at exactly 25 blows, but Casagrande found that if you plot the water contents of tests where you get closure at other blow counts versus the logarithm of the number of blows, you get a straight line called the *flow curve*. Where the flow curve crosses 25 blows, that water content is defined as the liquid limit.

The plastic limit test is somewhat more arbitrary, and it requires some practice to get consistent and reproducible results. The PL is defined as the water content at which a thread of soil *just* crumbles when it is carefully rolled out to a diameter of 3 mm ( $\frac{1}{8}$  in.). It should break up into segments about 3 to 10 mm ( $\frac{1}{8}$  in. to  $\frac{3}{8}$  in.) long. If the threads can be rolled to a smaller diameter, then the soil is too wet (above the PL); if it crumbles before you reach 3 mm ( $\frac{1}{8}$  in.) in diameter, then you are past the PL. Properly rolled out PL threads should look like those shown in Fig. 2.8d.

Even though the liquid limit and plastic limit tests appear simple, both tests do take some practice to get consistent results. In Sweden, the fall-cone test is used to determine the liquid limit (Hansbo, 1957). It seems to give more consistent results than the Casagrande device, especially for Swedish clays, and it is somewhat simpler and faster to use. Karlsson (1977) presents an excellent discussion of the reliability of both procedures.

Sometimes a *one-point liquid limit* test can be used because, for soils of similar geologic origin, the slopes of the flow curves are similar. Then all you have to do is obtain the water content  $w_n$  of the sample with closure of the groove at any blow count  $n$ , and use the following relationship

$$LL = w_n \left( \frac{n}{25} \right)^{\tan \beta} \quad (2-21)$$

where  $\tan \beta$  is the slope of the flow curve. For best results the blow count  $n$  should be between about 10 and 40. Lambe (1951), U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (1970), and Karlsson (1977) provide good discussions of the one-point liquid limit test.

You may have noticed that we have not mentioned the ASTM procedures for the Atterberg limits tests. We do not recommend the ASTM procedures because, for one thing, they require that the limits be conducted on air-dried specimens. For some soils, such a procedure will give very different results than if the limits are conducted at the natural water content (Karlsson, 1977). The other problem with ASTM is the grooving tool for the liquid limit test. It does not allow for any control of the height

of the groove, and therefore it will give inconsistent results. For this reason, we recommend the Casagrande grooving tool (Fig. 2.8) be used.

The range of liquid limits can be from zero to 1000, but most soils have LL's less than 100. The plastic limit can range from zero to 100 or more, with most being less than 40. Even though the Atterberg limits are really water contents, they are also boundaries between different engineering behaviors, and Casagrande (1948) recommends that the values be reported *without* the percent sign. They are *numbers* to be used to classify fine-grained soils, and they *index* soil behavior. You will, however, see the limits reported both ways and using both symbols: LL and PL, and  $w_L$  and  $w_p$  with a percent sign.

The other Atterberg limit sometimes used in geotechnical engineering practice, the shrinkage limit, is discussed in some detail in Chapter 6.

We mentioned earlier that Atterberg also defined an index called the *plasticity index* to describe the range of water content over which a soil was plastic. The plasticity index, PI or  $I_p$ , therefore is numerically equal to the difference between the LL and the PL, or

$$\text{PI} = \text{LL} - \text{PL} \quad (2-22)$$

The PI is useful in engineering classification of fine-grained soils, and many engineering properties have been found to empirically correlate with the PI.

When we first started the discussion on the Atterberg limits, we said that we wanted to be able to compare or scale our water content with some defined limits or boundaries or engineering response. In this way, we would know if our sample was likely to behave as a plastic, a brittle solid, or even possibly a liquid. The index for scaling the natural water content of a soil sample is the liquidity index, LI or  $I_L$ , is defined as

$$\text{LI} = \frac{w_n - \text{PL}}{\text{PI}} \quad (2-23)$$

where  $w_n$  is the natural water content of the sample in question. If the LI is less than zero then, from the water content continuum of Fig. 2.6, you would know that the soil will have a brittle fracture if sheared. If the LI is between zero and one, then the soil will behave like a plastic. If LI is greater than one, the soil will be essentially a very viscous liquid when sheared. Such soils can be extremely sensitive to breakdown of the soil structure. As long as they are not disturbed in any way, they can be relatively strong, but if for some reason they are sheared and the structure of the soil breaks down, then they literally can flow like a liquid. There are deposits of *ultra sensitive* (quick) clays in Eastern Canada and Scandinavia. Figure 2.9 shows a sample of Leda clay from Ottawa, Ontario, in both the

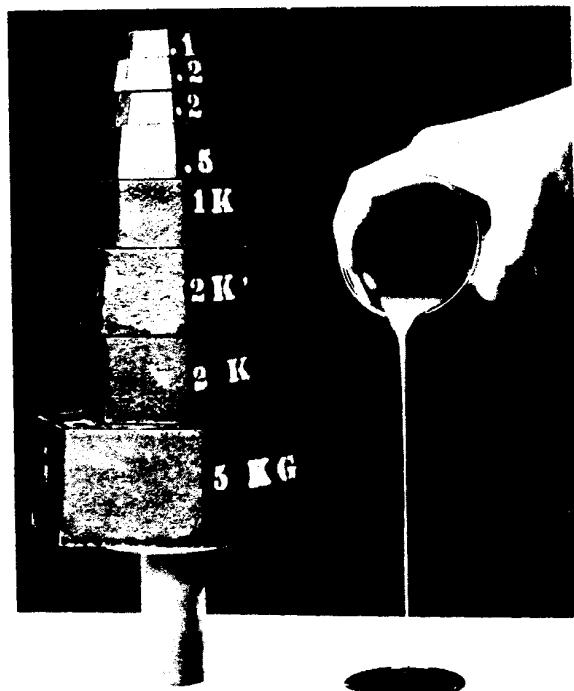


Fig. 2.9 (a) Undisturbed and (b) thoroughly remolded sample of Leda clay from Ottawa, Ontario. (Photograph courtesy of the Division of Building Research, National Research Council of Canada. Hand by D. C. MacMillan.)

undisturbed and remolded states at the same water content. The undisturbed sample can carry a vertical stress of more than 100 kPa; when thoroughly remolded, it behaves like a liquid.

It wasn't emphasized previously, but the limits are conducted on thoroughly *remolded* soils, and when we discuss the structure of clays in Chapter 4, we will see that the natural structure of a soil very strongly governs its engineering behavior. So then how come the Atterberg limits work? They work empirically; that is, they correlate with engineering properties and behavior because *both the Atterberg limits and the engineering properties are affected by the same things*. Some of these "things" include the clay minerals, the ions in the pore water, the stress history of the soil deposit, etc. And these factors are discussed in detail in the chapter on soil structure (Chapter 4). For now, just accept that these very simple, arbitrary, and empirical Atterberg limits are most useful in classifying soils for engineering purposes and that they correlate quite well with the engineering behavior of soils.

## 2.8 ACTIVITY

In 1953, Skempton defined the *activity A* of a clay as

$$A = \frac{PI}{\text{clay fraction}} \quad (2-24)$$

where the clay fraction is usually taken as the percentage by weight of the soil less than 2  $\mu\text{m}$ . Clays which have an activity around 1 ( $0.75 < A < 1.25$ ) are classified as "normal";  $A < 0.75$  are inactive clays and  $A > 1.25$  are active clays. Activity has been useful for certain classification and engineering property correlations, especially for inactive and active clays. Also, there is fair/good correlation of the activity and the type of clay mineral (Chapter 4). However, the Atterberg limits alone are usually sufficient for these purposes, and the activity provides no really new information.

## PROBLEMS

- 2-1. A water content test was made on a sample of silty clay. The weight of the wet soil plus container was 17.53 g, and the weight of the dry soil plus container was 14.84 g. Weight of the empty container was 7.84 g. Calculate the water content of the sample.
- 2-2. During a plastic limit test, the following data were obtained for one of the samples:  
Wet weight + container = 22.12 g  
Dry weight + container = 20.42 g  
Weight of container = 1.50 g

What is the PL of the soil?

- 2-3. A sample of fully saturated clay weighs 1350 g in its natural state and 975 g after drying. What is the natural water content of the soil?
- 2-4. For the soil sample of Problem 2-3, compute (a) void ratio and (b) porosity.
- 2-5. For the soil sample of Problem 2-3, compute (a) the total or wet density and (b) the dry density. Give your answers in  $\text{Mg/m}^3$ ,  $\text{kg/m}^3$ , and  $\text{lbf/ft}^3$ .

- 2-6. A 1 m<sup>3</sup> sample of moist soil weighs 2000 kg. The water content is 10%. Assume  $\rho_s$  is 2.70 Mg/m<sup>3</sup>. With this information, fill in all blanks in the phase diagram of Fig. P2-6.

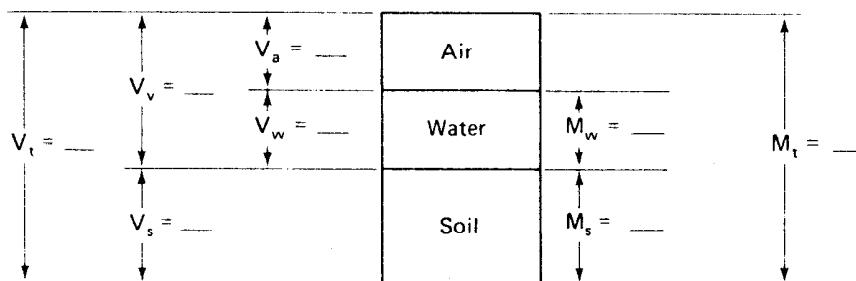


Fig. P2-6

- 2-7. For the information given in Problem 2-6, calculate (a) the void ratio, (b) the porosity, and (c) the dry density.
- 2-8. The dry density of a compacted sand is 1.82 Mg/m<sup>3</sup> and density of the solids is 2.67 Mg/m<sup>3</sup>. What is the water content of the material when saturated?
- 2-9. A 100% saturated soil has a total density of 2050 kg/m<sup>3</sup> and a water content of 25%. What is the density of the solids? What is the dry density of the soil?
- 2-10. What is the water content of a fully saturated soil with a dry density of 1.70 Mg/m<sup>3</sup>? Assume  $\rho_s = 2.71 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ .
- 2-11. A dry quartz sand has a density of 1.68 Mg/m<sup>3</sup>. Determine its density when the degree of saturation is 75%. The density of solids for quartz is 2.65 Mg/m<sup>3</sup>.
- 2-12. The dry density of a soil is 1.65 Mg/m<sup>3</sup> and the solids have a density of 2.68 Mg/m<sup>3</sup>. Find the (a) water content, (b) void ratio, and (c) total density when the soil is saturated.
- 2-13. A natural deposit of soil was found to have a water content of 20% and to be 90% saturated. What is the void ratio of this soil?
- 2-14. The void ratio of clay soil is 0.5 and the degree of saturation is 70%. Assuming the density of the solids is 2750 kg/m<sup>3</sup>, compute (a) the water content and (b) dry and wet densities in both SI and British Engineering units.
- 2-15. The volume of water in a sample of moist soil is 0.056 m<sup>3</sup>. The volume of solids  $V_s$  is 0.28 m<sup>3</sup>. Given that the density of soil solids  $\rho_s$  is 2590 kg/m<sup>3</sup>, find the water content.

- 2-16. Verify from first principles that:

$$(a) \rho = \rho_s \left( \frac{1+w}{1+e} \right) = \frac{\rho_s + \rho_w Se}{1+e}$$

$$(b) \rho = \rho_d(1+w)$$

$$(c) w \frac{\rho_s}{\rho_w} = Se$$

$$(d) e = \frac{n}{1-n}$$

$$(e) n = \frac{e}{1+e}$$

- 2-17. Derive an expression for  $\rho_s$  in terms of the porosity  $n$  and the water content  $w$  for (a) a fully saturated soil and (b) a partially saturated soil.
- 2-18. Derive an expression for (a) dry density, (b) void ratio, and (c) degree of saturation in terms of  $\rho$ ,  $\rho_s$ ,  $\rho_w$ , and  $w$ .
- 2-19. Develop a formula for (a) the wet density and (b) the buoyant density in terms of the water content, the density of the soil solids, and the density of water.
- 2-20. From Archimedes' principle show that Eq. 2-11,  $\rho' = \rho_{sat} - \rho_w$ , is the same as  $(\rho_s - \rho_w)/(1+e)$ .
- 2-21. The "chunk density" method is often used to determine the unit weight (and other necessary information) of a specimen of irregular shape, especially of friable samples. The specimen at its natural water content is (1) weighed, (2) painted with a thin coat of wax or paraffin (to prevent water from entering the pores), (3) weighed again ( $W_i + W_{wax}$ ), and (4) weighed in water (to get the volume of the sample + wax coating—remember Archimedes?). Finally, the natural water content of the specimen is determined. A specimen of silty sand is treated in this way to obtain the "chunk density." From the information given below, determine the (a) wet density, (b) dry density, (c) void ratio, and (d) degree of saturation of the sample.  
 Given: Weight of specimen at natural water content = 181.8 g  
 Weight of specimen + wax coating = 215.9  
 Weight of specimen + wax in water = 58.9  
 Natural water content = 2.5%  
 Soil solid density,  $\rho$ , = 2700 kg/m<sup>3</sup>  
 Wax solid density,  $\rho_{wax}$  = 940 kg/m<sup>3</sup>
- Hint: Use a phase diagram.
- 2-22. The total volume of a soil specimen is 80 000 mm<sup>3</sup> and it weighs 145 g. The dry weight of the specimen is 128 g, and the density of the soil solids is 2.68 Mg/m<sup>3</sup>. Find the (a) water content, (b) void ratio, (c) porosity, (d) degree of saturation, (e) wet density, and (f) dry density. Give the answers to parts (e) and (f) in both SI and British Engineering units.

- 2-23. The values of minimum  $e$  and maximum  $e$  for a pure silica sand were found to be 0.46 and 0.66, respectively. What is the corresponding range in the saturated density in  $\text{kg}/\text{m}^3$ ?

2-24. A  $588 \text{ cm}^3$  volume of moist sand weighs 1010 g. Its dry weight is 918 g and the density of solids is  $2670 \text{ kg}/\text{m}^3$ . Compute the void ratio, the porosity, water content, degree of saturation, and the total density in  $\text{kg}/\text{m}^3$ .

2-25. A sample of saturated glacial clay has a water content of 47%. On the assumption that  $\rho_s = 2.70 \text{ Mg}/\text{m}^3$ , compute the void ratio, porosity, and saturated density.

2-26. A sensitive volcanic clay soil was tested in the laboratory and found to have the following properties:

(a) $\rho = 1.28 \text{ Mg}/\text{m}^3$	(b) $e = 9.0$	(c) $S = 95\%$
(d) $\rho_s = 2.75 \text{ Mg}/\text{m}^3$	(e) $w = 311\%$	

In rechecking the above values one was found to be inconsistent with the rest. Find the inconsistent value and report it correctly.

2-27. The saturated density  $\gamma_{\text{sat}}$  of a soil is  $135 \text{ lbf}/\text{ft}^3$ . Find the buoyant density of this soil in both  $\text{lbf}/\text{ft}^3$  and  $\text{kg}/\text{m}^3$ .

2-28. A sand is composed of solid constituents having a density of  $2.68 \text{ Mg}/\text{m}^3$ . The void ratio is 0.58. Compute the density of the sand when dry and when saturated and compare it with the density when submerged.

2-29. A sample of natural glacial till was taken from below the ground water table. The water content was found to be 55%. Estimate the wet density, dry density, buoyant density, porosity, and void ratio. Clearly state any necessary assumptions.

2-30. Calculate the maximum possible porosity and void ratio for a collection of (a) ping pong balls (assume they are 30 mm in diameter) and (b) tiny ball bearings 0.3 mm in diameter.

2-31. A cylinder contains  $500 \text{ cm}^3$  of loose dry sand which weighs 750 g, and under a static load of 200 kPa the volume is reduced 1%, and then by vibration it is reduced 10% of the original volume. Assume the solid density of the sand grains is  $2.65 \text{ Mg}/\text{m}^3$ . Compute the void ratio, porosity, dry density, and total density corresponding to each of the following cases:

(a) Loose sand.	(b) Under static load.
(c) Vibrated and loaded sand.	

- 2-32. The natural water content of a sample taken from a soil deposit was found to be 11.5%. It has been calculated that the maximum density for the soil will be obtained when the water content reaches 21.5%. Compute how many grams of water must be added to each 1000 g of soil (in its natural state) in order to increase the water content to 21.5%.
- 2-33. On five-cycle semilogarithmic paper, plot the grain size distribution curves from the following mechanical analysis data on the six soils, A through F. Determine the effective size as well as the uniformity coefficient and the coefficient of curvature for each soil. Determine also the percentages of gravel, sand, silt, and clay according to (a) ASTM, (b) AASHTO, (c) USCS, and (d) the British Standard.

U.S Standard Sieve No. or Particle Size	Percent Passing by Weight					
	Soil A	Soil B	Soil C	Soil D	Soil E	Soil F
75 mm (3 in.)	100		100			
38 ( $1\frac{1}{2}$ )	70		—			
19 ( $\frac{3}{4}$ )	49	100	91			
9.5 ( $\frac{3}{8}$ )	36	—	87			
No. 4	27	88	81		100	
No. 10	20	82	70	100	89	
No. 20	—	80	—	99	—	
No. 40	8	78	49	91	63	
No. 60	—	74	—	37	—	
No. 100	5	—	—	9	—	
No. 140	—	65	35	4	60	
No. 200	4	55	32	—	57	100
40 $\mu\text{m}$	3	31	27	41	99	
20 $\mu\text{m}$	2	19	22	35	92	
10 $\mu\text{m}$	1	13	18	20	82	
5 $\mu\text{m}$	< 1	10	14	8	71	
2 $\mu\text{m}$	—	—	11	—	52	
1 $\mu\text{m}$	—	2	10	—	39	

Note: Missing data is indicated by a dash in the column.

- 2-34. (a) Explain briefly why it is preferable, in plotting GSD curves, to plot the grain diameter on a logarithmic rather than an arithmetic scale.  
 (b) Are the shapes of GSD curves comparable (for example, do they have the same  $C_u$  and  $C_c$ ) when plotted arithmetically? Explain.

- 2-35. The soils in Problem 2-33 have the following Atterberg limits and natural water contents. Determine the PI and LI for each soil and comment on their general activity.

Property	Soil A	Soil B	Soil C	Soil D	Soil E	Soil F
$w_n, \%$	27	14	14	11	8	72
LL	13	35	35	—	28	60
PL	8	29	18	NP	NP	28

- 2-36. Comment on the validity of the results of Atterberg limits on soils G and H.

	Soil G	Soil H
LL	55	38
PL	20	42
SL	25	—

- 2-37. The following data were obtained from a liquid limit test on a silty clay.

No. of Blows	Water Content, %
35	41.1
29	41.8
21	43.5
15	44.9

Two plastic limit determinations had water contents of 23.1 and 23.6%. Determine the LL, PI, the flow index, and the toughness index. The flow index is the slope of the water content versus log of number of blows in the liquid limit test, and the toughness index is the PI divided by the flow index.

## **three**

# **Soil Classification**

---

### **3.1 INTRODUCTION**

From the discussion in Chapter 2 on soil texture and grain size distributions, you should have at least a general idea about how soils are classified. For example, in Sec. 2.4 we described sands and gravels as coarse-grained soils, whereas silts and clays were fine grained. In Sec. 2.5, we showed the specific size ranges on a grain size scale (Fig. 2.3) for these soils according to the standards of ASTM, AASHTO, etc. Usually, however, general terms such as sand or clay include such a wide range of engineering characteristics that additional subdivisions or modifiers are required to make the terms more useful in engineering practice. These terms are collected into *soil classification systems*, usually with some specific engineering purpose in mind.

A soil classification system represents, in effect, a language of communication between engineers. It provides a systematic method of categorizing soils according to their probable engineering behavior, and allows engineers access to the accumulated experience of other engineers. A classification system does not eliminate the need for detailed soils investigations or for testing for engineering properties. However, the engineering properties have been found to correlate quite well with the index and classification properties of a given soil deposit. Thus, by knowing the soil classification, the engineer already has a fairly good general idea of the way the soil will behave in the engineering situation, during construction, under structural loads, etc. Figure 3.1 illustrates the role of the classification system in geotechnical engineering practice.

Many soil classification systems have been proposed during the past 50 years or so. As Casagrande (1948) pointed out, most systems used in

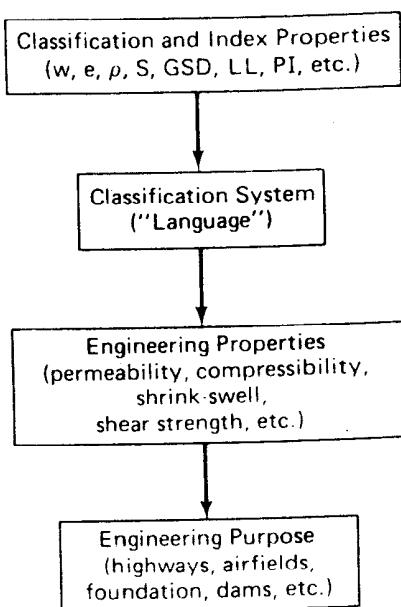


Fig. 3.1 Role of classification system in geotechnical engineering practice.

civil engineering had their roots in agricultural soil science. This is why the first systems used by civil engineers classified soil by grain size or soil texture. Atterberg (1905) apparently was the first to suggest that something other than grain size could be used for soil classification. To this end, in 1911 he developed his consistency limits for the behavior of fine-grained soils (Sec. 2.7), although at that time for agricultural purposes. Later the U.S. Bureau of Public Roads based the classification of fine-grained soils almost entirely on the Atterberg limits and other simple tests. Casagrande (1948) describes several other systems that have been used in highway engineering, airfield construction, agriculture, geology, and soil science.

Today, only the Unified Soil Classification System (USCS) and the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) system are commonly used in civil engineering practice. The Unified Soil Classification System is used mostly by engineering agencies of the U.S. Government (U.S. Army Corps of Engineers and U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation) and many geotechnical engineering consulting firms and soil testing laboratories. With slight modification this system is also in fairly common use in Great Britain and elsewhere outside the United States. Nearly all of the state Departments of Transportation and Highways in the United States use the AASHTO system, which is based upon the observed behavior of soils

under highway pavements. The Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) of the U.S. Department of Transportation had its own soil classification system for the design of airport pavements, but it now uses the Unified Soil Classification System.

Once you become familiar with the details, both the USCS and AASHTO systems are easy to use in engineering practice.

### 3.2 THE UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM (USCS)

This system was originally developed by Professor A. Casagrande (1948) for use in airfield construction during World War II. It was modified in 1952 by Professor Casagrande, the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, and the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers to make the system also applicable to dams, foundations, and other construction (U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, 1960). The basis for the USCS is that coarse-grained soils can be classified according to their grain size distributions, whereas the engineering behavior of fine-grained soils is primarily related to their plasticity. In other words, soils in which "fines" (silts and clays) do not affect the engineering performance are classified according to their grain size characteristics, and soils in which fines do control the engineering behavior are classified according to their plasticity characteristics. Therefore, only a sieve analysis and the Atterberg limits are necessary to completely classify a soil in this system.

The four major divisions in the USCS are indicated in Table 3-1. They are (1) *coarse-grained*, (2) *fine-grained*, (3) *organic soils*, and (4) *peat*. Classification is performed on the material passing the 75 mm sieve, and the amount of "oversize" material is noted on the drill logs or data sheets. Particles greater than 300 mm equivalent diameter are termed *boulders*, while materials between 75 mm and 300 mm are called *cobbles*. Coarse-grained soils, sands, and gravels are those having 50% or more material retained on the No. 200 sieve. These fractions have been arbitrarily but conveniently subdivided as shown in Table 3-1. Fine-grained soils are those having more than 50% passing the No. 200 sieve. The highly organic soils and peat can generally be identified visually.

The symbols in Table 3-1 are combined to form soil group symbols which correspond to the names of typical soils as shown in Table 3-2.

The coarse-grained soils are subdivided into gravels and gravelly soils (G) and sands and sandy soils (S). The gravels are those having the greater percentage of the coarse fraction (particles larger than 4.75 mm diameter) retained on the No. 4 sieve, and the sands are those having the greater portion passing the No. 4 sieve. Both the gravel (G) and the sand (S)

**TABLE 3-1** USCS Definitions of Particle Size, Size Ranges, and Symbols

Soil Fraction or Component	Symbol	Size Range
<i>Boulders</i>	None	Greater than 300 mm
<i>Cobbles</i>	None	75 mm to 300 mm
(1) Coarse-grained soils:		
<i>Gravel</i>	G	75 mm to No. 4 sieve (4.75 mm)
Coarse		75 mm to 19 mm
Fine		19 mm to No. 4 sieve (4.75 mm)
<i>Sand</i>	S	No. 4 (4.75 mm) to No. 200 (0.075 mm)
Coarse		No. 4 (4.75 mm) to No. 10 (2.0 mm)
Medium		No. 10 (2.0 mm) to No. 40 (0.425 mm)
Fine		No. 40 (0.425 mm) to No. 200 (0.075 mm)
(2) Fine-grained soils:		
<i>Fines</i>		Less than No. 200 sieve (0.075 mm)
<i>Silt</i>	M	(No specific grain size— use Atterberg limits)
<i>Clay</i>	C	(No specific grain size— use Atterberg limits)
(3) Organic Soils:	O	(No specific grain size)
(4) Peat:	Pt	(No specific grain size)
<i>Gradation Symbols</i>		<i>Liquid Limit Symbols</i>
Well-graded, W		High LL, H
Poorly-graded, P		Low LL, L

groups are divided into four secondary groups, GW and SW, GP and SP, GM and SM, GC and SC, depending on the grain size distribution and nature of fines in the soils. Well-graded (W) soils have a good representation of all particle sizes whereas the poorly graded (P) soils are either uniform or skip- or gap-graded (Fig. 2.4). Whether a gravel or sandy soil is well graded can be determined by plotting the grain size distribution curve and computing the coefficient of uniformity  $C_u$  and the coefficient of curvature  $C_c$ . These coefficients are defined in Chapter 2 as

$$C_u = \frac{D_{60}}{D_{10}} \quad (2-19)$$

and the coefficient of curvature is

$$C_c = \frac{D_{30}^2}{D_{10} \times D_{60}} \quad (2-20)$$

where  $D_{60}$  = grain diameter at 60% passing,

$D_{30}$  = grain diameter at 30% passing, and

$D_{10}$  = grain diameter at 10% passing by weight (or mass).

Gradation criteria for gravelly and sandy soils are shown in Table 3-2 (column 6). The GW and SW groups are well-graded gravelly and sandy soils with less than 5% passing the No. 200 sieve. The GP and SP groups are poorly graded gravels and sands with little or no nonplastic fines.

The fine-grained soils, those having *more* than 50% passing the No. 200 sieve, are subdivided into silts [M for the Swedish terms *mo* (= very fine sand) and *mjäla* (= silt)] and clays (C) based on their liquid limit and plasticity index. Organic soils (O) and peat (Pt) are also included in this fraction although, as shown in Table 3-1, no grain size range is specified. Fine-grained soils are silts (M) if their liquid limits and plasticity indices plot *below* the A-line on Casagrande's (1948) plasticity chart (Fig. 3.2). The fines are clays (C) if the LL and PI plot *above* the A-line. The A-line generally separates the more claylike materials from those that are silty and also the organics from the inorganics. The exception is organic clays (OL and OH) which plot below the A-line. However, these soils do behave similarly to soils of lower plasticity. The silt, clay, and organic fractions are further subdivided on the basis of relatively low (L) or high (H) liquid limits. The dividing line between the low and high liquid limits has been arbitrarily set at 50. Representative soil types for fine-grained soils are also shown in Fig. 3.2. This figure, columns 4 and 5 of Table 3-2, and Table 3-3, will be helpful in the visual identification and classification of fine-grained soils. You can see from Fig. 3.2 that several different soil types tend to plot in approximately the same area on the LL-PI chart, which means that these soils tend to have about the *same engineering behavior*. This is why the Casagrande chart is so useful in the engineering classification of soils. For example, Casagrande (1948) observed the behavior of soils at the same liquid limit with plasticity index as compared with their behavior at the same plasticity index but with an increasing liquid limit, and he obtained the following results:

Characteristic	Soils at Equal LL with Increasing PI	Soils at Equal PI with Increasing LL
Dry strength	Increases	Decreases
Toughness near PL	Increases	Decreases
Permeability	Decreases	Increases
Compressibility	About the same	Increases
Rate of volume change	Decreases	—

Toughness near the PL and dry strength are very useful visual classification properties, and they are defined in Table 3-3. The other characteristics are engineering properties, and they are discussed in great

## Soil Classification

52

**TABLE 3-2 Unified Soil Classification System\***

Major Divisions		Group Symbols (+)	Typical Names	Field Identification Procedures (excluding particles larger than 75 mm and basing fractions on estimated weights)			
1	2	3	4	5			
Fine grained Soils  More than half of material is smaller than No. 200 (175 $\mu\text{m}$ ) sieve size.  The No 200 sieve size is about the smallest particle visible to the naked eye	More than half of coarse fraction is larger than No. 4 sieve size (4.75 mm);  (for visual classification, 5 mm may be used as equivalent to the No. 4 sieve size)	Gravels More than half of coarse fraction is larger than No. 4 sieve size (4.75 mm)	GW Well-graded gravels, gravel sand mixtures, little or no fines	Wide range in grain sizes and substantial amounts of all intermediate particle sizes.			
			GP Poorly graded gravels, gravel sand mixtures, little or no fines.	Predominantly one size or a range of sizes with some intermediate sizes missing.			
		Sands More than half of coarse fraction is smaller than No. 4 sieve size (4.75 mm)	GM Silty gravels, gravel sand-silt mixtures.	Nonplastic fines or fines with low plasticity (for identification procedures see ML below).			
			GC Clayey gravels, gravel sand-clay mixtures	Plastic fines (for identification procedures see CL below)			
			SW Well graded sands, gravelly sands, little or no fines	Wide range in grain sizes and substantial amounts of all intermediate particle sizes			
			SP Poorly graded sands, gravelly sands, little or no fines	Predominantly one size or a range of sizes with some intermediate sizes missing.			
			SM Silty sands, sand silt mixtures	Nonplastic fines or fines with low plasticity (for identification procedures see ML below).			
			SC Clayey sands, sand-clay mixtures	Plastic fines (for identification procedures see CL below).			
		Identification Procedures on Fraction Smaller than No. 40 Sieve Size					
			Dry Strength (crushing characteristics)	Dilatancy (reaction to shaking)	Toughness (consistency near PL)		
Sands and Clays Liquid limit less than 50		ML Inorganic silts and very fine sands, rock flour, silty or clayey fine sands or clayey silts with slight plasticity	None to slight	Quick to slow	None		
Sands and Clays Liquid limit greater than 50		CL Inorganic clays of low to medium plasticity, gravelly clays, sandy clays, silty clays, lean clays.	Medium to high	None to very slow	Medium		
Sands and Clays Liquid limit greater than 50		OL Organic silts and organic silty clays of low plasticity	Slight to medium	Slow	Slight		
Sands and Clays Liquid limit greater than 50		MH Inorganic silts, micaceous or diatomaceous fine sandy or silty soils, elastic silts.	Slight to medium	Slow to none	Slight to medium		
Sands and Clays Liquid limit greater than 50		CH Inorganic clays of high plasticity, fat clays	High to very high	None	High		
Sands and Clays Liquid limit greater than 50		OH Organic clays of medium to high plasticity, organic silts	Medium to high	None to very slow	Slight to medium		
Highly Organic Soils		Pt Peat and other highly organic soils.	Readily identified by color, odor, spongy feel, and frequently by fibrous texture.				

\* Boundary classifications soils possessing characteristics of two groups are designated by combinations of group symbols. For example GW-GC well-graded gravel sand mixture with clay binder

† All sieve sizes on this chart are U.S. Standard

After U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station (1960) and Howard (1977).

TABLE 3-2 Continued

Laboratory Classification Criteria																									
6																									
Determine percentages of gravel and sand from grain size curve. Depending on percentage of fines (fraction smaller than No. 200 sieve size) coarse grained soils are classified as follows: Less than 5%: GW, GP, SW, SP More than 12%: GM, GC, SM, SC 5% to 12%: Borderline cases requiring use of dual symbols.	$C_u = \frac{D_{60}}{D_{10}}$ greater than 4 $(\text{See Sec. 2-5})$ $C_c = \frac{(D_{30})^2}{D_{10} \times D_{60}}$ between 1 and 3 Not meeting all gradation requirements for GW Atterberg limits below A-line, or PI less than 4 Atterberg limits above A-line with PI greater than 7 Above A-line with PI between 4 and 7 are borderline cases requiring use of dual symbols.																								
	$C_u = \frac{D_{60}}{D_{10}}$ greater than 6 $(\text{See Sec. 2-5})$ $C_c = \frac{(D_{30})^2}{D_{10} \times D_{60}}$ between 1 and 3 Not meeting all gradation requirements for SW Atterberg limits below A-line, or PI less than 4 Atterberg limits above A-line with PI greater than 7 Limits plotting in hatched zone with PI between 4 and 7 are borderline cases requiring use of dual symbols.																								
Plasticity Chart For laboratory classification of fine-grained soils	<p>Comparing soils at equal liquid limit: toughness and dry strength increase with increasing plasticity index.</p> <table border="1"> <caption>Data points from Plasticity Chart</caption> <thead> <tr> <th>Liquid Limit</th> <th>Plasticity Index</th> <th>Soil Type</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>~10</td> <td>~5</td> <td>CL-ML (hatched)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>~20</td> <td>~10</td> <td>ML or OL</td> </tr> <tr> <td>~40</td> <td>~20</td> <td>ML or OL</td> </tr> <tr> <td>~50</td> <td>~25</td> <td>CL</td> </tr> <tr> <td>~60</td> <td>~35</td> <td>A-Line</td> </tr> <tr> <td>~70</td> <td>~45</td> <td>CH</td> </tr> <tr> <td>~75</td> <td>~50</td> <td>OH or MH</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Liquid Limit	Plasticity Index	Soil Type	~10	~5	CL-ML (hatched)	~20	~10	ML or OL	~40	~20	ML or OL	~50	~25	CL	~60	~35	A-Line	~70	~45	CH	~75	~50	OH or MH
Liquid Limit	Plasticity Index	Soil Type																							
~10	~5	CL-ML (hatched)																							
~20	~10	ML or OL																							
~40	~20	ML or OL																							
~50	~25	CL																							
~60	~35	A-Line																							
~70	~45	CH																							
~75	~50	OH or MH																							

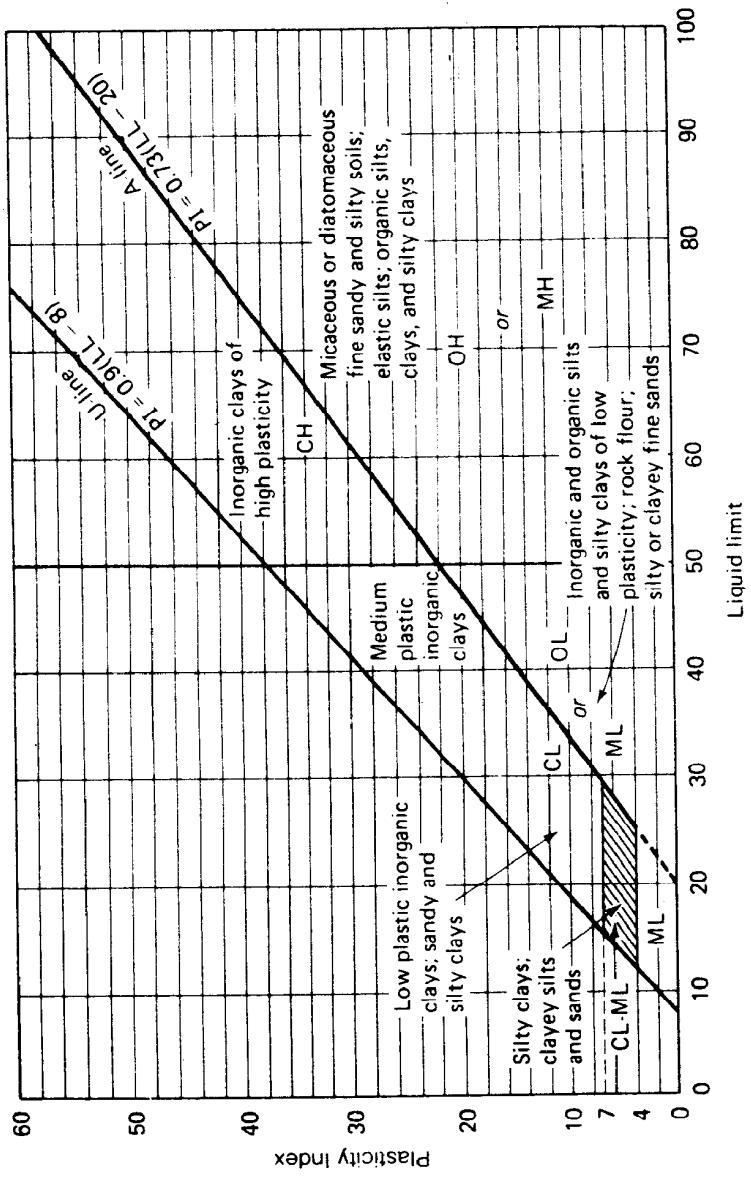


Fig. 3.2 Casagrande's plasticity chart, showing several representative soil types (developed from Casagrande, 1948, and Howard, 1977).

**TABLE 3-3 Field Identification Procedures for Fine-Grained Soils or Fractions\***

These procedures are to be performed on the minus No. 40 sieve size particles, approximately 0.4 mm. For field classification purposes, screening is not intended; simply remove by hand the coarse particles that interfere with the tests.

Dilatancy (reaction to shaking):	Dry Strength (crushing characteristics):
<p>After removing particles larger than No. 40 sieve size, prepare a pat of moist soil with a volume of about 5 cm<sup>3</sup>. Add enough water if necessary to make the soil soft but not sticky. Place the pat in the open palm of one hand and shake vigorously against the other hand several times. A positive reaction consists of the appearance of water on the surface of the pat, which changes to a livery consistency and becomes glossy. When the sample is squeezed between the fingers, the water and gloss disappear from the surface, the pat stiffens, and finally it cracks or crumbles. The rapidity of appearance of water during shaking and of its disappearance during squeezing assist in identifying the character of the fines in a soil.</p> <p>Very fine clean sands give the quick-est and most distinct reaction, whereas a plastic clay has no reaction. Inorganic silts such as a typical rock flour show a moderately quick reaction.</p>	<p>After removing particles larger than No. 40 sieve size, mold a pat of soil to the consistency of putty, adding water if necessary. Allow the pat to dry completely by oven, sun, or air, and then test its strength by breaking and crumbling between the fingers. This strength is a measure of the character and quantity of the colloidal fraction contained in the soil. The dry strength increases with increasing plasticity.</p> <p>High dry strength is characteristic for clays of the CH group. A typical inorganic silt possesses only very slight dry strength. Silty fine sands and silts have about the same slight dry strength but can be distinguished by the feel when powdering the dried specimen. Fine sand feels gritty, whereas a typical silt has the smooth feel of flour.</p>
Toughness (consistency near plastic limit):	
<p>After removing particles larger than the No. 40 sieve size, a specimen of soil about <math>\frac{1}{2}</math> in. cube in size is molded to the consistency of putty. If too dry, water must be added and, if sticky, the specimen should be spread out in a thin layer and allowed to lose some moisture by evaporation. Then the specimen is rolled out by hand on a smooth surface or between the palms into a thread about 3 mm in diameter. The thread is then folded and refolded repeatedly. During this manipulation the moisture content is gradually reduced and the specimen stiffens, finally loses its plasticity, and crumbles when the plastic limit is reached.</p> <p>After the thread crumbles, the pieces should be lumped together and a slight kneading action continued until the lump crumbles.</p> <p>The tougher the thread near the plastic limit and the stiffer the lump when it finally crumbles, the more potent the colloidal clay fraction in the soil. Weakness of the thread at the plastic limit and quick loss of coherence of the lump below the plastic limit indicate either inorganic clay of low plasticity or materials such as kaolin-type clays and organic clays which occur below the A-line.</p> <p>Highly organic clays have a very weak and spongy feel at the plastic limit.</p>	

\*After U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station (1960) and Howard (1977).

detail later in this book. For now, just rely on your general knowledge and ingenuity to figure out what those words mean.

The upper limit line (U-line) shown in Fig. 3.2 indicates the upper range of plasticity index and liquid limit coordinates found thus far for soils (A. Casagrande, personal communication). Where the limits of any soil plot to the left of the U-line, they should be rechecked. Some highly active clays such as bentonite may plot high above the A-line and close to the U-line. It is shown in Chapter 4 that Casagrande's plasticity chart can even be used to identify qualitatively the predominant clay minerals in a soil.

Coarse-grained soils with *more than 12% fines* are classified as GM and SM if the fines are silty (limits plot below the A-line on the plasticity chart) and GC and SC if the fines are clayey (limits plot above the A-line). Both well-graded and poorly graded materials are included in these two groups.

Soils having *between 5% and 12%* passing the No. 200 sieve are classed as "borderline" and have a dual symbol. The first part of the dual symbol indicates whether the coarse fraction is well graded or poorly graded. The second part describes the nature of the fines. For example, a soil classified as a SP-SM means that it is a poorly graded sand with between 5% and 12% silty fines. Similarly a GW-GC is a well-graded gravel with some clayey fines that plot above the A-line.

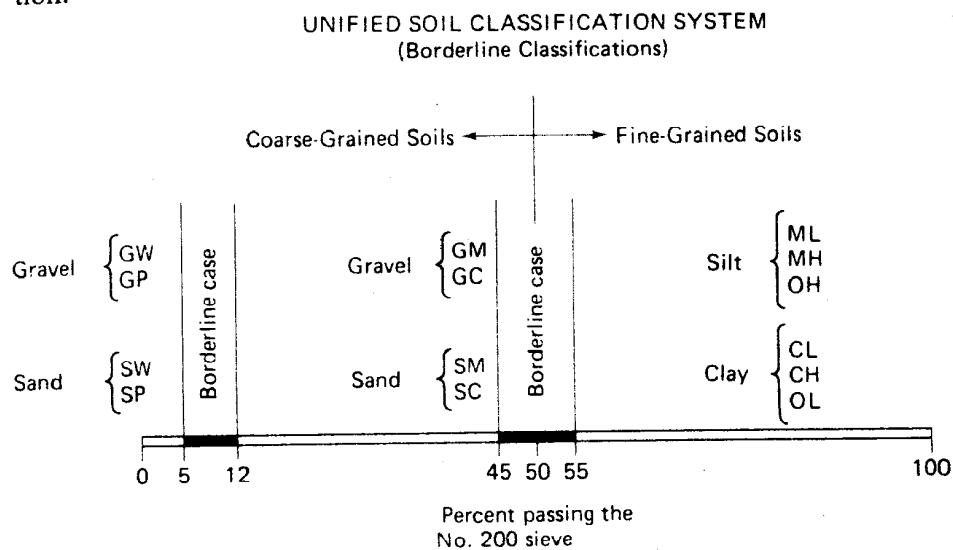
Fine-grained soils can also have dual symbols. Obviously, if the limits plot within the shaded zone on Fig. 3.2 (PI between 4 and 7 and LL between about 12 and 25), then the soil classifies as a CL-ML. Howard (1977) makes the practical suggestion that if the LL and PI values fall near the A-line or near the LL = 50 line, then dual symbols should be used. Possible dual symbols then are:

ML-MH  
CL-CH  
OL-OH  
CL-ML  
CL-OL  
CH-MH  
CH-OH

Borderline symbols can also be used for soils with about 50% fines and coarse-grained fractions. In this case possible dual symbols are:

GM-ML  
GM-MH  
GC-CL  
GC-CH  
SM-ML  
SM-MH  
SC-CL  
SC-CH

Figure 3.3 is a practical guide for borderline cases of soil classification.



Note: Only two group symbols may be used to describe a soil.  
Borderline classifications can exist within each of the above groups.

Fig. 3.3 Guide for borderline cases of soil classification (after Howard, 1977).

A step-by-step procedure for USCS classification of soils, conveniently presented in Fig. 3.4, shows a process of elimination of all the possibilities until the only one left indicates the specific classification. The following steps, adapted from the Corps of Engineers, may help in this process (U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station, 1960). Classification should be done in conjunction with Table 3-2 and Fig. 3.4:

1. Determine if the soil is coarse grained, fine grained, or highly organic. This is done by visual inspection and/or by determining the amount of soil passing the No. 200 sieve.
2. If *coarse grained*:
  - a. Perform a sieve analysis and plot the grain size distribution curve. Determine the percentage passing the No. 4 sieve and classify the soil as *gravel* (greater percentage retained on No. 4) or *sand* (greater percentage passing No. 4).
  - b. Determine the amount of material passing the No. 200 sieve. If less than 5% passes the No. 200 sieve, examine the shape of the grain size curve; if well graded, classify as GW or SW; if poorly graded, classify as GP or SP.
  - c. If between 5% and 12% of the material passes the No. 200 sieve, it is a borderline case, and the classification should have dual

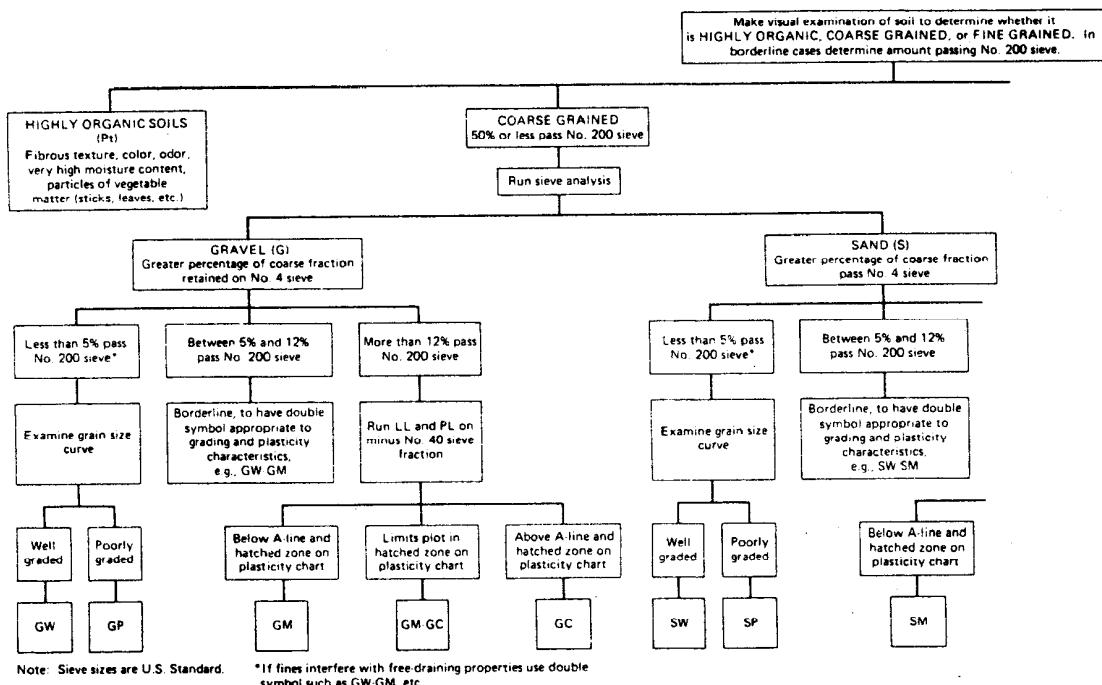
**Soil Classification**

Fig. 3.4 Auxiliary laboratory identification procedure (after USAEWES, 1960).

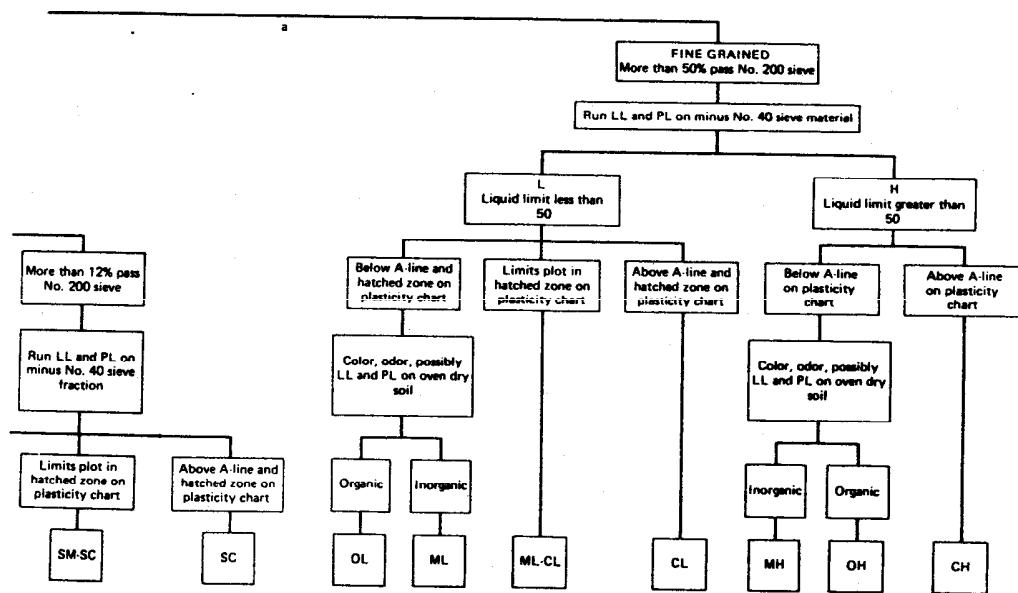


Fig. 3.4 Continued.

symbols appropriate to grading and plasticity characteristics (GW-GM, SW-SM, etc.).

- d. If more than 12% passes the No. 200 sieve, perform the Atterberg limits on the minus No. 40 sieve fraction. Use the plasticity chart to determine the correct classification (GM, SM, GC, SC, GM-GC, or SM-SC).
3. If *fine grained*:
  - a. Perform Atterberg limits tests on minus No. 40 sieve material. If the liquid limit is less than 50, classify as L, and if the liquid limit is greater than 50, classify as H.
  - b. For L: If the limits plot below the A-line and the hatched zone on the plasticity chart, determine by color, odor, or the change in liquid limit and plastic limit caused by oven-drying the soil, whether it is organic (OL) or inorganic (ML). If the limits plot in the hatched zone, classify as CL-ML. If the limits plot above the A-line and the hatched zone on the plasticity chart (Fig. 3.2), classify as CL.
  - c. For H: If the limits plot below the A-line on the plasticity chart, determine whether organic (OH) or inorganic (MH). If the limits plot above the A-line, classify as CH.
  - d. For limits which plot in the hatched zone on the plasticity chart, close to the A-line or around LL = 50, use dual (border-line) symbols as shown in Fig. 3.3.

Although the letter symbols in the USCS are convenient, they do not completely describe a soil or soil deposit. For this reason, descriptive terms should also be used along with the letter symbols for a complete soil classification. Table 3-4 from U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station (1960) provides some useful information for describing soils.

In the case of all soils, such characteristics as color, odor, and homogeneity of the deposit should be observed and included in the sample description.

For coarse-grained soils such items as grain shape, mineralogical content, degree of weathering, in situ density and degree of compaction, and presence or absence of fines should be noted and included. Adjectives such as rounded, angular, and subangular are commonly used to describe grain shape (see Fig. 2.5). The in situ density and degree of compaction is normally obtained indirectly by observing how difficult the material is to excavate or to penetrate with devices called  *penetrometers*. Terms such as *very loose*, *loose*, *medium*, *dense*, and *very dense* are used to describe in situ density. A granular deposit which can, for example, be excavated readily

**TABLE 3-4** Information Required for Describing Soils\***Coarse-grained soils:**

For undisturbed soils add information on stratification, degree of compactness, cementation, moisture conditions and drainage characteristics.

Give typical name. Indicate approximate percentages of sand and gravel, maximum size, angularity, surface condition, and hardness of the coarse grains, local or geologic name and other pertinent descriptive information, and symbol in parentheses.

**Example:**

*Silty sand*, gravelly. About 20% hard, angular gravel particles 12 mm maximum size, rounded and subangular sand grains coarse to fine, about 15% nonplastic fines with low dry strength, well compacted and moist in place, alluvial sand, (SM).

**Fine-grained soils:**

Give typical name. Indicate degree and character of plasticity, amount and maximum size of coarse grains, color in wet condition, odor if any, local or geologic name, and other pertinent descriptive information, and symbol in parentheses.

For undisturbed soils add information on structure, stratification, consistency in undisturbed and remolded states, moisture and drainage conditions.

**Example:**

*Clayey silt*, brown, slightly plastic, small percentage of fine sand, numerous vertical root holes, firm and dry in place, loess, (ML).

Note: Be prepared for wide variations in soil description among organizations and testing laboratories. They all have their own ways of doing things.

\*After U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station (1960).

by hand would be considered very loose, whereas a deposit of the same material which requires power tools for excavation would be described as very dense or perhaps cemented.

For the fine-grained fraction, natural water content, consistency, and remolded consistency should be noted in the sample description. *Consistency* in the natural state corresponds in some respects to degree of compaction in coarse-grained soils and is usually evaluated by noting the ease by which the deposit can be excavated or penetrated. Such terms as *very soft*, *soft*, *medium*, *stiff*, *very stiff*, and *hard* are employed to describe consistency. (Sometimes the word *firm* is used synonymously with the term *stiff*.) Fine-grained soils may be additionally described by using the tests explained in Table 3-3 for dilatancy, toughness, and dry strength. Other techniques for visual classification of soils should be learned and practiced in the laboratory. Excellent descriptions of visual classification and identification procedures are found in the U.S.B.R. (1974) *Earth Manual*, Appendix E-3, and ASTM (1980) Designation D 2488.

## **EXAMPLE 3.1**

**Given:**

Sieve analysis and plasticity data for the following three soils.

Sieve Size	Soil 1, % Finer	Soil 2, % Finer	Soil 3, % Finer
No. 4	99	97	100
No. 10	92	90	100
No. 40	86	40	100
No. 100	78	8	99
No. 200	60	5	97
LL	20	—	124
PL	15	—	47
PI	5	NP*	77

\*Nonplastic.

**Required:**

Classify the three soils according to the Unified Soil Classification System.

**Solution:**

Use Table 3-2 and Fig. 3.4.

1. Plot the grain size distribution curves for the three soils (shown in Fig. Ex. 3.1).
2. For soil 1, we see from the curve that more than 50% passes the No. 200 sieve (60%); thus the soil is a fine-grained soil and the Atterberg limits are required to further classify the soil. With LL = 20 and PI = 5, the soil plots in the hatched zone on the plasticity chart. Therefore the soil is a CL-ML.
3. Soil 2 is immediately seen to be a coarse-grained soil since only 5% passes the No. 200 sieve. Since 97% passes the No. 4 sieve, the soil is a sand rather than a gravel. Next, note the amount of material passing the No. 200 sieve (5%). From Table 3-2 and Fig. 3.4, the soil is "borderline" and therefore has a dual symbol such as SP-SM or SW-SM depending on the values of  $C_u$  and  $C_c$ . From the grain size distribution curve, Fig. Ex. 3.1, we find that  $D_{60} = 0.71$  mm,  $D_{30} = 0.34$  mm, and  $D_{10} = 0.18$  mm. The coefficient of

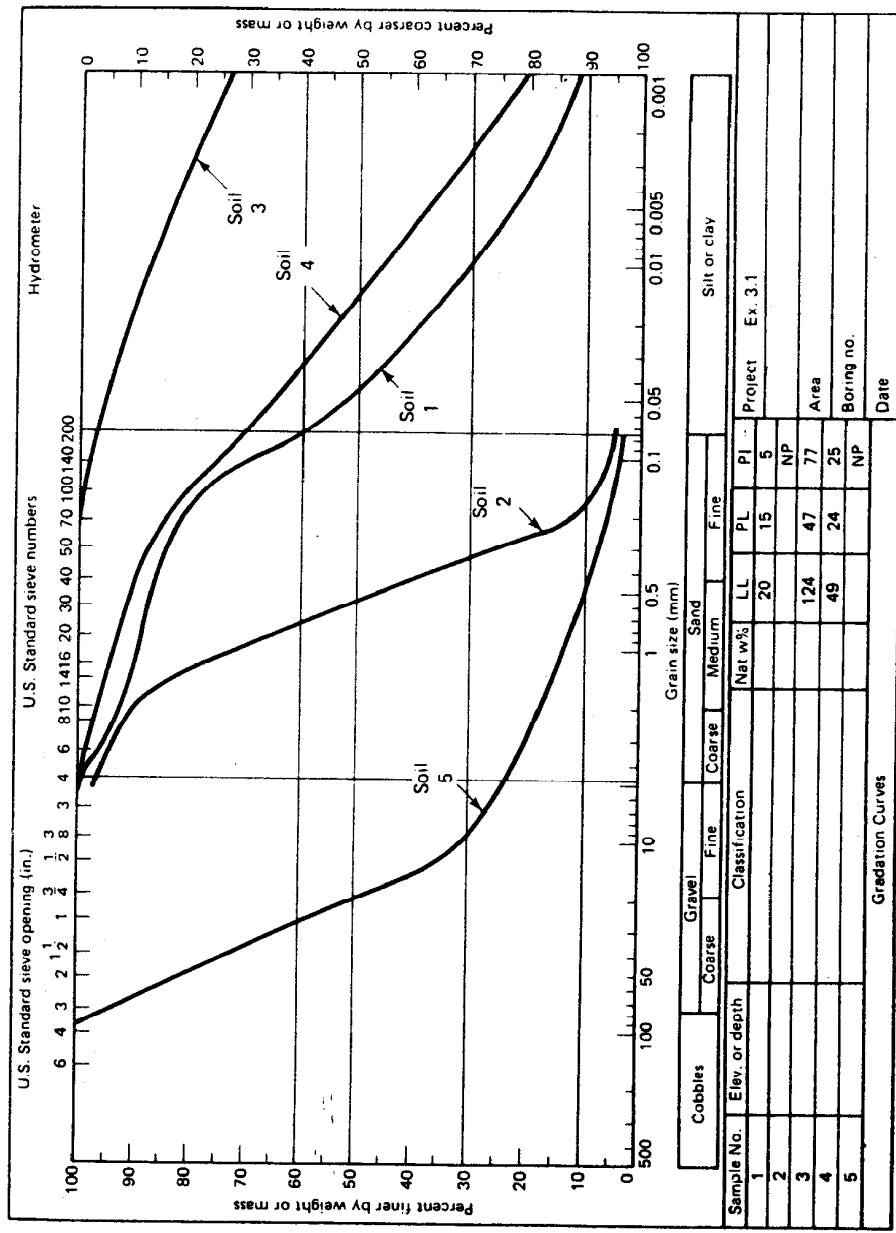


Fig. Ex. 3.1

uniformity  $C_u$  is

$$C_u = \frac{D_{60}}{D_{10}} = \frac{0.71}{0.18} = 3.9 < 6$$

and the coefficient of curvature  $C_c$  is

$$C_c = \frac{(D_{30})^2}{D_{10} \times D_{60}} = \frac{(0.34)^2}{0.18 \times 0.71} = 0.91 \simeq 1$$

For a soil to be considered well graded, it must meet the criteria shown in column 6 of Table 3-2; it does not, so the soil is considered poorly graded and its classification is SP-SM. The soil is SM because the fines are silty (nonplastic).

4. A quick glance at the characteristics for soil 3 indicates the soil is fine grained (97% passes the No. 200 sieve). Since the LL is greater than 100 we cannot directly use the plasticity chart (Fig. 3.2). Use instead the equation for the A-line on Fig. 3.2 to determine if the soil is a CH or MH.

$$PI = 0.73(LL - 20) = 0.73(124 - 20) = 75.9$$

Since the PI is 78 for soil 3, it lies *above* the A-line and thus the soil is classified as a CH.

### 3.3 THE AASHTO SOIL CLASSIFICATION SYSTEM

In the late 1920's the U.S. Bureau of Public Roads (now the Federal Highway Administration) conducted extensive research on the use of soils especially in local or secondary road construction, the so-called "farm-to-market" roads. From that research the Public Roads Classification System was developed by Hogentogler and Terzaghi (1929). The original system was based on the stability characteristics of soils when used as a road surface or with a thin asphalt pavement. There were several revisions since 1929, and the latest in 1945 is essentially the present AASHTO (1978) system. The applicability of the system has been extended considerably; AASHTO states that the system should be useful for determining the relative quality of soils for use in embankments, subgrades, subbases, and bases. But you might keep in mind its original purpose when using the system in your engineering practice. (See Casagrande, 1948, for some comments on this point.)

**TABLE 3-5** AASHTO Definitions of Gravel, Sand, and Silt-Clay

Soil Fraction	Size Range
Boulders	Above 75 mm
Gravel	75 mm to No. 10 sieve (2.0 mm)
Coarse sand	No. 10 (2.0 mm) to No. 40 (0.425 mm)
Fine sand	No. 40 (0.425 mm) to No. 200 (0.075 mm)
Silt-clay (combined silt and clay)	Material passing the 0.075 mm (No. 200) sieve

Soil fractions recognized in the AASHTO system are listed in Table 3-5. Boulders should be excluded from the sample to be classified, but as with the USCS the amount of boulders present should be noted. Fines are silty if they have a PI less than 10 and clayey if the PI is greater than 10.

The AASHTO system classifies soils into eight groups, A-1 through A-8, and it includes several subgroups. Soils within each group are evaluated according to the *group index*, which is calculated by an empirical formula. The only tests required are the sieve analysis and the Atterberg limits. Table 3-6 illustrates the current AASHTO (1978) soil classification.

Granular materials fall into classes A-1 to A-3. A-1 materials are well graded, whereas A-3 soils are clean, poorly graded sands. A-2 materials are also granular (less than 35% passing the No. 200 sieve), but they contain a significant amount of silts and clays. A-4 to A-7 are fine-grained soils, the silt-clay materials. They are differentiated on the basis of their Atterberg limits. Figure 3.5 can be used to obtain the ranges of LL and PI for groups A-4 to A-7 and for the subgroups in A-2. Highly organic soils including peats and mucks may be placed in group A-8. As with the USCS, classification of A-8 soils is made visually.

The *group index* is used to further evaluate soils within a group. It is based on the service performance of many soils, especially when used as pavement subgrades. It may be determined from the empirical formula given at the top of Fig. 3.6, or you may use the nomograph directly.

Using the AASHTO system to classify soils is not difficult. Once you have the required test data, proceed from left to right in the chart of Table 3-6, and find the correct group by the process of elimination. The first group from the left to fit the test data is the correct AASHTO classification. A complete classification includes the group index to the nearest whole number, in parentheses, after the AASHTO symbol. Examples are A-2-6(3), A-4(5), A-6(12), A-7-5(17), etc.

Figure 3.7 will be helpful in classifying soils according to the AASHTO system.

TABLE 3-6 Classification of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures\*

General Classification	Granular Materials (35% or less passing 0.075 mm)						Silt-Clay Materials (More than 35% passing 0.075 mm)					
	A-1		A-2		A-2-4	A-2-5	A-2-6	A-2-7	A-4	A-5	A-6	A-7
Group classification	A-1-a	A-1-b	A-3									<sup>A-7-3</sup> A-7-6
Sieve analysis, percent passing:												
2.00 mm (No. 10)	50 max.	—	51 min.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
0.425 mm (No. 40)	30 max.	50 max.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
0.075 mm (No. 200)	15 max.	25 max.	10 max.	35 max.	35 max.	35 max.	35 max.	36 min.	36 min.	36 min.	36 min.	36 min.
Characteristics of fraction passing 0.425 mm (No. 40):												
Liquid limit	—	—	—	40 max.	41 min.	40 max.	41 min.	40 max.	41 min.	40 max.	41 min.	41 min.
Plasticity index	6 max.	NP	10 max.	10 max.	11 min.	11 min.	11 min.	10 max.	10 max.	11 min.	11 min.	11 min.
Usual types of significant constituent materials	Stone fragments, gravel, and sand		Fine sand		Silty or clayey gravel and sand		Silty soils		Clayey soils			
General rating as subgrade			Excellent to good				Fair to Poor					

\*© American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, 1978. Used by permission.

† Plasticity index of A-7-5 subgroup is equal to or less than LL minus 30. Plasticity index of A-7-6 subgroup is greater than LL minus 30 (see Fig. 3-5).

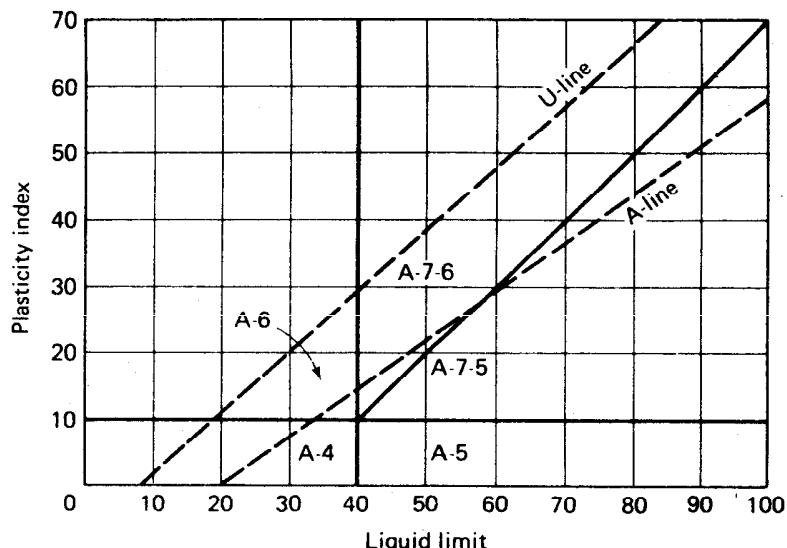


Fig. 3.5 Atterberg limits ranges for subgrade subgroups A-4, A-5, A-6, and A-7. Note that Casagrande's A-line and U-line have been superimposed on the chart (after Liu, 1970, and Al-Hussaini, 1977).

### EXAMPLE 3.2

**Given:**

The following data for soils 4 and 5. See Fig. Ex. 3.1 for the grain size distribution curves.

Sieve Size	Soil 4, % Finer	Soil 5, % Finer
No. 4	99	23
No. 10	96	18
No. 40	89	9
No. 100	79	5
No. 200	70	4
LL	49	—
PL	24	—
PI	25	NP

**Required:**

Classify the soils according to the AASHTO Soil Classification System.

Group index (GI) =  $(F - 35)[0.2 + 0.005(LL - 40)] + 0.01(F - 15)(PI - 10)$ ,  
where F = % passing 0.075 mm sieve, LL = liquid limit, and PI = plasticity index.

When working with A-2-6 and A-2-7 subgroups the Partial Group Index (PGI) is determined from the PI only.

When the combined partial group indices are negative, the group index should be reported as zero.

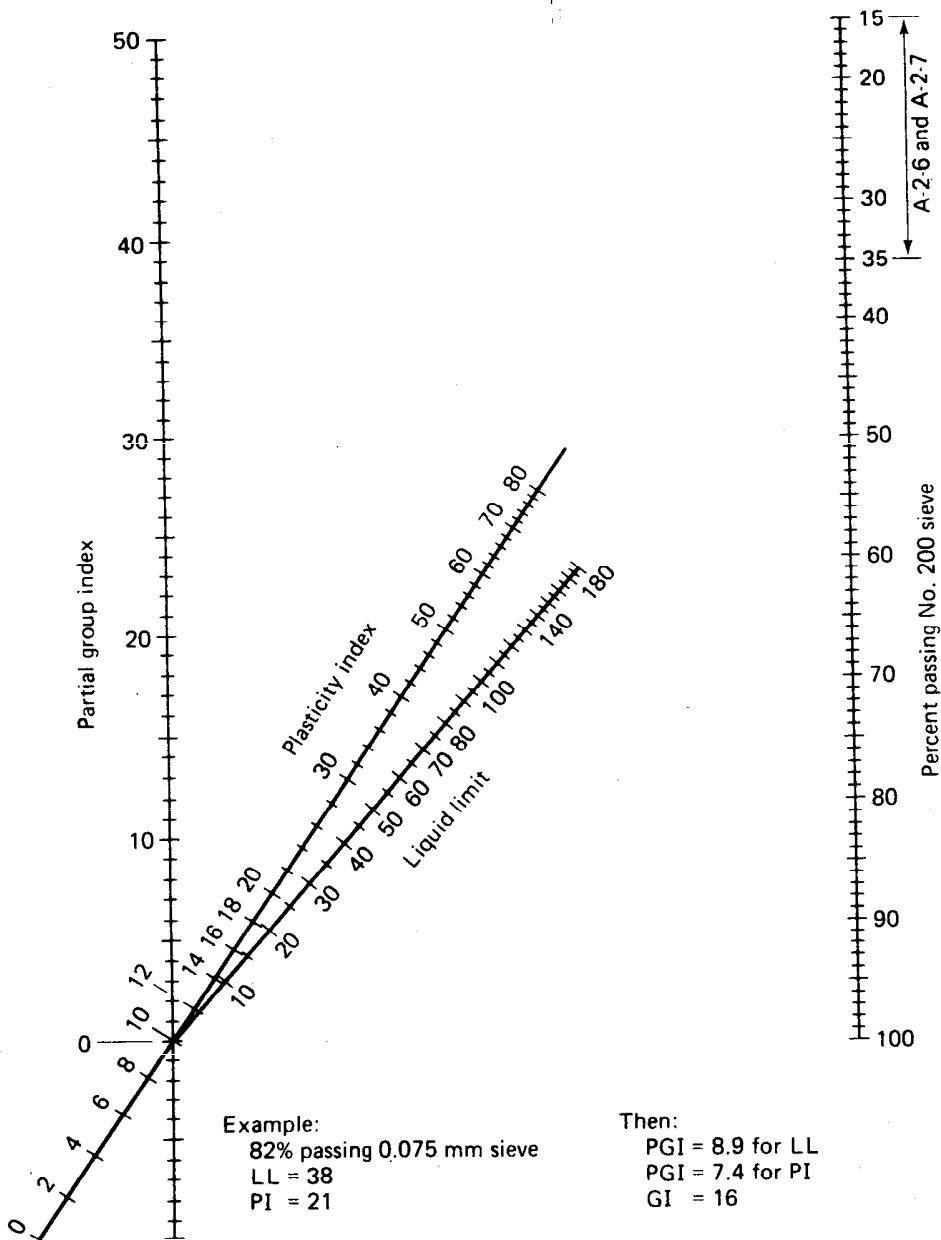


Fig. 3.6 Group index chart (after AASHTO, 1978). ©American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials, 1978. Used by permission.

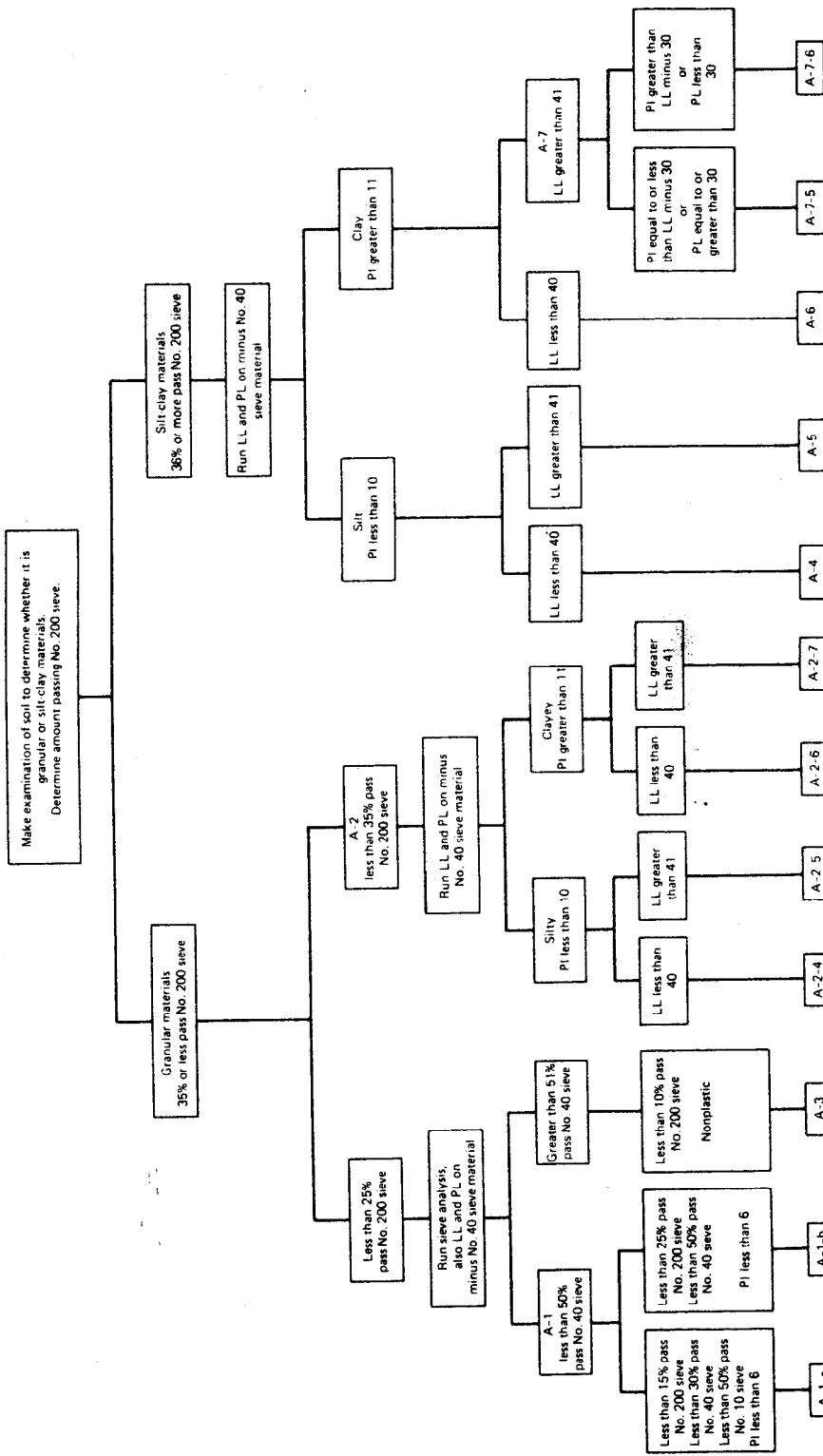


Fig. 3.7 Chart for auxiliary laboratory classification procedures for the AASHTO Soil Classification System (after Liu, 1970).

**TABLE 3-7 Comparable Soil Groups in the AASHTO and USCS Systems\***

Soil Group in Unified System	Comparable Soil Groups in AASHTO System		
	Most Probable	Possible	Possible but Improbable
GW	A-1-a	—	A-2-4, A-2-5, A-2-6, A-2-7
GP	A-1-a	A-1-b	A-3, A-2-4, A-2-5, A-2-6, A-2-7
GM	A-1-b, A-2-4, A-2-5, A-2-7	A-2-6	A-4, A-5, A-6, A-7-5, A-7-6, A-1-a
GC	A-2-6, A-2-7	A-2-4, A-6	A-4, A-7-6, A-7-5
SW	A-1-b	A-1-a	A-3, A-2-4, A-2-5, A-2-6, A-2-7
SP	A-3, A-1-b	A-1-a	A-2-4, A-2-5, A-2-6, A-2-7
SM	A-1-b, A-2-4, A-2-5, A-2-7	A-2-6, A-4, A-5	A-6, A-7-5, A-7-6, A-1-a
SC	A-2-6, A-2-7	A-2-4, A-6, A-4, A-7-6	A-7-5
ML	A-4, A-5	A-6, A-7-5	—
CL	A-6, A-7-6	A-4	—
OL	A-4, A-5	A-6, A-7-5, A-7-6	—
MH	A-7-5, A-5	—	A-7-6
CH	A-7-6	A-7-5	—
OH	A-7-5, A-5	—	A-7-6
Pt	—	—	—

\*After Liu (1970).

**TABLE 3-7 Continued**

Soil Group in AASHTO System	Comparable Soil Groups in Unified System		
	Most Probable	Possible	Possible but Improbable
A-1-a	GW, GP	SW, SP	GM, SM
A-1-b	SW, SP, GM, SM	GP	—
A-3	SP	—	SW, GP
A-2-4	GM, SM	GC, SC	GW, GP SW, SP
A-2-5	GM, SM	—	GW, GP, SW, SP
A-2-6	GC, SC	GM, SM	GW, GP SW, SP
A-2-7	GM, GC, SM, SC	—	GW, GP, SW, SP
A-4	ML, OL	CL, SM, SC	GM, GC
A-5	OH, MH, ML, OL	—	SM, GM
A-6	CL	ML, OL, SC	GC, GM, SM
A-7-5	OH, MH	ML, OL, CH	GM, SM, GC, SC
A-7-6	CH, CL	ML, OL, SC	OH, MH, GC, GM, SM

**Solution:**

- Because more than 35% of soil 4 passes the No. 200 sieve, from Table 3-6 we see that the soil is an A-4 or higher. Since the LL is 49, the soil is either A-5 or A-7. with a PI of 25, the soil is an A-7. A check of Fig. 3.5 shows the soil is classified as an A-7-6.
- Because soil 5 has less than 35% passing the No. 200 sieve, it is granular. (A glance at Fig. Ex. 3.1 provides the same information!) Proceeding from left to right in Table 3-6, we see that the first group from the left that meets the criterion is A-1-a.

### 3.4 COMPARISON OF THE USCS AND AASHTO CLASSIFICATION SYSTEMS

There are several significant differences between the USCS and AASHTO soil classification systems, which is not surprising considering the differences in their history and purpose. You can see the differences in the treatment of coarse-grained soils by comparing Table 3-1 with 3-5. The major differences in the fine-grained soils are shown in Fig. 3.5, where we have superimposed both the A-line and the U-line on the LL-PI chart. AASHTO (1978) actually plots LL versus PI, but we have turned the chart 90° for easy comparison with the Casagrande plasticity chart (Fig. 3.2). The differences are significant. Also, use of  $PI = 10$  as the dividing line between silty and clayey soils seems rather arbitrary and probably does not realistically relate to the engineering properties of fine-grained soils. Al-Hussaini (1977) discusses several other significant differences between the two systems.

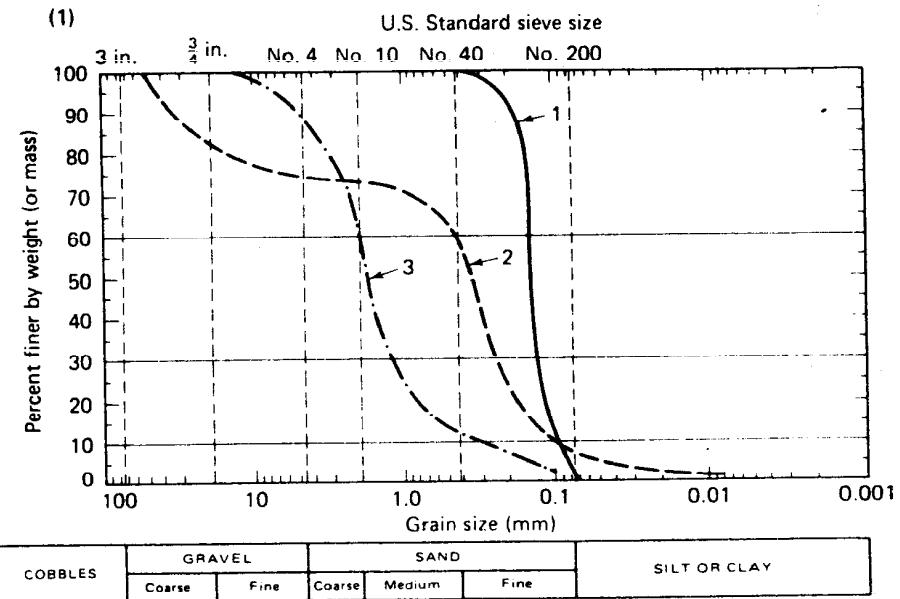
Table 3-7 shows a comparison of the two systems in terms of the probable corresponding soil groups.

### PROBLEMS

- 3-1. Classify soils 4 and 5 in Example 3.2 according to the Unified Soil Classification System. Explain your steps. Compare with Table 3-7 and Example 3.1.
- 3-2. Classify soils 1, 2, and 3 in Example 3.1 according to the AASHTO Soil Classification System. Compare with Table 3-7 and Example 3.2.
- 3-3. Given the grain size distribution curves of Problem 2-33 and the Atterberg limits data of Problem 2-35, classify soils A through F using the USCS and AASHTO soil classification systems.
- 3-4. For the data below, classify the soils according to the USCS.
  - (a) 100% material passed No. 4 sieve, 25% retained on No. 200 sieve.  
Fines exhibited:  
Medium to low plasticity.  
Dilatancy—none to very slow.  
Dry strength—medium to high.
  - (b) 65% material retained on No. 4 sieve, 32% material retained on No. 200 sieve.  
 $C_u = 3, C_c = 1.$

- (c) 100% passed No. 4 sieve,  
90% passed No. 200 sieve.  
Dry strength—low to medium.  
Dilatancy—moderately quick.  
 $LL = 23$ ,  $PL = 17$ .
- (d) 5% retained on No. 4 sieve,  
70% passed No. 4 and re-  
tained on No. 200 sieve.  
Fines exhibited low plasticity  
and high dilatancy.
- (e) 100% material passed No. 4  
sieve, 20% retained on No.  
200 sieve.  
Fines exhibit high plasticity.  
Dilatancy—none.  
Dry strength—high.
- (f) 90% material passed No. 4  
sieve, and retained on No.  
200 sieve.  
 $C_u = 3$ ,  $C_c = 1$ .  
10% passed No. 200 sieve.  
Fines exhibited high  
dilatancy.
- (g) 5% material retained on  
No. 4 sieve, 70% passed  
No. 4 sieve and retained on  
No. 200 sieve.  
Fines exhibited medium dry  
strength, medium toughness.  
Dilatancy—none.  
 $LL = 25$ ,  $PL = 15$ .
- (h) 70% material retained on  
No. 4 sieve, 27% retained  
on No. 200 sieve.  
 $C_u = 5$ ,  $C_c = 1.5$ .

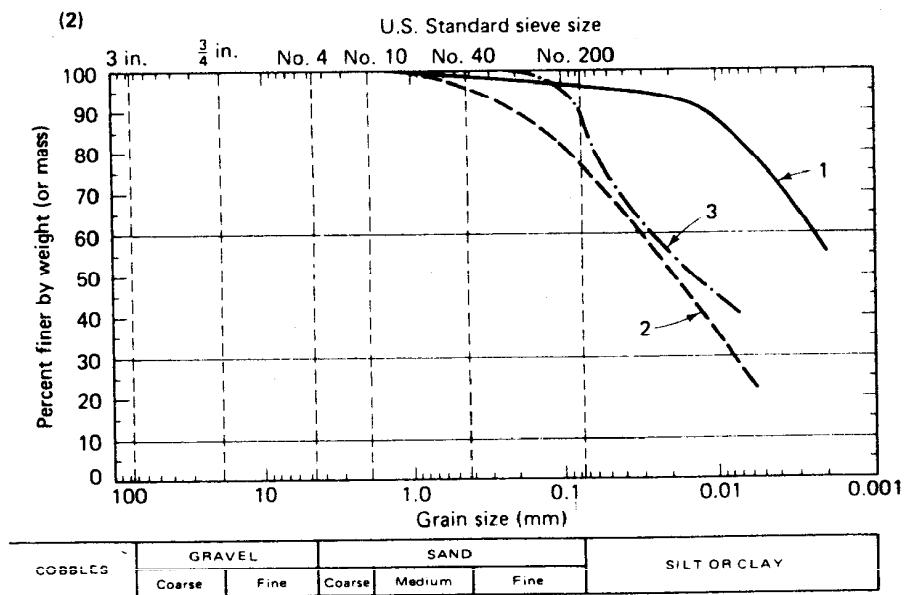
- 3-5. For the soils of Problem 3-4, estimate the compressibility, permeability, and toughness.
- 3-6. Grain size distributions and Atterberg limits are given for 16 soils in the six graphs comprising Fig. P3.6. Classify the soils according to (a) USCS and (b) AASHTO systems. (All data from USAEWES, 1960.)



Curve 1: Uniform fine sand; nonplastic.

Curve 2: Poorly graded gravelly sand mixture; nonplastic. Approximately 7% fines makes this a borderline soil, symbol SP-SM.

Curve 3: Coarse to medium sand; nonplastic. Approaching uniform gradation.

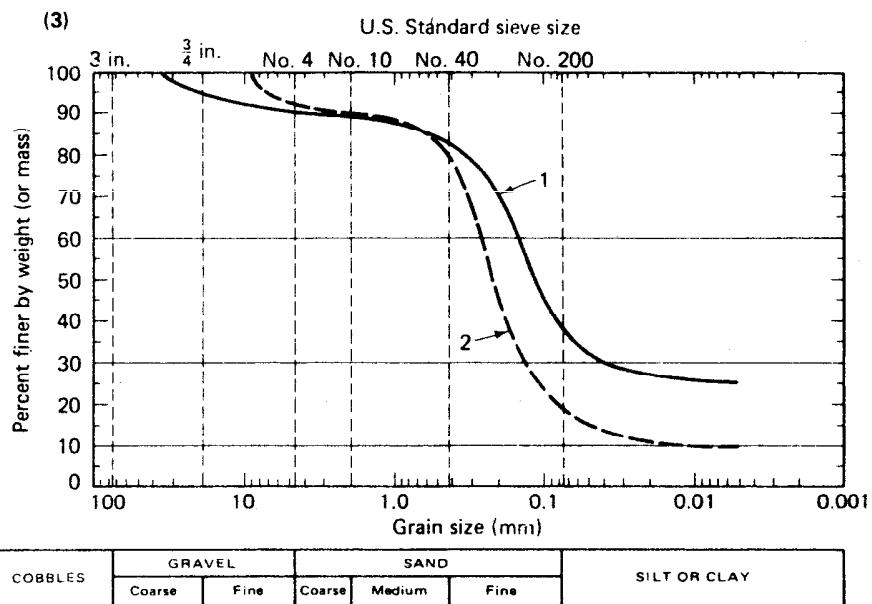


Curve 1: Organic clay (tidal flats); LL=95, PI=39.

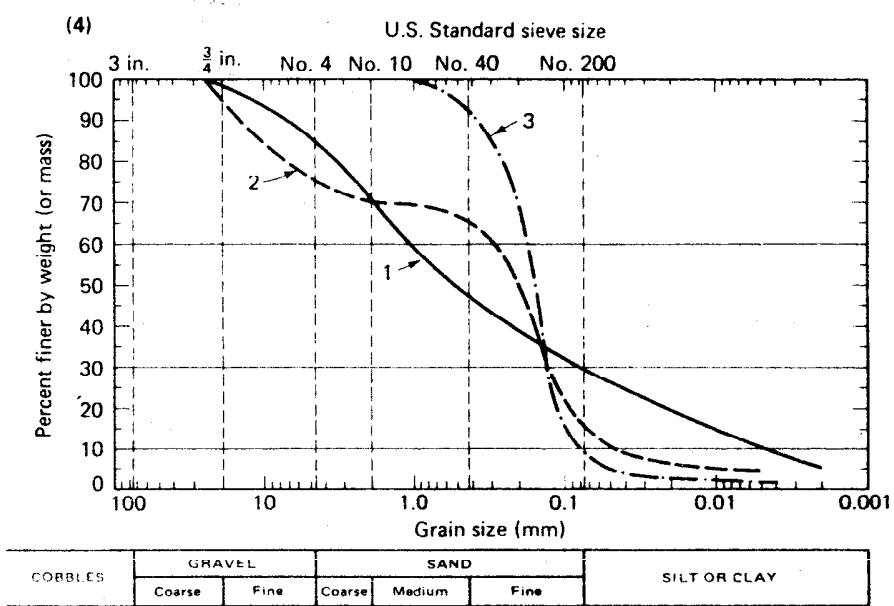
Curve 2: Alkali clay with organic matter; LL=66, PI=27.

Curve 3: Organic silt; LL=70, PI=33 (natural water content); LL=53, PI=19 (oven dried).

Fig. P3-6

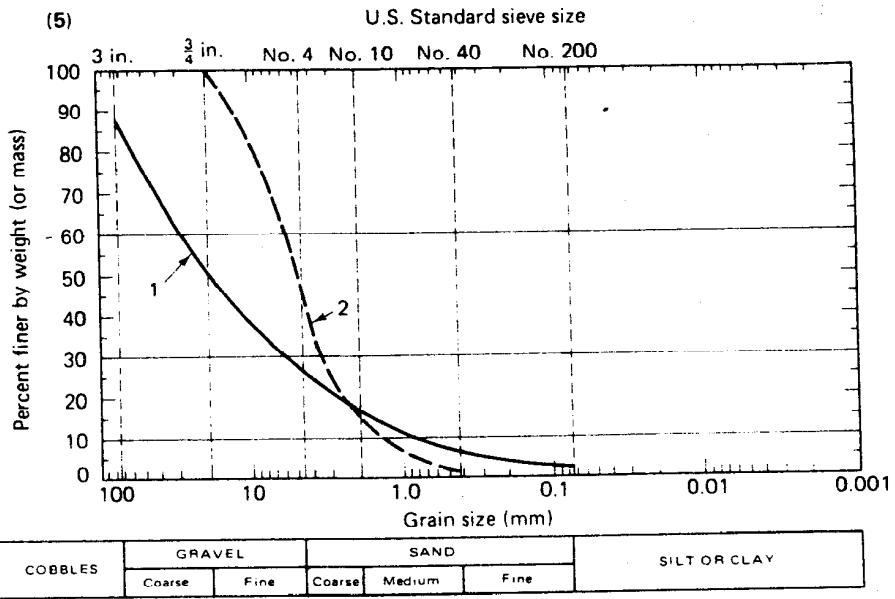


Curve 1: Clayey sand; LL=23, PI=10. Poorly graded mixture of sand-clay and fine silty sand.  
 Curve 2: Limerock and sand mixture; LL=23, PI=8. Poorly graded.

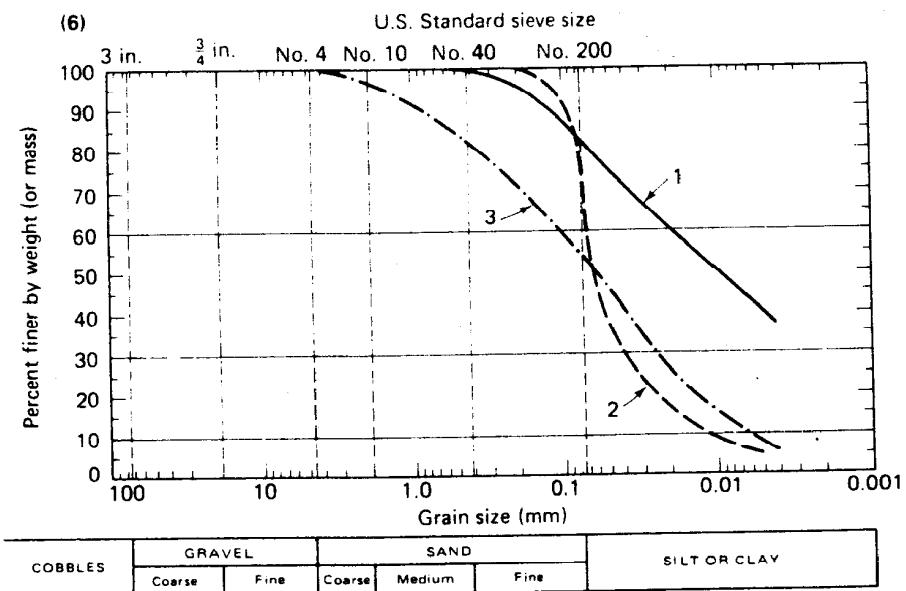


Curve 1: Silty gravelly sand; nonplastic. Micaceous silt stabilized with sandy chert gravel.  
 Curve 2: Mixture of gravel-sand and fine silty sand; nonplastic. Poorly graded mixture; note absence of coarse and medium sand.  
 Curve 3: Silty fine sand; LL=22, PI=5.

Fig. P3-6 Continued.



Curve 1: Pit run gravel; nonplastic; well graded; small percentage of fines.  
 Curve 2: Sandy gravel; nonplastic; no fines.



Curve 1: Clayey silt; LL = 46, PI = 16.  
 Curve 2: Uniform sandy silt; LL = 30, PI = 3.  
 Curve 3: Sandy silt; LL = 34, PI = 3  
 General: Note curves 2 and 3 have about the same plasticity but vary in grain size distribution.

Fig. P3-6 Continued.

## four

# Clay Minerals and Soil Structure

---

### 4.1 INTRODUCTION

At this stage it is useful to again define the term *clay*. Clay can refer to specific minerals such as kaolinite or illite, as are discussed in detail in this chapter. However, in civil engineering, *clay* often means a *clay soil*—a soil which contains some clay minerals as well as other mineral constituents, has plasticity, and is “cohesive.” Clay soils are fine grained, as indicated in Chapter 2 (Table 2-2), but not all fine-grained soils are cohesive or clays. Silts are both granular and fine grained. The individual silt grains, like clays, are invisible to the naked eye, but silts are noncohesive and nonplastic. Rock flour is another example of a very fine-grained cohesionless soil.

Also remember that certain characteristics of granular soils such as the grain size distribution and the grain shape affect the engineering behavior of these soils. On the other hand, the presence of water, with a few important exceptions, is relatively unimportant in their behavior. In contrast, for clay soils the grain size distribution has relatively little influence on the engineering behavior, but water markedly affects their behavior. Silts are an “in between” material. Water affects their behavior—they are *dilatant*—yet they have little or no plasticity ( $PI \approx 0$ ), and their strengths, like sands, are essentially independent of water content.

As we indicate in this chapter, clay minerals are very small particles which are very active electrochemically. The presence of even a small amount of clay minerals in a soil mass can markedly affect the engineering properties of that mass. As the amount of clay increases, the behavior of the soil is increasingly governed by the properties of the clay. When the clay content is about 50%, the sand and silt grains are essentially floating in a clay matrix and have little effect on the engineering behavior.

In this chapter, we briefly describe the important clay minerals, how they are identified, and how they interact with water and with each other. We also describe some of the latest thinking about soil fabric and structure, concepts which are fundamentally important for a good understanding of cohesive soil behavior. Finally, cohesionless soil structures and the concept of relative density are discussed.

Only one new symbol is introduced in this chapter.

Symbol	Dimension	Unit	Definition
$D_r$ or $I_D$	—	(%)	Relative density or density index

## 4.2 CLAY MINERALS

*Clay minerals* are very tiny crystalline substances evolved primarily from chemical weathering of certain rock-forming minerals. Chemically, they are *hydrous aluminosilicates* plus other metallic ions. All clay minerals are very small, colloidal-sized crystals (diameter less than 1  $\mu\text{m}$ ), and they can only be seen with an electron microscope. The individual crystals look like tiny plates or flakes, and from X-ray diffraction studies scientists have determined that these flakes consist of many crystal sheets which have a repeating atomic structure. In fact, there are only two fundamental crystal sheets, the *tetrahedral* or *silica*, and the *octahedral* or *alumina*, sheets. The particular way in which these sheets are stacked, together with different bonding and different metallic ions in the crystal lattice, constitute the different clay minerals.

The tetrahedral sheet is basically a combination of silica tetrahedral units which consist of four oxygen atoms at the corners, surrounding a single silicon atom. Figure 4.1a shows a single silica tetrahedron; Fig. 4.1b shows how the oxygen atoms at the base of each tetrahedron are combined to form a sheet structure. The oxygens at the bases of each tetrahedron are in one plane, and the unjoined oxygen corners all point in the same direction. A common schematic representation of the tetrahedral sheet which is used later is shown in Fig. 4.1c. A top view of the silica sheet showing how the oxygen atoms at the base of each tetrahedron belong to two tetrahedrons and how adjacent silicon atoms are bonded is shown in Fig. 4.1d. Note the hexagonal "holes" in the sheet.

The octahedral sheet is basically a combination of octahedral units consisting of six oxygen or hydroxyls enclosing an aluminum, magnesium, iron, or other atom. A single octahedron is shown in Fig. 4.2a, while Fig. 4.2b shows how the octahedrons combine to form a sheet structure. The rows of oxygens or hydroxyls in the sheet are in two planes. Figure 4.2c is

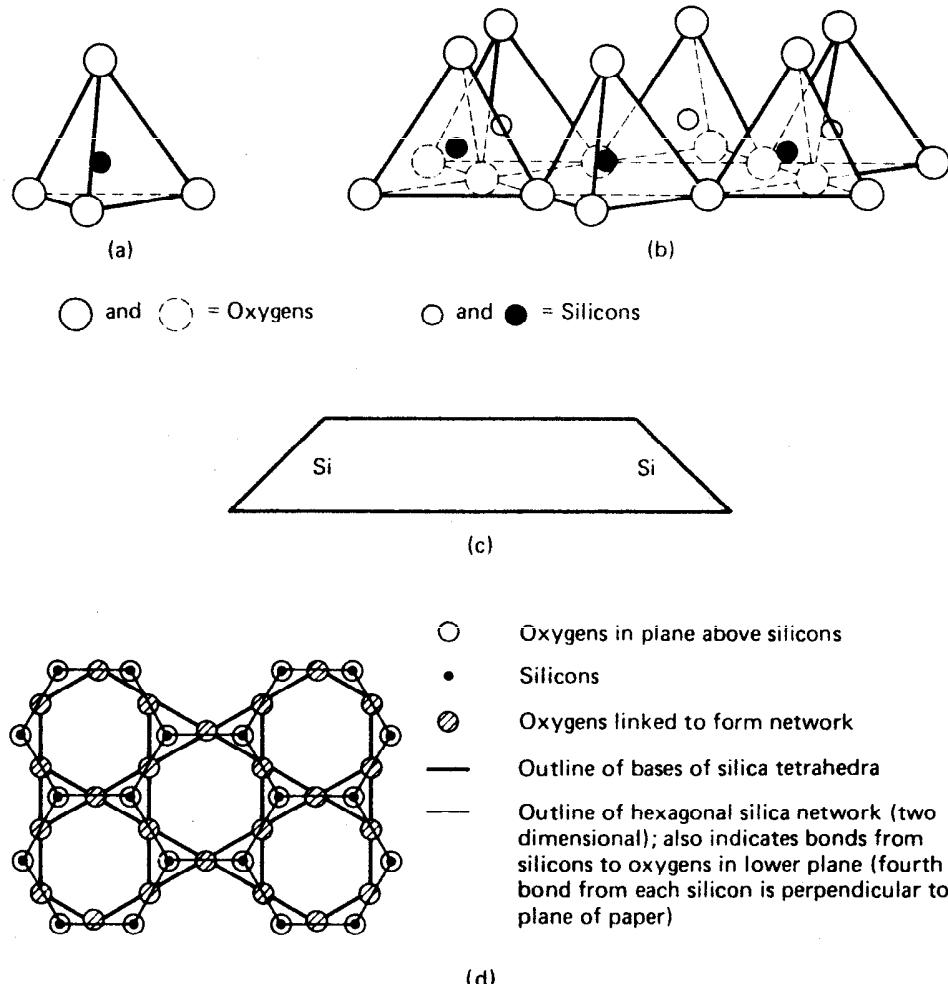
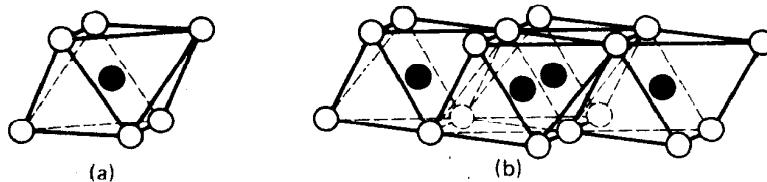


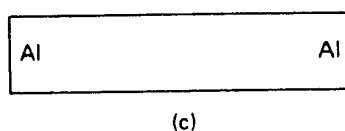
Fig. 4.1 (a) Single silica tetrahedron (after Grim, 1959). (b) Isometric view of the tetrahedral or silica sheet (after Grim, 1959). (c) Schematic representation of the silica sheet (after Lambe, 1953). (d) Top view of the silica sheet (after Warshaw and Roy, 1961).

a schematic representation of the octahedral sheet which we use later. For a top view of the octahedral sheet showing how the different atoms are shared and bonded see Fig. 4.2d.

Substitution of different cations in the octahedral sheet is rather common and leads to different clay minerals. Since the ions substituted are approximately the same physical size, such substitution is called *isomorphous*. Sometimes not all the octahedrons contain a cation, which results in a somewhat different crystalline structure with slightly different physical properties and a different clay mineral. If all the anions of the octahedral sheet are hydroxyls and two-thirds of the cation positions are filled with aluminum, then the mineral is called *gibbsite*. If magnesium is substituted



○ and ○ = Hydroxyls or oxygens     ● Aluminum, magnesiums, etc.



(c)

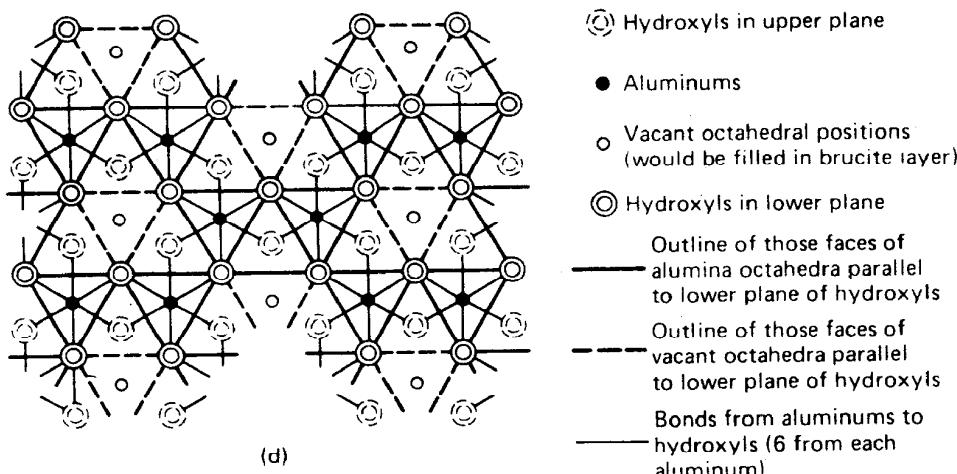


Fig. 4.2 (a) Single aluminum (or magnesium) octahedron (after Grim, 1959). (b) Isometric view of the octahedral sheet (after Grim, 1959). (c) Schematic representation of the octahedral or alumina (or magnesia) sheet (after Lambe, 1953). (d) Top view of the octahedral sheet (after Warshaw and Roy, 1961).

for the aluminum in the sheet and it fills all the cation positions, then the mineral is called *brucite*. The variations in the basic sheet structures make up the dozens of clay minerals which have been identified. All clay minerals consist of the two basic sheets which are stacked together in certain unique ways and with certain cations present in the octahedral and tetrahedral sheets. For engineering purposes it is usually sufficient to describe only a few of the more common clay minerals which are found in clay soils.

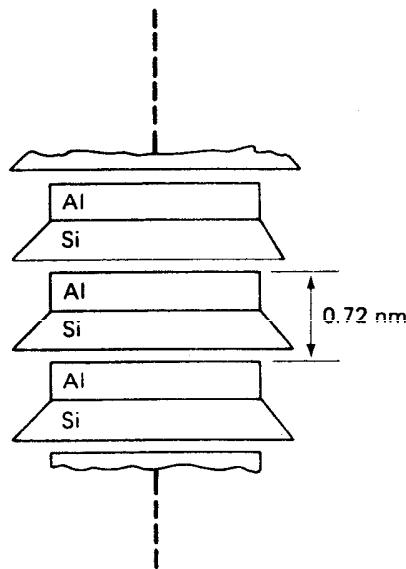


Fig. 4.3 Schematic diagram of the structure of kaolinite (after Lambe, 1953).

*Kaolinite* consists basically of repeating layers of one tetrahedral (silica) sheet and one octahedral (alumina or gibbsite) sheet. Because of the stacking of one layer of each of the two basic sheets, kaolinite is called a 1:1 clay mineral (Fig. 4.3). The two sheets are held together in such a way that the tips of the silica sheet and one of the layers of the octahedral sheet form a single layer, as shown in Fig. 4.4. This layer is about 0.72 nm thick.

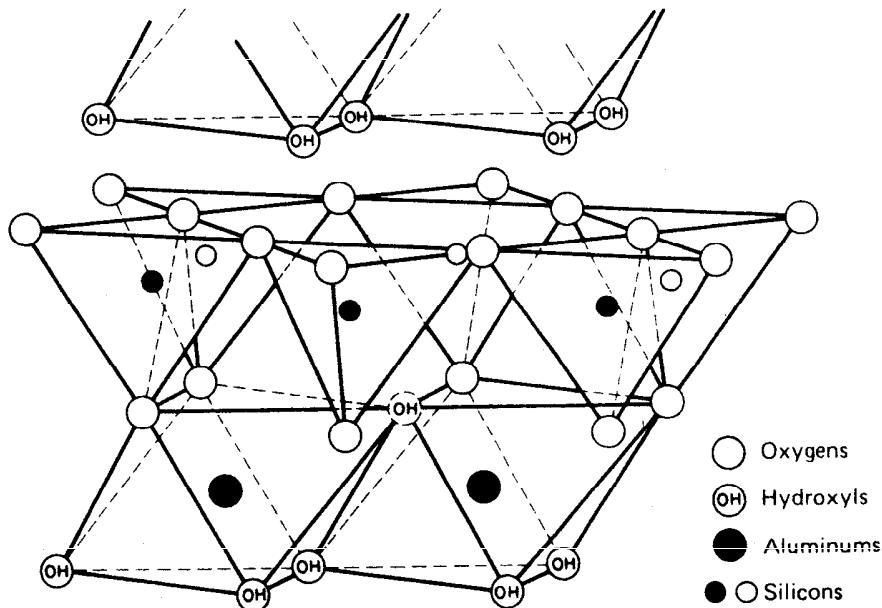


Fig. 4.4 Atomic structure of kaolinite (after Grim, 1959).

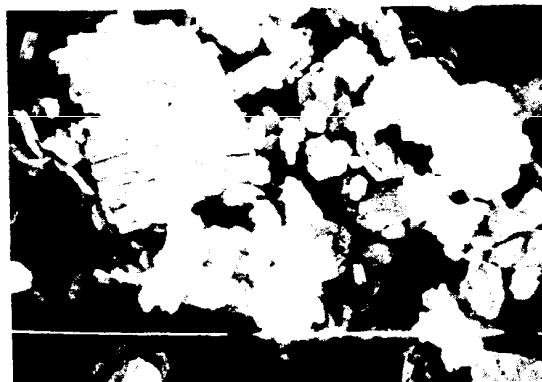


Fig. 4.5 Scanning electron micrograph of a well-crystallized kaolinite from Georgia. The length of the light bar is 5  $\mu\text{m}$  (photograph by R. D. Holtz).

and extends indefinitely in the other two directions. A kaolinite crystal, then, consists of a stack of several layers of the basic 0.72 nm layer. Successive layers of the basic layer are held together by hydrogen bonds between the hydroxyls of the octahedral sheet and the oxygens of the tetrahedral sheet. Since the hydrogen bond is very strong, it prevents hydration and allows the layers to stack up to make a rather large crystal. A typical kaolin crystal can be 70 to 100 layers thick. Figure 4.5 is a scanning electron micrograph (SEM) of kaolinite.

Kaolinite is the primary constituent in china clay; it is also used in the paper, paint, and pharmaceutical industries. For example, as a pharmaceutical it is used in *Kao*pectate and Rolaids.

Another 1:1 mineral related to kaolinite is *halloysite*. It differs from kaolinite in that when it was formed it somehow became hydrated between the layers, causing a distortion or random stacking in the crystal lattice so that it is tubular in shape (Fig. 4.6). The water can easily be driven out from between the layers by heating or even air drying, and the process is irreversible. That is, the halloysite will not rehydrate when water is added. Halloysite, although not very common, occasionally plays an important



Fig. 4.6 Scanning electron micrograph of halloysite from Colorado. The length of the light bar is 5  $\mu\text{m}$  (photograph by R. D. Holtz).

engineering role. Classification and compaction tests made on air-dried samples can give markedly different results than tests on samples at their natural water content. If the soil will not be air dried in the field, it can be extremely important that laboratory tests be carried out at the field water contents so that the results will have some validity.

*Montmorillonite*, also sometimes called *smectite*, is an important mineral composed of two silica sheets and one alumina (gibbsite) sheet (Fig. 4.7). Thus montmorillonite is called a 2:1 mineral. The octahedral sheet is between the two silica sheets with the tips of the tetrahedrons combining with the hydroxyls of the octahedral sheet to form a single layer, as shown in Fig. 4.8. The thickness of each 2:1 layer is about 0.96 nm, and like kaolinite the layers extend indefinitely in the other two directions. Because the bonding by van der Waals' forces between the tops of the silica sheets is weak and there is a net negative charge deficiency in the octahedral sheet, water and exchangeable ions can enter and separate

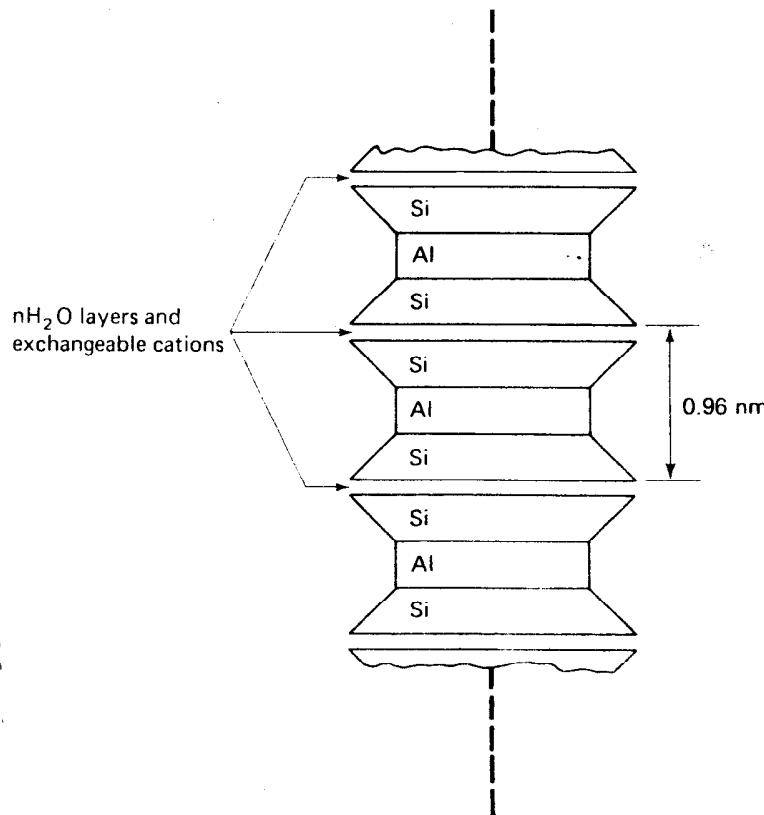


Fig. 4.7 Schematic diagram of the structure of montmorillonite (after Lambe, 1953).

## Clay Minerals and Soil Structure

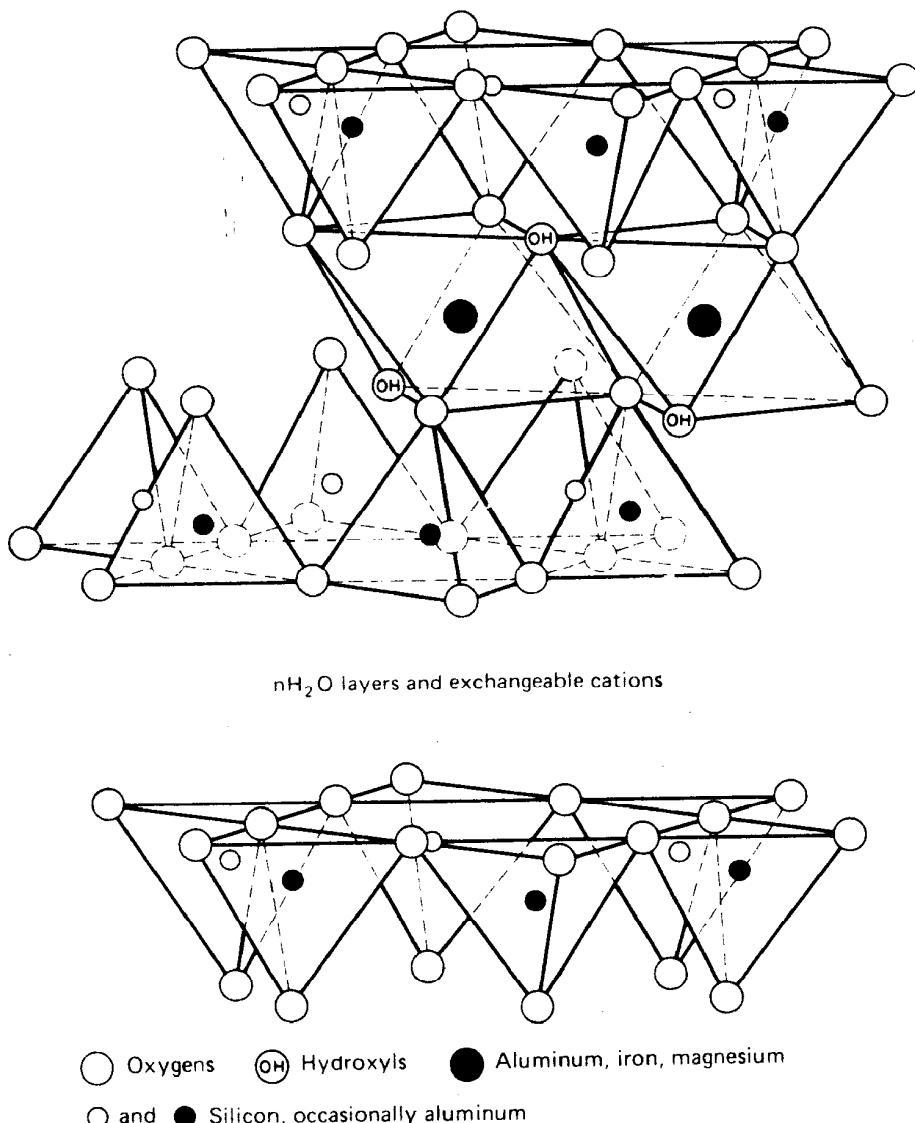


Fig. 4.8 Atomic structure of montmorillonite (after Grim, 1959).

the layers. Thus montmorillonite crystals can be very small (Fig. 4.9), but at the same time they have a very strong attraction for water. Soils containing montmorillonite are very susceptible to swelling as they change (increase) water content, and the swelling pressures developed can easily damage light structures and highway pavements. Montmorillonite is also the primary constituent in drilling mud and kitty litter, and it has many

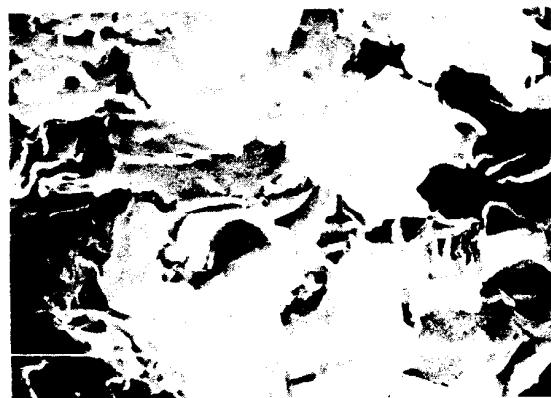


Fig. 4.9 Scanning electron micrograph of Na-montmorillonite from Wyoming. The length of the light bar is 5  $\mu\text{m}$  (photograph by R. D. Holtz).

other important industrial and pharmaceutical applications. It is even used in chocolate bars!

*Illite*, discovered by Prof. R. E. Grim of the University of Illinois, is another important constituent of clay soils. It also has a 2:1 structure similar to montmorillonite, but the interlayers are bonded together with a potassium atom. Remember the hexagonal hole in the silica sheet (Fig. 4.1d)? It has almost exactly the right diameter so that a potassium atom just fills that hexagonal hole and rather strongly bonds the layers together (Fig. 4.10). In addition, there is some isomorphous substitution of aluminium for silicon in the silica sheet.

Illites have a crystal structure similar to the mica minerals but with less potassium and less isomorphous substitution; thus they are chemically much more active than the other micas. Figure 4.11 is a SEM of illite.

*Chlorite*, relatively common in clay soils, is made of repeating layers of a silica sheet, an alumina sheet, another silica, and then either a gibbsite (Al) or brucite (Mg) sheet (Fig. 4.12). It could be called a 2:1:1 mineral. Chlorite can also have considerable isomorphous substitution and be missing an occasional brucite or gibbsite layer; thus it may be susceptible to swelling because water can enter between the sheets. Generally, however, it is significantly less active than montmorillonite.

As mentioned previously, there are literally dozens of clay minerals, with virtually every conceivable combination of substituted ions, interlayer water, and exchangeable cations. Some of the more important from an engineering viewpoint include *vermiculite*, which is similar to montmorillonite, a 2:1 mineral, but it has only two interlayers of water. After it is dried at high temperature, which removes the interlayer water, "expanded" vermiculite makes an excellent insulation material. Another clay mineral, *attapulgite*, Fig. 4.13, does not have a sheet structure but is a chain silicate; it consequently has a needle or rodlike appearance. *Mixed-layer* minerals

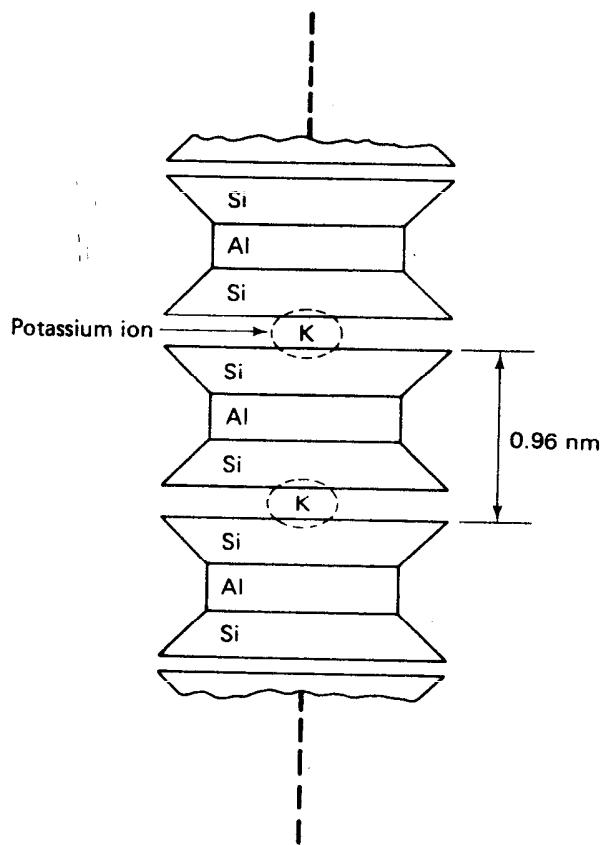


Fig. 4.10 Schematic diagram of illite (after Lambe, 1953).

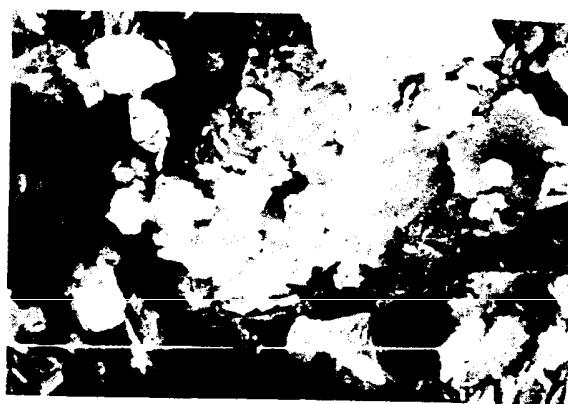
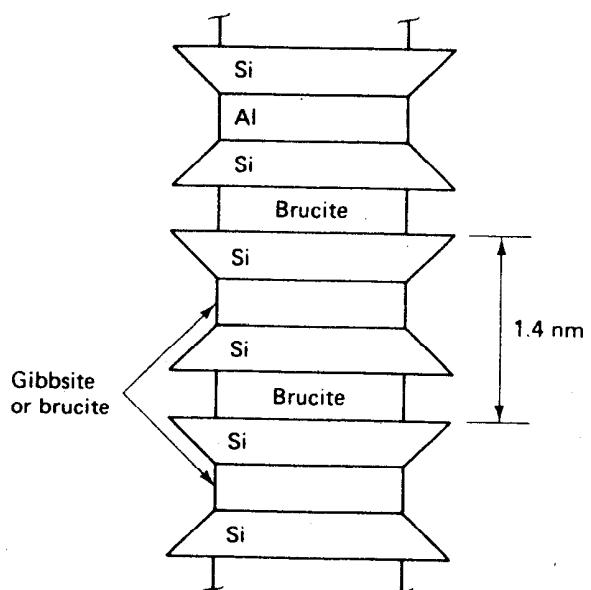
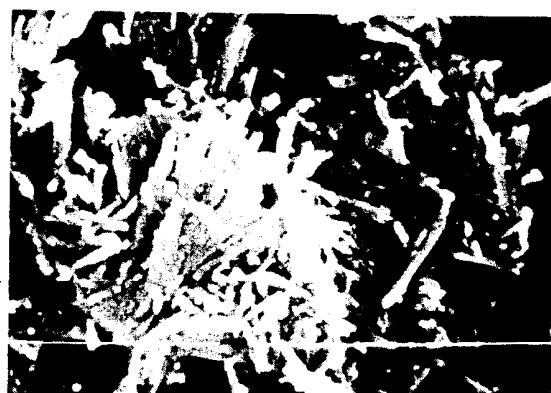


Fig. 4.11 Scanning electron micrograph of illite from Fithian, Illinois. The length of the light bar is 5  $\mu\text{m}$  (photograph by R. D. Holtz).



**Fig. 4.12 Schematic diagram of chlorite (after Mitchell, 1976).**



**Fig. 4.13 Scanning electron micrograph of attapulgite from Florida. The length of the space between the bars of light is  $0.5 \mu\text{m}$  (photograph by R. D. Holtz).**

are relatively common; they would include, for example, montmorillonite mixed with chlorite or illite. Because *alophane* is an alumino-silicate, it is often classified as a clay mineral. However, it is *amorphous*, which means it has no regular crystalline structure. Under specialized conditions of weathering, it may be a locally important constituent of clay soils.

#### 4.3 IDENTIFICATION OF CLAY MINERALS

Since the clay minerals are so very small, their identification by the usual optical mineralogical techniques used in geology is not possible so other means must be employed to identify them. From your engineering materials courses, you may remember that materials with regular or repeating patterns of crystal structure will diffract X-rays. Different minerals with different crystalline structures will have different *X-ray diffraction* patterns, and in fact these different patterns were how the minerals were identified in the first place. The patterns for the common minerals are published, and it is relatively simple to compare the diffraction pattern of your unknown with the patterns of known minerals. There is a problem, however, with soils which are mixtures of clay minerals, soils which contain organics and other non-clay mineral constituents, and soils with mixed-layer minerals. Usually a detailed quantitative analysis is impossible — about all that one can tell is which minerals are present and roughly how much of each.

Another technique that is sometimes used to identify clay minerals is *differential thermal analysis* (DTA). A specimen of the unknown soil along with an inert control substance is continuously heated to several hundred degrees in an electric furnace, and certain changes in temperature occur because of the particular structure of the clay minerals. The changes occur at specific temperatures for specific minerals, and the record of these changes may be compared with those of known minerals.

*Electron microscopy*, both transmission and scanning, can be used to identify clay minerals in a soil sample, but the process is not easy and/or quantitative.

A simple approach suggested by Prof. Casagrande is to use the Atterberg limits. It was mentioned (Sec. 2.8) that the activity has been related to specific active or inactive clays. Montmorillonites will be highly active since they are very small and have large plasticity indices. Use of Casagrande's plasticity chart (Fig. 3.2) can also tell you just about as much, at least from an engineering point of view, as the more sophisticated diffraction and DTA analyses. The procedure is shown in Fig. 4.14. You simply locate your sample on the LL-PI chart, and compare its location

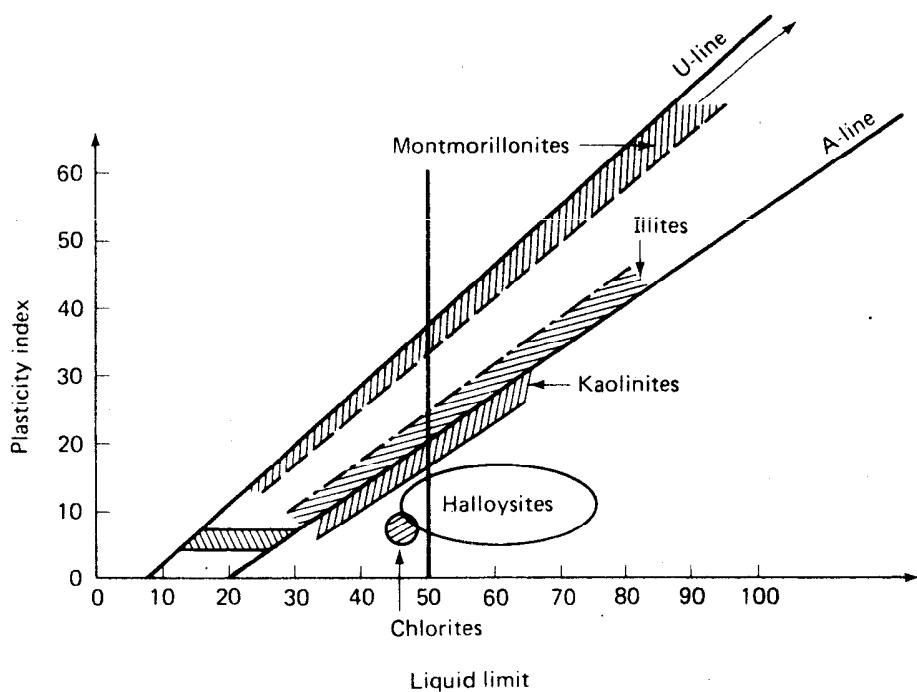


Fig. 4.14 Location of common clay minerals on Casagrande's plasticity chart (developed from Casagrande, 1948, and data in Mitchell, 1976).

with those of known minerals. If your sample has Atterberg limits that plot high above the A-line near the U-line, then chances are that it contains a lot of active clay minerals such as montmorillonite. Even if the soil is classified as a CL, for example a sandy clay (CL), and still plots near the U-line, the clay portion of the soil is predominantly montmorillonite. The glacial lake clays from around the Great Lakes region in the United States and Canada are predominantly illitic and they plot right above the A-line. Scandinavian marine clays which are illitic also plot in this region. Kaolinates, which are relatively inactive minerals, plot right below the A-line. Even though they are technically clays, they behave like ML-MH materials.

#### 4.4 SPECIFIC SURFACE

*Specific surface* is the ratio of the surface area of a material to either its mass or volume. In terms of volume

$$\text{specific surface} = \text{surface area}/\text{volume} \quad (4-1)$$

The physical significance of specific surface can be demonstrated using a  $1 \times 1 \times 1$  cm cube.

$$\text{specific surface} = \frac{6(1 \text{ cm}^2)}{1 \text{ cm}^3} = 6/\text{cm} = 0.6/\text{mm}$$

If the cube is 1 mm on a side, the specific surface would be

$$\frac{6(1 \text{ mm}^2)}{1 \text{ mm}^3} = 6/\text{mm}$$

If the cube is  $1 \mu\text{m}$  on a side, the specific surface would be

$$\frac{6(1 \mu\text{m}^2)}{1 \mu\text{m}^3} = 6/\mu\text{m} = 6000/\text{mm}$$

This illustrates that large particles, whether cubes or soil particles, have smaller surface areas per unit of volume and thus smaller specific surfaces than small particles. To obtain the specific surface in terms of mass, you just divide the value in terms of volume by the mass density  $\rho_s$ ; units would then be  $\text{m}^2/\text{g}$  or  $\text{m}^2/\text{kg}$ .

Now, if sufficient water was present to just dampen the surface area of the cubes in the above example, it would take ten times as much water to wet the surface of all the grains when the cubes were 1 mm on a side than when the same volume occupied a single cube of  $1 \text{ cm}^3$ . Note also that if one were trying to remove water from the surface wet soil, there would be ten times as much water to remove from the smaller grains.

Specific surface is inversely proportional to the grain size of a soil. We generally do not compute the specific surface for practical cases since the soil grains are too irregular in shape to do so. But it should be clear that a soil mass made up of many small particles will have on the average a larger specific surface than the same mass made up of large particles.

From the concept of specific surface, we would expect larger moisture contents for fine-grained soils than for coarse-grained soils, all other things such as void ratio and soil structure being equal.

You may recall from your materials courses that specific surface is a primary factor in concrete and asphalt mix design. In both cases it is necessary to provide sufficient cement paste or asphalt to coat the aggregate surfaces.

#### 4.5 INTERACTION BETWEEN WATER AND CLAY MINERALS

As mentioned previously, water usually doesn't have much effect on the behavior of granular soils. For example, the shear strength of a sand is approximately the same whether it is dry or saturated. An important

exception to this fact is the case of water present in loose deposits of sand subjected to dynamic loadings such as earthquakes or blasts.

On the other hand, fine-grained soils, especially clay soils, are strongly influenced by the presence of water. The variation of water content gives rise to plasticity, and the Atterberg limits are an indication of this influence. Grain size distribution only rarely is a governing factor in the behavior of fine-grained soils.

Why is water important in fine-grained soils? Recall the discussion of specific surface, in the previous section, where the smaller the particle, the larger the specific surface. Clay minerals, being relatively small particles, have large specific surfaces, and everything else being equal, you might expect that they would have very active surfaces.

The relative sizes of four common clay minerals and their specific surfaces are shown in Fig. 4.15. Kaolinite, the largest clay mineral, has a

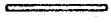
Edge View	Typical Thickness (nm)	Typical Diameter (nm)	Specific Surface ( $\text{km}^2/\text{kg}$ )
	3	100-1000	0.8
	30	10 000	0.08
	30	10 000	0.08
	50-2000	300-4000	0.015

Fig. 4.15 Average values of relative sizes, thicknesses, and specific surfaces of the common clay minerals (after Yong and Warkentin, 1975).

thickness or edge dimension of about  $1 \mu\text{m}$ , while montmorillonite, the smallest clay mineral, has a thickness of only a few nanometres. Since the crystals have roughly the same average "diameter," at least within an order of magnitude, it is not surprising that the specific surfaces are so different. Of course, there are rather wide variations in the sizes of the crystals depending on weathering and other factors, but the values given are average values. Since surface activity is related to the particle size, you can see why montmorillonite, for example, is more "active" than kaolinite. Similarly, the surface activity of a sand or silt grain is practically zero.

In Sec. 2.8, we defined the *activity* of a clay as

$$A = \frac{\text{PI}}{\text{clay fraction}} \quad (2-24)$$

where the clay fraction is usually taken as the percentage of the sample less than  $2 \mu\text{m}$  (Skempton, 1953). We mentioned that there was a pretty good correlation between activity and the type of clay mineral. This correlation is shown in Table 4-1.

Now, it seems that clay particles are almost always hydrated in nature; that is, there are layers of water surrounding each crystal of clay. This water is called *adsorbed water*. As discussed in the next section, the structure of clay soils and thus their engineering properties ultimately depend on the nature of this adsorbed water layer.

How is water adsorbed on the surface of a clay particle? First, you may recall from chemistry or materials courses that water is a *dipolar* molecule (Fig. 4.16). Even though water is electrically neutral, it has two separate centers of charge, one positive and one negative. Thus the water molecule is electrostatically attracted to the surface of the clay crystal. Secondly, water is held to the clay crystal by *hydrogen bonding* (hydrogen

**TABLE 4-1 Activities of Various Minerals\***

Mineral	Activity
Na-montmorillonite	4-7
Ca-montmorillonite	1.5
Illite	0.5-1.3
Kaolinite	0.3-0.5
Halloysite (dehydrated)	0.5
Halloysite (hydrated)	0.1
Attapulgite	0.5-1.2
Allophane	0.5-1.2
Mica (muscovite)	0.2
Calcite	0.2
Quartz	0

\*After Skempton (1953) and Mitchell (1976).

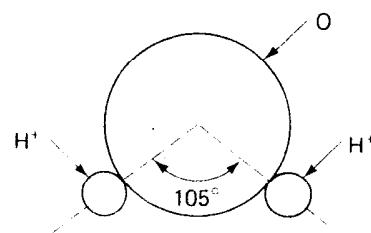


Fig. 4.16 Schematic diagram of a water molecule (after Lambe, 1953).

of the water is attracted to the oxygens or hydroxyls on the surface of the clay). The third factor is that the negatively charged clay surface also attracts cations present in the water. Since all cations are hydrated to some extent, depending on the ion, cations also contribute to the attraction of water to the clay surface. Of these three factors, hydrogen bonding is probably the most important factor.

The attraction of water to the clay surface is very strong near the surface and diminishes with distance from that surface. It seems that the water molecules right at the surface are very tightly held and strongly oriented. Measurements show that some thermodynamic and electrical properties of the water next to the clay surface are different than that of "free water" (Mitchell, 1976).

The source of the negative charge at the surface of the clay crystal results from both isomorphous substitution, mentioned earlier, and imperfections in the crystal lattice, especially at the surface. "Broken" edges contribute greatly to unsatisfied valence charges at the edges of the crystal. Since the crystal wants to be electrically neutral, cations in the water may be strongly attracted to the clay, depending on the amount of negative charge present. Different clays have different charge deficiencies and thus have different tendencies to attract the exchangeable cations. They are called *exchangeable* since one cation can easily be exchanged with one of the same valence or by two of one-half the valence of the original cation. As might be expected from their relative sizes and specific surfaces, montmorillonite has a much greater charge deficiency and thus a much greater attraction for exchangeable cations than kaolinite. Illite and chlorite are intermediate in this respect.

Calcium and magnesium are the predominant exchangeable cations in soils, whereas potassium and sodium are less common. Aluminium and hydrogen are common in acidic soils. The depositional environment as well as subsequent weathering and leaching will govern what ions are present in a particular soil deposit. As might be expected, marine clays are predominately sodium and magnesium since these are the most common cations in sea water. Cation exchange or replacement is further complicated by the presence of organic matter.

The ease of replacement or exchange of cations depends on several factors, primarily the valence of the cation. Higher valence cations easily replace cations of lower valence. For ions of the same valence, the size of the hydrated ion becomes important; the larger the ion, the greater the replacement power. A further complication is the fact that potassium, even though it is monovalent, fits into the hexagonal holes in the silica sheet. Thus it will be very strongly held on the clay surface, and it will have a greater replacement power than sodium, for example, which is also monovalent. The cations can be listed in *approximate* order of their replacement ability. The specific order depends on the type of clay, which ion is being replaced, and the concentration of the various ions in the water. In order of increasing replacement power the ions are



There are several practical consequences of ion exchange. The use of chemicals to stabilize or strengthen soils is possible because of ion exchange. For example, lime ( $\text{CaOH}$ ) stabilizes a sodium clay soil by replacing the sodium ions in the clay since calcium has a greater replacing power than sodium. The swelling of sodium montmorillonitic clays can be significantly reduced by the addition of lime.

What does a clay particle look like with adsorbed water on it? Figure 4.17 shows a sodium montmorillonite and kaolinite crystal with layers of adsorbed water. Note that the thickness of the adsorbed water is approximately the same, but because of the size differences the montmorillonite will have much greater activity, higher plasticity, and greater swelling, shrinkage, and volume change due to loading.

In this section only a brief overview of the very complex subject of the interaction between water and clay minerals has been presented. For additional information, you should consult Yong and Warkentin (1975) and Mitchell (1976) and references included therein.

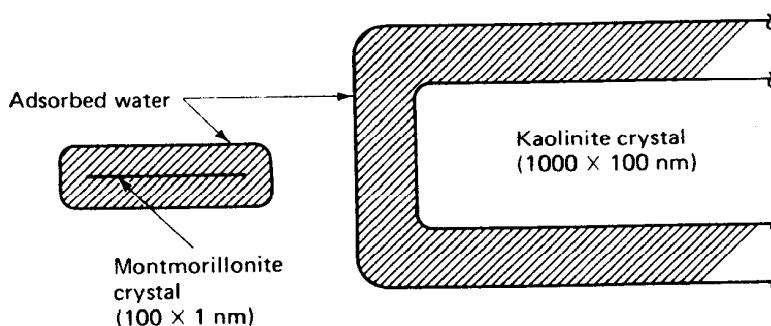


Fig. 4.17 Relative sizes of adsorbed water layers on sodium montmorillonite and sodium kaolinite (after Lambe, 1958a).

## 4.6 INTERACTION OF CLAY PARTICLES

The association of clay minerals and their adsorbed water layer provides the physical basis for soil structure. The individual clay particles interact through their adsorbed water layers, and thus the presence of different ions, organic materials, different concentrations, etc., affect or contribute to the multitude of soil structures found in natural soil deposits. Clay particles can repulse each other electrostatically, but the process depends on the ion concentration, interparticle spacing, and other factors. Similarly, there can be attraction of the individual particles due to the tendency for hydrogen bonding, van der Waals' forces, and other types of chemical and organic bonds. The interparticle force or potential fields decrease with increasing distance from the mineral surface, as shown in Fig. 4.18. The actual shape of the potential curve will depend on the valence and concentration of the dissolved ion and on the nature of the bonding forces.

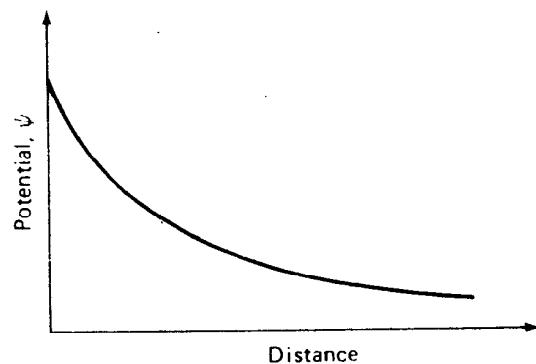


Fig. 4.18 Chemical, electrostatic, etc., potential versus distance from the clay mineral surface.

Particles can flocculate or be repelled (disperse, separate). They can flocculate in several possible configurations; edge-to-face is the most common, but edge-to-edge and face-to-face flocculation are also possible. The tendency towards flocculation will depend on *increasing* one or more of the following (Lambe, 1958a):

Concentration of the electrolyte  
Valence of the ion  
Temperature

or *decreasing* one or more of the following:

Dielectric constant of the pore fluid  
Size of the hydrated ion  
pH  
Anion adsorption

Just about all natural clay soils are flocculated to some extent. Only in very dilute solutions (at very high water content) is dispersion of clay particles possible, and this might occur in a sedimentary deposit during deposition.

#### 4.7 SOIL STRUCTURE AND FABRIC

In geotechnical engineering practice, the *structure* of a soil is taken to mean both the geometric arrangement of the particles or mineral grains as well as the interparticle forces which may act between them. Soil *fabric* refers only to the geometric arrangement of the particles. In granular or cohesionless soils, the interparticle forces are very small, so both the fabric and structure of gravels, sands, and to some extent silts are the same. On the contrary, however, interparticle forces are relatively large in fine-grained cohesive soils, and thus both these forces and the fabric of such soils must be considered as the structure of the soil. The structure strongly affects or, some would say, governs the engineering behavior of a particular soil. All the clay structures found in nature and described in the next section result from some combination of these factors, the geologic environment at deposition, the subsequent geologic and engineering stress history, and the nature of the clay mineral. We study these very complicated factors because they fundamentally affect soil behavior and the engineering properties of soil. Geotechnical engineers must consider the soil structure and fabric at least qualitatively when cohesive soils are encountered in engineering practice.

A complete description of the structure of a fine-grained cohesive soil requires a knowledge of both the interparticle forces as well as the geometrical arrangement (fabric) of the particles. Since it is extremely difficult, if not impossible, to directly measure the interparticle force fields surrounding clay particles, most studies of cohesive soil structure involve only the fabric of these soils, and from the fabric certain inferences are made about the interparticle forces.

#### 4.8 COHESIVE SOIL FABRICS

Classification of cohesive soil fabrics into simple systems involving only a few clay particles is not really possible. Single grain or single particle units occur only rarely in nature and then in only very dilute clay-water systems under special environmental conditions. From recent studies of real clay soils with the scanning electron microscope (SEM), the

individual clay particles seem to always be aggregated or flocculated together in submicroscopic fabric units called *domains*. Domains then in turn group together to form *clusters*, which are large enough to be seen with a visible light microscope. Clusters group together to form *peds* and even groups of peds. Peds can be seen without a microscope, and they and other macrostructural features such as joints and fissures constitute the macrofabric system. A schematic sketch of this system proposed by Yong and Sheeran (1973) is shown in Fig. 4.19; a microscopic view of a marine clay is also included (Pusch, 1973). Collins and McGown (1974) suggest a somewhat more elaborate system for describing microfabric features in natural soils. They propose three types of features:

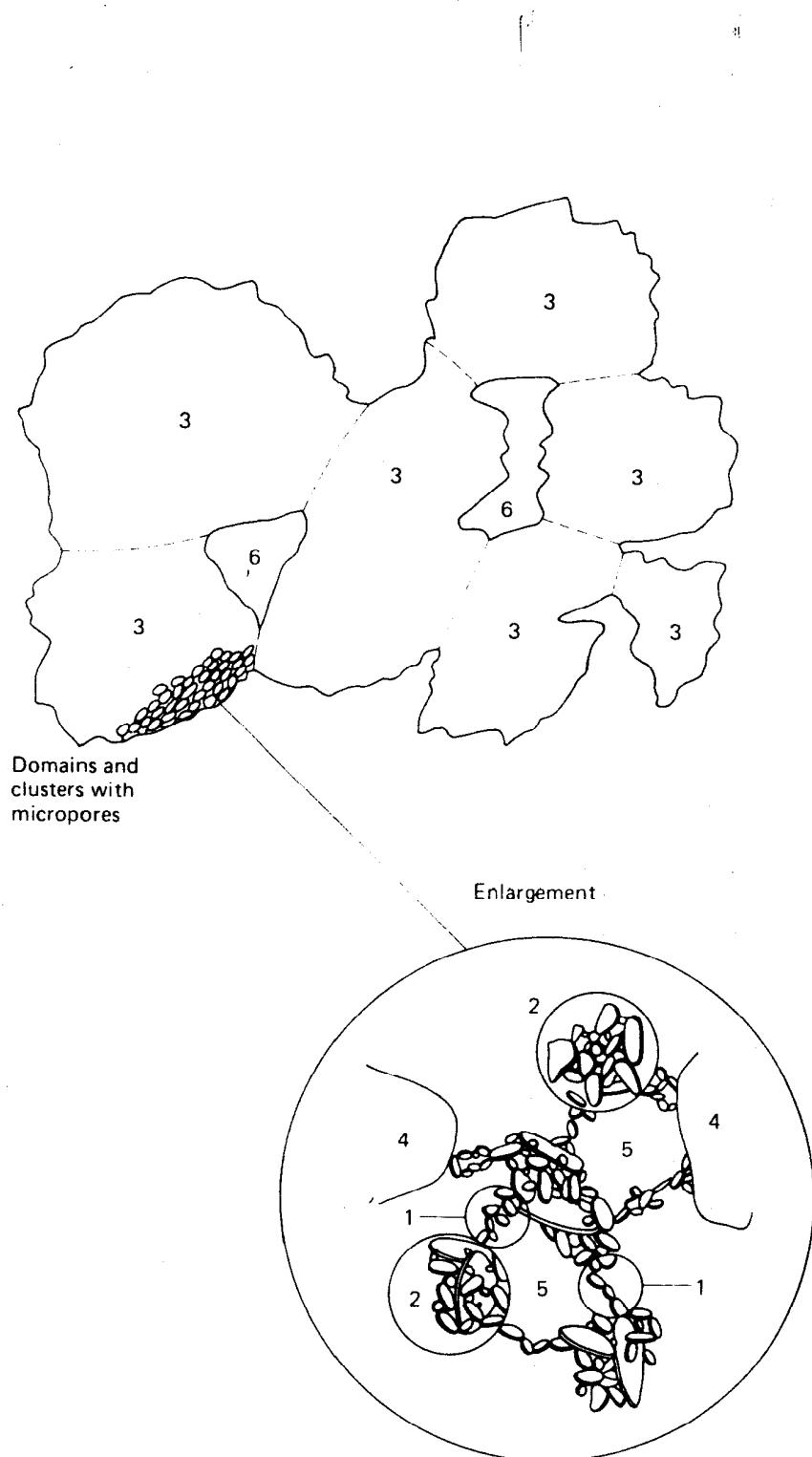
1. *Elementary particle arrangements*, which consist of single forms of particle interaction at the level of individual clay, silt, or sand particles (Figs. 4.20a and b) or interaction between small groups of clay platelets (Fig. 4.20c) or clothed silt and sand particles (Fig. 4.20d).
2. *Particle assemblages*, which are units of particle organization having definable physical boundaries and a specific mechanical function. Particle assemblages consist of one or more forms of elementary particle arrangements or smaller particle assemblages, and they are shown in Fig. 4.21.
3. *Pore spaces* within and between elementary particle arrangements and particle assemblages.

Collins and McGown (1974) show microphotographs of several natural soils which illustrate their proposed system.

A SEM photograph of a silty clay ped from Norway is shown in Fig. 4.22. Note how complex the structure appears, which suggests that the engineering behavior is also probably quite complex.

*Macrostructure*, including the stratigraphy of fine-grained soil deposits, has an important influence on soil behavior in engineering practice. Joints, fissures, silt and sand seams, root holes, varves, and other "defects" often control the engineering behavior of the entire soil mass. Usually, the strength of a soil mass is significantly less along a crack or fissure than through the intact material, and thus if the defect happens to be unfavorably oriented with respect to the applied engineering stresses, instability or failure may occur. As another example, the drainage of a clay layer can be markedly affected by the presence of a silt or sand layer or seam. Consequently, in any engineering problem involving stability, settlements, or drainage, the geotechnical engineer must investigate carefully the clay macrostructure.

Microstructure is more important from a fundamental than an engineering viewpoint, although an understanding of the microstructure aids



**Fig. 4.19** Schematic diagram of the soil microfabric and macrofabric system proposed by Yong and Sheeran (1973) and Pusch (1973): 1, domain; 2, cluster; 3, ped; 4, silt grain; 5, micropore; and 6, macropore.

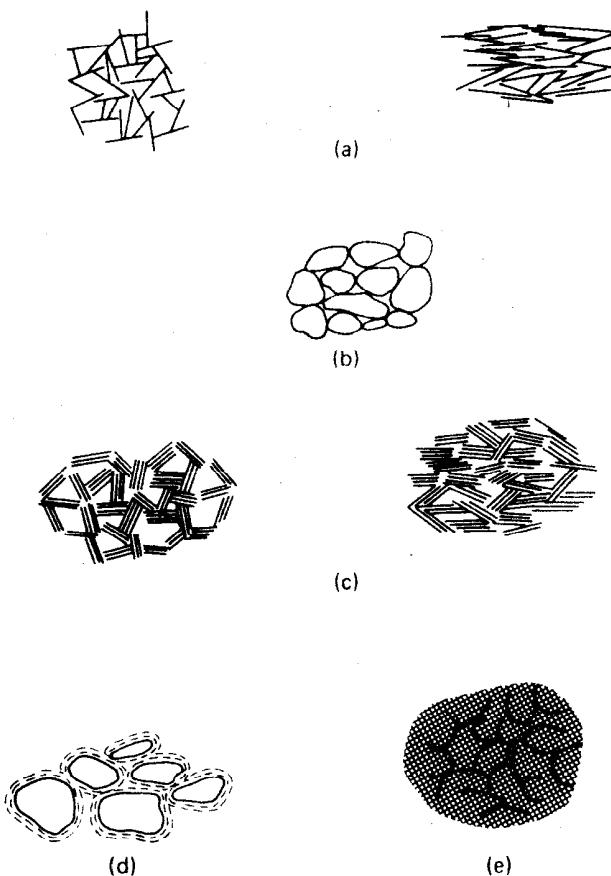
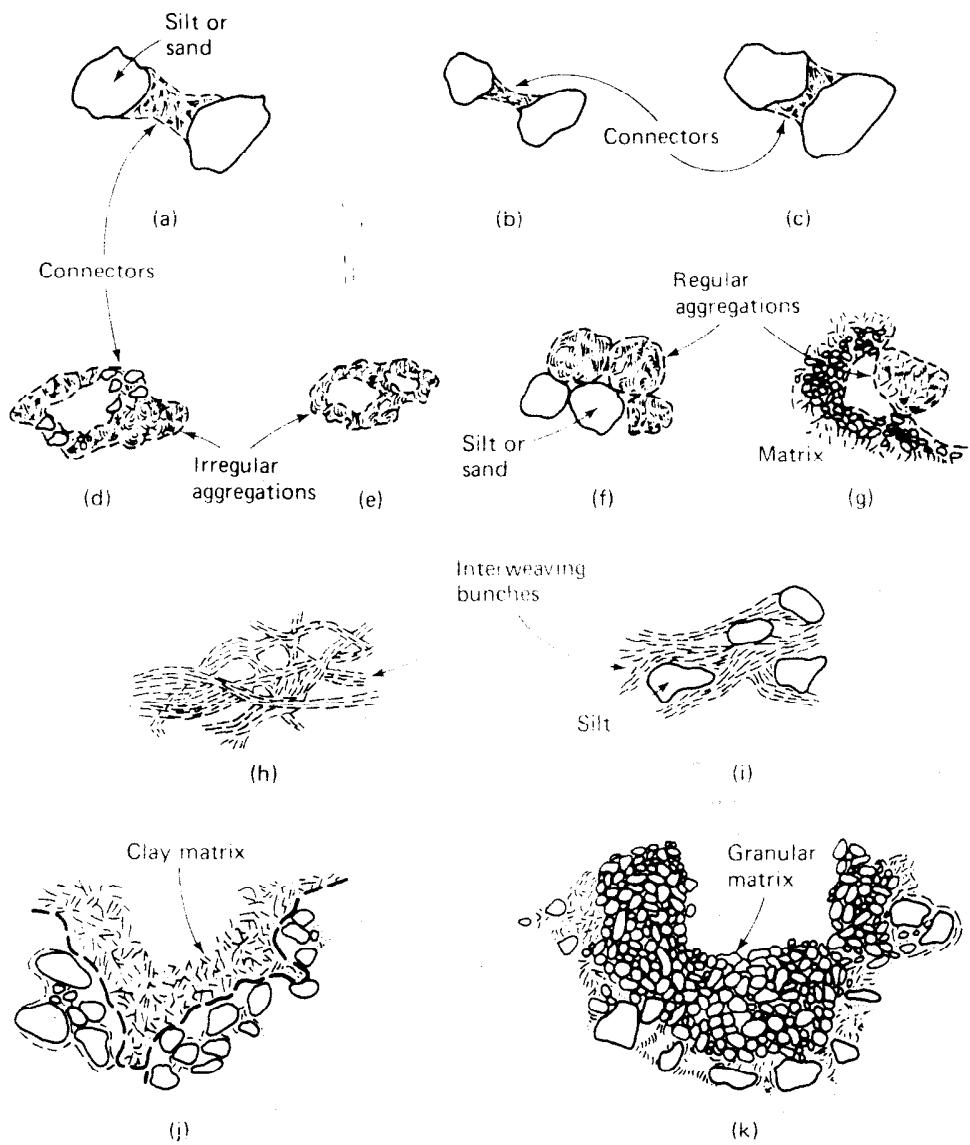


Fig. 4.20 Schematic representations of elementary particle arrangements: (a) individual clay platelet interaction; (b) individual silt or sand particle interaction; (c) clay platelet group interaction; (d) clothed silt or sand particle interaction; (e) partly discernible particle interaction (after Collins and McGown, 1974).

in a general understanding of soil behavior. The microstructure of a clay reflects the entire geologic and stress history of that deposit. Virtually everything that ever happened to that soil which will affect the engineering response of the clay is imprinted in some manner on the microstructure. The microstructure reflects the depositional history and environment of the deposit, its weathering history, both chemical and physical: in effect its stress history, that is, all changes caused both geologically and by man.

Recent research on clay microstructure suggests that the greatest single factor influencing the final structure of a clay is the electrochemical environment existing at the time of sedimentation. Flocculated structures or aggregations can result during sedimentation in virtually all depositional environments, whether marine, brackish, or in fresh water. The degree of



**Fig. 4.21** Schematic representations of particle assemblages: (a), (b), and (c) connectors; (d) irregular aggregations linked by connector assemblages; (e) irregular aggregations forming a honeycomb arrangement; (f) regular aggregations interacting with silt or sand grains; (g) regular aggregation interacting with particle matrix; (h) interweaving bunches of clay; (i) interweaving bunches of clay with silt inclusions; (j) clay particle matrix; (k) granular particle matrix (after Collins and McGown, 1974).

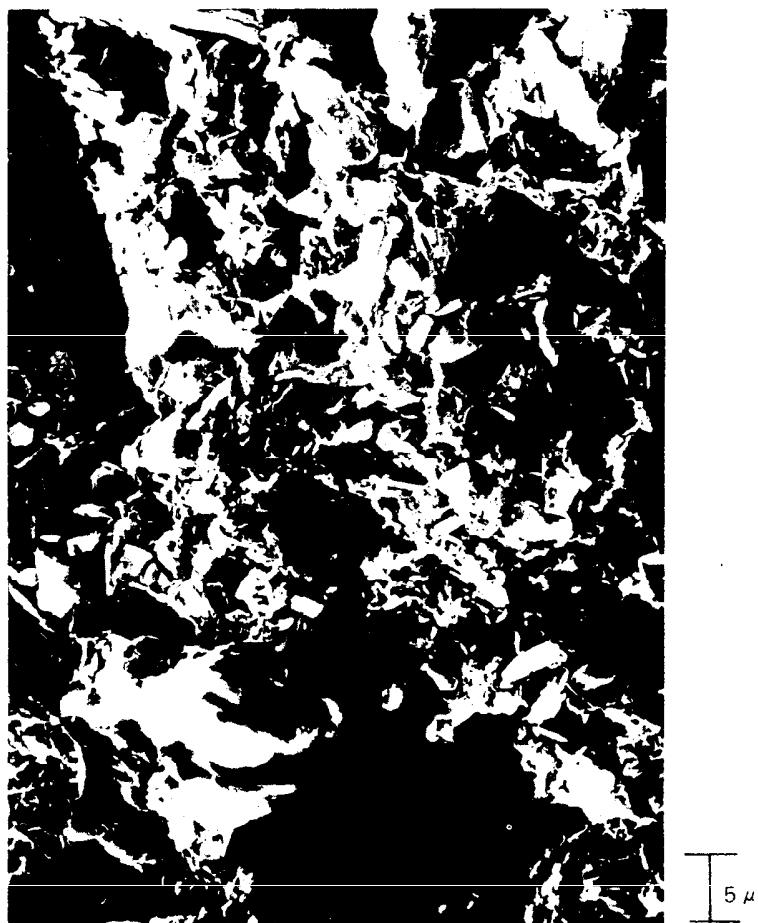


Fig. 4.22 Drammen silty clay: large ped of silt and clay with weak links to other peds (from Barden and McGown, 1973; photograph courtesy of A. McGown).

openness of the structure is apparently influenced to a large degree by the clay mineralogy as well as the amount and angularity of silt grains present. Silt particles have been observed to have a thin skin of apparently strongly oriented clay particles or even amorphous materials parallel to their surfaces. Some grain-to-grain contacts of silt particles have been observed (see Fig. 4.23), but at present it is difficult to ascertain whether actual mineral contact occurs in clays.

In summary, the structure of most naturally occurring clay deposits is highly complex. The engineering behavior of these deposits is strongly influenced by both the macro- and the microstructure. At present, no quantitative connection exists between microstructure and the engineering



Fig. 4.23 SEM of silt grain-to-grain contact in Swedish till (from McGown, 1973).

properties, but it is important for the engineer to have an appreciation of the complexity of the structure of cohesive soils and their relation to engineering behavior.

#### 4.9 COHESIONLESS SOIL FABRICS

Grains of soil which can settle out of a soil-fluid suspension independently of other grains (generally larger than 0.01 to 0.02 mm) will form what is called a *single grained* structure. This is the structure of, for example, a sand or gravel pile, and some sand-silt mixtures. The weight of the grains causes them to settle and come to equilibrium in the bottom of the fluid as soon as the velocity can no longer support the particles in suspension.

Deposition media include both air (loess deposits, sand dunes; grain size generally < 0.05 mm) and water (rivers, beaches, etc.).

Single grained structures, shown in Fig. 4.24, may be "loose" (high void ratio or low density) or "dense" (low void ratio or high density). Depending on the grain size distribution as well as the packing or arrangement of the grains, a wide range of void ratios is possible. Table 4-2 lists some typical values for a variety of granular soils. It is possible, under some conditions of deposition, for a granular material to achieve a honeycombed structure (Fig. 4.25) which can have a very high void ratio. Such a structure is meta-stable. The grain arches can support static loads, but the

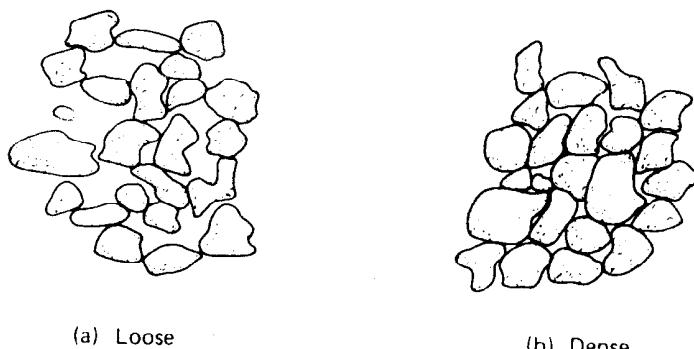


Fig. 4.24 Single grained soil structures.

structure is very sensitive to collapse when vibrated or loaded dynamically. The presence of water in very loose grain structures also can alter their engineering behavior. Phenomena typical of loose grain structures, such as *bulking*, a capillary phenomenon, and *quicksand* are discussed in Chapters 6 and 7.

The greatest possible void ratio or loosest possible condition of a soil is called the *maximum void ratio* ( $e_{\max}$ ). It is determined in the laboratory by pouring dry sand very carefully with no vibration into a calibrated mold of known volume. From the weight of sand in the mold,  $e_{\max}$  can be calculated. Similarly, the *minimum void ratio* ( $e_{\min}$ ) is the densest possible condition that a given soil can attain. The value of  $e_{\min}$  is determined by vibrating a known weight of dry sand into a known volume and calculating the void ratio. The range of possible void ratios for some typical granular soils are shown in Table 4-2.

The relative density  $D_r$ , also called the density index  $I_D$ , is used to compare the void ratio  $e$  of a given soil with the maximum and minimum void ratios. Relative density is defined as

$$D_r = I_D = \frac{e_{\max} - e}{e_{\max} - e_{\min}} \times 100(\%) \quad (4-2)$$

and is usually expressed as a percentage. Relative density can also be stated in terms of maximum and minimum dry densities as

$$D_r = I_D = \frac{\frac{1}{\rho_d \text{ min}} - \frac{1}{\rho_d}}{\frac{1}{\rho_d \text{ min}} - \frac{1}{\rho_d \text{ max}}} \times 100(\%) \quad (4-3)$$

where  $\rho_d$  = dry density of the soil with void ratio  $e$ ,

$\rho_d \text{ min}$  = minimum dry density of the soil with the void ratio  $e_{\max}$ , and

$\rho_d \text{ max}$  = maximum dry density of the soil with the void ratio  $e_{\min}$ .

The relative density of a natural soil deposit very strongly affects its engineering behavior. Consequently, it is important to conduct laboratory

**TABLE 4-2 Typical Index Properties for Granular Soils\***

	Particle Size and Gradation				Voids			
	Approx. Size Range	$D_{10}$ (mm)	$C_u$	Void Ratio $e_{\max}$ (loose)	Void Ratio		Porosity (%)	
					$D_{\max}$	$D_{\min}$		
<b>1. Uniform materials:</b>								
(a) Equal spheres	—	—	—	1.0	0.92	0.35	48	26
(b) Standard Ottawa sand	0.84	0.59	0.67	1.1	0.80	0.50	44	33
(c) Clean, uniform sand (fine or medium)	—	—	—	1.2 to 2.0	1.0	0.40	50	29
(d) Uniform, inorganic silt	0.05	0.005	0.012	1.2 to 2.0	1.1	0.40	52	29
<b>2. Well-graded materials:</b>								
(a) Silty sand	2.0	0.005	0.02	5 to 10	0.90	0.30	47	23
(b) Clean, fine to coarse sand	2.0	0.05	0.09	4 to 6	0.95	0.20	49	17
(c) Micaeous sand	—	—	—	—	1.2	0.40	55	29
(d) Silty sand and gravel	100	0.005	0.02	15 to 300	0.85	0.14	46	12

\*Modified after B. K. Hough (1969), *Basic Soils Engineering*, © 1969 by the Ronald Press, Co. Reprinted by permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

TABLE 4-2 Continued

Density ( $Mg/m^3$ ) <sup>†</sup>						
		Dry Density, $\rho_d$	Wet Density, $\rho$		Submerged Density, $\rho'$	
Min.	100%	Max.	Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
Mod.			(loose)	(dense)	(loose)	(dense)
	Proctor					
1. Uniform materials:						
(a) Equal spheres (theoretical values)	—	—	—	—	—	—
(b) Standard Ottawa sand	1.49	—	1.78	1.51	2.12	0.93
(c) Clean, uniform sand (fine or medium)	1.35	1.86	1.92	1.37	2.20	0.85
(d) Uniform, inorganic silt	1.29	—	1.92	1.31	2.20	0.83
2. Well-graded materials:						
(a) Silty sand	1.41	1.98	2.06	1.43	2.30	0.88
(b) Clean, fine to coarse sand	1.38	2.14	2.23	1.40	2.39	0.86
(c) Micaceous sand	1.23	—	1.95	1.24	2.23	0.77
(d) Silty sand and gravel	1.44	—	2.36	1.46	2.51	0.91

<sup>†</sup>Tabulation is based on  $\rho_t = 2.65 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ . Multiply by 62.4 to obtain  $\text{lbf/ft}^3$ .

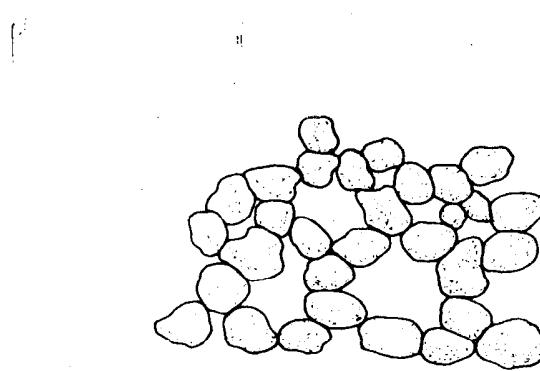


Fig. 4.25 Honeycomb structure.

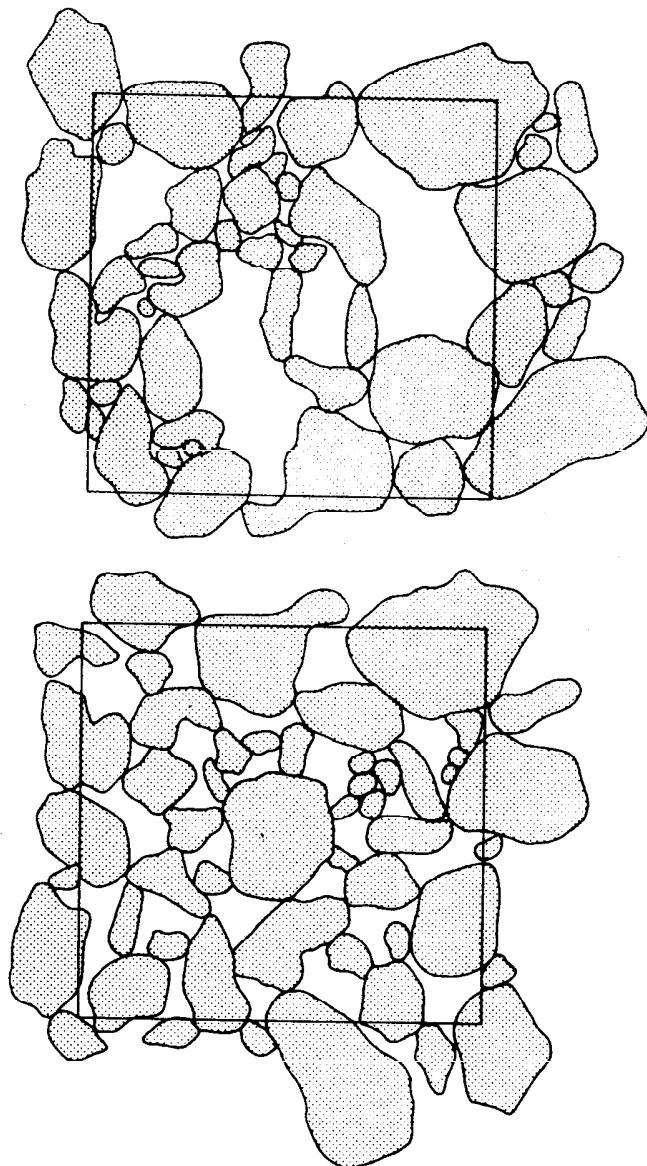


Fig. 4.26 Potential ranges in packing of identical particles at the same relative density (G. A. Leonards, 1976, personal communication).

tests on samples of the sand at the same relative density as in the field. Sampling of loose granular materials, especially at depths greater than a few metres, is very difficult. Since the materials are very sensitive to even the slightest vibration, one is never sure the sample has the same density as the natural soil deposit. Therefore different kinds of penetrometers are used in engineering practice, and the penetration resistance values are roughly correlated with relative density. For deposits at shallow depths where direct access is possible, other techniques have been developed to measure the in-place density of compacted soils. These techniques are discussed in detail in Chapter 5.

Finally, it should be noted in this discussion of the structure of granular soils that relative density alone is not sufficient to characterize their engineering properties. It is possible for two sands, for example, to have identical void ratios and relative densities but significantly different fabrics and thus significantly different engineering behaviors. Figure 4.26 is a two-dimensional example of such a fabric. Both "sands" are identical—they have the same grain size distributions and the same void ratios. But their fabrics are obviously very different. Stress history is another factor that must be considered when dealing with sands and gravels in engineering practice. Deposits of granular materials which have been preloaded by nature or man will have very different stress-strain properties and therefore very different settlement responses (Lambrechts and Leonards, 1978).

## PROBLEMS

- 4-1. Calculate the specific surface of a cube (a) 10 mm, (b) 1 mm, (c) 1  $\mu\text{m}$ , and (d) 1 nm on a side. Calculate the specific surface in terms of both areas and  $\text{m}^2/\text{kg}$ . Assume for the latter case that  $\rho_s = 2.65 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ .
- 4-2. Calculate the specific surface of (a) tennis balls, (b) ping pong balls, (c) ball bearings 1 mm in diameter, and (d) fly ash with approximately spherical particles of 50  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter.
- 4-3. The values of  $e_{\min}$  and  $e_{\max}$  for a pure silica sand ( $\rho_s = 2.65 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ ) were found to be 0.46 and 0.66, respectively. (a) What is the corresponding range in dry density? (b) If the in situ void ratio is 0.63, what is the density index?

4-4. Describe briefly the crystalline or atomic structure of the following ten minerals. Also list any important distinguishing characteristics.

- |                 |               |               |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------|
| (a) Smectite    | (b) Brucite   | (c) Gibbsite  |
| (d) Attapulgite | (e) Bentonite | (f) Allophane |
| (g) Halloysite  | (h) Illite    | (i) Mica      |
| (j) Chlorite    |               |               |

4-5. Describe the following types of bonding agents found with clay minerals.

- |                           |                   |
|---------------------------|-------------------|
| (a) Hydrogen bond         | (b) Covalent bond |
| (c) van der Waals' forces | (d) James bond    |

4-6. The wet density of a sand in an embankment was found to be  $1.9 \text{ Mg/m}^3$  and the field water content was 10%. In the laboratory, the density of the solids was found to be  $2.66 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ , and the maximum and minimum void ratios were 0.62 and 0.44, respectively. Calculate the relative density of the sand in the field.

4-7. Which sheet, silica or alumina, would you wear to a toga party? Why?

4-8. Given the particles in Fig. 4.26, is it realistic to show that all the particles are in contact with each other for this given plane? Any given plane? Why?

## **Compaction**

---

### **5.1 INTRODUCTION**

In geotechnical engineering practice the soils at a given site are often less than ideal for the intended purpose. They may be weak, highly compressible, or have a higher permeability than desirable from an engineering or economic point of view. It would seem reasonable in such instances to simply relocate the structure or facility. However, considerations other than geotechnical often govern the location of a structure, and the engineer is forced to design for the site at hand. One possibility is to adapt the foundation to the geotechnical conditions at the site. Another possibility is to try to *stabilize* or improve the engineering properties of the soils at the site. Depending on the circumstances, this second approach may be the most economical solution to the problem. Stabilization is usually *mechanical* or *chemical*, but even thermal and electrical stabilization have occasionally been used or considered.

In this chapter we are primarily concerned with mechanical stabilization or densification, also called *compaction*. Chemical stabilization includes the mixing or injecting of chemical substances into the soil. Portland cement, lime, asphalt, calcium chloride, sodium chloride, and paper mill wastes are common chemical stabilization agents.

Other methods for stabilizing unsuitable foundation soils include *dewatering*, which is the removal or reduction of unwanted excess ground water pressures, and *preloading*, in which the foundation soils are *surcharged* with a temporary overload so as to increase the strength and decrease anticipated settlement. The details of these and other methods are described in textbooks on foundation and highway engineering. A good state

of the art discussion and reference to methods for improving the engineering characteristics of soils is provided in the ASCE (1978) committee report "Soil Improvement—History, Capabilities, and Outlook."

Compaction and stabilization are very important when soil is used as an engineering material; that is, the structure itself is made of soil. Earth dams and highway embankments are examples of *earth structures*. If soils are dumped or otherwise placed at random in a fill, the result will be an embankment with low stability and high settlement. In fact, prior to the 1930's, highway and railroad fills were usually constructed by end-dumping soils from wagons or trucks. There was very little attempt to compact or densify the soils, and failures of even moderately high embankments were common. Of course earthworks such as levees are almost as old as man, but these structures, for example in ancient China or India, were constructed by people carrying small baskets of earth and dumping them in the embankment. People walking over the dumped materials compacted and thus strengthened the soils. Even elephants have been used in some countries to compact soils, but research has shown that they are not very good at it (Meehan, 1967).

The following symbols are introduced in this chapter.

Symbol	Dimension	Unit	Definition
$D$	$L$	m	Depth of influence (Eq. 5-2)
$g$	$L/T^2$	$m/s^2$	Acceleration of gravity, $9.80665 m/s^2$
R.C.	—	(%)	Relative compaction (Eq. 5-3)
$W$	$M$	t	Mass of falling weight (Eq. 5-2)
$w_{opt}$ or OMC	—	(%)	Optimum water content; sometimes called the optimum moisture content (OMC)
$\rho_d \text{ max}$	$M/L^3$	$Mg/m^3$	Maximum dry density
$\rho_d \text{ field}$	$M/L^3$	$Mg/m^3$	Field dry density

## 5.2 COMPACTION

*Compaction* is the densification of soils by the application of mechanical energy. It may also involve a modification of the water content as well as the gradation of the soil. Cohesionless soils are efficiently compacted by vibration. In the field, hand-operated vibrating plates and motorized vibratory rollers of various sizes are very efficient for compacting sand and gravel soils. Rubber-tired equipment can also be used efficiently to compact sands. Even large free-falling weights have been used to dynamically compact loose granular fills. Some of these techniques are discussed later in this chapter.

Fine-grained and cohesive soils may be compacted in the laboratory by falling weights and hammers, by special "kneading" compactors, and even statically in a common loading machine or press. In the field, common compaction equipment includes hand-operated tampers, sheepfoot rollers, rubber-tired rollers, and other types of heavy compaction equipment (Sec. 5.5). Considerable compaction can also be obtained by proper routing of the hauling equipment over the embankment during construction.

The objective of compaction is the improvement of the engineering properties of the soil mass. There are several advantages which occur through compaction:

- Detrimental settlements can be reduced or prevented.
- Soil strength increases and slope stability can be improved.
- Bearing capacity of pavement subgrades can be improved.
- Undesirable volume changes, for example, caused by frost action, swelling, and shrinkage may be controlled.

### 5.3 THEORY OF COMPACTION

The fundamentals of compaction of cohesive soils are relatively new. R. R. Proctor in the early 1930's was building dams for the old Bureau of Waterworks and Supply in Los Angeles, and he developed the principles of compaction in a series of articles in *Engineering News-Record* (Proctor, 1933). In his honor, the standard laboratory compaction test which he developed is commonly called the *Proctor test*.

Proctor established that compaction is a function of four variables: (1) dry density  $\rho_d$ , (2) water content  $w$ , (3) compactive effort, and (4) soil type (gradation, presence of clay minerals, etc.). *Compactive effort* is a measure of the mechanical energy applied to a soil mass. In countries where British Engineering units are used, compactive effort is usually reported in  $\text{ft} \cdot \text{lbf}/\text{ft}^3$ , whereas the SI units are  $\text{J}/\text{m}^3$  ( $\text{J}$  = joules). Since  $1 \text{ J} = 1 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$ , and using the conversion factors in Appendix A, we can determine that  $1 \text{ ft} \cdot \text{lbf}/\text{ft}^3 = 47.88 \text{ J}/\text{m}^3$ . In the field, compactive effort is the number of passes or "coverages" of the roller of a certain type and weight on a given volume of soil. In the laboratory, *impact* or *dynamic*, *kneading*, and *static compaction* are usually employed. During *impact compaction*, which is the most common type, a hammer is dropped several times on a soil sample in a mold. The mass of the hammer, height of drop, number of drops, number of layers of soil, and the volume of the mold are specified. For example, in the *standard Proctor test* [also standard AASHTO

(1978), Designation T 99, and ASTM (1980), Designation D 698], the mass of the hammer is 2.495 kg (5.5 lb) and the height of fall is 304.88 mm (1 ft). The soil is placed in three layers in an approximately 1 litre ( $0.944 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m}^3$  or  $1/30 \text{ ft}^3$ ) mold, and each layer is tamped 25 times. Compactive effort can then be calculated as shown in Example 5.1.

### EXAMPLE 5.1

**Given:**

Standard Proctor test hammer and mold.

**Required:**

Calculate the compactive effort in both SI and British Engineering units.

**Solution:**

a. *SI units:*

$$\begin{aligned}\text{compactive effort} &= \frac{2.495 \text{ kg}(9.81 \text{ m/s}^2)(0.3048 \text{ m})(3 \text{ layers})(25 \text{ blows/layer})}{0.944 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m}^3} \\ &= 592.7 \text{ kJ/m}^3\end{aligned}$$

If exact values of  $g$  and the volume are used, the standard Proctor compactive effort is 592.576 kJ/m<sup>3</sup>.

b. *British Engineering units:*

$$\begin{aligned}\text{compactive effort} &= \frac{5.5 \text{ lbf}(1 \text{ ft})(3)(25)}{\frac{1}{30} \text{ ft}^3} \\ &= 12,375 \frac{\text{ft} \cdot \text{lbf}}{\text{ft}^3}\end{aligned}$$

This calculation is, strictly speaking, incorrect since the 5.5 lb hammer is really a mass not a weight. However, the differences are negligible.

---

For other types of compaction, the calculation of compactive effort is not so simple. In kneading compaction, for example, the tamper kneads the soil by applying a given pressure for a fraction of a second. The

kneading action is supposed to simulate the compaction produced by a sheepfoot roller and other types of field compaction equipment. In *static compaction*, the soil is simply pressed into a mold under a constant static stress in a laboratory testing machine.

The process of compaction for cohesive soils can best be illustrated by considering the common laboratory compaction or Proctor test. Several samples of the same soil, but at different water contents, are compacted according to the standard Proctor compaction test specifications given previously. Typically, the total or wet density and the actual water content of each compacted sample are measured. Then the dry density for each sample can be calculated from phase relationships we developed in Chapter 2.

$$\rho = \frac{M_t}{V_t} \quad (2-6)$$

$$\rho_d = \frac{\rho}{1 + w} \quad (2-14)$$

When the dry densities of each sample are determined and plotted versus the water contents for each sample, then a curve called a *compaction curve* for standard Proctor compaction is obtained (Fig. 5.1, curve A).

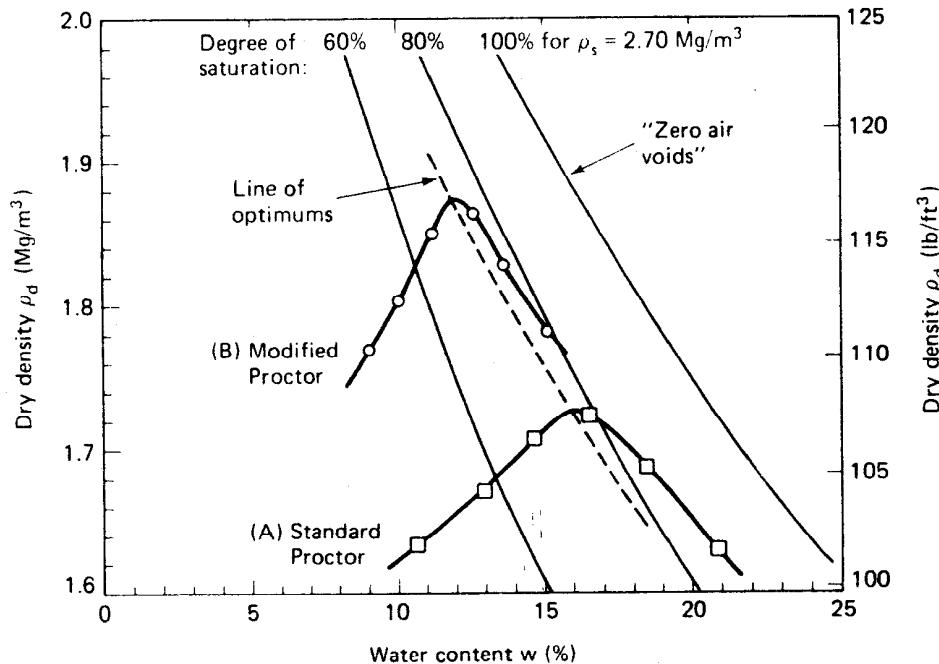


Fig. 5.1 Standard and modified Proctor compaction curves for Crosby B till.

Each data point on the curve represents a single compaction test, and usually four or five individual compaction tests are required to completely determine the compaction curve. This curve is unique for a given soil type, method of compaction and (constant) compactive effort. The peak point of the curve is an important point. Corresponding to the *maximum dry density*  $\rho_d \text{ max}$  is a water content known as the *optimum water content*  $w_{\text{opt}}$  (also known as the optimum moisture content, OMC). Note that the maximum dry density is only a maximum for a specific compactive effort and method of compaction. This does not necessarily reflect the maximum dry density that can be obtained in the field.

Typical values of maximum dry density are around 1.6 to 2.0 Mg/m<sup>3</sup> (100 to 125 lbf/ft<sup>3</sup>) with the maximum range from about 1.3 to 2.4 Mg/m<sup>3</sup> (80 to 150 lbf/ft<sup>3</sup>). (Densities are also given in British Engineering units because you are likely to encounter them in practice.) Typical optimum water contents are between 10% and 20%, with an outside maximum range of about 5% to 40%. Also shown on Fig. 5.1 are curves representing different degrees of saturation of the soil. From Eqs. 2-12 and 2-15, we can derive the equation for these theoretical curves.

$$\rho_d = \frac{\rho_w S}{w + \frac{\rho_w}{\rho_s} S} \quad (5-1)$$

The exact position of the degree of saturation curves depends only on the value of the density of the soil solids  $\rho_s$ . Note that at optimum water content for this particular soil,  $S$  is about 75%. Note too that the compaction curve, even at high water contents, never actually reaches the curve for "100% saturation" (traditionally called the *zero air voids* curve). And this is true even for higher compactive efforts, for example, curve *B* of Fig. 5.1. Curve *B* is the compaction curve obtained by the *modified Proctor compaction test* [modified AASHTO (1978), Designation T 180, and ASTM (1980), Designation D 1557]. This test utilizes a heavier hammer (4.536 kg or 10 lb), a greater height of fall (457 mm or 1.5 ft), and 5 layers tamped 25 times into a standard Proctor mold. You should verify that the compactive effort is 2693 kJ/m<sup>3</sup> or 56,250 ft-lbf/ft<sup>3</sup>. The modified test was developed during World War II by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers to better represent the compaction required for airfields to support heavy aircraft. The point is that increasing the compactive effort tends to increase the maximum dry density, as expected, but also decreases the optimum water content. A line drawn through the peak points of several compaction curves at different compactive efforts for the same soil will be almost parallel to a 100%  $S$  curve. It is called the *line of optimums*.

Typical compaction curves for different types of soils are illustrated in Fig. 5.2. Notice how sands that are well graded (SW soils, top curve) have a higher dry density than more uniform soils (SP soils, bottom curve). For clay soils, the maximum dry density tends to decrease as plasticity increases.

Why do we get compaction curves such as those shown in Fig. 5.1 and 5.2? Starting at low water contents, as the water content increases, the particles develop larger and larger water films around them, which tend to "lubricate" the particles and make them easier to be moved about and reoriented into a denser configuration. However we eventually reach a water content where the density does not increase any further. At this point, water starts to replace soil particles in the mold, and since  $\rho_w \ll \rho_s$ , the dry density curve starts to fall off, as is shown in Fig. 5.3. Note that no matter how much water is added, the soil never becomes completely saturated by compaction.

Compaction behavior of cohesive soils as described above is typical for both field and laboratory compaction. The curves obtained will vary

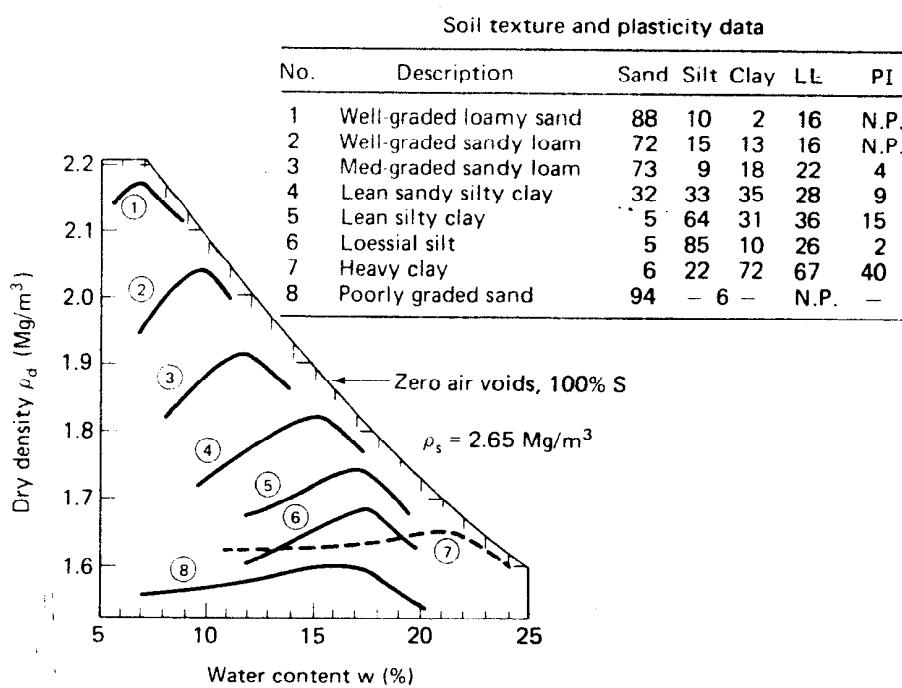


Fig. 5.2 Water content-dry density relationships for eight soils compacted according to the standard Proctor method (after Johnson and Sallberg, 1960).

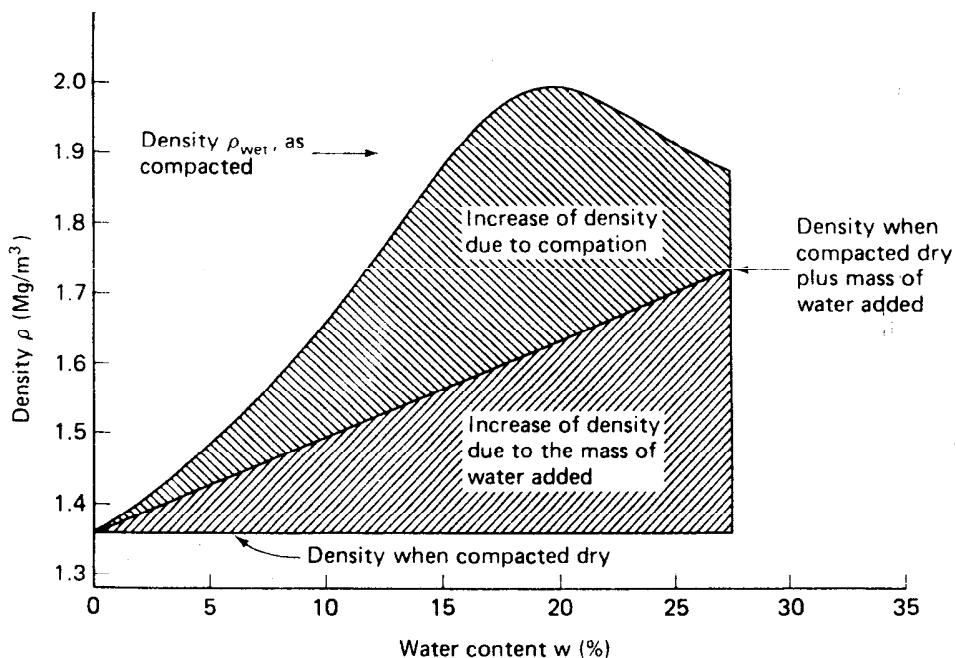


Fig. 5.3 The water content-density relationship indicating the increased density resulting from the addition of water and that due to the applied compaction effort. Soil is a silty clay, LL = 37, PI = 14, standard Proctor compaction (after Johnson and Sallberg, 1960).

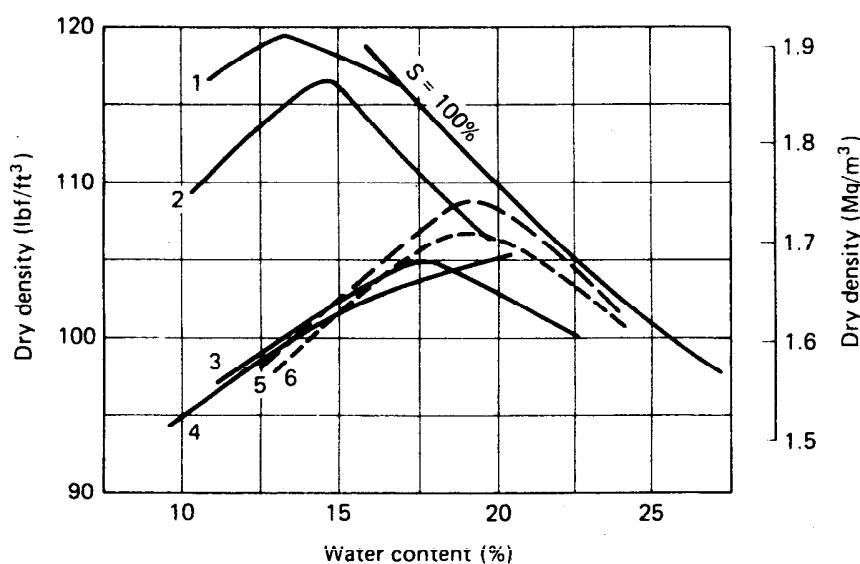


Fig. 5.4 Comparison of field and laboratory compaction. (1) Laboratory static compaction, 2000 psi; (2) modified Proctor; (3) standard Proctor; (4) laboratory static compaction, 200 psi; (5) field compaction, rubber-tired load, 6 coverages; (6) field compaction, sheepfoot roller, 6 passes. Note: Static compaction from top and bottom of soil sample. (After Turnbull, 1950, and as cited by Lambe and Whitman, 1969.)

somewhat, that is, have different shapes and positions on the  $\rho_d$  versus  $w$  plot, but in general the response will be similar to that shown in Fig. 5.4, where the same soil is compacted under different conditions. The standard and modified Proctor laboratory tests were developed as a standard of comparison for field compaction, that is, to see if the rolling or compaction was sufficient. The approximation to field compaction is not exact, as mentioned, since the standard laboratory compaction is a dynamic-impact type, whereas field compaction is essentially a kneading-type compaction. This difference led to the development of the Harvard miniature compactor (Wilson, 1970) as well as larger kneading compactors. Field compaction control procedures are described in Sec. 5.6.

#### 5.4 PROPERTIES AND STRUCTURE OF COMPACTED COHESIVE SOILS

The structure and thus the engineering properties of compacted cohesive soils will depend greatly on the method or type of compaction, the compactive effort applied, the soil type, and on the molding water content. Usually the water content of compacted soils is referenced to the optimum water content for a given type of compaction. Depending on their position, soils are called *dry of optimum*, *near or at optimum*, or *wet of optimum*. Research on compacted clays has shown that when they are compacted dry of optimum, the structure of the soils is essentially independent of the type of compaction (Seed and Chan, 1959). Wet of optimum, however, the type of compaction has a significant effect on the soil structure and thus on the strength, compressibility, etc., of the soil.

The comments in this section are very general, and you should keep in mind that the real fabric of compacted clays is about as complex as the fabric of natural clays described in Chapter 4. At the same compactive effort, with increasing water content, the soil fabric becomes increasingly oriented. Dry of optimum the soils are always flocculated, whereas wet of optimum the fabric becomes more oriented or dispersed. In Fig. 5.5, for example, the fabric at point C is more oriented than at point A. Now, if the compactive effort is increased, the soil tends to become more oriented, even dry of optimum. Again, referring to Fig. 5.5, a sample at point E is more oriented than at point A. Wet of optimum, the fabric at point D will be somewhat more oriented than at point B, although the effect is less significant than dry of optimum.

Permeability (Chapter 7) at constant compactive effort decreases with increasing water content and reaches a minimum at about the

**optimum.** If the compactive effort is increased, the coefficient of permeability decreases because the void ratio decreases (increasing dry unit weight). This change in permeability with molding water content is shown in Fig. 5.6a, where it can be seen that the permeability is about an order of magnitude higher when this soil is compacted dry of optimum than when it is compacted wet of optimum.

Compressibility (Chapter 8) of compacted clays is a function of the stress level imposed on the soil mass. At relatively low stress levels, clays compacted wet of optimum are more compressible. At high stress levels, the opposite is true. In Fig. 5.6b it can be seen that a larger change in void ratio (a decrease) takes place in the soil compacted wet of optimum for a given change (increase) in applied pressure.

Swelling of compacted clays is greater for those compacted dry of optimum. They have a relatively greater deficiency of water and therefore have a greater tendency to adsorb water and thus swell more. Soils dry of optimum are in general more sensitive to environmental changes such as changes in water content. This is just the opposite for shrinkage as shown in Fig. 5.7a, where samples compacted wet of optimum have the highest shrinkage. Also illustrated in the upper part of this figure is the effect of different methods of compacting the samples.

The strength of compacted clays is rather complex. However, for now, just remember that samples compacted dry of optimum have higher strengths than those compacted wet of optimum. The strength wet of optimum also depends somewhat on the type of compaction because of differences in soil structure. If the samples are soaked, the picture changes

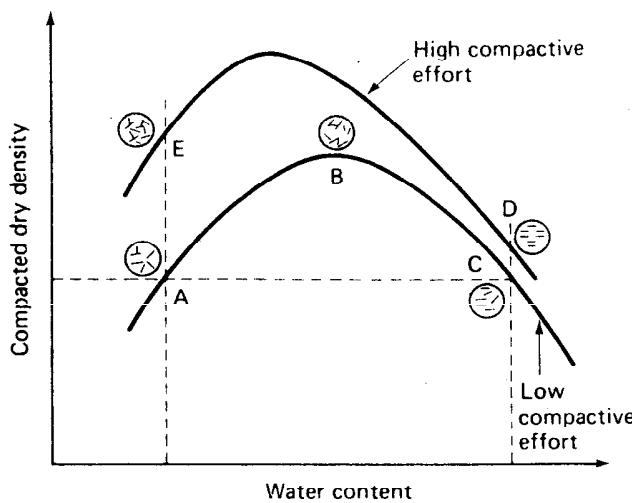
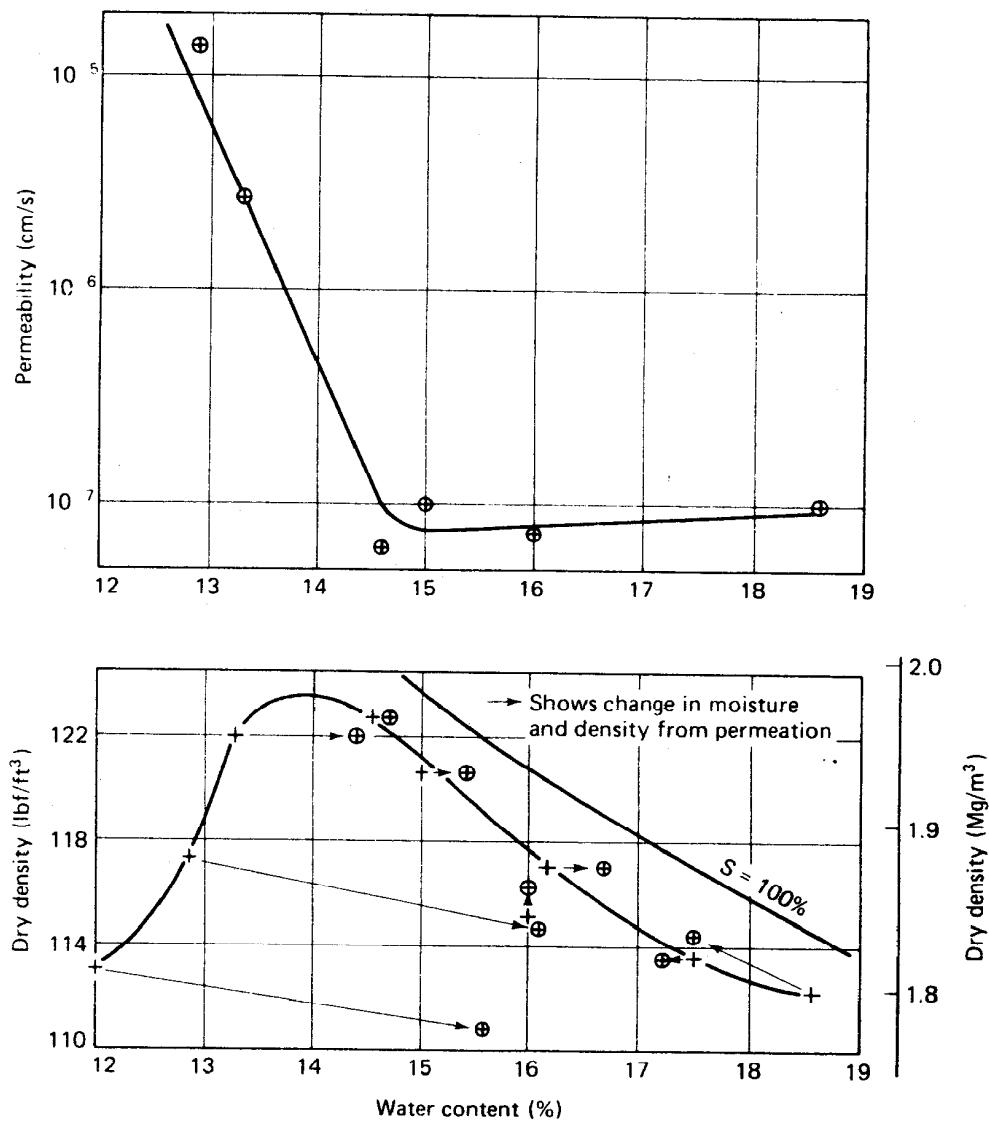


Fig. 5.5 Effect of compaction on soil structure (after Lambe, 1958a).



(a) Compaction-permeability tests on Jamaica sandy clay.

Fig. 5.6(a) Change in permeability with molding water content (after Lambe, 1958b).

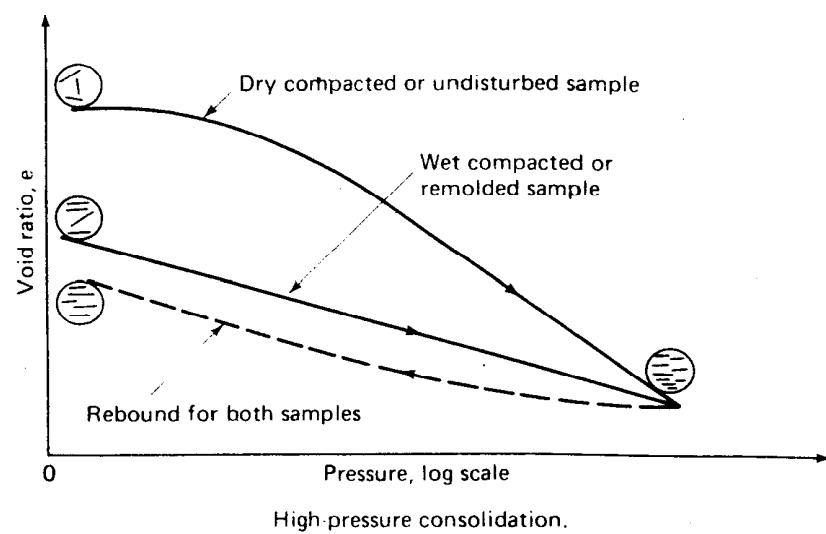
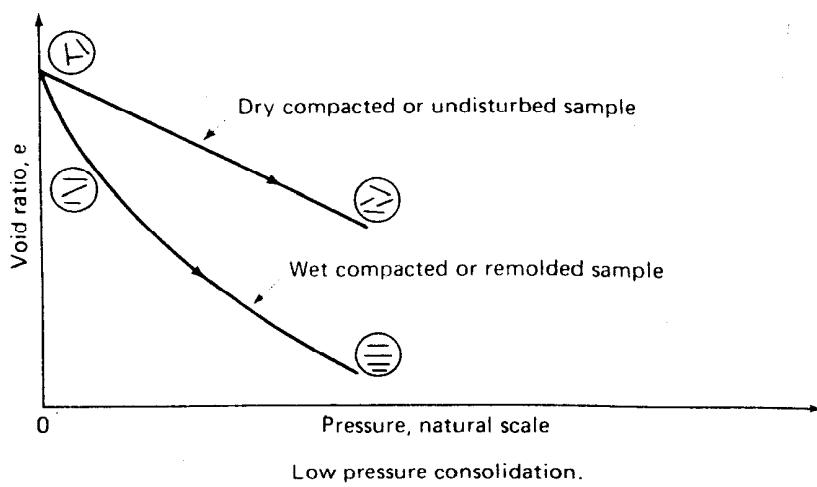
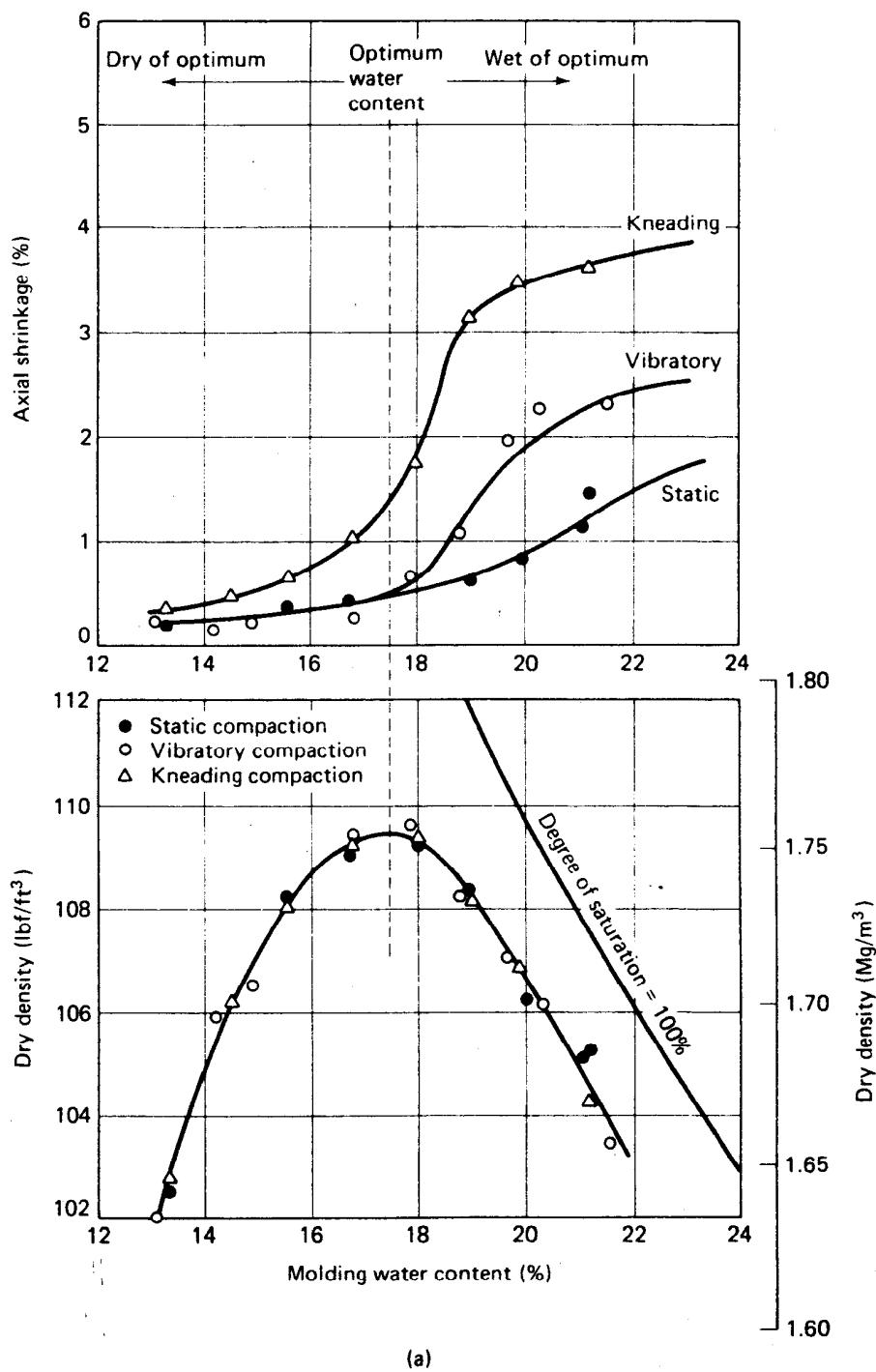
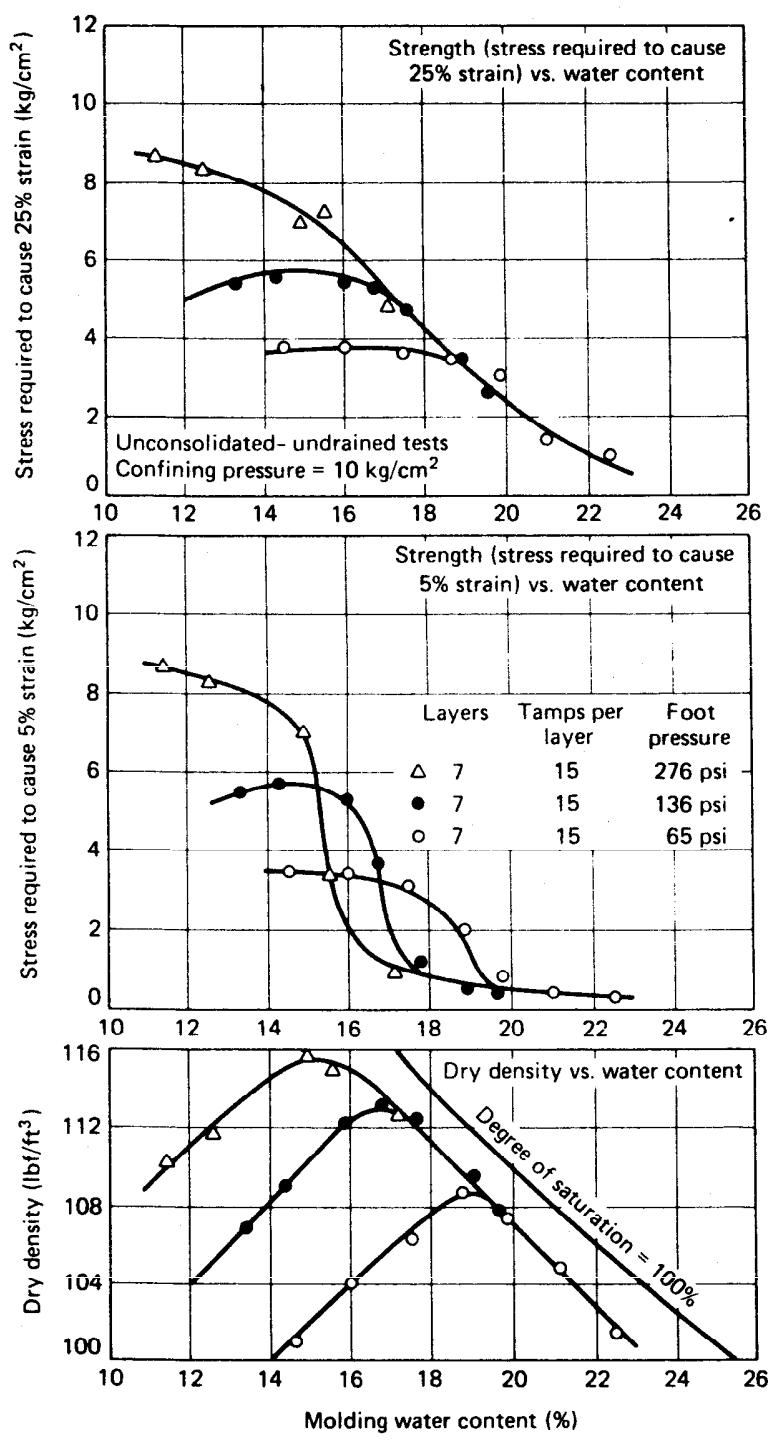


Fig. 5.6(b) Change in compressibility with molding water content (after Lambe, 1958b).



(a)

Fig. 5.7(a) Shrinkage as a function of water content and type of compaction (after Seed and Chan, 1959).



(b)

Fig. 5.7(b) Strength as a function of compactive effort and molding water content (after Seed and Chan, 1959).

**TABLE 5-1 Comparison of Soil Properties between Dry of Optimum and Wet of Optimum Compaction\***

Property	Comparison
1. Structure:	
A. Particle arrangement	Dry side more random
B. Water deficiency	Dry side more deficient; thus imbibes more water, swells more, has lower pore pressure
C. Permanence	Dry side structure sensitive to change
2. Permeability:	
A. Magnitude	Dry side more permeable
B. Permanence	Dry side permeability reduced much more by permeation
3. Compressibility:	
A. Magnitude	Wet side more compressible in low pressure range, dry side in high pressure range
B. Rate	Dry side consolidates more rapidly
4. Strength:	
A. As molded:	Dry side much higher
(a) Undrained	Dry side somewhat higher
(b) Drained	
B. After saturation:	Dry side somewhat higher if swelling prevented; wet side can be higher if swelling permitted
(a) Undrained	Dry side about the same or slightly greater
(b) Drained	Wet side higher
C. Pore water pressure at failure	Dry side much greater
D. Stress-strain modulus	Dry side more apt to be sensitive
E. Sensitivity	

\*After Lambe (1958b).

due to swelling, especially dry of optimum. The strength curves for a silty clay compacted by kneading compaction for three different compactive efforts are shown in Fig. 5.7b. They show the stress required to cause 25% strain (upper) and 5% strain (middle) for the three compactive efforts. The strengths are about the same wet of optimum and increase significantly on the dry side of optimum.

Note too that at a given water content wet of optimum, the stress at 5% strain is actually less for the higher compaction energies. This fact is also shown in Fig. 5.8, where strength is measured by the CBR (California bearing ratio) test. In this test, the resistance to penetration of a 3 in.<sup>2</sup> piston developed in a compacted specimen is compared to that developed by a standard sample of densely compacted crushed rock. The CBR is a common pavement design test. In Fig. 5.8 a greater compactive effort produces a greater CBR dry of optimum, as you would expect. But notice how the CBR is actually less wet of optimum for the higher compaction energies. This fact is important in the proper design and management of a compacted earth fill; we shall discuss its implication later in this chapter.

Table 5-1 from Lambe (1958b) is a summary of the effects of wet versus dry of optimum compaction on several engineering properties.

## 5.5 FIELD COMPACTION EQUIPMENT AND PROCEDURES

Soil to be used in a compacted fill is excavated from a *borrow area*. *Power shovels*, *draglines* and self-propelled *scrapers* or "pans" are used to excavate the borrow material. A self-loading scraper is shown in Fig. 5.9a and an elevating scraper in Fig. 5.9b. Sometimes "dozers" are necessary to help load the scraper. Scrapers may cut through layers of different materials, allowing several grain sizes to be mixed, for example. The power shovel mixes the soil by digging along a vertical surface, whereas the scraper mixes the soil by cutting across a sloping surface where different layers may be exposed.

The borrow area may be on site or several kilometres away. Scrapers, off the road vehicles, are often used to transport and spread the soil in *lifts* on the fill area. Trucks may be used as well, on or off the highway, and they may *end dump*, *side dump*, or *bottom dump* the fill material (Fig. 5.10a). For economic reasons, the hauling contractor usually tries to spread the fill material when dumping in order to reduce spreading time. However, unless the borrow materials are already within the desired water content range, the soil may need to be wetted, dried, or otherwise reworked. Where possible, the contractor directs his earth-moving equipment over previously

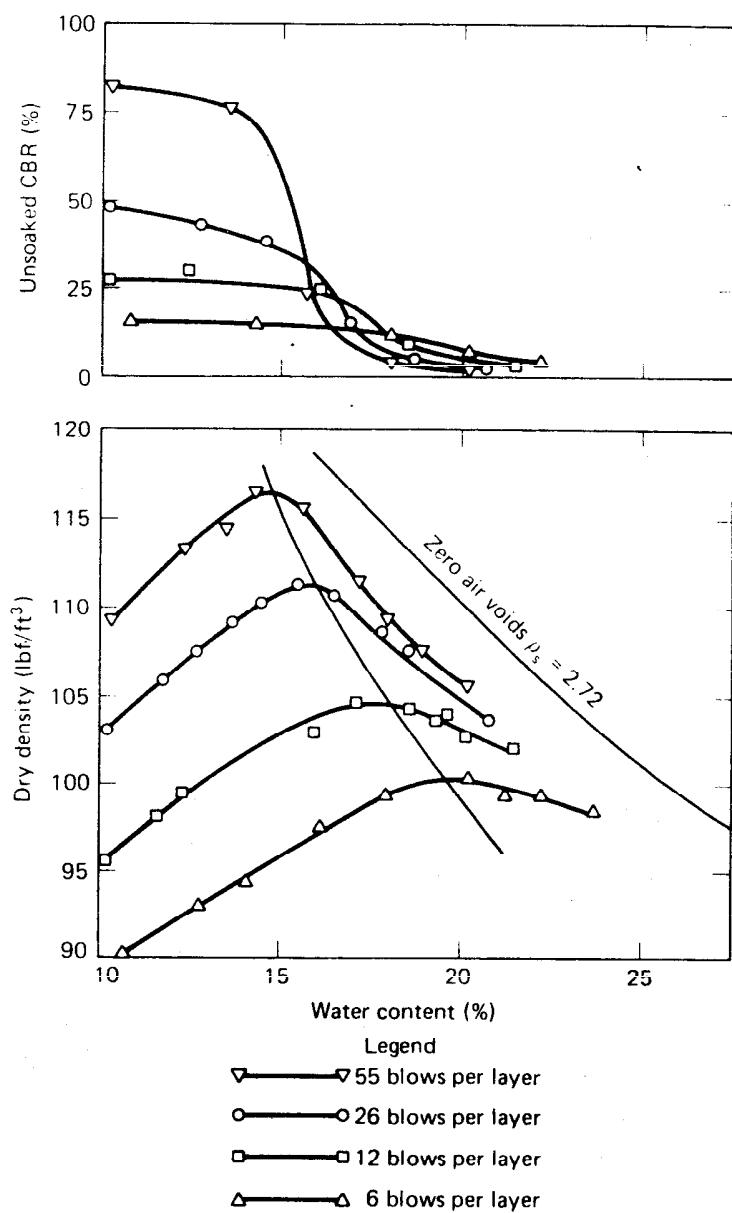
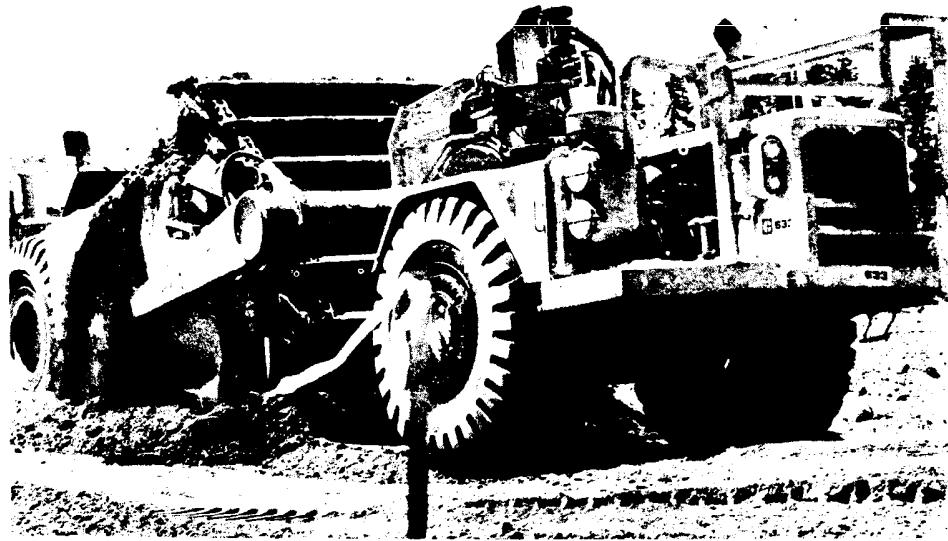


Fig. 5.8 Strength as measured by the CBR and the dry density versus water content for laboratory impact compaction (after Turnbull and Foster, 1956).



(a)

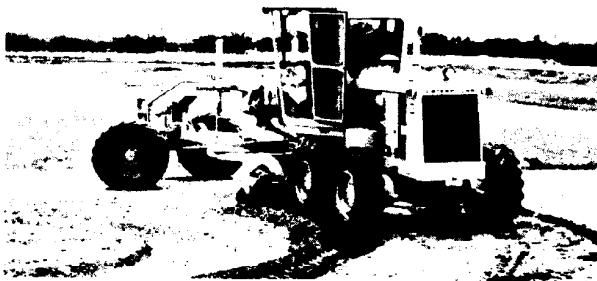


(b)

**Fig. 5.9** Two types of scrapers: (a) Conventional or self-loading scraper. Sometimes a "dozer" or two helps push the "pan" to load up. Here the two scrapers are assisting each other load up in push-pull. (b) Elevating scraper where the elevating machine loads by itself and eliminates the need for a pusher. (Photographs courtesy of Caterpillar Tractor Co.)



(a)



(b)

Fig. 5.10 Examples of equipment used for hauling and spreading fill materials: (a) fill material being hauled by end dump truck; (b) motor grader spreading and preparing fill subgrade (photographs courtesy of Caterpillar Tractor Co.).

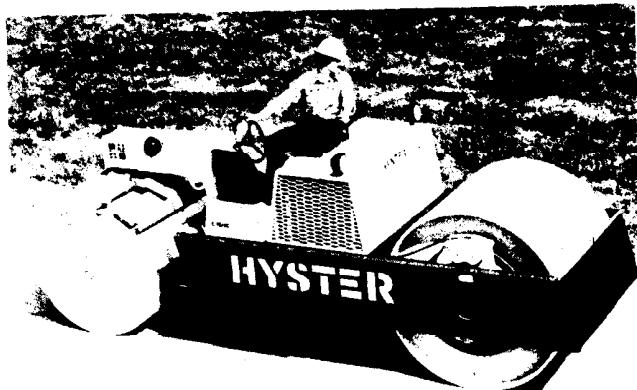
uncompacted soil, thereby reducing the amount of compactive effort required later.

Once borrow material has been transported to the fill area, *bulldozers*,<sup>\*</sup> front loaders, and *motor graders*, called *blades* (Fig. 5.10b), spread the material to the desired layer or *lift* thickness. Lift thickness may range from 150 to 500 mm (6 to 18 in.) or so, depending on the size and type of compaction equipment and on the maximum grain size of the fill.

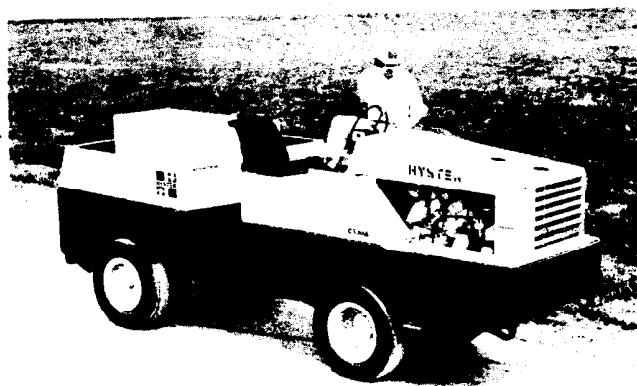
The kind of compacting equipment or *rollers* used on a job will depend on the type of soil to be compacted. Equipment is available to apply pressure, impact, vibration, and kneading. Figure 5.11 shows two types of rollers.

A *smooth wheel*, or *drum*, *roller* (Fig. 5.11a) supplies 100% coverage under the wheel, with ground contact pressures up to 380 kPa (55 psi) and may be used on all soil types except rocky soils. The most common use for

\*Genus bovinas masculinus sonambulorum.



(a)



(b)

Fig. 5.11 Types of rollers: (a) smooth-wheel roller; (b) rubber-tired roller (self-propelled) (photographs courtesy of Hyster Company, Construction Equipment Division).

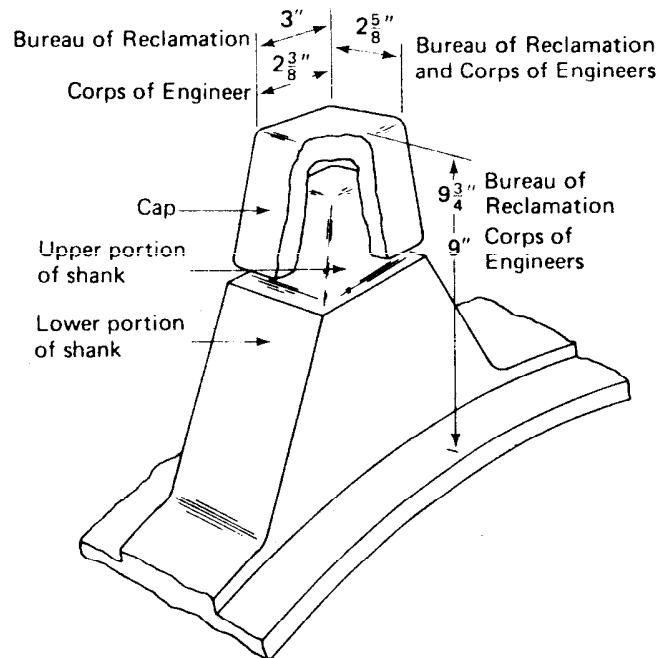
large smooth wheel rollers is for *proofrolling* subgrades and compacting asphalt pavements. The *pneumatic*, or *rubber-tired*, *roller* (Fig. 5.11b) has about 80% coverage (80% of the total area is covered by tires) and tire pressures may be up to about 700 kPa (100 psi). A heavily loaded wagon with several rows of four to six closely spaced tires is self-propelled or towed over the soil to be compacted. Like the smooth wheel roller, the rubber-tired roller may be used for both granular and cohesive highway fills, as well as for earth dam construction.

Probably the first roller developed and perhaps the most common type of compactor used today is the *sheepsfoot roller*. This roller, as its name implies, has many round or rectangular shaped protrusions or "feet" (Fig. 5.12a) attached to a steel drum. The area of these protrusions ranges from 30 to 80 cm<sup>2</sup> (5 to 12 in.<sup>2</sup>). Because of the 8% to 12% coverage, very high contact pressures are possible, ranging from 1400 to 7000 kPa (200 to 1000 psi) depending on the drum size and whether the drum is filled with water. The drums come in several diameters. Surprisingly enough, a "4 by 4" (which means 4 ft long and 4 ft in diameter) roller provides a higher strength compacted fill in clay soils than a heavier, higher pressure "5 by 5" roller because there is less kneading or shearing action with the "4 by 4" than the "5 by 5" roller, which produces a different soil structure (see Fig. 5.8). Sheepsfoot rollers are usually towed in tandem by crawler tractors or are self-propelled, as shown in Fig. 5.12b.

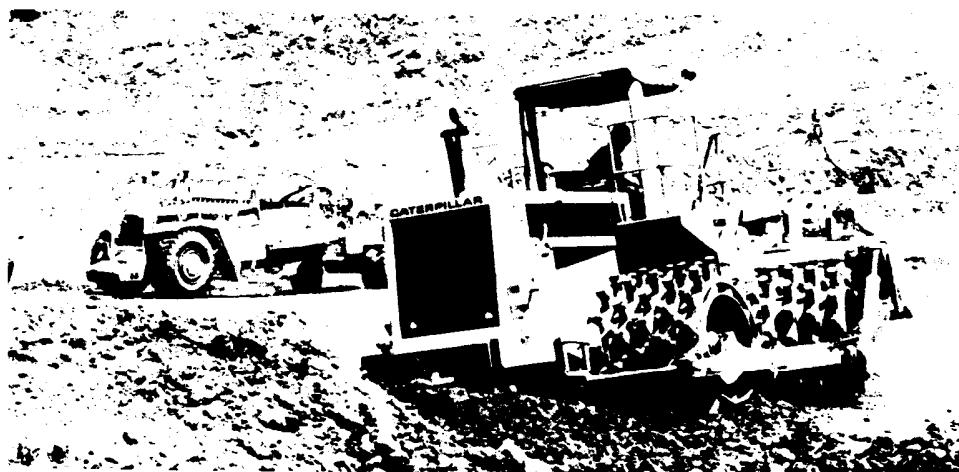
The sheepsfoot roller starts compacting the soil below the bottom of the foot (projecting about 150 to 250 mm from the drum) and works its way up the lift as the number of passes increases. Eventually the roller "walks out" of the fill as the upper part of the lift is compacted. The sheepsfoot roller is best suited for cohesive soils.

Other rollers with protrusions have also been developed to obtain high contact pressures for better crushing, kneading, and compacting of a rather wide variety of soils. These rollers can either be towed or self-propelled. *Tamping foot rollers* (Fig. 5.13) have approximately 40% coverage and generate high contact pressures from 1400 to 8400 kPa (200 to 1200 psi), depending on the size of the roller and whether the drum is filled for added weight. The special hinged feet (Fig. 5.13a) of the tamping foot roller apply a kneading action to the soil. These rollers compact similarly to the sheepsfoot in that the roller eventually "walks out" of a well-compacted lift. Tamping foot rollers are best for compacting fine-grained soils.

Still another kind of roller is the *mesh*, or *grid pattern*, *roller* with about 50% coverage and pressures from 1400 to 6200 kPa (200 to 900 psi) (Fig. 5.14). The mesh roller is ideally suited for compacting rocky soils, gravels, and sands. With high towing speed, the material is vibrated, crushed, and impacted.

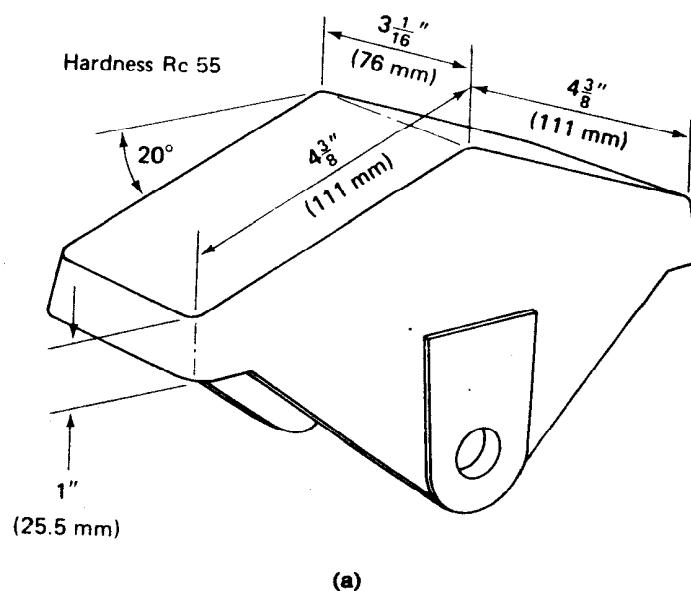


(a)

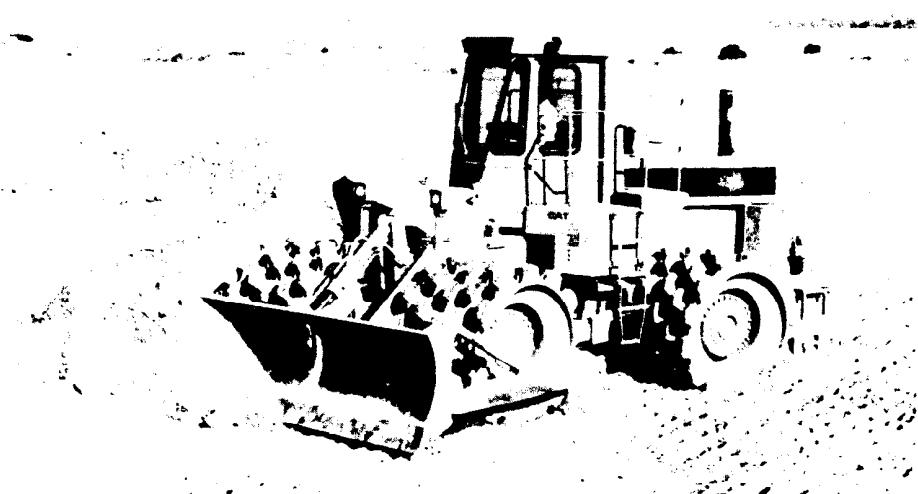


(b)

**Fig. 5.12 Sheepfoot rollers:** (a) detail of a rectangular sheepfoot (drawing provided by Hyster Company, Construction Equipment Division); (b) self-propelled sheepfoot roller in foreground ("pan" in background) (photograph courtesy of Caterpillar Tractor Co.).



(a)



(b)

**Fig. 5.13 Tamping foot roller:** (a) details of a tamping foot; (b) self-propelled tamping foot compactor. Note how the blade is used to spread the material before compaction by the rollers (drawing and photograph courtesy of Caterpillar Tractor Co.).

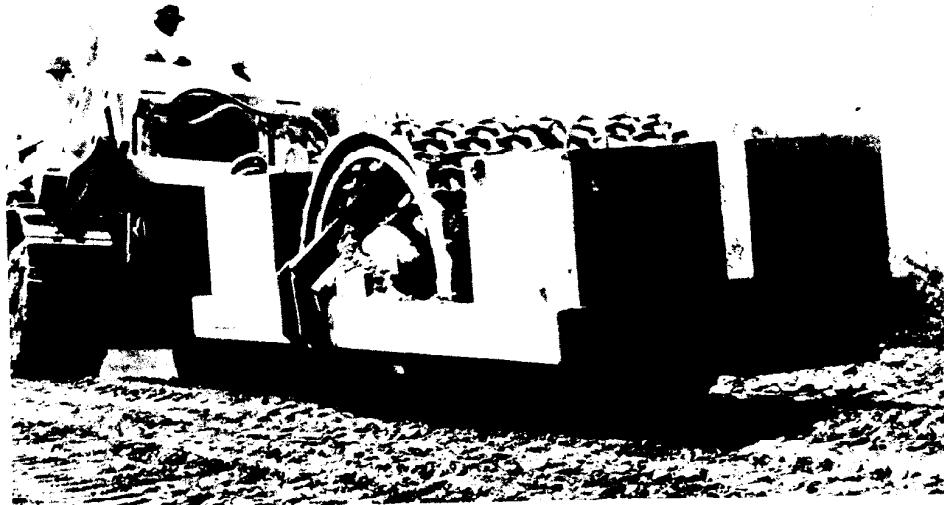


Fig. 5.14 Grid roller (photograph courtesy of Hyster Company, Construction Equipment Division).

Several compaction equipment manufacturers have attached vertical vibrators to the smooth wheel and tamping foot rollers so as to more efficiently densify granular soils. Figure 5.15 shows a vibrating drum on a smooth wheel roller compacting a gravelly material. Also available are *vibrating plates* and *rammers* that range in size from 230 to 122 mm<sup>2</sup> (9 to 45 in.<sup>2</sup>) and weigh from 50 to 3000 kg (100 to 6000 lb). Compaction depth for even the larger plates is less than 1 metre. These devices are used in

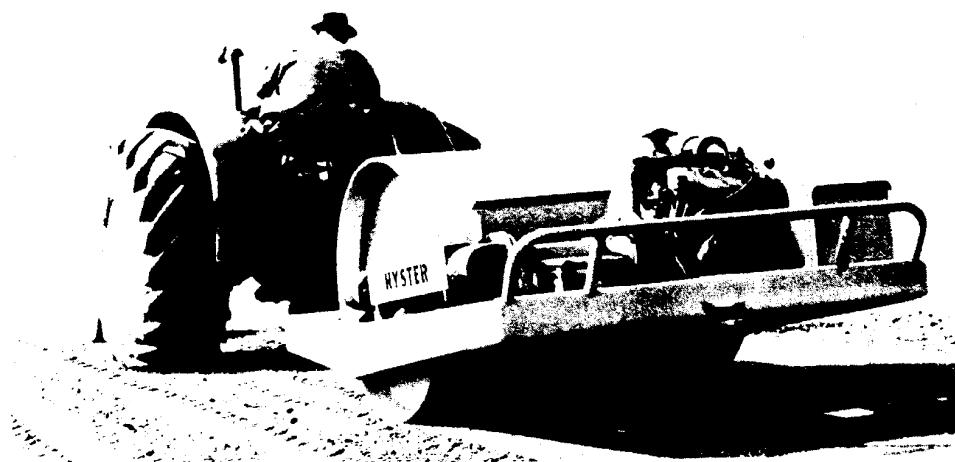


Fig. 5.15 Vibrating drum on smooth-wheel roller (photograph courtesy of the Hyster Company, Construction Equipment Division).

areas where the larger rollers cannot operate. Broms and Forssblad (1969) have listed the different types of vibratory soil compactors (see Table 5-2) and also indicate the common frequency of operation. In Table 5-3, they illustrate the practical application of these machines.

Probably the best explanation of why roller vibration causes densification of granular soils is that particle rearrangement occurs due to cyclic deformation of the soil produced by the oscillations of the roller. In addition, vibratory compaction can work in materials with some cohesion (Selig and Yoo, 1977). When oscillation is added to a static component, compaction is significantly increased, as shown in Fig. 5.16. For soils compacted on the dry side of optimum, adding the dynamic component results in increased density.

There are many variables which control the vibratory compaction or densification of soils. Some are compactor dependent and some depend on the soil being compacted. The list of variables would include:

Characteristics of the compactor:

- Mass, size
- Operating frequency and frequency range

Characteristics of the soil:

- Initial density
- Grain size and shape
- Water content

Construction procedures:

- Number of passes of the roller
- Lift thickness
- Frequency of operation of vibrator
- Towing speed

The compactor characteristics influence the stress level and depth of influence of the dynamic force, and the initial density strongly influences the final density. For example, the upper 30 cm of medium dense sand may never become compacted higher than the initial density, whereas dense sands will be vibrated loose in the top 30 cm. Once the compactor is chosen, the actual construction procedures essentially govern the results. The influence of operating frequency for various soil types is shown in Fig. 5.17. Note how a peak in the density-frequency curve develops for most of the soils, even clays. The frequency at which a maximum density is achieved is called the *optimum frequency*. It is a function of the compactor-soil system, and it changes as the density increases during the process of compaction. Clearly, it is desirable for a compactor to have the capability to vary its operating frequency and have the range required to obtain

**TABLE 5-2** Different Types of Vibratory Soil Compactors\*

Type of Machine	Surface Vibrators		Internal Vibrators		
	Mass	Frequency	Type of Machine	Diameter	Frequency
<i>Vibrating tampers (hammers):</i>					
Hand-guided	50–150 kg (100–300 lb)	About 10 Hz	Manually operated or tractor-mounted	5–15 cm (2–6 in.)	100–200 Hz
<i>Vibrating plate compactors:</i>					
Self-propelled, hand-guided	50–3000 kg (100–6000 lb)	12–80 Hz	Crane-mounted	23–38 cm (9–15 in.)	About 30 Hz
Multiple-type, mounted on tractors, etc.	200–300 kg (400–600 lb)	30–70 Hz			
Crane-mounted†	Up to 20 tons	10–15 Hz			
<i>Vibrating rollers:</i>					
Self-propelled, hand-guided (one or two drums)	250–1500 kg (500–3000 lb)	40–80 Hz			
Self-propelled, tandem-type	0.7–10 tons	30–80 Hz			
Self-propelled, rubber tires	4–25 tons	20–40 Hz			
Tractor-drawn	1.5–15 tons	20–50 Hz			

\*After Brøms and Forsblad (1969).

†Used on a limited scale.

**TABLE 5-3 Applications of Vibratory Soil Compaction\***

Type of Machine	Applications
<i>Vibrating tampers (rammers):</i>	Street repair. Fills behind bridge abutments, retaining and basement walls, etc. Trench fills.
<i>Vibrating plate compactors:</i>	
Self-propelled, hand-guided	Base and subbase compaction for streets, sidewalks, etc. Street repair. Fills behind bridge abutments, retaining and basement walls, etc. Fills below floors. Trench fills.
Multiple-type	Base and subbase compaction for highways.
<i>Vibrating rollers:</i>	
Self-propelled, hand-guided	Base, subbase, and asphalt compaction for streets, sidewalks, parking areas, garage driveways, etc. Fills behind bridge abutments and retaining walls. Fills below floors. Trench fills.
Self-propelled, tandem type	Base, subbase, and asphalt compaction for highways, streets, sidewalks, parking areas, garage driveways, etc. Fills below floors.
Self-propelled, rubber tires	Base, subbase, and embankment compaction for highways, streets, parking areas, airfields, etc. Rock-fill dams. Fills (soil or rock) used as foundations for residential and industrial buildings.
Tractor-drawn	Base, subbase, and embankment compaction on highways, streets, parking areas, airfields, etc. Earth- and rock-fill dams. Fills (soil or rock) used as foundations for residential and industrial buildings. Deep compaction of natural deposits of sand.

\*After Broms and Forssblad (1969).

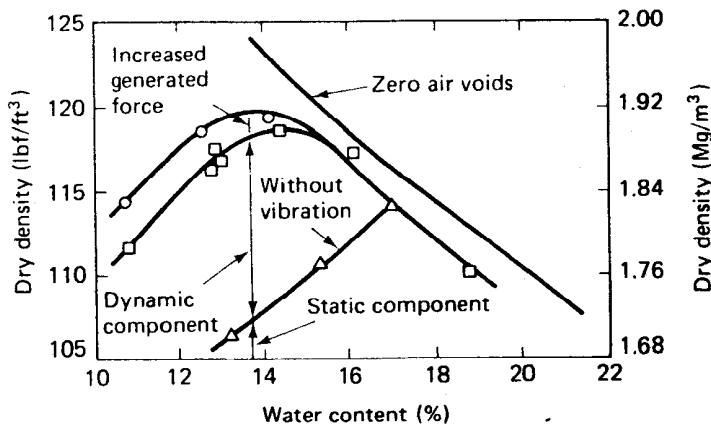


Fig. 5.16 Compaction results on 30 cm (12 in.) layers of silty sand, with and without vibration, using a 7700 kg (17,000 lb) towed vibratory roller (after Parsons, et al., 1962, as cited by Selig and Yoo, 1977).

## Compaction

136

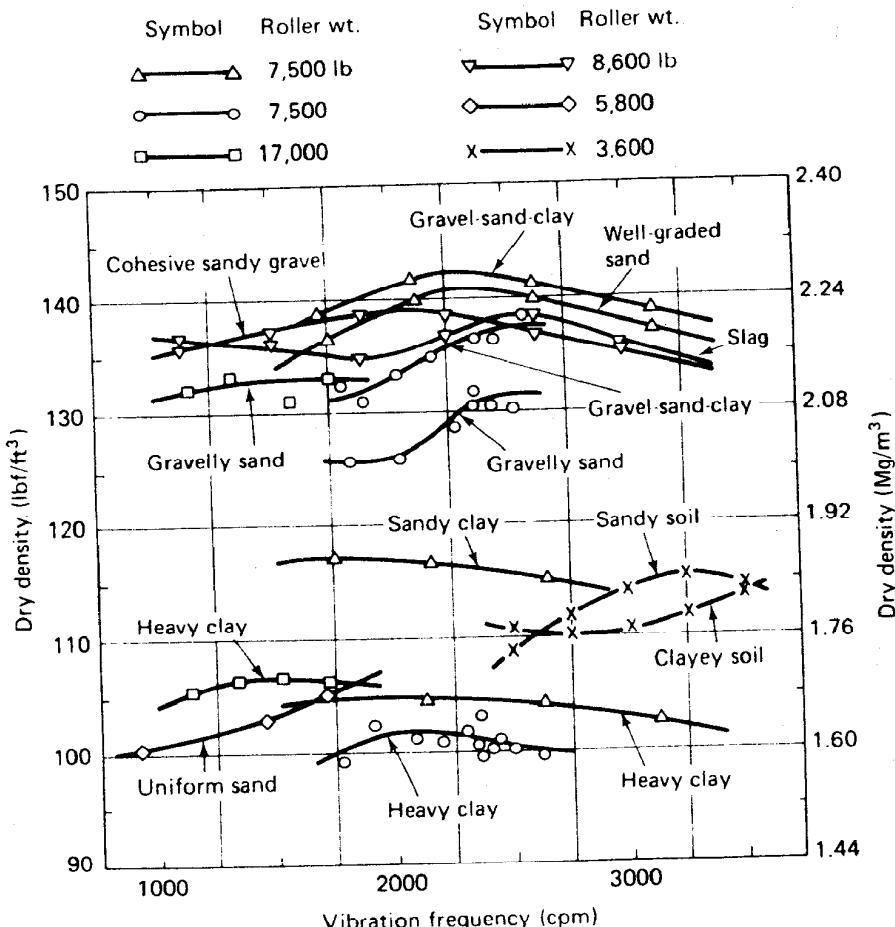


Fig. 5.17 Variation with frequency of compaction by smooth-drum vibratory rollers (after several sources as cited by Selig and Yoo, 1977).

maximum density. However, the peaks are gentle and, percentagewise, a wide frequency range is not all that important.

The influence of the number of passes of a roller and the towing speed are shown in Fig. 5.18 for a 7700 kg roller compacting a "heavy" (high LL) clay and a well-graded sand. Notice how the density increases as the number of passes or coverages increases, up to a point. Not so obvious is that, for a given number of passes, a higher density is obtained if the vibrator is towed more slowly!

The effect of lift thickness may be illustrated by the work of D'Appolonia, et al. (1969), shown in Fig. 5.19. Here a 5670 kg roller operating at a frequency of 27.5 Hz is used to compact a 240 cm thick layer of northern Indiana dune sand. The initial relative density was about

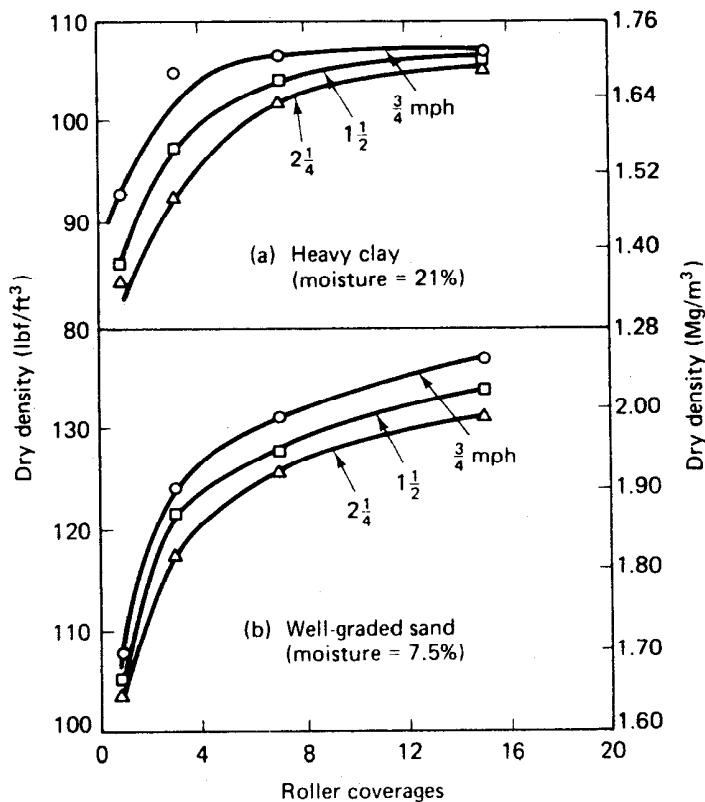


Fig. 5.18 Effect of roller travel speed on amount of compaction with 7700 kg (17,000 lb) towed vibratory roller (after Parsons, et al., 1962, as cited by Selig and Yoo, 1977).

50% to 60%. Field density tests were made in test pits before and after compaction. Note how the density varies with depth. In the upper 15 cm (6 in.), the soil is vibrated loose, whereas the soil reaches its maximum density for a given number of coverages at about 45 cm; thereafter the increase in density tapers off. When compacting past five or so coverages, there is not a great increase in density.

### EXAMPLE 5.2

Given:

It is decided, based on economics, that five coverages of a certain roller and operating frequency shall be used.

**Required:**

What would be the maximum lift thickness to obtain a minimum relative density? Use the data shown in Fig. 5.19.

**Solution:**

Trace the relative density versus depth curve for five passes on onionskin paper. Superimpose that drawing over the original one, and slide it up and down until the desired relative density is obtained (shown in Fig. Ex. 5.2). About 45 cm (18 in.) is indicated as the maximum thickness. Actually, however, the lift could be thicker as compaction of the top layer densifies the lower layer the second time around.

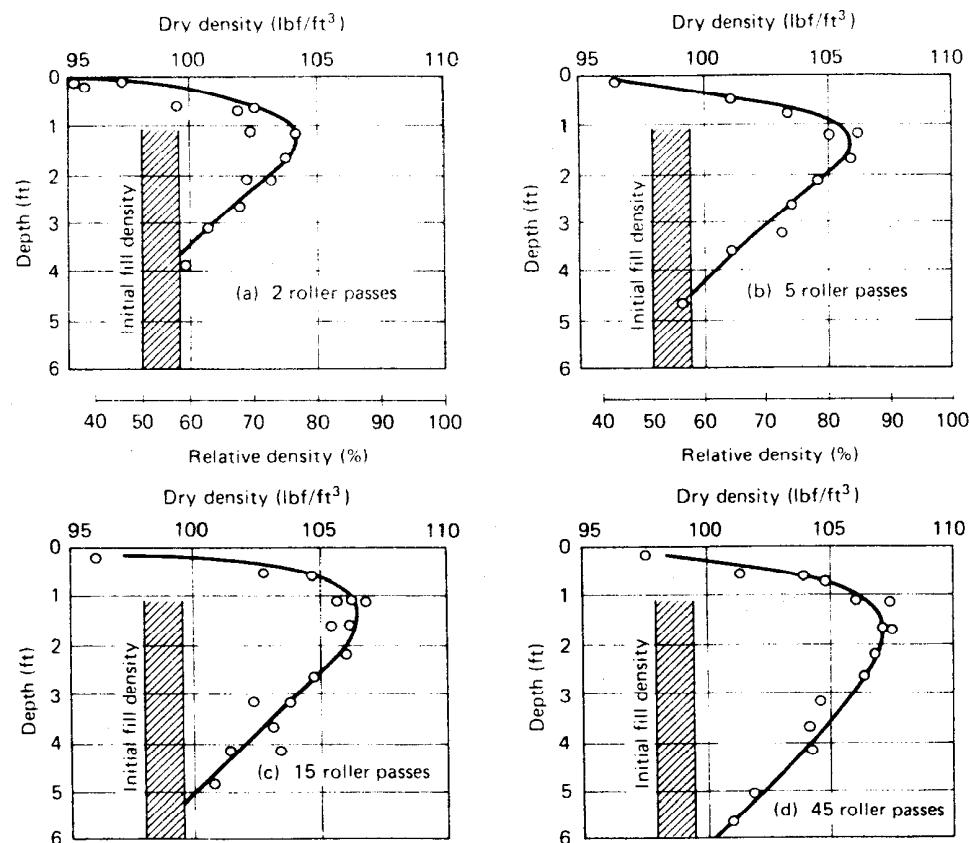


Fig. 5.19 Density-depth relationship for a 5670 kg roller operating at 27.5 Hz for a 240 cm lift height (after D'Appolonia, et al., 1969).

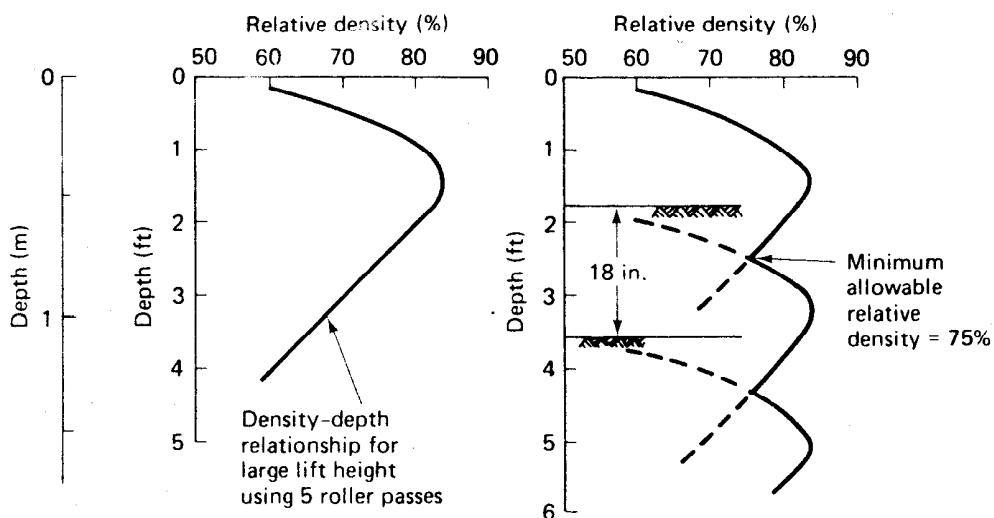


Fig. Ex. 5.2 Approximate method for determining lift height required to achieve a minimum compacted relative density of 75% with five roller passes, using data for a large lift height (after D'Appolonia, et al., 1969).

Figure 5.20 summarizes the applicability of various types of compaction equipment as a function of soil type, expressed as a percentage of sand to clay. These "zones" are not absolute, and it is possible for a given piece of equipment to compact satisfactorily outside the given zone.

When structures are to be founded on relatively deep deposits of loose granular materials, densification by even heavy surface vibratory rollers is usually insufficient, and other techniques must be employed. *Excavation and replacement* of the soil in compacted layers may be economical under certain conditions. Blasting has also been used at some sites (Mitchell, 1970). *Vibro-flotation* (Mitchell, 1970) is often used to increase the density of building foundations on loose sand. Another technique which is gaining in popularity is *dynamic compaction*. Basically, the method consists of repeatedly dropping a very heavy weight (10 to 40 tons mass) some height (10 to 40 m) over the site. The impact produces shock waves that cause densification of unsaturated granular soils. In saturated granular soils, the shock waves can produce partial liquefaction of the sand, a condition similar to quicksand (discussed in Chapter 7), followed by consolidation (discussed in Chapter 8) and rapid densification. The variables include energy (drop height and weight of pounder), the number of drops at a single point (3 to 10), and the pattern of the drops at the surface (5 to 15 m center-to-center). Figure 5.21 shows a pounder just impacting the surface of a loose sand layer. Eventually this site will look like a set of

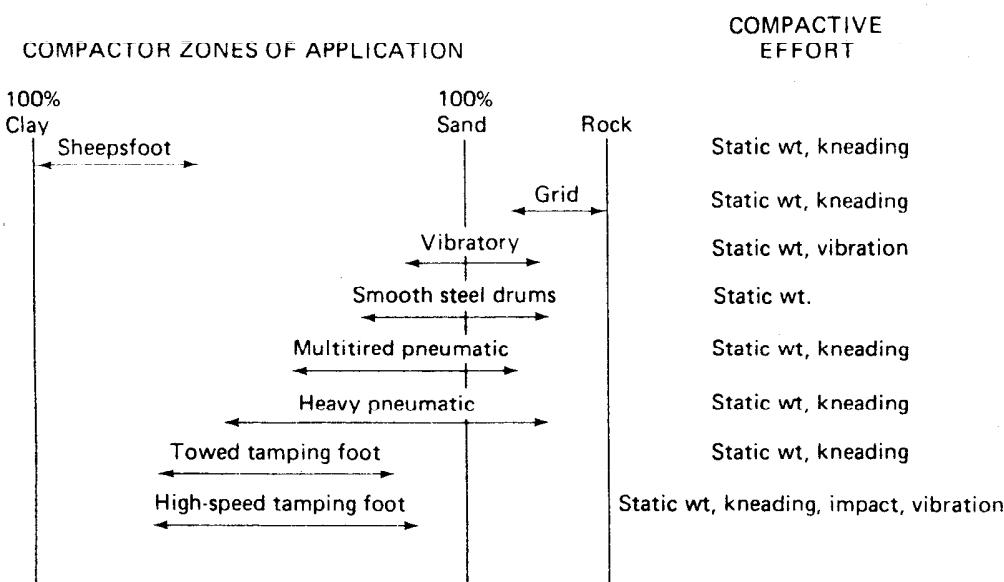


Fig. 5.20 Applicability of various types of compaction equipment for a given soil type (modified after Caterpillar Tractor Co., 1977).

organized moon craters. The craters can be filled with sand and additionally tamped or the area between them smoothed out by the pounder itself.

Dynamic compaction was apparently first used in Germany in the mid-1930's during construction of the Autobahns (Loos, 1936). It has also been used in the USSR to compact loessial soils up to 5 m deep (Abelev, 1957). The technique was further refined and promoted in France and elsewhere by Louis Ménard (Ménard and Broise, 1975), who pioneered in the development of very heavy pounders (up to 200 metric tons mass) and massive cranes and tripods for lifting them to drop heights up to 40 m. Improvement is claimed to depths down to 40 m. In the United States, dynamic compaction has been used on a more modest scale by contractors using ordinary equipment (Leonards, Cutter, and Holtz, 1980; Lukas, 1980).

The depth of influence  $D$ , in metres, of the soil undergoing compaction is conservatively given by Leonards, et al. (1980) as

$$D \approx \frac{1}{2}(Wh)^{1/2} \quad (5-2)$$

where  $W$  = mass of falling weight in metric tons, and

$h$  = drop height in metres.

The heavier the weight and/or the higher the drop height, the greater the depth of compaction. Leonards, et al. (1980) also found that the amount of improvement due to compaction in the zone of maximum improvement correlates best with the product of the energy per drop times the total energy applied per unit of surface area.

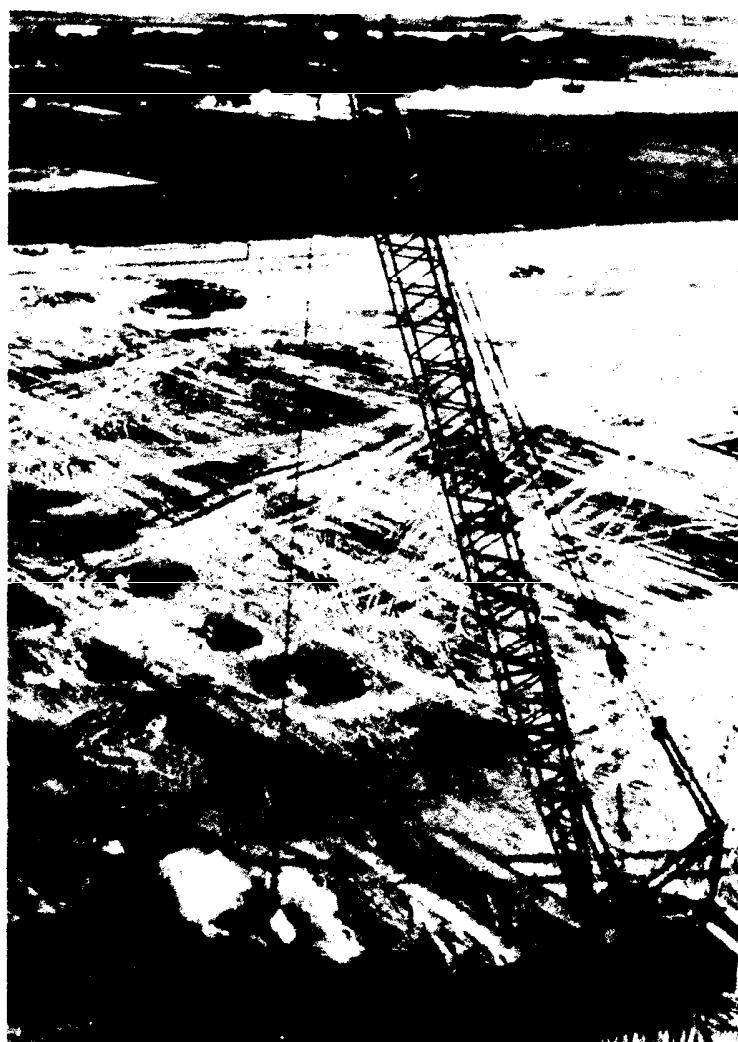


Fig. 5.21 Dynamic compaction at a site in Bangladesh. The 100 ton crane is dropping a 16 metric ton weight 30 m (courtesy of S. Varaksin, Techniques Louis Ménard, Longjumeau, France).

## 5.6 FIELD COMPACTION CONTROL AND SPECIFICATIONS

Since the objective of compaction is to stabilize soils and improve their engineering behavior, it is important to keep in mind the desired *engineering properties* of the fill, not just its dry density and water content. This point is often lost in earthwork construction control. Major emphasis

is usually placed on achieving the specified dry density, and little consideration is given to the engineering properties desired of the compacted fill. Dry density and water content correlate well with the engineering properties (Sec. 5.4), and thus they are convenient construction control parameters.

The usual design-construct procedure is as follows. Laboratory tests are conducted on samples of the proposed borrow materials to define the properties required for design. After the earth structure is designed, the compaction specifications are written. Field compaction *control tests* are specified, and the results of these become the standard for controlling the project. Construction control inspectors then conduct these tests to see that the specifications are met by the contractor.

There are basically two categories of earthwork specifications: (1) *end-product specifications* and (2) *method specifications*. With the first type, a certain *relative compaction*, or *percent compaction*, is specified. Relative compaction is defined as the ratio of the field dry density  $\rho_d$  field to the laboratory maximum dry density  $\rho_d$  max, according to some specified standard test, for example, the standard Proctor or the modified Proctor test; or

$$\text{relative compaction (R.C.)} = \frac{\rho_d \text{ field}}{\rho_d \text{ max}} \times 100(\%) \quad (5-3)$$

You should note the difference between relative compaction and *relative density*  $D$ , or *density index*  $I_D$ , defined in Chapter 4. Relative density, of course, applies only to granular soils. If some fines are present, it is difficult to decide which type of test is applicable as a standard test. ASTM (1980), Designation D 2049, suggests that the relative density is applicable if the soil contains less than 12% fines (passing the No. 200 sieve); otherwise the compaction test should be used. A relationship between relative density and relative compaction is shown in Fig. 5.22. A statistical study of published data on 47 different granular soils indicated

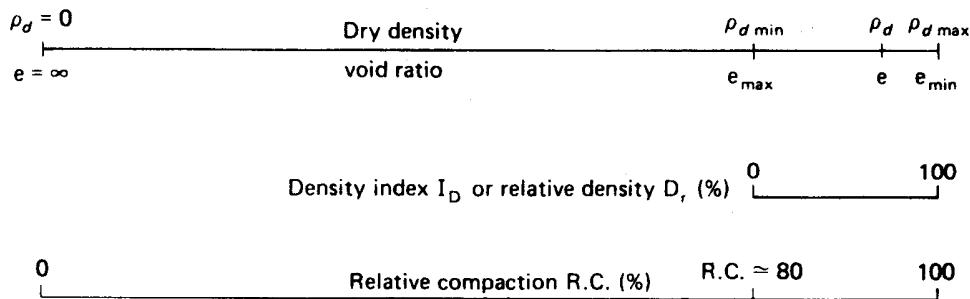


Fig. 5.22 Relative density and relative compaction concepts (after Lee and Singh, 1971).

that the relative compaction corresponding to zero relative density is about 80%.

With *end-product specifications*, which are used for most highways and building foundations, as long as the contractor is able to obtain the specified relative compaction, how he obtains it doesn't matter, nor does the equipment he uses. The economics of the project supposedly ensure that the contractor will utilize the most efficient compaction procedures. The most economical compaction conditions are illustrated in Fig. 5.23, showing three hypothetical field compaction curves of the same soil but at different compactive efforts. Assume that curve 1 represents a compactive effort that can easily be obtained by existing compaction equipment. Then

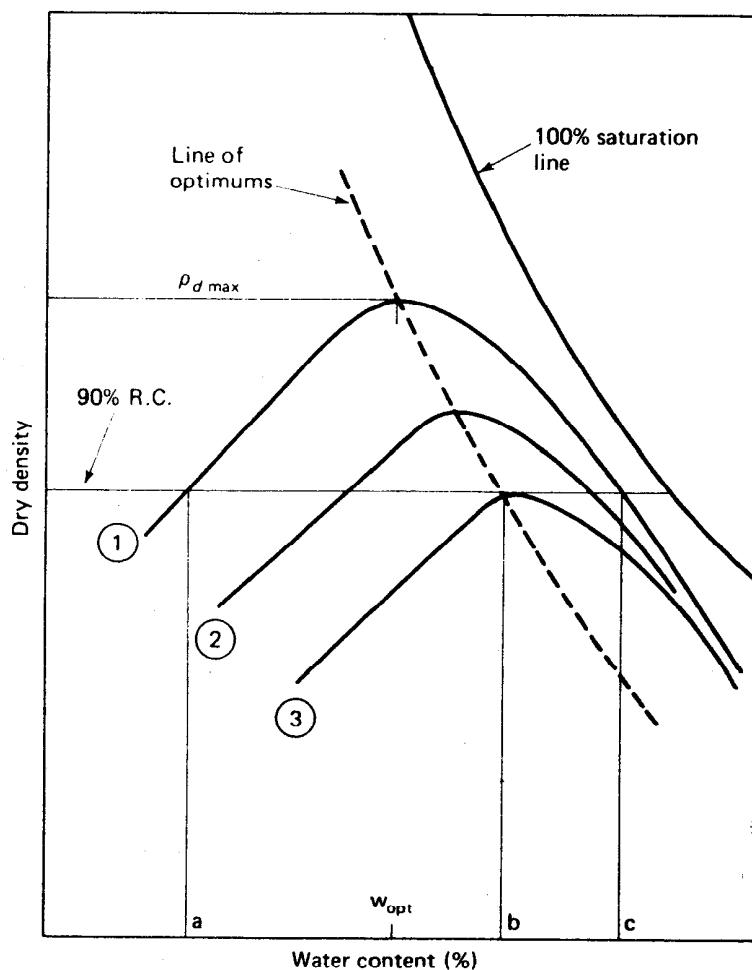


Fig. 5.23 Dry density versus water content, illustrating the most efficient conditions for field compaction (after Seed, 1964).

to achieve, say, 90% relative compaction, the placement water content of the compacted fill must be greater than water content *a* and less than water content *c*. These points are found where the 90% R.C. line intersects compaction curve 1. If the placement water content is outside of the range *a* to *c*, then it will be difficult, if not impossible, to achieve the required percentage of relative compaction called for, no matter how much the contractor compacts that lift. This is why it may be necessary at times to wet or dry (rework) the soil prior to rolling in the field.

Now that we have established the range of placement water contents, the contractor might ask: "What is the best placement water content to use?" From a purely economical viewpoint, the most efficient water content would be at *b*, where the contractor provides the *minimum* compactive effort to attain the required 90% relative compaction. To consistently achieve the minimum relative compaction for the project, the contractor will usually use a slightly higher compactive effort, as shown by curve 2 of Fig. 5.23. Thus the most efficient placement water contents exist between the optimum water content and *b*.

However what may be best from the contractor's viewpoint may not provide a fill with the desired engineering properties. Compacting a soil on the wet side generally results in a lower shear strength than compacting the soil on the dry side of the optimum water content (Figs. 5.7 and 5.8). Other properties such as permeability and shrink-swell potential will also be different. Thus a *range* of placement water contents should also be specified by the designer in addition to the percentage of relative compaction. This point illustrates why the desired engineering performance of the fill rather than just the percentage of compaction must be kept in mind when writing compaction specifications and designing field control procedures.

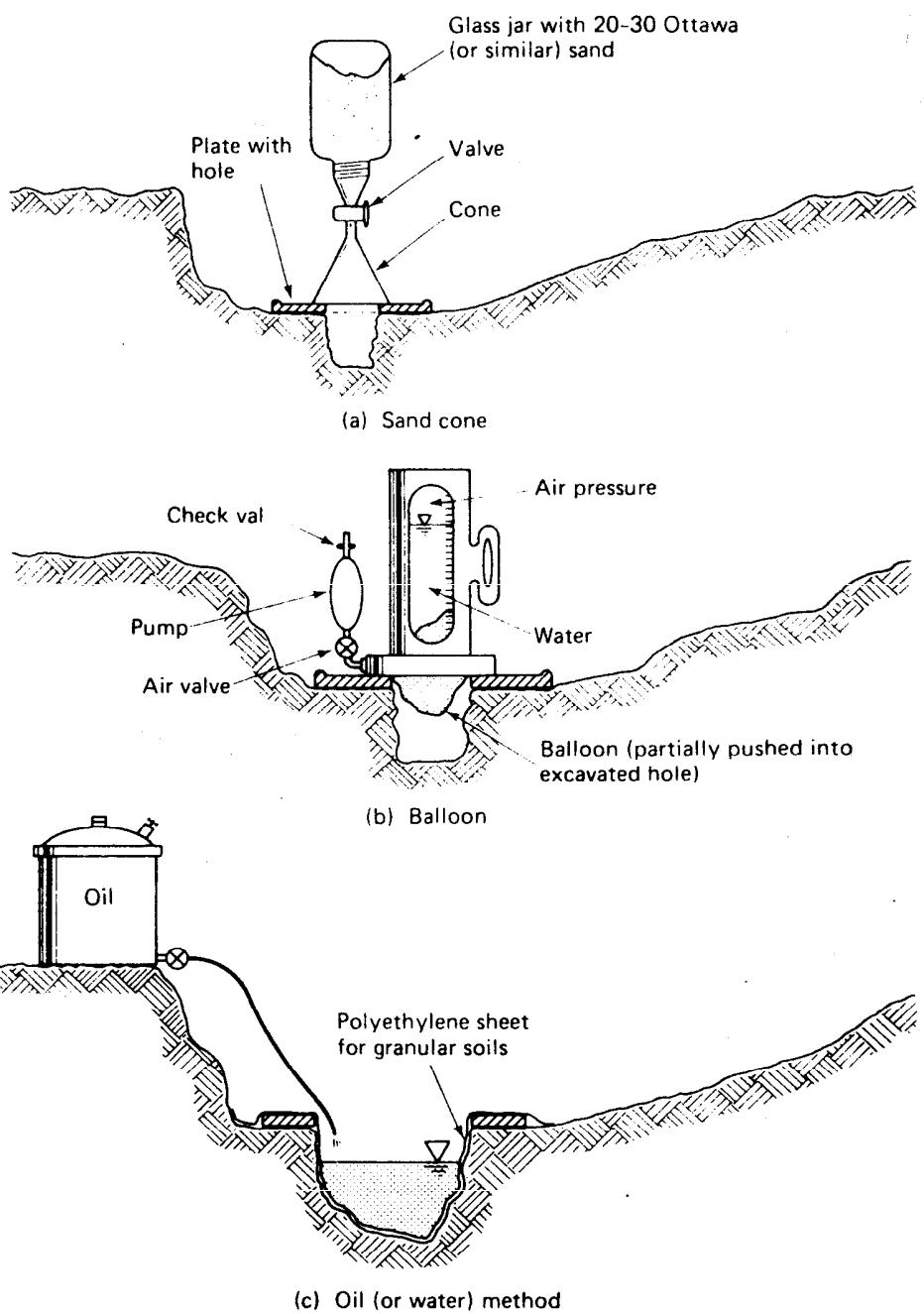
Figures 5.23 and 5.1 also illustrate that specified densities can be achieved at higher water contents if more compactive effort is applied, either by using heavier rollers or more passes of the same roller. But, as shown in Fig. 5.8, at higher water contents the strength measured by the CBR test curves cross, and a lower strength will be obtained with higher compaction energies wet of optimum. This effect is known as *overcompaction*. Overcompaction can occur in the field when wet of optimum soils are *proofrolled* with very heavy, smooth wheeled rollers (Fig. 5.11a) or an excessive number of passes are applied to the lift (Mills and DeSalvo, 1978). Otherwise even good material can become weaker. You can also detect overcompaction in the field by careful observation of the behavior of the soil immediately under the compactor or the wheel of a heavily loaded scraper. If the soil is too wet and the energy applied is too great, *pumping* or *weaving* of the fill will result as the wheel shoves the wet weaker fill ahead of itself. Also, sheepsfoot rollers won't be able to "walk out."

In *method specifications*, the second general category, the type and weight of roller, the number of passes of that roller, as well as the lift thicknesses are specified by the engineer. A maximum allowable size of material may also be specified. In contrast to the end-product specifications, where the contractor is responsible for proper compaction, with method specifications the responsibility rests with the owner or owner's engineer as to the quality of the earthwork. If compaction control tests performed by the engineer fail to meet a certain standard, then the contractor will be paid extra for additional rolling. This specification requires prior knowledge of the borrow soils so as to be able to predict in advance how many passes of, for example, a certain type of roller will produce adequate compaction performance. This means that during design, test fills must be constructed with different equipment, compactive efforts, etc., in order to determine which equipment and procedures will be the most efficient. Since test fill programs are expensive, method specifications can only be justified for very large compaction projects such as earth dams. However, considerable savings in earthwork construction unit costs are possible because a major part of the uncertainty associated with compaction will be eliminated for the contractor. He can estimate quite well in advance just how much construction will cost. The contractor also knows that if extra rolling is required he will be adequately compensated.

How is relative compaction determined? First, the test site is selected. It should be representative or typical of the compacted lift and borrow material. Typical specifications call for a new field test for every 1000 to 3000 m<sup>3</sup> or so, or when the borrow material changes significantly. It is also advisable to make the field test at least one or maybe two compacted lifts below the already compacted ground surface, especially when sheepfoot rollers are used or in granular soils.

*Field control tests* can either be *destructive* or *nondestructive*. Destructive tests involve excavation and removal of some of the fill material, whereas nondestructive tests determine the density and water content of the fill indirectly. The steps required for the common destructive field tests are:

1. Excavate a hole in the compacted fill at the desired sampling elevation (the size will depend on the maximum size of material in the fill). Determine the mass of the excavated material.
2. Take a water content sample and determine the water content.
3. Measure the volume of the excavated material. Techniques commonly employed for this include the sand cone, the balloon method, or pouring water or oil of known density into the hole (Fig. 5.24). In the sand cone method, dry sand of known dry



**Fig. 5.24 Some methods for determining density in the field.**

density is allowed to flow through a cone-pouring device into the hole. The volume of the hole can then easily be determined from the weight of sand in the hole and its dry density. (It is necessary that the contractor stop earth-moving equipment from vibrating and densifying the sand in the hole during the sand cone test; otherwise the measured percent relative compaction will be lower than actual.) In the balloon method, the volume is determined directly by the expansion of a balloon directly in the hole.

4. Compute the total density  $\rho$ . Knowing  $M$ , the total mass of the material excavated from the hole, and the volume of the hole, we can compute  $\rho$ . Since we also know the water content, we can obtain the dry density of the fill,  $\rho_d$  field.
5. Compare  $\rho_d$  field with  $\rho_d$  max and calculate relative compaction (Eq. 5-3).

### EXAMPLE 5.3

Given:

A field density test is performed by the balloon method (Fig. 5.24b). The following data were obtained from the test:

Mass of soil removed + pan	= 1590 g
Mass of pan	= 125 gm
Balloon readings:	
Final	= 1288 cm <sup>3</sup>
Initial	= 538 cm <sup>3</sup>

Water content information:

Mass of wet soil + pan	= 404.9 g
Mass of dry soil + pan	= 365.9 g
Mass of pan	= 122.0 g

Required:

- a. Compute the dry density and water content of the soil.
- b. Using curve B of Fig. 5.1 as the laboratory standard, compute the relative compaction.

**Solution:**

a. Compute the wet density,  $\rho = \frac{M_t}{V_t}$

$$\rho = \frac{1590 - 125 \text{ g}}{1288 - 538 \text{ cm}^3} = \frac{1465 \text{ g}}{750 \text{ cm}^3} = 1.95 \text{ g/cm}^3 = 1.95 \text{ Mg/m}^3$$

Water content determination:

1. Mass of wet soil + pan = 404.9 g
2. Mass of dry soil + pan = 365.9 g
3. Mass of water  $M_w$  (1 - 2) = 39.0 g
4. Mass of pan = 122.0 g
5. Mass of dry soil  $M_s$  (2 - 4) = 243.9 g
6. Water content  $(M_w/M_s) \times 100$  (3 + 5) = 16%

For calculation of dry density, use Eq. 2-14:

$$\rho_d = \frac{\rho}{1+w} = \frac{1.95 \text{ Mg/m}^3}{1+0.16} = 1.68 \text{ Mg/m}^3$$

b. For calculation of relative compaction, use Eq. 5-3:

$$R.C. = \frac{\rho_{d \text{ field}}}{\rho_{d \text{ max}}} = \frac{1.68}{1.86} \times 100 = 90.3\%$$

There are several problems associated with the common destructive field density test. First, the laboratory maximum density may not be known exactly. It is not uncommon, especially in highway construction, for a series of laboratory compaction tests to be conducted on "representative" samples of the borrow materials for the highway. Then, when the field test is conducted, its result is compared with the results of one or more of these job "standard" soils. If the soils at the site are highly variable, this is a poor procedure. Another alternative is to determine the complete compaction curve for each field test—a time-consuming and expensive proposition.

A second alternative is to perform a *field check point*, or 1 point Proctor test. When the field engineer knows in advance that the soil in which he is performing a field density test does not exactly visually match one of the borrow soils, an extra amount of soil is removed from the compacted fill during the test. The total amount of soil removed should be sufficient to perform a single laboratory compaction test. The only restrictions necessary for the performance of the field check point are that:

- I. During compaction, the mold must be placed on a smooth solid mass of at least 100 kg, a requirement which may be difficult to achieve in the field. Asphalt pavement or compacted soil should *not* be used.

2. The soil to be compacted must be dry of optimum for the compactive effort used, and to know when the soil is dry of optimum takes some field experience.

The reason for this second requirement may be apparent from Fig. 5.25. Three compaction curves are shown for soils *A*, *B*, and *C* from a given construction job borrow area. The soil just tested for density, as identified by the field engineer, does not match any soils for which curves exist. The field check point is plotted as point *X* on the graph. By drawing a line parallel to the dry side of optimum of curves *A*, *B*, and *C* and reaching a maximum at the "line of optimums," a reasonable approximation of the maximum dry density may be obtained. If the soil was not adequately dried out before the compaction test, a point such as *Y* would be obtained. Then it would be difficult to distinguish which laboratory curve the soil belonged to, and therefore an estimate of the maximum dry density would be impossible. Some experience is required to "feel" when the soil is dried out enough for the field check point water content to be less than the OMC.

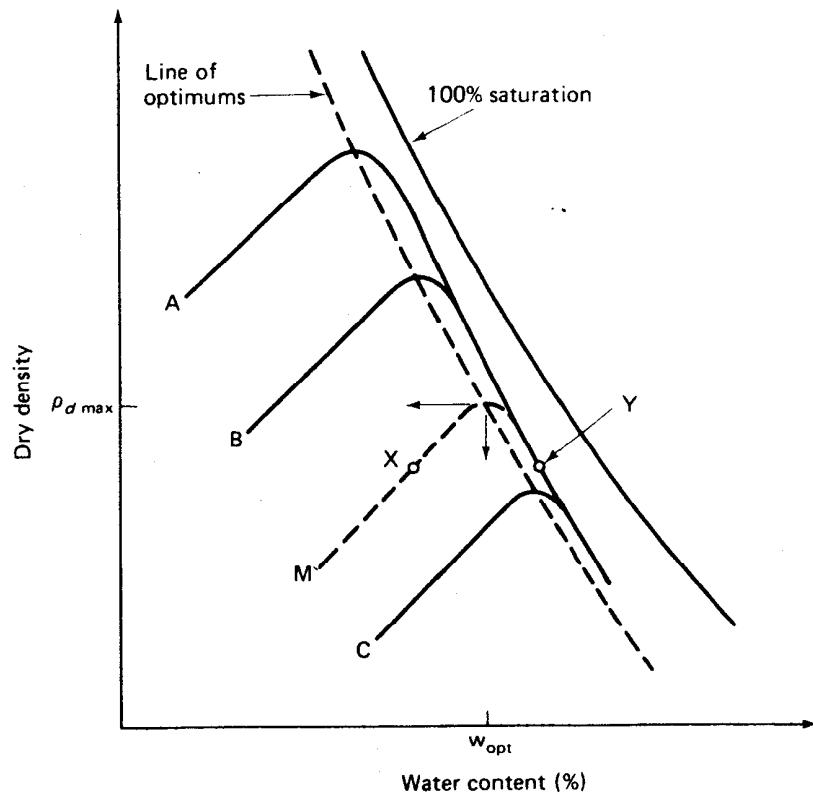


Fig. 5.25 Principle of the check point test.

The second major problem with the common destructive density test procedure is that the determination of the water content takes time (several hours or overnight according to ASTM, 1980). Time is often of the utmost value on a compaction job, and if it takes a day or even several hours before the results are available, several lifts of fill may have been placed and compacted over the "bad" or "failing" test area. Then the engineer has a difficult decision to make: should the contractor be required to tear out a lot of possibly good fill just to improve the relative compaction of that one "bad" lift? Contractors understandably are very hesitant to do that, and yet how many zones of "bad" compaction are allowable in an embankment? Of course, the problem is statistical and again, on a typical job, it is difficult and expensive to conduct sufficient tests for a statistical analysis of the compaction results.

Since determining the water content takes the most time, several methods have been proposed to obtain a more rapid water content. Pan drying or "frying" the sample over an open flame is commonly used, but since it is difficult to control the temperature, it gives poor results, especially for fat clay (CH) soils. The "speedy" moisture meter, in which the water in the soil reacts with carbide to produce acetylene gas, is another alternative. The gas pressure shown on a calibrated gage is proportional to the water content. Burning with methanol and the special alcohol-hydrometer method are also sometimes used. The correlation with standard oven drying for these methods is approximate—generally satisfactory for silts and lean clays but poor for organic soils and fat clays.

Another method for quickly and efficiently determining the relative compaction of cohesive soils was developed in the 1950's by the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation (1974, and Hilf, 1961). The procedure makes it possible to determine accurately the relative compaction of a fill as well as a very close approximation of the difference between the optimum water content and the fill water content without oven drying the sample. Samples of the fill materials are compacted according to the desired laboratory standard at the fill water content and, depending on an estimate of how close the fill is to optimum, water is either added or subtracted from the sample (Fig. 5.26). With a little experience it is relatively easy to estimate whether the fill material is about optimum, slightly wet, or slightly dry of optimum. From the wet density curve, the exact percent relative compaction based on dry density may be obtained. Only one water content, the fill water content, need be determined and that only for record purposes. The main advantage of the "rapid" method is that the contractor has the results in a very short time. Experience has shown that it is possible to obtain the values required for control of construction in about 1 h from the time the field density test is performed.

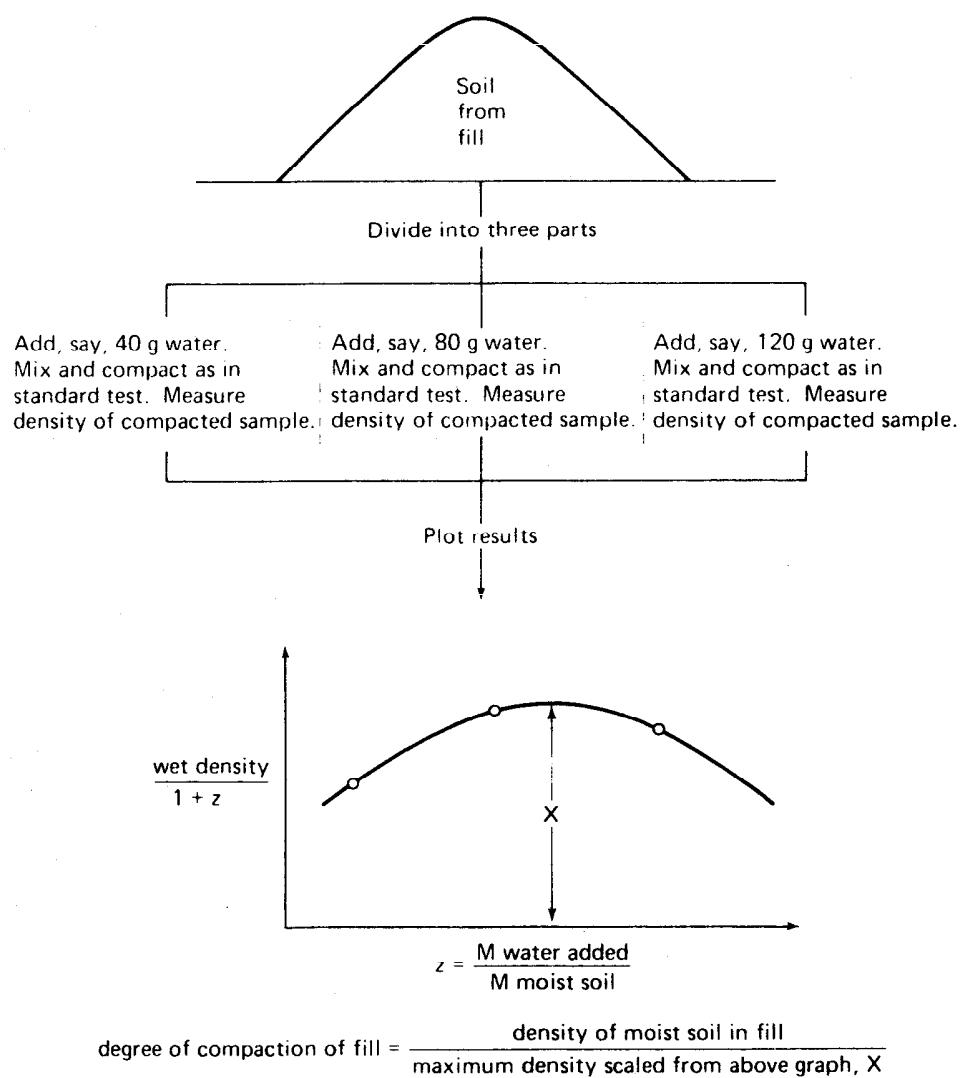
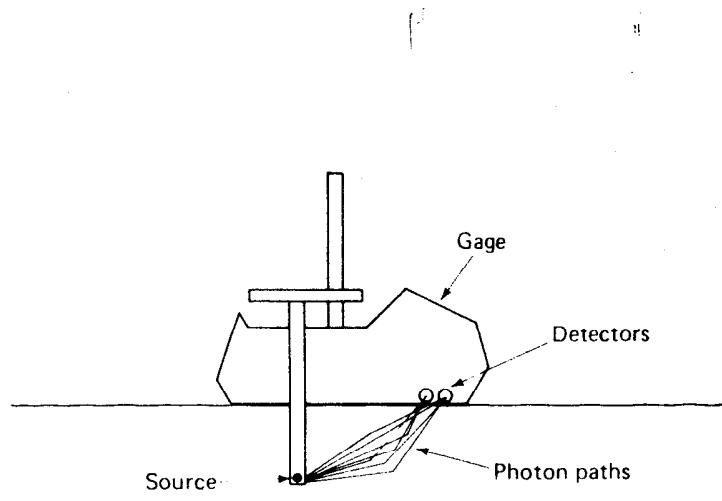
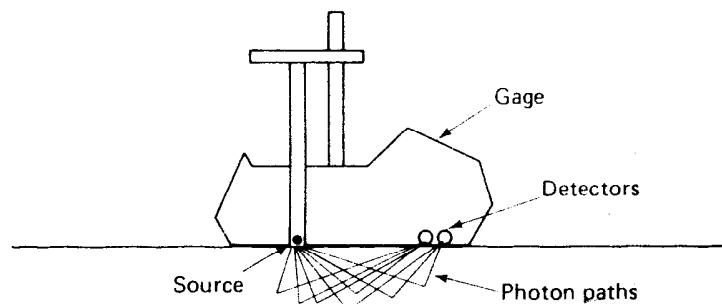


Fig. 5.26 Procedure for rapid method of determining degree of compaction of fill (after Seed, 1959).

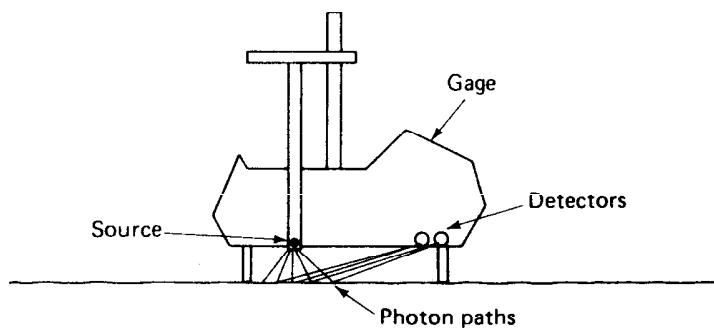
Other problems with destructive field tests are associated with the determination of the volume of the excavated material. The sand cone, often taken as the "standard," is subject to errors. For example, vibration from nearby working equipment will increase the density of the sand in the hole, which gives a larger hole volume than it should have; this results in a lower field density. All of the common volumetric methods are subject to error if the compacted fill is gravel or contains large gravel particles. Any



(a)



(b)



(c)

Fig. 5.27 Nuclear density and water content determination: (a) direct transmission; (b) backscatter; (c) air gap (after Troxler Electronic Laboratories, Inc., Research Triangle Park, North Carolina).

kind of unevenness in the walls of the hole causes a significant error in the balloon method. If the soil is coarse sand or gravel, none of the liquid methods works well, unless the hole is very large and a polyethylene sheet is used to contain the water or oil.

Because of some of the problems with destructive field tests, nondestructive density and water content testing using radioactive isotopes has increased in popularity during the past few years. Nuclear methods have several advantages over the traditional techniques. The tests can be conducted rapidly and results obtained within minutes. Therefore the contractor and engineer know the results quickly, and corrective action can be taken before too much additional fill has been placed. Since more tests can be conducted, a better statistical control of the fill is provided. An average value of the density and water content is obtained over a significant volume of fill, and therefore the natural variability of compacted soils can be considered. Disadvantages of nuclear methods include their relatively high initial cost and the potential danger of radioactive exposure to field personnel. Strict radiation safety standards must be enforced when nuclear devices are used.

Basically, two types of sources or emitters are necessary to determine both the density and the water content. Gamma radiation, as provided by radium or a radioactive isotope of cesium, is scattered by the soil particles; the amount of scatter is proportional to the total density of the material. The spacing between the source and pickup, usually a scintillation or Geiger counter, is constant. Hydrogen atoms in water scatter neutrons, and this provides a means whereby water content can be determined. Typical neutron sources are americium-beryllium isotopes. Calibration against compacted materials of known density is necessary, and for instruments operating on the surface the presence of an uncontrolled air gap can significantly affect the measurements.

Three nuclear techniques are in common use. The *direct transmission* method is illustrated schematically in Fig. 5.27a, and the *backscatter* technique is shown in Fig. 5.27b. The less common *air-gap* method (Fig. 5.27c) is sometimes used when the composition of the near-surface materials adversely affects the density measurement.

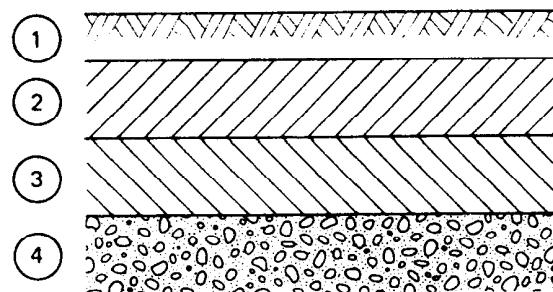
## 5.7 ESTIMATING PERFORMANCE OF COMPAKTED SOILS

How will a given soil behave in a fill, supporting a foundation, holding back water, or under a pavement? Will frost action be a critical factor? For future reference, we present the experience of the U.S. Army

Corps of Engineers on compaction characteristics applicable to roads and airfields (Table 5-4) and the experience of the U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation for several types of earth structures (Table 5-5).

In Table 5-4, the terms *base*, *subbase*, and *subgrade* (columns 7, 8, and 9) refer to components of a pavement system, and they are defined in Fig. 5.28. In column 16, the term CBR represents the California bearing ratio. The CBR is used by the Corps of Engineers for the design of *flexible* pavements. The modulus of subgrade reaction (column 17) is used by them for *rigid* pavement design. Though the difference is rather arbitrary, the upper layers of flexible pavements usually are constructed of asphaltic concrete, whereas rigid pavements are made of Portland cement concrete. A good reference for the design of pavements is the book by Yoder and Witczak (1975).

The use of these tables in engineering practice is best shown by an example. They are very helpful for preliminary design purposes, choosing the most suitable compaction equipment, and for rapid checking of field and laboratory test results.



- 1 Wearing surface: 20-25 cm Portland cement or 2-8 cm asphaltic concrete.
- 2 Base: 5-10 cm asphaltic concrete, 15-30 cm sand-gravel base, 20-30 cm soil-cement, or 15-20 cm asphalt stabilized sand.
- 3 Subbase material (this layer may be omitted): 15-30 cm sand-gravel.
- 4 Subgrade: The natural soil at the site. The top 0.15-0.5 m is usually compacted prior to the placement of the other layers of the pavement.

Fig. 5.28 Definitions of terms relating to pavement systems, with typical dimensions and materials for each component.

**TABLE 5-4** Characteristics Pertinent to Roads and Airfields\*

Major Divisions (1)	Letter (2)	Symbol Color (3)	Hatching (4)	Name (6)	Value as Subgrade When not Subject to Frost Action (7)	Value as Subbase When not Subject to Frost Action (8)	Value as Base When not Subject to Frost Action (9)	Potential Frost Action (10)	Compressibility and Expansion (11)
GRAVEL AND GRAVELLY SOILS	GP	Black	Red	Well-graded gravels or gravel-sand mixtures, little or no fines	Excellent	Good	None to very slight	Almost none	
	GM	Black	Red	Poorly graded gravels or gravel-sand mixtures, little or no fines	Good to excellent	Good	Fair to good	None to very slight	Almost none
	GD	Black	Red	Silty gravels, gravel-sand-silt mixtures	Good to excellent	Good	Fair to good	Slight to medium	Very slight
	GM	Black	Yellow	Clayey gravels, gravel-sand-clay mixtures	Good	Fair	Poor to not suitable	Slight to medium	Slight
	GC	Black	Yellow	Well-graded sands or gravelly sands, little or no fines	Good	Fair	Poor to not suitable	Slight to medium	Slight
	SW	Black	Red	Poorly graded sands or gravelly sands, little or no fines	Good	Fair to good	Poor	None to very slight	Almost none
	SP	Black	Red	Silty sands, sand-silt mixtures	Fair to good	Fair	Poor to not suitable	None to very slight	Almost none
	SM	Black	Yellow	Clayey sands, sand-clay mixtures	Fair to good	Fair to good	Poor	Slight to high	Very slight
	SC	Black	Yellow	Inorganic silts and very fine sands, rock flour, silt or clayey fine sands or clayey silts with slight plasticity	Fair	Poor to fair	Not suitable	Slight to high	Slight to medium
	ML	Black	Green	Inorganic clays of low to medium plasticity, clayey clays, sandy clays, silty clays, loam clays	Poor to fair	Poor	Not suitable	Slight to high	Slight to medium
FINE- GRAINED SOILS	LL	Black	Black	Organic silts and organic silts-clays of low plasticity	Poor	Not suitable	Not suitable	Medium to very high	Medium to high
	LISS	Black	Blue	Inorganic silts, inorganic or diatomaceous fine sandy or silty soils, elastic silts	Poor	Not suitable	Not suitable	Medium to very high	High
	CL	Black	Blue	Inorganic clays of high plasticity, fat clays	Poor to fair	Not suitable	Not suitable	Medium	High
	THIAN 50	Black	Blue	Organic clays of medium to high plasticity, organic silts	Poor to very poor	Not suitable	Not suitable	Medium	High
	OL	Black	Orange	Peat and other highly organic soils	Poor	Not suitable	Not suitable	Slight	Very high

\*After U.S. Army Waterways Experiment Station (1960).

**TABLE 5-4** Continued

Major Divisions (1)	Major Divisions (2)	Symbol	Letter (3)	Hatching (4)	Color (5)	Drainage Characteristics (12)	Compaction Equipment (13)	Unit Dry Densities			Typical Design Values	
								bbl/ft <sup>3</sup> (14)	Mg/m <sup>3</sup> (15)	Subgrade Modulus k (lbf/in. <sup>3</sup> ) (17)	CBR (16)	
GRAVEL AND GRAVELLY SOILS	COARSE- GRAINED SOILS	GW	.	.	Red	Excellent	Crawler-type tractor, rubber-tired roller, steel-wheeled roller	1.25-1.40	2.00-2.24	40-80	300-500	
		GP	●	●	Red	Excellent	Crawler-type tractor, rubber-tired roller, steel-wheeled roller	1.10-1.40	1.76-2.24	30-60	300-500	
		GM <u>d</u>	—	—	Yellow	Fair to poor	Rubber-tired roller, sheepfoot roller; close control of moisture	1.25-1.45	2.00-2.32	40-60	300-500	
		GU	—	—	Yellow	Poor to practically impervious	Rubber-tired roller, sheepfoot roller	1.15-1.35	1.84-2.16	20-30	200-500	
		GC	—	—	Yellow	Poor to practically impervious	Rubber-tired roller, sheepfoot roller	1.30-1.45	2.08-2.32	20-40	200-500	
	FINE- GRAINED SOILS	SW	.	.	Red	Excellent	Crawler-type tractor, rubber-tired roller	1.10-1.30	1.76-2.08	20-40	200-400	
		SP	■	■	Red	Excellent	Crawler-type tractor, rubber-tired roller	1.05-1.35	1.68-2.16	10-40	150-400	
		SM <u>d</u>	—	—	Yellow	Fair to poor	Rubber-tired roller, sheepfoot roller; close control of moisture	1.20-1.35	1.92-2.16	15-40	150-400	
		SM <u>u</u>	—	—	Yellow	Poor to practically impervious	Rubber-tired roller, sheepfoot roller	1.00-1.30	1.60-2.08	10-20	100-300	
		SC	—	—	Green	Poor to practically impervious	Rubber-tired roller, sheepfoot roller	1.00-1.35	1.60-2.16	5-20	100-300	
SILTS AND CLAYS	LLIS LESS THAN 50	ML	.	.	Green	Fair to poor	Rubber-tired roller, sheepfoot roller; close control of moisture	90-130	1.44-2.08	15 or less	100-200	
		CL	■	■	Green	Practically impervious	Rubber-tired roller, sheepfoot roller	90-130	1.44-2.08	15 or less	50-150	
		LLIS LESS THAN 50	OL	—	Green	Poor	Rubber-tired roller, sheepfoot roller	90-105	1.44-1.68	5 or less	50-100	
		SILTS AND CLAYS	MH	■	Blue	Fair to poor	Sheepfoot roller, rubber-tired roller	80-105	1.28-1.68	10 or less	50-100	
		LLIS GREATER THAN 50	CH	■	Blue	Practically impervious	Sheepfoot roller, rubber-tired roller	90-115	1.44-1.84	15 or less	50-150	
HIGHLY ORGANIC SOILS	OH	OH	—	—	Orange	Fair to poor	Sheepfoot roller, rubber-tired roller	80-110	1.28-1.76	5 or less	25-100	
		Pt	—	—	Orange	Fair to poor	Compaction not practical					

**TABLE 5-4** Continued

**Notes:**

1. In column 3, division of GM and SM groups into subdivisions of d and u are for roads and airfields only. Subdivision is on basis of Atterberg limits; suffix d (e.g., GMd) will be used when the liquid limit is 25 or less and the plasticity index is 5 or less; the suffix u will be used otherwise.
2. In column 13, the equipment listed will usually produce the required densities with a reasonable number of passes when moisture conditions and thickness of lift are properly controlled. In some instances, several types of equipment are listed because variable soil characteristics within a given soil group may require different equipment. In some instances, a combination of two types may be necessary.
  - a. *Processed base materials and other angular materials.* Steel-wheeled and rubber-tired rollers are recommended for hard, angular materials with limited fines or screenings. Rubber-tired equipment is recommended for softer materials subject to degradation.
  - b. *Finishing.* Rubber-tired equipment is recommended for rolling during final shaping operations for most soils and processed materials.
  - c. *Equipment size.* The following sizes of equipment are necessary to assure the high densities required for airfield construction:  
Crawler-type tractor—total weight in excess of 30,000 lb (14 000 kg).  
Rubber-tired equipment—wheel load in excess of 15,000 lb (7000 kg), wheel loads as high as 40,000 lb (18 000 kg) may be necessary to obtain the required densities for some materials (based on contact pressure of approximately 65 to 150 psi or 450 kPa to 1000 kPa).  
Sheepsfoot roller—unit pressure (on 6 to 12 in.<sup>2</sup> or 40 to 80 cm<sup>2</sup> foot) to be in excess of 250 psi (1750 kPa) and unit pressures as high as 650 psi (4500 kPa) may be necessary to obtain the required densities for some materials. The area of the feet should be at least 5% of the total peripheral area of the drum, using the diameter measured to the faces of the feet.
3. In columns 14 and 15, densities are for compacted soil at optimum water content for modified AASHTO compaction effort.
4. In column 16, the maximum value that can be used in design of airfields is, in some cases, limited by gradation and plasticity requirements.

**TABLE 5-5 Tabulations of Engineering Properties of Compacted Soils Used in Earth Structures\***

Important Engineering Properties										Relative Desirability for Various Uses (No. 1 is considered the best)									
Typical names of Soil Groups	Group Symbols	Perme- ability When Compacted	Shear Strength When Compacted and Saturated	Compress- ibility When Compacted and Saturated	Workability as a Construction Material	Homoge- nous Embank- ment	Erosion Resistance	Compacted Earth Lining	Seepage Important	Seepage Not Important	Fills	Canal Sections				Foundations			
												Roadways				Frost	Heave	Frost	Heave
Rolled Earthfill Dams				Canal Sections				Foundations				Roadways				Fills			
Well-graded gravels, gravel-sand mixtures, little or no fines	GW	Pervious	Excellent	Negligible	Excellent	—	—	1	1	—	—	1	1	1	1	1	1	3	3
Poorly graded gravels, gravel-sand mixtures, little or no fines	GP	Very pervious	Good	Negligible	Good	—	—	2	2	—	—	3	3	3	—	3	3	—	—
Silty gravels, poorly graded gravel-sand-silt mixtures	GM	Semipervious to impervious	Good	Negligible	Good	2	4	—	4	4	1	4	4	4	9	9	5	5	5
Clayey gravels, poorly graded gravel-sand-clay mixtures	GC	Impervious	Good to fair	Very low	Good	1	1	—	3	1	2	6	5	5	5	1	1	1	1
Well-graded sands, gravelly sands, little or no fines	SW	Pervious	Excellent	Negligible	Excellent	—	—	if gravelly	3	—	—	2	2	2	2	2	2	4	4
Poorly graded sands, gravelly sands, little or no fines	SP	Pervious	Good	Very low	Fair	—	—	if gravelly	4	7	—	—	5	6	4	—	4	4	—
Silty sands, poorly graded sand-silt mixtures	SM	Semipervious to impervious	Good	Low	Fair	4	5	—	if gravelly	5	if erosion critical	3	7	8	10	6	6	4	—

Clayey sands, poorly graded sand-clay mixtures	SC	Impervious	Good to fair	Low	Good	3	2	—	5	2	4	8	7	6	2
Inorganic silts and very fine sands, rock flour, silty or clayey fine sands with slight plasticity	ML	Semi-pervious to impervious	Fair	Medium	Fair	6	6	—	—	6	6	9	10	11	—
Inorganic clays of low to medium plasticity, gravelly clays, sandy clays, silty clays, lean clays	CL	Impervious	Fair	Medium	Good to fair	5	3	—	9	3	5	10	9	7	7
Organic silts and organic silt-clays of low plasticity	OL	Semi-pervious to impervious	Poor	Medium	Fair	8	8	—	—	7	7	11	11	12	—
Inorganic silts, micaceous or diatomaceous fine sandy or silty soils, elastic silts	MH	Semi-pervious	Fair to poor to impervious	High	Poor	9	9	—	—	—	8	12	12	13	—
Inorganic clays of high plasticity, fat clays	CH	Impervious	Poor	High	Poor	7	7	—	10	10	volume change critical	9	13	13	8
Organic clays of medium to high plasticity	OH	Impervious	Poor	High	Poor	10	10	—	—	—	—	10	14	14	—
Peat and other highly organic soils	PT	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

\*After USBR (1974).

## **EXAMPLE 5.4**

**Given:**

A soil, classified as a CL according to the USCS, is proposed for a compacted fill.

**Required:**

Consider the soil to be used as:

- a. Subgrade
- b. Earth dam
- c. Foundation support for a structure

Use Tables 5-4 and 5-5 and comment on:

1. The overall suitability of the soil
2. Potential problems of frost
3. Significant engineering properties
4. Appropriate compaction equipment to use

**Solution:**

Prepare a table for soil type CL.

Item	Use:	Subgrade	Earth Dam	Structural Foundation
1. Applicability	Poor to fair	Useful as central core	Acceptable if compacted dry of optimum and if not saturated during service life	
2. Frost potential	Medium to high	Low if covered by nonfrost heaving soil of sufficient depth	Medium to high if not controlled by temperature and water availability	
3. Engineering properties	Medium compressibility fair strength $CBR \leq 15$	Low permeability, compact for low permeability and high strength but also for flexibility	Potential for poor strength and therefore poor performance	
4. Appropriate compaction equipment	Sheepsfoot and/or rubber-tired roller	Sheepsfoot and/or rubber-tired roller	Sheepsfoot and/or rubber-tired roller	

**Note:** Once you have finished with this book and a course in foundation engineering, you could readily expand the information in this table.

## PROBLEMS

- 5-1. For the data in Fig. 5.1:
- Estimate the maximum dry density and optimum water content for both the standard curve and the modified Proctor curve.
  - What is the placement water content range for 90% relative compaction for the modified Proctor curve and 95% relative compaction for the standard Proctor curve?
  - For both curves, estimate the maximum placement water content for the minimum compactive effort to achieve the percent relative compaction in part (b).
- 5-2. The natural water content of a borrow material is known to be 10%. Assuming 6000 g of *wet* soil is used for laboratory compaction test points, compute how much water is to be added to other 6000 g samples to bring their water contents up to 13, 17, 20, 24, and 28%.
- 5-3. For the soil shown in Fig. 5.1, a field density test provided the following information:  
 Water content = 14%  
 Wet density =  $1.89 \text{ Mg/m}^3$  ( $118 \text{ lbf/ft}^3$ )  
 Compute the percent relative compaction based on the modified Proctor and the standard Proctor curves.
- 5-4. For the data given below ( $\rho_s = 2.64 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ ):
- Plot the compaction curves.
  - Establish the maximum dry density and optimum water content for each test.
  - Compute the degree of saturation at the optimum point for data in column A.
  - Plot the 100% saturation (zero air voids) curve. Also plot the 70, 80, and 90% saturation curves. Plot the line of optimums.

A (modified)		B (standard)		C (low energy)	
$\rho_d (\text{Mg/m}^3)$	w (%)	$\rho_d (\text{Mg/m}^3)$	w (%)	$\rho_d (\text{Mg/m}^3)$	w (%)
1.873	9.3	1.691	9.3	1.627	10.9
1.910	12.8	1.715	11.8	1.639	12.3
1.803	15.5	1.755	14.3	1.740	16.3
1.699	18.7	1.747	17.6	1.707	20.1
1.641	21.1	1.685	20.8	1.647	22.4
		1.619	23.0		

- 5-5. A field compaction control test was conducted on a compacted lift. The mass of the material removed from the hole was 1814 g and the volume of the hole was found to be  $944 \text{ cm}^3$ . A small sample of the soil lost 15 g in the drying test and the mass remaining after drying was 100 g. The laboratory control test results are shown in Fig. P5-5.
- If end-product specification requires 100% relative compaction and  $w = (\text{optimum} - 3\%)$  to  $(\text{optimum} + 1\%)$ , determine the acceptability of the field compaction and state why this is so.
  - If it is not acceptable, what should be done to improve the compaction so that it will meet the specification?

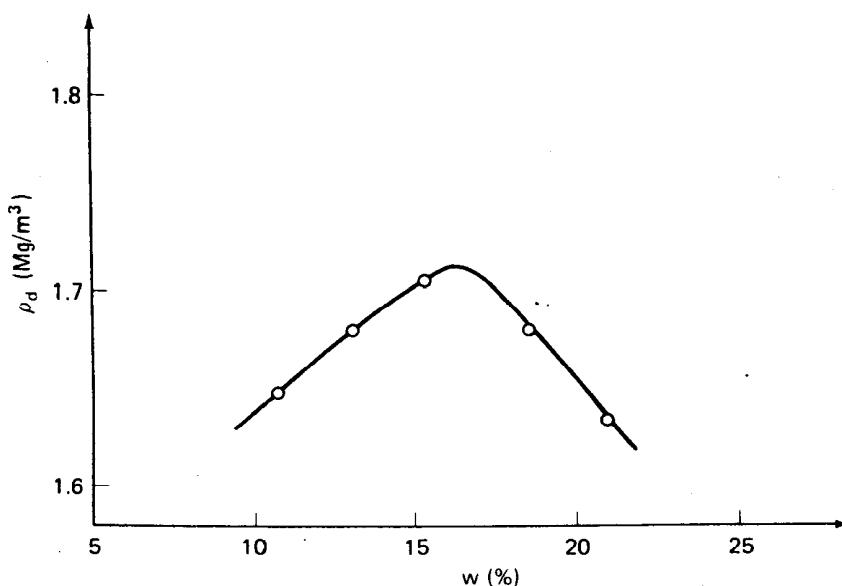


Fig. P5-5

- 5-6. Calculate the compactive effort of the modified Proctor test in both (a) SI and (b) British Engineering units.
- 5-7. Why does the relative compaction decrease if there is vibration during the sand cone test?
- 5-8. In a field density test, using the oil method, the wet mass of soil removed from a small hole in the fill was 1.59 kg. The mass of oil (sp. gr. = 0.90) required to fill the hole was 0.81 kg, and the field water content was found to be 25%. If the  $\rho_s$  of the soil solids is  $2700 \text{ kg/m}^3$ , what is the dry density and degree of saturation of the fill?
- 5-9. Let's pretend you are an earthwork construction control inspector and you are checking the field compaction of a layer of soil. The

laboratory compaction curve for the soil is shown in Fig. P5-9. Specifications call for the compacted density to be at least 95% of the maximum laboratory value and within  $\pm 2\%$  of the optimum water content. When you did the sand cone test, the volume of soil excavated was  $1153 \text{ cm}^3$ . It weighed  $2209 \text{ g}$  wet and  $1879 \text{ g}$  dry.

- What is the compacted dry density?
- What is the field water content?
- What is the relative compaction?
- Does the test meet specifications?
- What is the degree of saturation of the field sample?
- If the sample were saturated at constant density, what would be the water content?

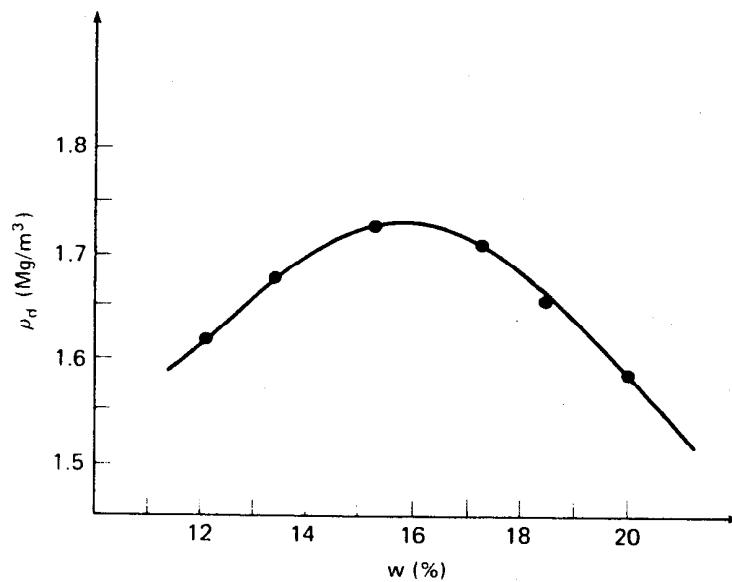


Fig. P5-9

- 5-10. You are checking a field compacted layer of soil. The laboratory control curve has the following values:

$\rho_d$ (lb/ft <sup>3</sup> )	w (%)
104	14
105.5	16
106	18
105	20
103.5	22
101	24

The specification for compaction states that the compacted field soil must be at least 95% of the maximum control density and within  $\pm 2\%$  of the optimum moisture for the control curve. You dig a hole of  $\frac{1}{30}$  ft<sup>3</sup> in the compacted layer and extract a sample that weighs 4 lb wet and 3.4 lb dry.

- (a) What is the compacted  $\rho_d$ ? The compaction  $w$ ? The percent compaction? Does the sample meet the specifications?
  - (b) If the density of solids is 2.70 Mg/m<sup>3</sup>, what is the compacted degree of saturation? If the sample were saturated at constant density, what would be the water content? (After C. W. Lovell.)
- 5-11. A mixture contains 30% by *dry weight* fines and 70% coarse. When the coarse material has a  $w = 2\%$ , its affinity for water is completely satisfied. The fines have a PL = 20 and an LL = 40. This mixture is *compacted* by rolling to  $\rho_d = 130$ pcf and  $w_{mix} = 15\%$ . What is the water content of the *fines* in the compacted mass? What is the liquidity index of the *fines* in the compacted mass? (After C. W. Lovell.)
- 5-12. A soil proposed for a compacted fill contains 40% fines and 60% coarse material by *dry weight*. When the coarse fraction has  $w = 1.5\%$ , its affinity for water is completely satisfied (that is, it is saturated but surface dry). The Atterberg limits of the fines are LL = 27 and PL = 12. The soil is compacted by rolling to a  $\rho_d = 2.0$  Mg/m<sup>3</sup> at  $w = 13\%$ . Note: This is the water content of the entire soil mixture.
- (a) What is the water content of the *fines* in the compacted mass?
  - (b) What is the likely classification of the soil? (Give both the Unified and the AASHTO classifications).
  - (c) What is the liquidity index of the fines?
  - (d) What can you say about the susceptibility of the fill to
    - (1) shrinkage-swelling potential?
    - (2) potential for frost action?
  - (e) Is there a certain type of compaction equipment you would especially recommend for this job? Why?
- 5-13. A fine sand with poor gradation is to be used as a subgrade for a flexible pavement. Give as much information as you can about the suitability of this soil as a pavement subgrade.
- 5-14. What soils, if properly compacted, would make the best foundation material for a structure? Give your answers in terms of the Unified Soil Classification System symbols.
- 5-15. The same as problem 5-14, for an earth dam.

- 5-16. Given: The data shown in Fig. 5.2. Soil types 3 and 4 are mixed in the borrow area to some unknown extent. After air drying a representative sample of the combined material to a uniform water content (hopefully on the dry side of optimum), a compaction test is performed and a value of  $1.8 \text{ Mg/m}^3$  dry density at 11% water content is obtained. (a) Estimate the maximum dry density of the combined soils. (b) If a field dry density of  $1.58 \text{ Mg/m}^3$  were obtained after compaction by a sheepsfoot roller, compute the relative compaction.
- 5-17. The core of an earth dam is to be compacted on the wet side of optimum so as to ensure low permeability and flexibility (a nonbrittle stress-strain relationship). You have the choice of using a sheepsfoot roller or a smooth wheel roller to compact the soil. To reduce potential shrinkage of the dam core, which is the best piece of equipment to use? If the soil were to be compacted dry of optimum, would it matter?

## **six**

# **Water in Soils, I: Capillarity, Shrinkage, Swelling, Frost Action**

### **6.1 INTRODUCTION**

From previous discussions on the Atterberg limits, classification of soils, and soil structure, you should now realize that the presence of water in soils is very important. Water very strongly affects the engineering behavior of most soils, especially fine-grained soils, and water is an important factor in most geotechnical engineering problems. A few examples include capillarity, swelling, and frost action in soils, discussed in this chapter, and seepage of water through dams, levees, etc., discussed in Chapter 7. Problems of settlement of structures constructed on clay soils and the stability of foundations and slopes also involve water to some extent. As an indication of the practical importance of water in soils, it has been estimated that more people have lost their lives as a result of failures of dams and levees due to seepage and "piping" (Chapter 7) than to all the other failures of civil engineering works combined. In the United States, damage from swelling soils annually causes a greater economic loss than floods, hurricanes, tornadoes, and earthquakes combined.

In general, water in soils can be thought of as either static or dynamic. The ground water table, even though it actually fluctuates throughout the year, is considered to be static for most engineering purposes. Adsorbed water (Chapter 4) is generally static. Similarly, capillary water is usually taken to be static, although it too can fluctuate, depending on climatic conditions and other factors. In this chapter we shall concentrate on static soil-water problems.

The following notation is introduced in this chapter.

Symbol	Dimension	Unit	Definition
$d$	$L$	m, mm	Diameter
$F$	$MLT^{-2}$	N	Force
$h_c$	$L$	m	Height of capillary rise
$P_{atm}$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Atmospheric pressure
$r_m$	$L$	m, mm	Radius of meniscus
$T$	$MT^{-2}$	N/m	Surface Tension
$u$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Pore water pressure
$u_c$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Capillary pressure
$\alpha$	—	degree	Contact angle

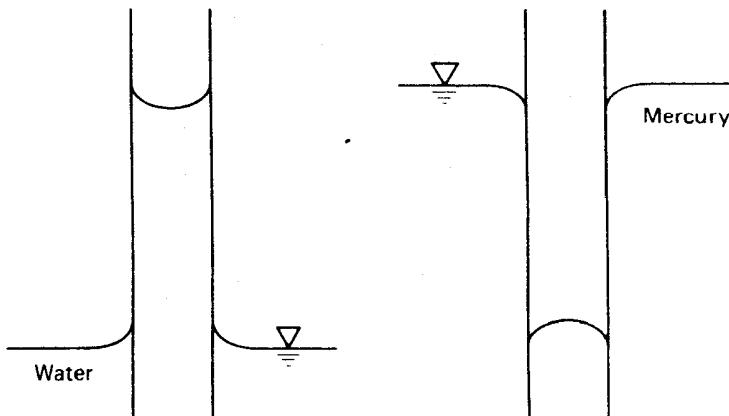
## 6.2 CAPILLARITY

*Capillarity* arises from a fluid property known as *surface tension*, which is a phenomenon that occurs at the interface between different materials. For soils, it occurs between surfaces of water, mineral grains, and air. Fundamentally, surface tension results from differences in forces of attraction between the molecules of the materials at the interface.

The phenomenon of capillarity may be demonstrated in many ways. Placing the end of a dry towel in a tub of water will eventually result in a saturated towel. To illustrate the effects of capillarity in soils, we can use the analogy of small diameter glass tubes to represent the voids between the soil grains. Capillary tubes demonstrate that the adhesion forces between the glass walls and water causes the water to rise in the tubes and form a meniscus\* between the glass and the tube walls. The height of rise is inversely proportional to the diameter of the tubing; the smaller the inside diameter of the tube, the greater the height of capillary rise. The meniscus formed is concave upward with the water "hanging," so to speak, on the walls of the glass tube (Fig. 6.1a). With some materials the internal cohesion forces are greater than the adhesion forces, and the substance will not "wet" the glass tube. Mercury, for example, has a depressed meniscus; its shape is convex (Fig. 6.1b).

If we look more closely at the meniscus geometry for water in a fine capillary tube (Fig. 6.2), we can write equations for the forces acting in the

\*After Giacomo Meniscus (1449-1512), a Venetian physician and friend of Leonardo da Vinci. (We are indebted to Prof. M. E. Harr, Purdue University, for this little known fact.)



(a) Water

(b) Mercury

Fig. 6.1 Menisci in glass tubes in (a) water and (b) mercury.

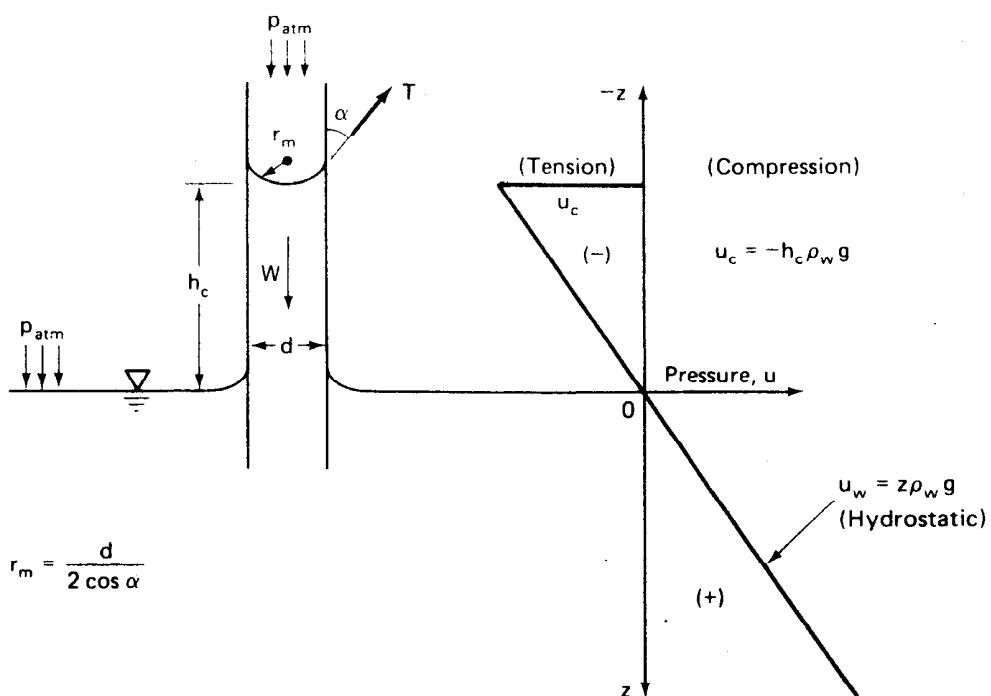


Fig. 6.2 Meniscus geometry of capillary rise of water in a glass tube.

water column. The force acting downward, considered positive, is the weight of the column of water, or

$$\sum F_{\text{down}} = \text{volume} (\rho_w)g = h_c \left( \frac{\pi}{4} d^2 \right) \rho_w g \quad (6-1)$$

The upward force is the vertical component of the reaction of the meniscus against the tube circumference, or

$$\sum F_{\text{up}} = \pi d T \cos \alpha \quad (6-2)$$

where  $T$  is the *surface tension* of the water-air interface which acts around the circumference of the tube. The surface tension has dimensions of force/unit length. The other terms are functions of the geometry of the system and are defined in Fig. 6.2.

For equilibrium  $\sum F_v = 0$ , and

$$-(h_c) \frac{\pi}{4} d^2 \rho_w g - \pi d T \cos \alpha = 0 \quad (6-3)$$

Solving for the height of capillary rise, for clean glass tubes and pure water,  $\alpha \rightarrow 0$  and  $\cos \alpha \rightarrow 1$ . Thus

$$h_c = \frac{-4T}{\rho_w g d} \quad (6-4)$$

The capillary rise is upward, above the *free water surface*, but it has a negative value because of the sign convention shown in Fig. 6.2. Surface tension  $T$  is a physical property of water and, from the *Handbook of Chemistry and Physics* (1977), at 20°C,  $T$  is about 73 dynes/cm or 73 mN/m. Since  $\rho_w = 1000 \text{ kg/m}^3$  and  $g = 9.81 \text{ m/s}^2$ , for pure water in clean glass tubes Eq. 6-4 reduces to

$$h_c = \frac{-3(10^{-5})m}{d(\text{in m})} = \frac{-0.03 \text{ m}}{d(\text{in mm})} \quad (6-5)$$

This formula is easy to remember. For the height of capillary rise in metres, divide 0.03 by the diameter in millimetres.

All the preceding discussion is for clean glass tubes and pure water under laboratory conditions. In reality, the actual height of capillary rise is likely to be somewhat less due to the presence of impurities and imperfectly clean surfaces.

### EXAMPLE 6.1

**Given:**

The diameter of a clean glass capillary tube is 0.1 mm.

**Required:**

Expected height of capillary rise of water.

**Solution:**

Use Eq. 6-5.

$$h_c = \frac{0.03}{0.1 \text{ mm}} (\text{m}) = 0.3 \text{ m}$$

Also shown in Fig. 6.2 is the pressure or stress distribution in the water. Below the surface of the water reservoir, the pressure increases linearly with depth (hydrostatic pressure). Above the reservoir surface, the water pressure in the capillary tube is negative or less than zero gage pressure (referenced to atmospheric pressure). From Eq. 6-4, its magnitude is

$$u_c = h_c \rho_w g = -\frac{4T}{d} = \frac{-2T}{r_m} \quad (6-6)$$

The shape of the meniscus is actually spherical (a minimum energy condition) with radius  $r_m$  (Fig. 6.2). The radius is greater than or equal to the radius of the tube, depending on the contact angle  $\alpha$ . When  $\alpha$  is approximately zero, then  $r_m = d/2$ .

What is the maximum negative pressure that can be attained? In large tubes, the limitation is the vapor pressure of water. When the pressure goes negative, that is, less than atmospheric, water will cavitate, or "boil," when the ambient pressure reaches the vapor pressure. In absolute terms, the vapor pressure of water is 17.54 mm Hg or 2.34 kPa absolute at 20°C [from the *Handbook of Chemistry and Physics* (1977)]. The relationships between absolute, gage, and vapor pressure of water is shown in Fig. 6.3. The equivalent capillary tube diameter at the vapor pressure is about 3  $\mu\text{m}$ . Now, if the tube is smaller than this diameter, then the water cannot cavitate because the surface tension is too high and a bubble cannot form. In this case, the height of capillary rise in smaller tubes depends only on the tube diameter, and the rise may be much greater than 10 m. Similarly, the capillary pressure (pore water tension) in this case may be much greater than -1 atm or -100 kPa. It should be noted that for *large tubes* the maximum allowable tension or suction in water depends only on the atmospheric pressure and has nothing to do with the diameter of the tube. Capillary rise in *small tubes*, on the other hand, has no relation to atmospheric pressure and is a function of the tube diameter only (Terzaghi and Peck, 1967).

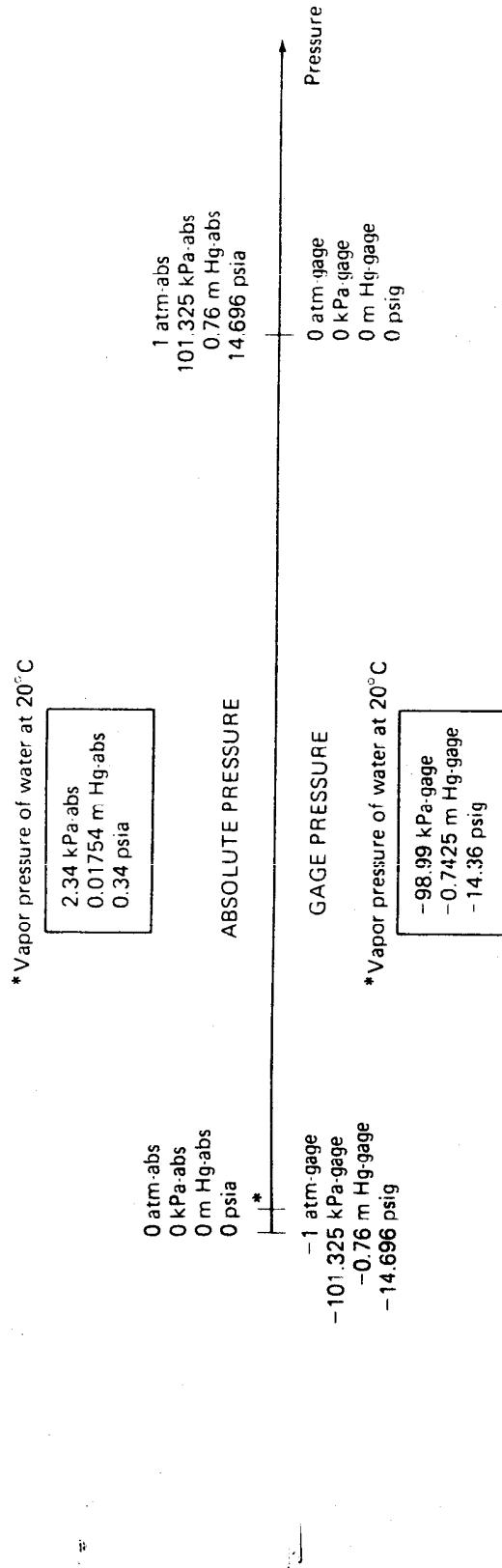


Fig. 6.3 The relationship between atmospheric and vapor pressures (water) in terms of absolute and gage pressures.

---

## EXAMPLE 6.2

Given:

The pressure relationships shown in Fig. 6.3.

Required:

- a. Show that the maximum height of a water column in a large tube is about 10 m.
- b. Show that the equivalent pore diameter at the vapor pressure is about  $3 \mu\text{m}$ .

Solution:

- a. In large tubes, the maximum height of a water column is governed by the vapor pressure or the maximum negative pressure in the water. From Fig. 6.3, at the vapor pressure, the pressure is  $-98.99 \text{ kPa}$ . Using Eq. 6-6 we have,

$$h_c = \frac{u_c}{\rho_w g} = \frac{-98.99 \text{ kPa}}{(1000 \text{ kg/m}^3)(9.81 \text{ m/s}^2)}$$
$$= -10.1 \text{ m (rise)}$$

since  $1 \text{ kPa} = 10^3 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m/s}^2/\text{m}^2$  (Appendix A).

- b. Use Eq. 6-5.

$$d_c = \frac{-3(10^{-5}) \text{ m}}{h_c (\text{in m})} = \frac{3(10^{-5}) \text{ m}}{-10.1 \text{ m}} = 3(10^{-6}) \text{ m}$$

---

Even though soils are random assemblages of particles and the resulting voids are similarly random and highly irregular, the capillary tube analogy, although imperfect, helps explain capillary phenomena observed in real soils. In principle, capillary or negative pressures and capillary rise will be similar in soils and in glass tubes. Let's look at a series of capillary tubes in Fig. 6.4. Tube 1 has a diameter  $d_c$ , and thus the corresponding height of capillary rise is  $h_c$ . The fully developed meniscus has a radius  $r_c$ . In tube 2,  $h < h_c$ ; the water will try to rise to  $h_c$  but cannot. Consequently, the radius of the meniscus in tube 2 will be *greater* than  $r_c$  since it is physically impossible for the corresponding capillary pressure (and therefore the  $r_c$ ) to develop. In tube 3, a large bubble or void exists, and there is no way for the water to be pulled above a void with diameter greater than

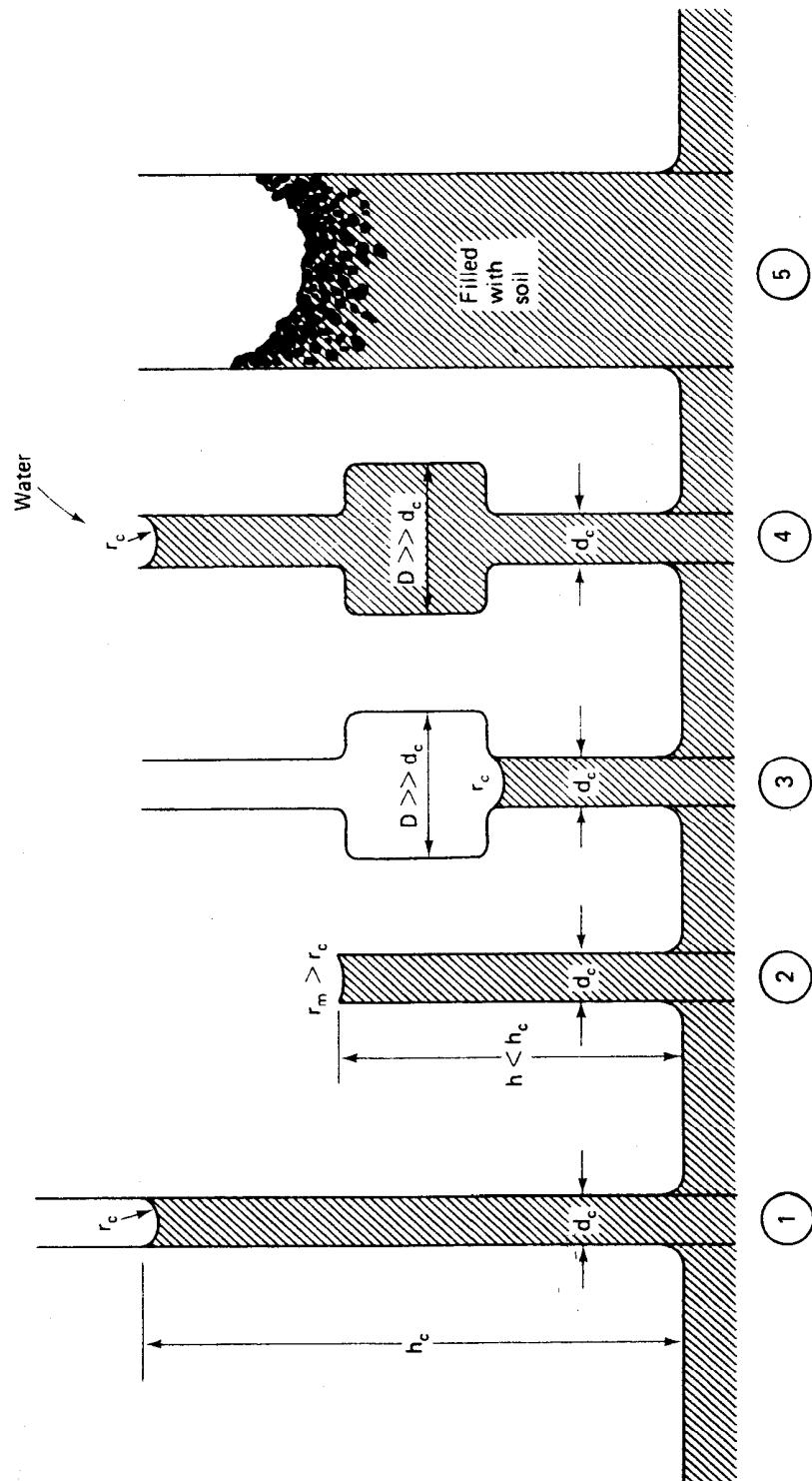
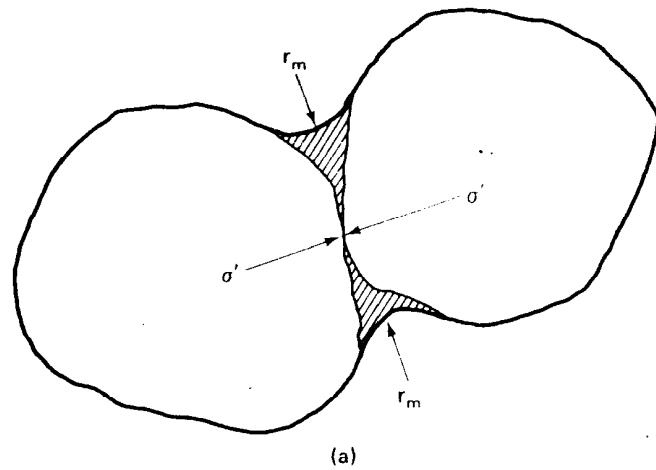


Fig. 6.4 Capillary rise in tubes of different shapes (after Taylor, 1948).

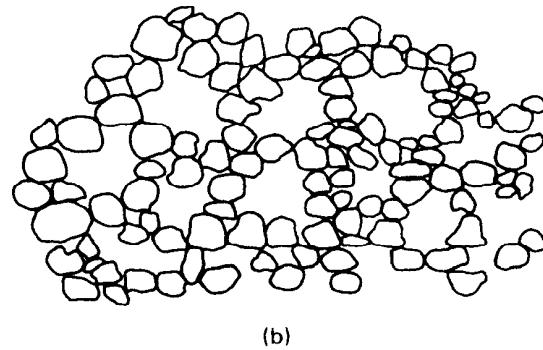
$d_c$ . However, if as is shown in tube 4 water infiltrates down from the top, then it is possible for the meniscus at the top of the tube to support the entire column of water. The walls of the void support the water in the void outside of a column of water of diameter  $d_c$ . Tube 5 is filled with soil, and the water would rise to the surface of the soil since the average or *effective* pore diameter is much less than  $d_c$ . The capillary menisci hang on the particles, which increases the contact forces between the particles. A magnified picture of two sand particles connected by menisci of radius  $r_m$  is shown in Fig. 6.5a. The intergranular contact stress is  $\sigma'$ .

In soils, it is common to assume the effective pore diameter is about 20% of the effective grain size ( $D_{10}$ ). Using this assumption, we can estimate a theoretical height of capillary rise and the corresponding capillary pressure for a fine-grained soil. This assumption points up the importance of *pore size*, not grain size, as the controlling factor in capillar-



(a)

Fig. 6.5 (a) Two soil grains held together by a capillary film.



(b)

Fig. 6.5 (b) Bulking structure in sand.

ity. Research at Purdue University (Garcia-Bengochea, et al., 1979) has shown that, depending on the type of compaction and the molding water content, you can get very different pore size distributions in the same soil. The geologic history, soil structure, and fabric of natural soils also varies tremendously, and it is possible to have very different pore size distributions in soils with the same  $D_{10}$ .

---

### EXAMPLE 6.3

**Required:**

Calculate (a) the theoretical height of capillary rise and (b) the capillary pressure in a clay soil with  $D_{10}$  of  $1 \mu\text{m}$ .

**Solution:**

$$\text{Effective pore diameter} = 0.2 (D_{10}) = 0.2 \mu\text{m} = 0.2 \times 10^{-3} \text{ mm}$$

a. Capillary rise (Eq. 6-5):

$$h_c = \frac{-0.03 \text{ m}}{0.2 \times 10^{-3} \text{ mm}} = 150 \text{ m (about 500 ft)}$$

b. Capillary pressure (Eq. 6-6):

$$\begin{aligned} u_c &= h_c \rho_w g = -150 \text{ m} (1000 \text{ kg/m}^3)(9.81 \text{ m/s}^2) \\ &\simeq -1500 \text{ kPa} \simeq -15 \text{ atm} \simeq -225 \text{ psi} \end{aligned}$$


---

These are very large pressures indeed and we can show that the intergranular stresses between the soil grains are of the same order of magnitude. The *intergranular* or *effective stress*  $\sigma'$  (Fig. 6.5a), which is discussed in more detail in the next chapter, is defined as the total stress  $\sigma$  minus the pore water pressure  $u$ ,

$$\sigma' = \sigma - u \quad (6-7)$$

In Example 6.3, the clay sample in the laboratory is acted on by atmospheric pressure, or the total stress  $\sigma = 0$  (zero gage pressure). Then  $\sigma' = -(-u_c) = u_c$  or, for Example 6.3,  $\sigma' \simeq +1500 \text{ kPa}$ . Rarely in nature do the capillary pressures actually reach such a magnitude. Some of the voids in natural soils are large enough that the water can vaporize and bubbles can form. Thus, menisci are destroyed and the actual height of capillary rise is reduced. But still heights of capillary rise can be significant

**TABLE 6-1 Approximate Height of Capillary Rise in Different Soils\***

	Loose	Dense
Coarse sand	0.03–0.12 m	0.04–0.15 m
Medium sand	0.12–0.50 m	0.35–1.10 m
Fine sand	0.30–2.0 m	0.40–3.5 m
Silt	1.5–10 m	2.5–12 m
Clay	$\geq 10$ m	

\*After Hansbo (1975).

in especially fine-grained soils, and capillary pressures can be important. Table 6-1 lists some typical heights of capillary rise for several soil types.

At the top of the soil-water column, the tension in the water pulls the grains of soil together, as was shown in Fig. 6.5a. The greater the capillary tension, the greater the intergranular contact stress, and therefore a higher frictional resistance develops between the grains. The effect is similar to what happens when some sand is placed in a rubber membrane, sealed, and a vacuum drawn on the sample. The external air pressure holds the grains tightly together and thereby increases their strength considerably.

The moisture film surrounding the individual grains results in "apparent cohesion." It is not true cohesion in a physical sense. In some cases, for example, end dumping of moist sands, a very loose honeycombed structure (similar to Fig. 4.20) results, as is shown in Fig. 6.5b. The grains are all held together by capillary films, and the resulting structure, although it has a very "loose" relative density, is fairly stable as long as the capillary menisci are present. This condition is called *bulking*, and it occurs only in moist sands. It is possible to destroy the capillary menisci by flooding and thereby decrease the volume significantly. Still, flooding is not a very good way to increase the overall density of a sand fill; the relative density of flooded fills will still be very low and thus not a very good foundation material. Figure 6.5b also shows why it is not a good idea to purchase moist sand by the volume—one may end up buying a lot of air!

Another important consequence of the increase in effective stress that occurs due to capillarity is illustrated by the racetrack at Daytona Beach, Florida (Fig. 6.6). The sands are very fine and have been densified somewhat by wave action. The capillary zone, which is relatively wide due to the flat slope of the beach, provides excellent driving conditions due to high capillary pressures. As in tube 5 of Fig. 6.4, the confining pressure results from the columns of water hanging on the menisci at the surface of the beach. Where the ocean water destroys the menisci, the bearing capacity is very poor, as anyone who has ever tried to escape a rising tide at a beach in an automobile knows!

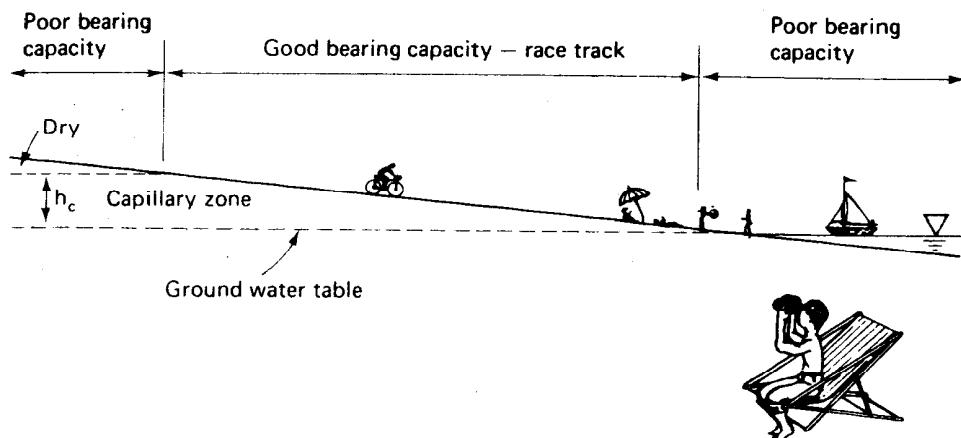


Fig. 6.6 Cross section of racetrack at Daytona Beach, Florida.

Similarly, above the zone of capillary rise, the sand is dry and also has relatively poor bearing capacity, especially for moving vehicles. The relative density throughout the beach zone is essentially the same, yet the bearing capacity is significantly different simply due to capillarity.

Capillarity also allows excavations to be constructed in silts and very fine sands—materials that, if dry, would readily fall to their natural *angle of repose* (Fig. 6.7 and Chapter 11). Below the ground water table, excavations in granular soils will collapse since the menisci obviously do not exist

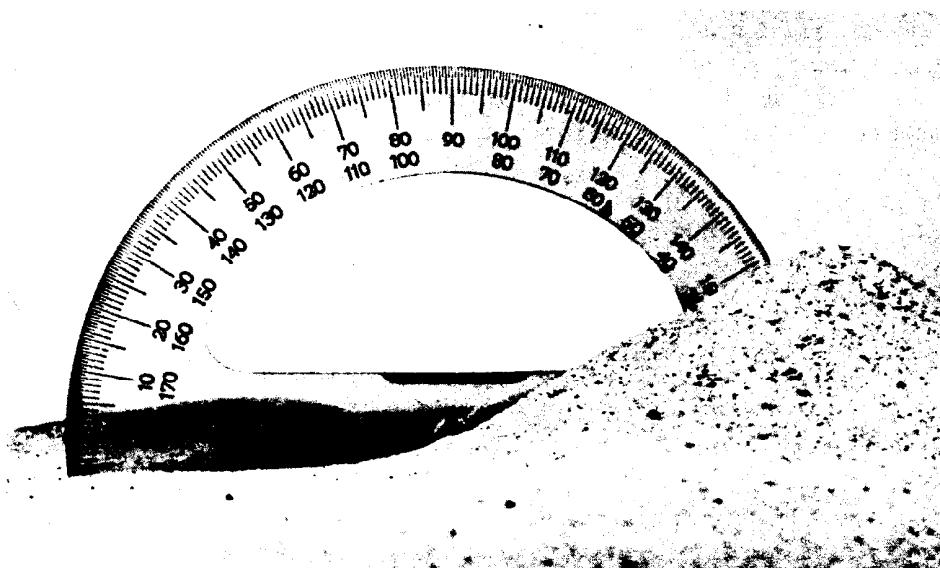


Fig. 6.7 Illustration of the angle of repose (photograph by M. Surendra).

there! Above the ground water table and within the zone of capillarity, capillary menisci at the surface of the excavation provide the stability for the cut. However such excavations are extremely unstable. They have been known to collapse due to even very slight vibrations, such as from trucks on nearby streets or nearby construction operations like pile driving. Sometimes well points and other methods for lowering the ground water table are used to cause a tension in the pore water (Terzaghi and Peck, 1967). If pumping is stopped because of a power failure, for example, the excavation can fail. High humidity, rain, or even the sweat off workpersons' backs have been blamed for the collapse of unsupported excavations in the organic silts (called *bull's liver*) along the Hudson River in New York.

### 6.3 SHRINKAGE PHENOMENA IN SOILS

We can get an idea of how capillary stresses cause shrinkage in clay soils by studying the analogy of a horizontal tube with compressible elastic walls (Terzaghi, 1927). In Fig. 6.8a the tube at the beginning is completely filled with water and the radii of the menisci, which haven't reached their final shape yet, are very large. As evaporation occurs, pressure in the water decreases and the menisci start to form (Fig. 6.8b). As evaporation continues, the radii become smaller and smaller, the compression in the compressible walls of the tube increases, and the tube shrinks in length and diameter. The limiting case, shown in Fig. 6.8c, is when the radii of the menisci are at the minimum (equal to one-half the diameter of the tube) and are fully developed. The negative pressure in the capillary tube is then equal to the value computed from Eq. 6-6, and the walls of the tube have shrunk to an equilibrium condition between the rigidity of the walls and the capillary forces. If the tube is immersed in water, the menisci are destroyed and the tube can expand because the capillary forces acting on the tube walls are destroyed.

Unless the walls of the tube are perfectly elastic, the tube will not return completely to its original length and diameter.

Another analogy illustrating the development of menisci in soils is shown in Fig. 6.9. As with the previous case, the tube initially is completely filled with water. As evaporation takes place, the menisci begin to form and, at the beginning, the largest possible radius is the radius of the larger end,  $r_L$ . At the smaller end, the radius is also equal to  $r_L$ . It cannot be any smaller because then the pressure would have to be lower (more negative) and that cannot happen. By hydrostatics, the pressure in the water must be the same at both ends, otherwise flow would occur towards the end with

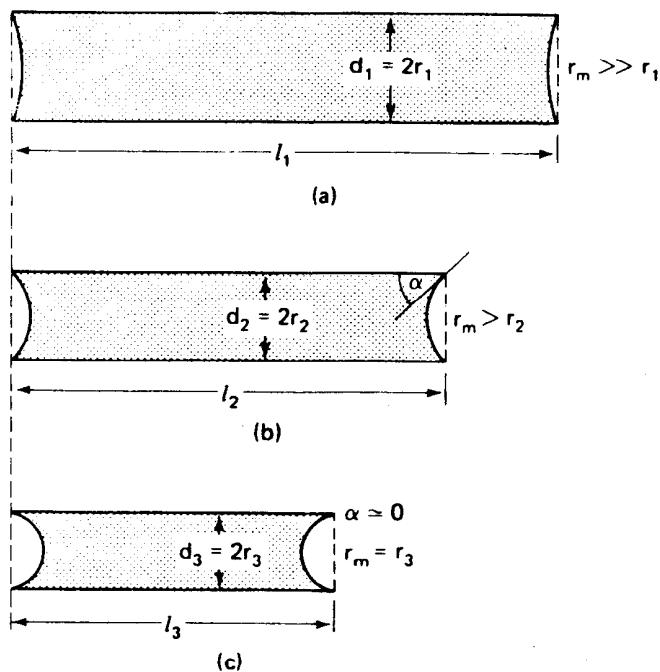


Fig. 6.8 Compressible elastic capillary tube shrinking due to evaporation and surface tension (after Terzaghi, 1927).

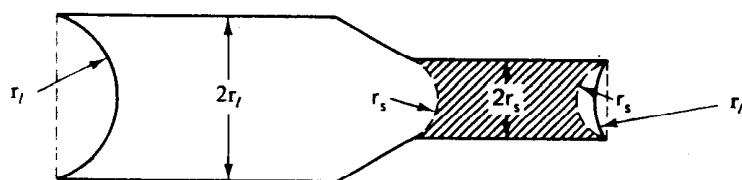


Fig. 6.9 Capillarity in a tube of unequal radii (after A. Casagrande).

the lower (more negative) pressure. As evaporation continues, the menisci retreat until the condition indicated by the cross-hatched section of the tube occurs. At this time, the menisci have radii equal to  $r_s$ , the radius of the smaller section of the capillary tube; the capillary pressure may go no further (no more negative) and corresponds to the pressure which can be supported by the smaller diameter radii. This pressure is given by Eq. 6-6. Eventually, the tube will become empty if evaporation continues.

Another simple analogy was used by Terzaghi to illustrate the effects of capillary pressures in a porous material (Casagrande, 1938). A loose ball of absorbent cotton is submerged in a beaker and allowed to become completely saturated. If the ball is compressed then released, the fibers will quickly swell again. However, if the compressed ball is removed from the

water and released, it will essentially retain its compressed shape because of the capillary menisci that form around the fibers. In fact, the ball will be rather firm as long as it doesn't dry out too much. If the ball is again immersed in water, the menisci are destroyed and the fibers again become extremely loose and soft. Similar behavior results when dry cotton is compressed; it is quite elastic and becomes loose once the compression is released.

If the tube of Fig. 6.9 is assumed to be compressible, then the analogy with shrinking soils is very useful. A soil sample slowly drying (that is, undergoing desiccation) will form capillary menisci between the individual soil grains. As a result, the stresses between the grains (intergranular or effective stresses) will increase and the soil will decrease in volume. As shrinkage continues, the menisci become smaller and the capillary stresses increase, which further reduces the volume. A point is reached where no further volume decrease occurs, but with the degree of saturation still essentially 100%. The water content at which this occurs is defined as the *shrinkage limit* (SL or  $w_s$ ), and it is one of the Atterberg limits mentioned in Chapter 2. At this point, the capillary menisci just begin to retreat below the soil surface, and the color of the surface changes from a shiny one to a dull appearance. (The same effect is observed when a dilatant soil [Chapter 3] is stressed—the menisci retreat below the surface, which becomes dull in appearance because the reflectivity of the surface changes.)

How is the shrinkage limit determined? Atterberg's (1911) original work was with small clay bars which he allowed to dry slowly. He observed the point at which the color changed and at the same time he noted that the length was essentially a minimum at that point. Terzaghi figured out that one could just as well measure the dry volume and dry mass and back calculate the water content at the point of minimum volume. Figure 6.10 illustrates this procedure. A small amount of soil of total mass  $M_i$  is placed in a small dish of known volume  $V_i$  and allowed to slowly dry. After the oven dry mass  $M_s$  is obtained, the volume of the dry soil  $V_{dry}$  is measured by weighing the amount of mercury the soil sample displaces. The shrinkage limit SL is calculated from

$$(a) \quad SL = \left( \frac{V_{dry}}{M_s} - \frac{1}{\rho_s} \right) \rho_w \times 100 (\%) \quad (6-8)$$

or

$$(b) \quad SL = w_i - \left( \frac{(V_i - V_{dry})\rho_w}{M_s} \right) \times 100 (\%) \quad (6-9)$$

The two equations correspond to the two parts of Fig. 6.10 and may readily be derived from the figure and the fundamental phase relationships of Chapter 2.

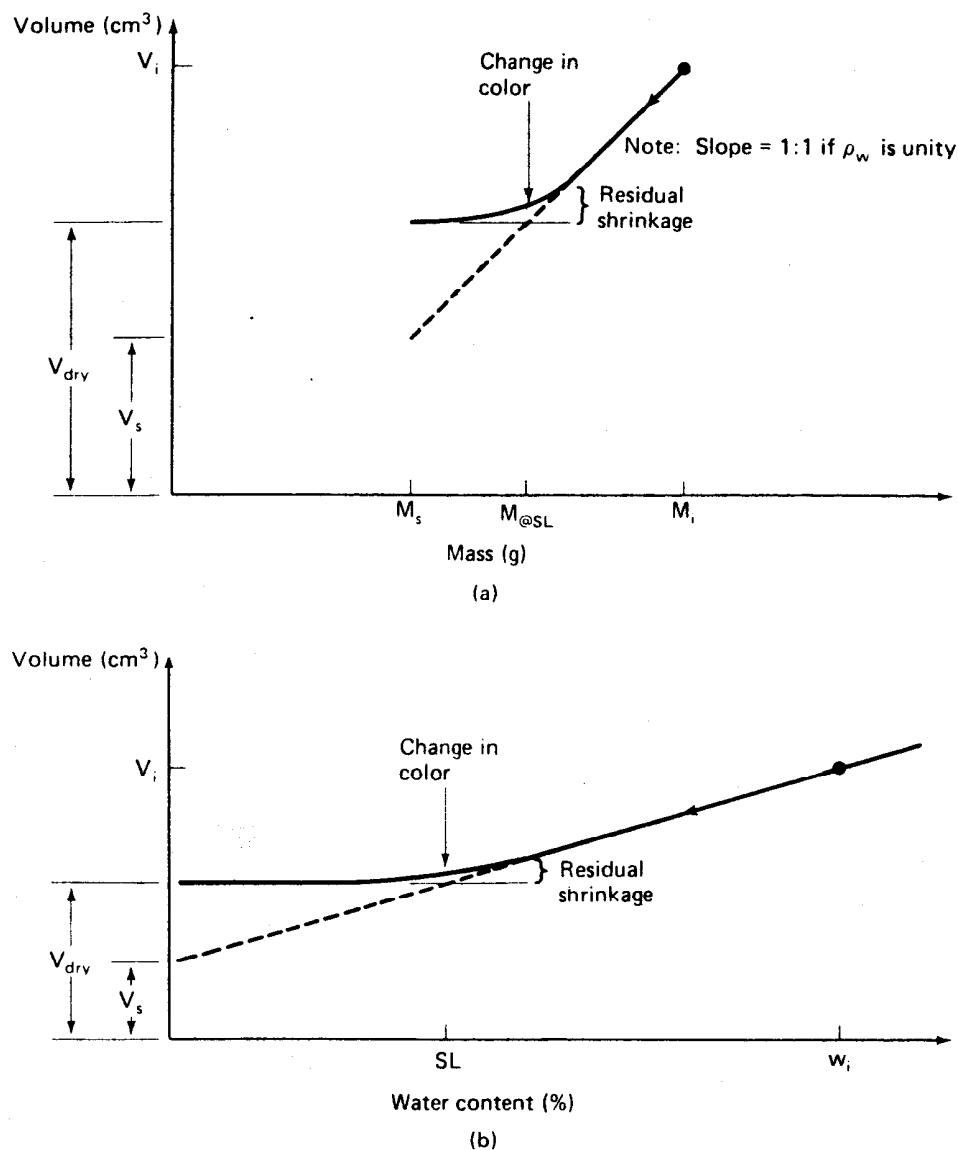


Fig. 6.10 Determination of the shrinkage limit, based on (a) total mass, and (b) water content.

Although the shrinkage limit was a popular classification test during the 1920's, it is subject to considerable uncertainty and thus is no longer commonly conducted. The test has some undesirable features. They include errors resulting from entrapped air bubbles in the dry soil specimen, cracking during drying, weighing and other measurement errors, and the danger of mercury poisoning to the operator. Casagrande suggested drying large samples and physically measuring their dimensions to avoid the

mercury poisoning problem. One of the biggest problems with the shrinkage limit test is that the amount of shrinkage depends not only on the grain size but also on the initial fabric of the soil. The standard (for example, ASTM Designation D 427) procedure is to start with the water content near the liquid limit. However, especially with sandy and silty clays, this often results in a shrinkage limit greater than the plastic limit, which is meaningless (Fig. 2.6). Casagrande suggests that the initial water content be slightly greater than the PL, if possible, but admittedly it is difficult to avoid entrapping air bubbles.

If the soil is in a natural undisturbed state, then the shrinkage limit often is greater than the plastic limit due to the structure of the soil. This is especially true for highly sensitive clays according to Karlsson (1977). Figure 6.11 shows the results of tests on several Swedish clays, both undisturbed and remolded, in which the shrinkage limits are plotted versus the plastic limits. For highly sensitive clays, the shrinkage limit of undisturbed samples is considerably greater than the plastic limit, while for medium sensitive clays the SL is close to the PL. For organic soils, the SL is significantly below the PL for both types of samples. Although sensitivity has a precise engineering definition (Chapter 11), you already have some notion of it from our previous discussions of Atterberg limits (Sec. 2.7) and clay microstructure (Sec. 4.8).

If one follows Casagrande's advice and begins the test slightly above the plastic limit, then the following results are generally obtained. When the Atterberg limits for the soil plot near the A-line on the plasticity chart (Fig. 3.2), the shrinkage limit is very close to 20. If the limits plot above the A-line, then the SL is less than 20 by an amount approximately equal to how far the limits are above the A-line. Similarly, for ML and MH (and OL and OH) soils, the shrinkage limit is greater than 20 by an amount approximately equal to how far below the A-line the limits plot. Therefore, if the vertical distance above or below the A-line is  $\Delta p_i$ , then the

$$SL = 20 \pm \Delta p_i \quad (6-10)$$

This procedure and equation have been found to be as accurate as the shrinkage limit test itself.

An even simpler procedure has been suggested by Prof. A. Casagrande in his lectures at Harvard University. If the U-line and A-line of the plasticity chart (Fig. 3.2) are extended, they converge at a point with coordinates  $(-43.5, -46.4)$ , as shown in Fig. 6.12. A line is extended from that point to the coordinates of the liquid limit and plasticity index on the plasticity chart; the shrinkage limit is where that line crosses the liquid limit axis. Although not an exact procedure, it is close enough for geotechnical work. However, the shrinkage limit test, as conducted according to ASTM, for example, is not particularly exact either. If you can obtain a

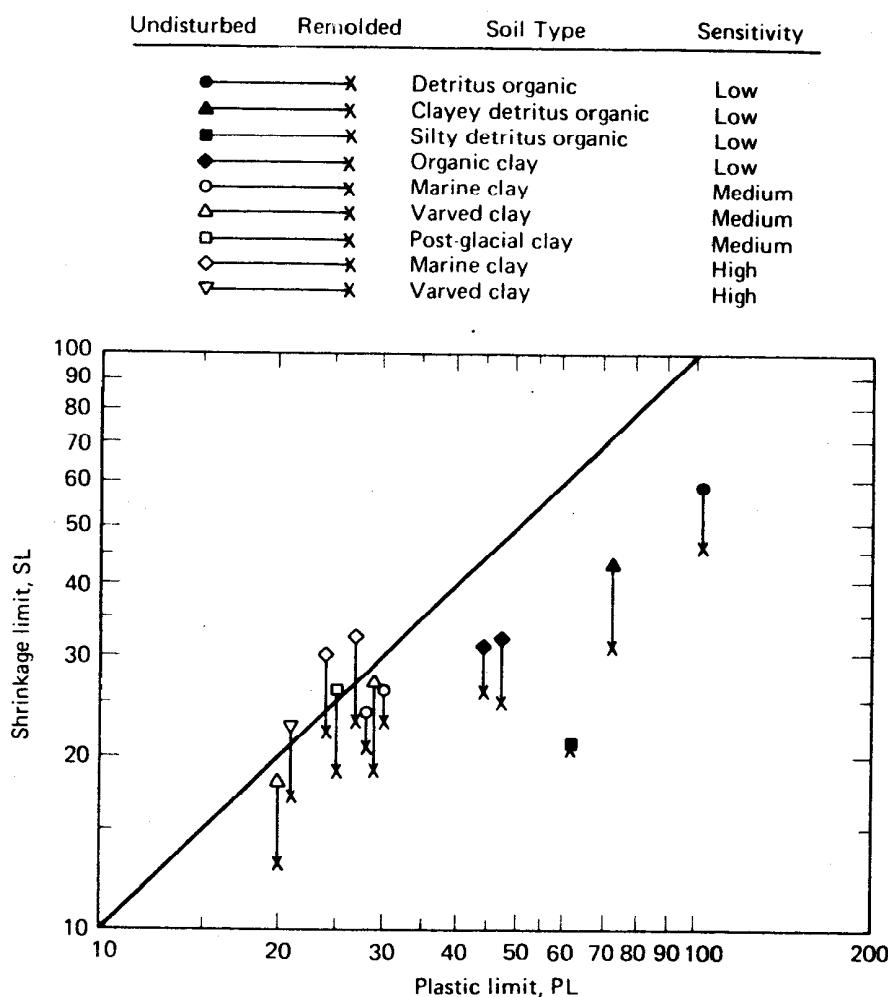


Fig. 6.11 Relation between the shrinkage limit of undisturbed and remolded samples and the plastic limit for several Swedish clays (after Karlsson, 1977).

reasonable estimate of the shrinkage limit from the plasticity chart (Fig. 6.12) then the shrinkage limit test need not be performed since it provides no additional information.

Note that the capillary pressures must be very large for very fine-grained clay soils with highly active clay minerals (near the U-line). These soils will have shrinkage limits around 8, according to the Casagrande procedure. In fact, Prof. Casagrande has observed shrinkage limits as low as 6 for montmorillonitic clays. Soils at the shrinkage limit will have a very low void ratio because the capillary pressures are so large, much greater than can be achieved by compaction, for example.

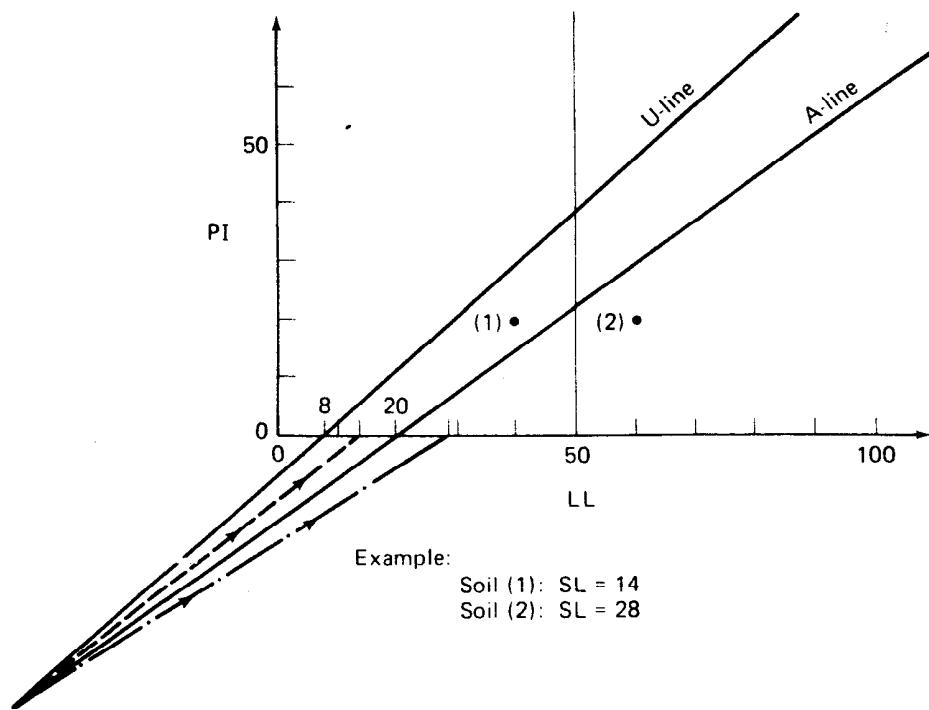


Fig. 6.12 Casagrande's procedure for estimating the shrinkage limit.

#### EXAMPLE 6.4

**Required:**

Calculate the void ratio and dry density of a soil with a shrinkage limit of 8. Assume  $\rho_s = 2.70 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ .

**Solution:**

Use Eqs. 2-12 and 2-15. Assume  $S = 100\%$ .

$$e = \frac{w\rho_s}{\rho_w} = \frac{0.08(2.70 \text{ Mg/m}^3)}{1 \text{ Mg/m}^3} = 0.22$$

$$\rho_d = \frac{\rho_s}{1 + e} = \frac{2.70 \text{ Mg/m}^3}{1.22} = 2.21 \text{ Mg/m}^3 = 137.9 \text{ lbf/ft}^3$$

Since the density of concrete is about  $2.4 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ , you can see that the capillary pressures must be very large to cause soil to become so dense. It should not be surprising then that some clay soils have very high dry strengths.

One way to show that high capillary pressures can exist in soils is to allow a fat clay (CH) soil at a high water content to dry slowly on the skin. The high shrinkage pressures will actually cause pain; in fact, this process was used during ancient times as a torture system. A human body covered with clay drying slowly in the sun has ultimately very little resistance to pressures which can reach several atmospheres! (See Example 6.3).

Another phenomenon that depends on capillarity is *slaking*, which occurs when a clod of dry soil is immersed in a beaker of water. The clod immediately starts to disintegrate, and with some soils the disintegration is so rapid that the clod appears to almost explode. Slaking is a very simple way to distinguish between soil and a rock; rocks don't slake, whereas soils do. The soil clump has to be dry since, if it is above the shrinkage limit, it will gradually swell. Below the shrinkage limit, the capillary stresses draw water in and the air bubbles trapped in the voids are compressed by the menisci. Eventually, the internal air pressure gets high enough to exceed the tensile strength of the soil. In a rock fragment the internal cohesion is sufficiently strong to resist the capillary forces.

Terzaghi (1943) used the tube analogy similar to that shown in Fig. 6.8 to illustrate slaking. The difference is that the capillary tubes are submerged and the capillary menisci are trying to pull water into the voids, as shown in Fig. 6.13. By drawing a free-body diagram of the tube walls, one can see that the walls are in tension, and if the tensile strength is less than the tension applied by the menisci, the walls will fracture, which is exactly what occurs when a soil slakes.

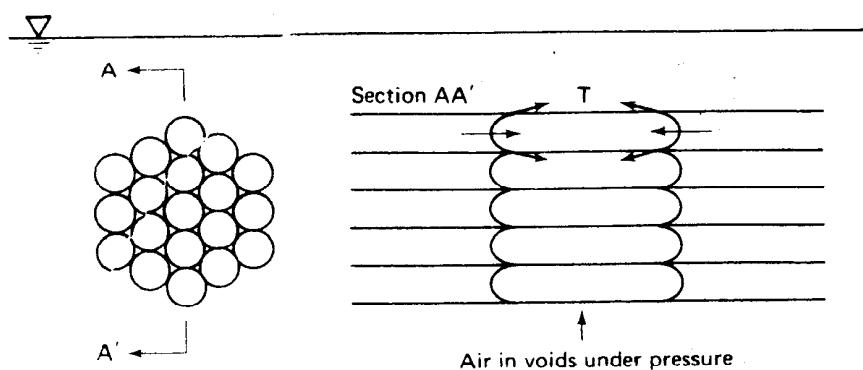


Fig. 6.13 Capillary tube analogy for slaking (after Terzaghi, 1943).

## 6.4 ENGINEERING SIGNIFICANCE OF SHRINKAGE AND SWELLING

The effects of shrinkage of fine-grained soils can be of considerable significance from an engineering point of view. For example, shrinkage cracks can occur locally when the capillary pressures exceed the cohesion or the tensile strength of the soil. These cracks, part of the clay macrostructure (Chapter 4), are zones of weakness which can significantly reduce the overall strength of a soil mass and affect the stability of clay slopes and the bearing capacity of foundations. The desiccated and cracked dry crust usually found over deposits of soft clay affects the stability of, for example, highway embankments constructed on these deposits. Shrinkage and shrinkage cracks are caused by evaporation from the surface in dry climates, lowering of the ground water table, and even desiccation of soil by trees during temporary dry spells in otherwise humid climates. When the climate changes and the soils have access to water again, they tend to increase in volume or swell. The volume changes resulting from both shrinkage and swelling of fine-grained soils are often large enough to seriously damage small buildings and highway pavements. Jones and Holtz (1973) have estimated that shrinking and swelling soils cause about \$2.3 billions of damage annually in the United States alone which, to put things in perspective, is more than twice the annual cost of damage from floods, hurricanes, tornadoes, and earthquakes combined!

A common occurrence is that a pavement or building is constructed when the top soil layer is relatively dry. The structure covering the soil prevents further evaporation from occurring and the soils increase in water content due to capillarity; then the soils may swell. If the pressure exerted by the pavement or building is less than the swelling pressure, then heave will result. It is usually uneven and causes structural damage.

The process of shrinking and swelling is not completely reversible—the soil always has a memory of its stress history and will show the effects of previous shrinkage and drying cycles. Thus soft clays become what is called *overconsolidated* and less compressible because of the increase in effective stress caused by capillary action. Overconsolidation is discussed in Chapter 8.

Swelling is a somewhat more complex process than shrinkage (Yong and Warkentin, 1975). The amount of swelling and the magnitude of swelling pressure depend on the clay minerals present in the soil, the soil structure and fabric, and several physico-chemical aspects of the soil such as the cation valence, salt concentration, cementation, and presence of organic matter. Everything else being equal, montmorillonites swell more than illites, which swell more than kaolinites. Soils with random fabrics

tend to swell more than soils with oriented fabrics. Disturbance of or remolding of old natural clays may increase the amount of swelling. Monovalent cations in a clay (for example, sodium montmorillonite) will swell more than divalent clays (for example, calcium montmorillonite). Cementation and organic substances tend to reduce swelling.

Swelling, like shrinkage, is generally confined to the upper portions of a soil deposit. Thus swelling damages lighter structures such as small buildings, highway pavements, and canal linings. Swelling pressures as high as 1000 kPa have been measured, which is equivalent to an embankment thickness of 40 to 50 m. Ordinarily, such high pressures do not occur, but even with more modest swelling pressures of 100 or 200 kPa an embankment of 5 or 6 m would be required to prevent all swelling of subgrade, for example. (For comparison, an ordinary building weighs something on the order of 10 kPa per story.) Practically speaking, the three ingredients generally necessary for potentially damaging swelling to occur are (1) presence of montmorillonite in the soil, (2) the natural water content must be around the PL, and (3) there must be a source of water for the potentially swelling clay (Gromko, 1974).

How is swelling predicted? Many methods and soil tests have been proposed. These include swelling tests and other simple laboratory tests, chemical and mineralogical analyses, and correlation with the classification and index properties of the soil. Table 6-2 is a summary of the experience of the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation based on considerable research on swelling clays and expansive soils. Gromko (1974) provides some additional correlations with soil tests that have been successfully applied to predict swelling. Figure 6.14 relates swelling and collapse to the liquid limit and the in situ dry density of soils—again, based on the experience of the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation.

**TABLE 6-2 Probable Expansion as Estimated from Classification Test Data\***

Degree of Expansion	Probable Expansion as a % of the Total Volume Change (Dry to Saturated Condition)†	Colloidal Content (% -1 $\mu\text{m}$ )	Plasticity Index, PI	Shrinkage Limit, SL
Very high	> 30	> 28	> 35	< 11
High	20–30	20–31	25–41	7–12
Medium	10–20	13–23	15–28	10–16
Low	< 10	< 15	< 18	> 15

\*After Holtz (1959) and U.S.B.R. (1974).

†Under a surcharge of 6.9 kPa (1 psi).

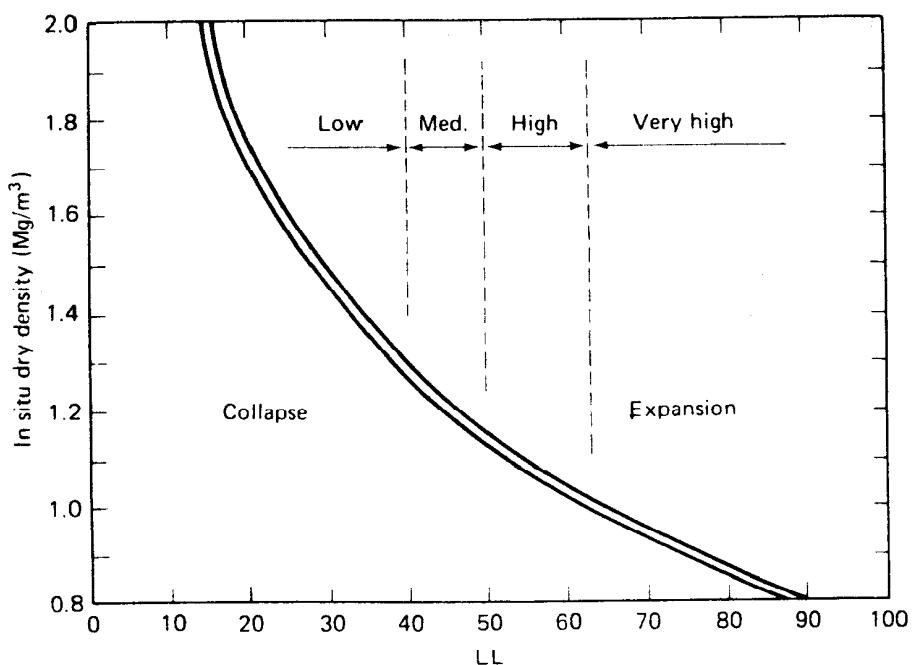


Fig. 6.14 Guide to collapsibility, compressibility, and expansion based on in situ dry densities and the liquid limit (adapted from Mitchell and Gardner, 1975, and Gibbs, 1969).

For compacted clays, Seed, et al. (1962) developed the relationships shown in Fig. 6.15 for artificial mixtures of sands and clays compacted to maximum unit weight by standard Proctor compaction and allowed to swell against a 6.9 kPa (1 psi) surcharge. These relationships between activity and percent clay sizes have also been shown to be applicable to natural soils if differences in the liquid limit devices used in the United States and Great Britain are considered. The term *activity* was originally defined by Skempton (Sec. 2.8) as the ratio of plasticity index to clay fraction (percent finer than 0.002 mm or 2  $\mu\text{m}$ ). Consequently, for natural soils, the following definition of activity has been proposed:

$$\text{activity, } A = \frac{\text{plasticity index}}{(\% - 2 \mu\text{m}) - 5} \quad (6-11)$$

The purpose of Fig. 6.15 is to identify a potentially swelling soil, which may require further study and tests such as an expansion or swell test. Figure 6.15 should not be used for design purposes.

One of the simple swelling identification tests developed by the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation is called the *free-swell test* (Holtz and Gibbs, 1956). The test is performed by slowly pouring 10  $\text{cm}^3$  of dry soil, which has passed

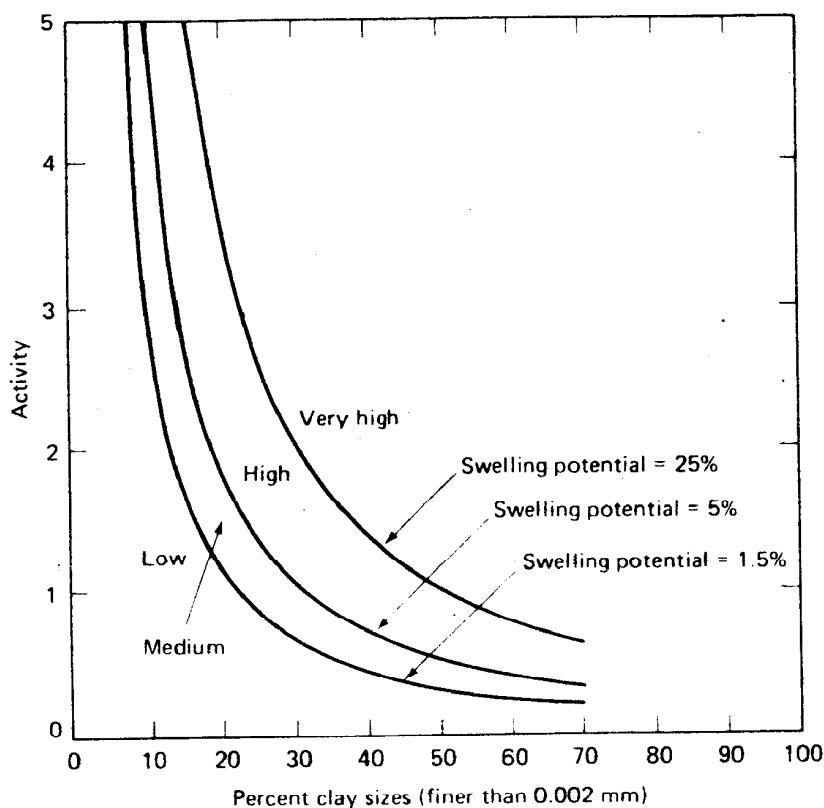


Fig. 6.15 Classification chart for swelling potential (after Seed, et al., 1962).

the No. 40 sieve, into a 100 cm<sup>3</sup> graduated cylinder filled with water, and observing the equilibrium swelled volume. Free swell is defined as

$$\text{free swell} = \frac{(\text{final volume}) - (\text{initial volume})}{\text{initial volume}} \times 100 (\%) \quad (6-12)$$

For comparison, highly swelling bentonites (mostly Na-montmorillonite) will have free-swell values of greater than 1200%. Even soils with free swells of 100% may cause damage to light structures when they become wet; soils with free swells less than 50% have been found to exhibit only small volume changes.

Other laboratory tests for swelling and swell pressures resemble the one-dimensional oedometer test described later. A specimen of soil is confined in a rigid brass ring, usually about 20 to 25 mm high and 50 to 100 mm in diameter. Sometimes the specimen is surcharged, flooded, and the percentage of swell is observed. Another variation is to keep loading

the specimen after it is inundated so that the height of the specimen remains constant. The vertical stress necessary to maintain zero volume change is the swelling pressure.

What can engineers do to prevent damage to structures from shrinking and swelling soils? For compacted fill material, it has been found that soils compacted wet of optimum and at a lower density show less tendency to swell, probably because of a more oriented soil structure. Prewetting suspected soils will allow potentially damaging swelling or collapse to take place prior to construction. Moisture barriers and waterproof membranes have been used to prevent water from reaching the swelling soil. If the water content of the foundation soil is prevented from changing, no volume change will take place. Chemical stabilization has also been successfully employed to reduce the swelling of especially sodium montmorillonitic clays. The reason why it works is discussed in Chapter 4.

Since the potential damage to light structures and pavements due to shrinkage and swelling of soils is so great, the engineer must pay special attention to this problem if it is suspected that such soils exist at a site.

## **6.5 FROST ACTION**

Anytime the air temperature falls below freezing, especially for more than a few days, it is possible for the pore water in soils to freeze. Frost action in soils can have several important engineering consequences. First, the volume of the soil can immediately increase about 10% just due to the volumetric expansion of water upon freezing. A second but significantly more important factor is the formation of ice crystals and lenses in the soil. These lenses can even grow to several centimetres in thickness and cause heaving and damage to light surface structures such as small buildings and highway pavements. If soils simply froze and expanded uniformly, structures would be evenly displaced since ice is significantly stronger than these light structures. However, just as with swelling and shrinking soils, the volume change is usually uneven, differential movement occurs, and that is what causes structural damage.

The problems do not end here. During the spring, the ice lenses melt and greatly increase the water content and decrease the strength of the soil. Highway pavements especially can suffer serious structural damage during the spring thaw (called, for obvious reasons, the "spring breakup").

An understanding of the real mechanism of ice lens formation as well as the conditions necessary for detrimental frost action only came about relatively recently. Prior to the 1920's and the rapid development of automobile traffic, roads were left snow covered for sleds during the

winter. Since snow is a good insulator, depths of frost penetration were limited and rarely was frost heave a problem. Because the traffic loads were light, there were also few problems during the spring thaw.

The problems began when it became necessary to remove snow for car traffic. At first, frost heave was popularly attributed solely to the 10% volumetric expansion of water upon freezing. But some enterprising young engineers made some measurements, both of the magnitude of heave and of the water content of highway subgrades. Prof. Casagrande relates that, on one stretch of badly frost heaving road in New Hampshire, measurements during the winter of 1928-29 showed that the depth of frost penetration was about 45 cm, and the total surface heave was about 13 cm. The water content, normally between 8% and 12%, had increased and ranged between 60% and 110%. When a test pit was excavated, the subgrade was full of ice lenses with a total thickness of (you guessed it!) 13 cm! The water table had been located at some 2 m depth in the autumn, yet during the spring it was right below the pavement. When the soil began to thaw in the spring, the upper layers became water saturated and very soft—the water was trapped in the subgrade between the thawed surface layer and the top of the still frozen soil below.

Now the question was: how did the water get up there? It wasn't there before the winter season. Capillarity seemed to be involved in the cause. Also, the observation was made that there was very little ice in clean sands and gravels, but with silty soils, ice lenses were plentiful. Further investigations showed that the formation of ice lenses also depended on the rate of freezing of the soil. If the soil froze rapidly, as might occur during a cold snap early in the winter before there was significant snow, then less ice lenses tended to form. With a slower rate of freezing, it seemed that there were more ice lenses, and the thicker lenses tended to form nearer the bottom of the frozen layer. So one of the conditions for ice lens formation must be that there is a source of water nearby.

Research during the past 40 years has explained much of the observed phenomena associated with soil freezing and frost action. As might be expected, the process, especially with fine-grained soils, is a rather complicated heat-diffusion (thermodynamic) and pore water-chemistry problem and is related to the soil-water potential and water movement in frozen soils (Yong and Warkentin, 1975).

Basically, three conditions must exist for frost action and the formation of ice lenses in soils to occur:

1. Temperatures below freezing.
2. Source of water close enough to supply capillary water to the frost line.
3. Frost susceptible soil type and grain (pore) size distribution.

Freezing temperatures depend on the climatic conditions at the site. Ground cover, topography, presence of snow, and other factors locally affect the rate and depth of frost penetration. A ground water table within the height of capillary rise provides the water to feed growing ice lenses. The soil must be fine enough for relatively high capillary pressures to develop and yet not so fine that the flow of water (permeability) is restricted. As is discussed in the next chapter, the permeability of clay soils is very low. Even though the capillary pressures are very high, unless the clay is relatively sandy or silty, the amount of water that can flow during a freezing spell is so small that ice lenses have little chance to form. However, practically speaking, clay soils near the surface are often cracked and fissured, as described previously, which may allow some water movement to the frost line.

Figure 6.16 shows a sample of fissured clay which froze down from the top. Note how the water content increased within the frozen zone and how this compared with the value before freezing. Note too how the ice lenses developed in the frozen zone. They were continually supplied from the water table through the fissures and cracks in the clay.

What are frost susceptible soils? As suggested above, ice lenses will simply not form in coarse-grained soils. Casagrande (1932a) and other researchers like Beskow (1935) in Sweden in the early thirties found that ice lens formation in fine-grained soils depended on both a critical grain size and the grain size distribution of the soil. Beskow found 0.1 mm to be the maximum size that would permit ice lens formation under any conditions. Casagrande found 0.02 mm to be a critical grain size; even gravels with only 5% to 10% of 0.02 mm silt were frost susceptible. Casagrande also found that with well-graded soils, only 3% of the material finer than 0.02 mm was required to produce frost heaving, whereas fairly uniform soils must have at least 10% of that size to be dangerous. It seems that soils with less than 1% smaller than 0.02 mm also rarely frost heaved. Beskow's (1935) limiting grain size curves are shown in Fig. 6.17 for Swedish glacial tills and similar soils. Soils above the top curve were found to be frost heaving; those below the bottom curve never heaved. Current Swedish practice is given in Table 6-3.

As with other capillary phenomena, it is the pore sizes and not the grain sizes that really control frost action. Recent research at Purdue (Reed, et al., 1979) has shown that an intrinsically frost susceptible soil, as predicted by texture and/or gradation, can actually have many levels of susceptibility, depending on the details of its compaction. The explanation for these different responses lies in the distribution of porosity into various pore sizes, which was measured by mercury intrusion.

Just as with swelling and shrinking soils, frost action seriously affects structures such as small buildings and highway pavements which are found

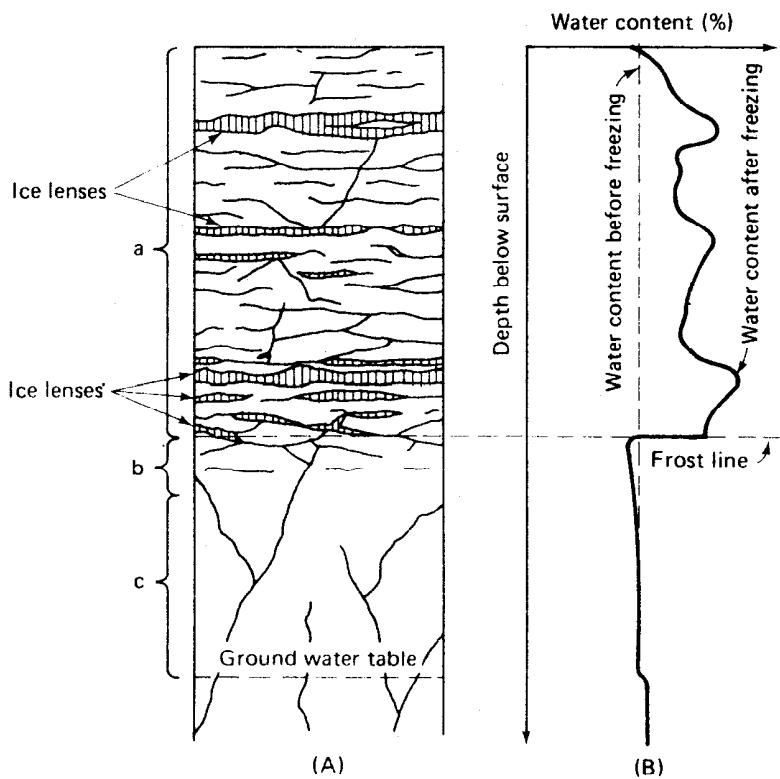
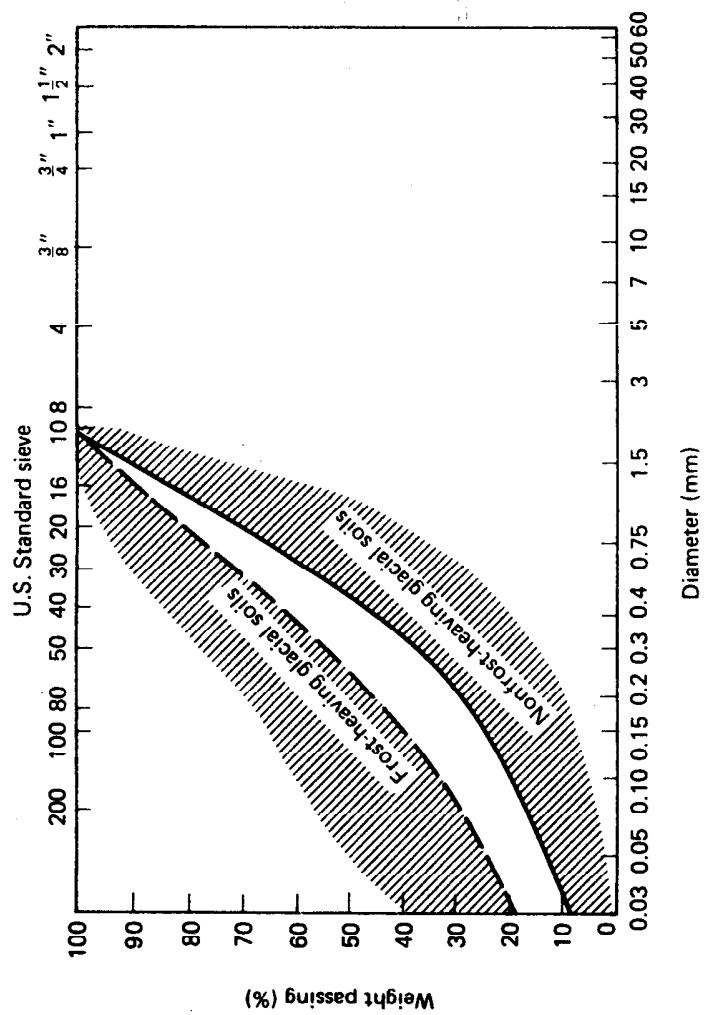


Fig. 6.16 Diagram showing the relation between different ice layers in frozen soil (A) and the water content distribution curve (B). The soil is assumed to be a medium clay with permanent cracks: *a* = frozen part, *b* = dried out zone below the frost line. Since the clay contains permanent cracks, the ground water surface is real, that is, the level where the cracks contain free water, and is therefore noticed as a kink in the water distribution curve (after Beskow, 1935).

directly on the ground surface. Damage to highways in the United States and Canada because of frost action is estimated to amount to millions of dollars annually. But because of the rather good fundamental understanding of the factors involved in frost action and heave, engineers have developed relatively successful methods for dealing with these problems. Load restrictions on secondary roads during the spring "breakup" are common in the northern United States and in Canada. More positive measures for dealing with the potential damage to structures and highways include lowering of the ground water table and, depending on the depth of frost penetration, removal of frost susceptible soils in the subgrade or foundation. Use of impervious membranes, chemical additives, and even foamed insulation (Styrofoam) under highways, buildings, and railroads have been successfully employed. Building foundations as well as water and sewer lines should be placed well below the maximum depth of frost penetration.



**Fig. 6.17** Limits between frost susceptible and non-frost-susceptible mixtures of glacial tills or similar mixtures (after Beskow, 1935).

**TABLE 6-3** Frost Susceptibility Soil Groups\*

Group	Frost Susceptibility or Danger	Soils
I	None	Gravel, sand, gravelly tills
II	Moderate	Fine clay ( $\geq 40\%$ clay <sup>†</sup> content); sandy tills, clayey tills with 16% fines <sup>‡</sup>
III	Strong	Silt, coarse clay (clay <sup>†</sup> content 15–25%); silty tills

\*After Hansbo (1975).

<sup>†</sup>Defined as  $-2 \mu\text{m}$ .

<sup>‡</sup>Defined as  $-0.06 \text{ mm}$ .

## PROBLEMS

- 6-1. The end of a clean glass tube is inserted in pure water. What is the height of capillary rise if the tube is (a) 0.1 mm, (b) 0.01 mm, and (c) 0.001 mm in diameter?
- 6-2. Calculate the maximum capillary pressure for the tubes in Problem 6-1.
- 6-3. Calculate the theoretical height of capillary rise and the capillary tension of the three soils whose grain size distribution is shown in Fig. 2.4.
- 6-4. A tube, similar to Fig. 6.8, has a 0.002 mm inside diameter and is open at both ends. The tube is held vertically and water is added to the top end. What is the maximum height  $h$  of the column of water that will be supported? Hint: A meniscus will form at the top and at the bottom of the column of water, as shown in Fig. P6-4. (After Casagrande, 1938.)

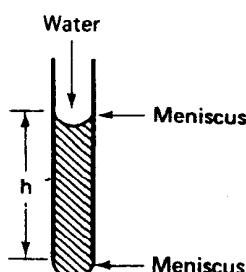


Fig. P6-4 (After Casagrande, 1938.)

- 6-5. The tube shown in Fig. 6.9 is filled with water. When evaporation takes place, the meniscus will first form at the larger end, as was explained in the text. Assuming this meniscus to be fully formed, derive an expression for the contact angle at the other end of the tube in terms of the two radii,  $r_l$  and  $r_s$ .
- 6-6. On a postcard from Daytona Beach, Florida, four answers were given to the question "Why can I drive on the beach here... but not other places?"
- (a) A gently sloping ocean bottom. The water 15 miles out is about 40 ft deep; at 50 miles, only 600 ft. This long gradual slope causes surf to have a downward pounding motion, thus packing the sand.
  - (b) A silica compound in quantity in sand helps make a firm, hard base when mixed with salt water.
  - (c) The presence of titanium (a very hard metal) contributes to firmness.
  - (d) During the long tumbling journey from the Georgia and Carolina coasts, each grain becomes smooth and round, with sharp edges worn down, allowing it to pack closely.
- Are these reasons valid? Explain.
- 6-7. (a) Would the shrinkage limit of a clay be different if the water in the voids were replaced by some other liquid with a *smaller* surface tension? Why?  
(b) Would there be more or less shrinkage? Why?
- 6-8. Assume that equations developed for height of capillary rise in constant-diameter tubes can be applied. Calculate the *net* compressive stress on a soil pat at the shrinkage limit where the average diameter of the surface pores is 0.001 mm.
- 6-9. Estimate the shrinkage limits of the soils A–F in Problem 2-35.
- 6-10. During a shrinkage limit test on a silty clay, the volume of the dry soil pat was found to be  $10.76 \text{ cm}^3$  and its dry mass was 22.68 g. If the shrinkage limit was 11.1, what is the density of the soil solids?
- 6-11. Estimate the volume change of an organic silty clay with LL = 62 and PL = 42, when its water content reduced from 50% to 20%.

- 6-12. Comment on the validity of Casagrande's procedure (Fig. 6.12) for estimating the shrinkage limit for undisturbed soils. Does it matter whether the soils are sensitive or not? Why?
- 6-13. A saturated sample of clay with an SL of 22 has a natural water content of 35%. What would its dry volume be as a percentage of its original volume if  $\rho_s$  is 2.70?
- 6-14. A sample of clayey silt is mixed at about its LL of 40. It is placed carefully in a small porcelain dish with a volume of  $19.3 \text{ cm}^3$  and weighs 34.67 g. After oven drying, the soil pat displaced 216.8 g of mercury. (a) Determine the SL of the soil sample. (b) Estimate the  $\rho_s$  of the soil.
- 6-15. The LL of a bentonitic clay is 450 and the PL is 75. The SL was determined to be about 10. Calculate the expected volumetric decrease when a sample of this bentonite is dried, if its natural water content was 85%.
- 6-16. The shrinkage limit of a  $0.1 \text{ m}^3$  sample of a clay is 15, and its natural water content is 34%. Assume the density of the soil solids is  $2.68 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ , and estimate the volume of the sample when the water content is 12.7%.
- 6-17. During the determination of the shrinkage limit of a sandy clay, the following laboratory data was obtained:

$$\text{Wet wt. of soil + dish} = 87.85 \text{ g}$$

$$\text{Dry wt. of soil + dish} = 76.91 \text{ g}$$

$$\text{Wt. of dish} = 52.70 \text{ g}$$

Volumetric determination of soil pat:

$$\text{Wt. of dish + mercury} = 430.80 \text{ g}$$

$$\text{Wt. of dish} = 244.62 \text{ g}$$

Calculate the shrinkage limit of the soil, assuming  $\rho_s = 2.65 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ .

- 6-18. The LL of a medium sensitive Swedish post-glacial clay is 56 and the PI is 28. At its natural water content, the void ratio is 1.03 while after shrinkage the minimum void ratio is 0.72. Assuming the density of the soil solids is 2.72, calculate the shrinkage limit of the clay.
- 6-19. Derive Eqs. 6-8 and 6-9 for the shrinkage limit, using phase relationships. Show that they are identical.

- 6-20. Estimate the swelling potential of soils A-F, Problems 2-33 and 2-35. Use both Table 6-2 and Fig. 6.15.
- 6-21. Estimate the frost susceptibility of soils A-F, Problems 2-33 and 2-35, according to Beskow (Fig. 6.17) and current Swedish practice.

## seven

# Water in Soils, II: Permeability, Seepage, Effective Stress

### 7.1 INTRODUCTION

The importance in civil engineering of water in soils is mentioned at the beginning of Chapter 6. Most geotechnical engineering problems somehow have water associated with them in various ways, either because of the water flowing through the voids and pores in the soil mass or because of the state of stress or pressure in the water in the pores. Some of these effects are described in this chapter.

The following notation is introduced in this chapter.

Symbol	Dimension	Unit	Definition
$A$	$L^2$	$m^2$	Area
$a, a'$	$L$	$m$	Distance from impervious boundary to bottom of sheet pile (Table 7-2)
$h$	$L$	$m$	Energy or head, head loss, (also with subscripts $f, L, m$ ), layer thickness
$h_p$	$L$	$m$	Pressure head (Eq. 7-4)
$i$	—	—	Hydraulic gradient (Eq. 7-1)
$i_c$	—	—	Critical hydraulic gradient (Eq. 7-21)
$i_E$	—	—	Exit gradient
$j$	$ML^{-2}T^{-2}$	$kN/m^3$	Seepage force per unit volume (Eq. 7-23)
$k$	$LT^{-1}$	$m/s$	Darcy coefficient of permeability (Eqs. 7-2, 7-5)
$K$	—	—	Ratio of horizontal to vertical stress (Eq. 7-18)
$K_o$	—	—	Coefficient of lateral earth pressure at rest (Eq. 7-19)

Symbol	Dimension	Unit	Definition
$K, K'$	—	—	Parameters related to form factor $\Phi$ (Table 7-3)
$L$	$L$	m	Length of sample
$l$	$L$	m	Unit or characteristic length
$m$	—	—	Function of $s$ and $T$ (Eq. 7-31)
$N_d$	—	—	Number of equipotential "drops" in a flow net (Eq. 7-26)
$N_f$	—	—	Number of flow channels in a flow net (Eq. 7-26)
$P$	$MLT^{-2}$	N	Force or load (Eq. 7-16)
$p$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Pressure (Eq. 7-4)
$q$	$L^3T^{-1}$	$m^3/s$	Flow rate (sometimes per unit width) (Eqs. 7-3, 7-5)
$Q$	$L^3$	$m^3$	Volume of flow (Eq. 7-8)
$R_{15}, R_{50}$	—	—	Filter ratios (Table 7-5)
$s, s', s''$	$L$	m	Length of sheet pile (Table 7-2)
$T$	$L$	m	Thickness of layer
$u$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Pore water pressure (Eqs. 7-13, 7-15)
$v$	$LT^{-1}$	$m/s$	Velocity (Eq. 7-2)
$v_s$	$LT^{-1}$	$m/s$	Seepage velocity (Eq. 7-6)
$z$	$L$	m	Potential head; depth
$z_w$	$L$	m	Depth to the water table (Eq. 7-15)
$\sigma$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Total normal stress (Eq. 7-13)
$\sigma'$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Effective normal stress (Eq. 7-13)
$\sigma_h$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Total horizontal stress (Eq. 7-18)
$\sigma'_h$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Effective horizontal stress (Eq. 7-19)
$\sigma_v$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Total vertical stress (Eq. 7-14)
$\sigma'_v$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Effective vertical stress (Eq. 7-19)
$\Phi$	—	—	Form factor

## 7.2 DYNAMICS OF FLUID FLOW

You may recall from your basic fluid mechanics courses that there are several different ways to describe or classify fluid flow. Flow can be *steady* or *unsteady*, which corresponds, respectively, to conditions that are constant or vary with time. Flow can also be classified as *one-, two-, or three-dimensional*. One-dimensional flow is flow in which all the fluid parameters such as pressure, velocity, temperature, etc., are constant in any cross section perpendicular to the direction of flow. Of course, these parameters can vary from section to section along the direction of flow. In two-dimensional flow, the fluid parameters are the same in parallel planes, whereas in three-dimensional flow, the fluid parameters vary in the three coordinate directions. For purposes of analysis, flow problems in geotechnical engineering are usually assumed to be either one- or two-dimensional, which is adequate for most practical cases.

Because density changes can be neglected at ordinary stress levels for most geotechnical engineering applications, flow of water in soils can be considered *incompressible*.

Flow can also be described as *laminar*, where the fluid flows in parallel layers without mixing, or *turbulent*, where random velocity fluctuations result in mixing of the fluid and internal energy dissipation. There can also be intermediate or *transition* states between laminar and turbulent flow. These states are illustrated in Fig. 7.1, which shows how the *hydraulic gradient*  $i$ , a very important concept, is defined as the energy or *head loss*  $h$  per unit length  $l$ , or

$$i = \frac{h}{l} \quad (7-1)$$

The energy or head loss increases linearly with increasing velocity as long as the flow is laminar. Once the transition zone is passed, because of internal eddy currents and mixing, energy is lost at a much greater rate (zone III, Fig. 7.1) and the relationship is nonlinear. Once in the turbulent zone, if the velocity is decreased, the flow remains turbulent well into transition zone II until the flow again becomes laminar.

For flow in most soils, the velocity is so small that the flow can be considered laminar. Thus, from Fig. 7.1, we could write that  $v$  is propor-

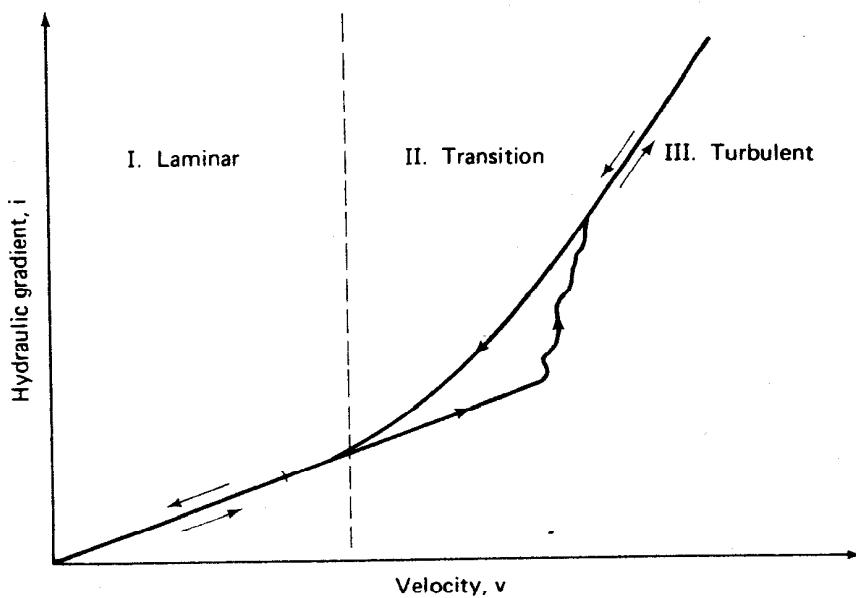


Fig. 7.1 Zones of laminar and turbulent flow (after Taylor, 1948).

tional to  $i$ , or

$$v = ki \quad (7-2)$$

Equation 7-2 is an expression for *Darcy's law*, which is discussed later in this chapter.

Another important concept from fluid mechanics is the *law of conservation of mass*. For incompressible steady flow, this law reduces to the *equation of continuity*, or

$$q = v_1 A_1 = v_2 A_2 = \text{constant} \quad (7-3)$$

where  $q$  = rate of discharge (units: volume/time,  $\text{m}^3/\text{s}$ ),

$v_1, v_2$  = velocities at sections 1 and 2, and

$A_1, A_2$  = the cross-sectional areas at sections 1 and 2.

The other well-known equation from fluid mechanics that we shall use is the *Bernoulli energy equation* for incompressible steady flow of a fluid:

$$\frac{v_1^2}{2} + \frac{p_1}{\rho_w} + gz_1 = \frac{v_2^2}{2} + \frac{p_2}{\rho_w} + gz_2 = \text{constant energy} \quad (7-4a)$$

where  $v_1, v_2$  = velocities at sections 1 and 2,

$g$  = acceleration of gravity,

$\rho_w$  = density of the fluid (water),

$p_1, p_2$  = pressures at sections 1 and 2, and

$z_1, z_2$  = distance above some arbitrary datum plane at sections 1 and 2.

This equation is the steady-flow energy equation in terms of energy per unit of mass of fluid (units:  $\text{J}/\text{kg}$ ). However in hydraulics it is more common to express the Bernoulli equation in terms of energy per unit weight by dividing each term in the equation by  $g$ , the acceleration of gravity, or

$$\frac{v_1^2}{2g} + \frac{p_1}{\rho_w g} + z_1 = \frac{v_2^2}{2g} + \frac{p_2}{\rho_w g} + z_2 = \text{constant total head} \quad (7-4b)$$

Equation 7-4b states that the *total energy* or *head* in the system is the sum of the *velocity head*  $v^2/2g$ , the *pressure head*  $p/\rho_w g (= p/\gamma_w)$ , and the *potential (position) head*  $z$ . Whether the flow is in pipes, open channels, or through porous media, there are energy or head losses associated with the fluid flow. Usually an energy or head loss term  $h_f$  is added to the second part of Eq. 7-4b; thus

$$\frac{v_1^2}{2g} + \frac{p_1}{\rho_w g} + z_1 = \frac{v_2^2}{2g} + \frac{p_2}{\rho_w g} + z_2 + h_f \quad (7-4c)$$

Why do we say head for each term in the Bernoulli equation? Because each term has units of length, and each is called the velocity head, pressure head, or potential head, as the case may be. For most soil flow problems, the velocity head is usually neglected since it is small in comparison to the other two heads.

### 7.3 DARCY'S LAW FOR FLOW THROUGH POROUS MEDIA

We have already mentioned that the flow of water through the pores or voids in a soil mass can in most cases be considered laminar. We also stated that for laminar flow the velocity is proportional to the hydraulic gradient, or  $v = ki$  (Eq. 7-2). Over one-hundred years ago, a French waterworks engineer named Darcy (D'Arcy, 1856) showed experimentally that the rate of flow in *clean sands* was proportional to the hydraulic gradient (Eq. 7-2). Equation 7-2 is usually combined with the continuity equation (Eq. 7-3) and the definition of hydraulic gradient (Eq. 7-1). Using the notation as defined in Fig. 7.2, *Darcy's law* is usually written as

$$q = vA = kiA = k \frac{\Delta h}{L} A \quad (7-5)$$

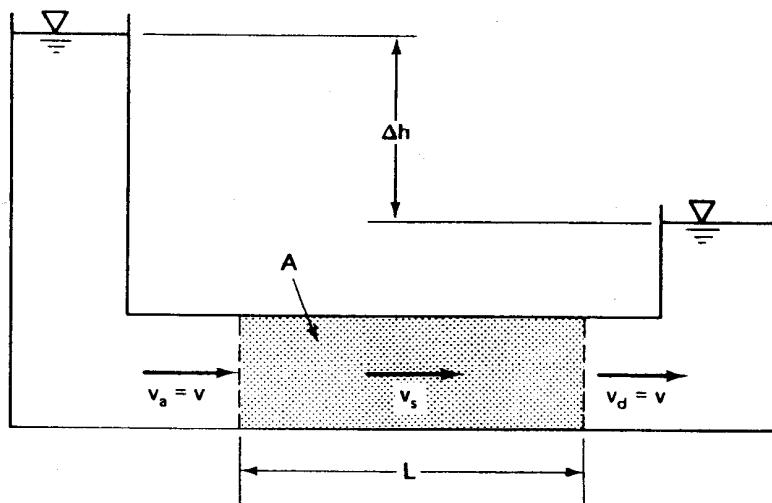


Fig. 7.2 Superficial and seepage velocities in uniform flow (after Taylor, 1948).

where  $q$  is the total rate of flow through the cross-sectional area  $A$ , and the proportionality constant  $k$  is called the *Darcy coefficient of permeability*. Commonly, in civil engineering, it is called simply the *coefficient of permeability* or, even more simply, the *permeability*. The permeability is a soil *property* which expresses or describes how water flows through soils. Knowledge of permeability is required for the design of engineering works where seepage of water is involved. Note that permeability has units of *velocity* because  $i$  is dimensionless. Units commonly used are m/s, cm/s for laboratory work, or ft/day in the British Engineering system of units.

Why do we use the total cross-sectional area in Eq. 7-5? Obviously, the water cannot be flowing through the solid particles but only through the voids or pores between the grains. So why don't we use that area and compute the velocity based on the area of the voids? It would be relatively easy to compute the area of the voids from the void ratio (Eq. 2-1), even though the void ratio is a volumetric ratio. For a unit width of sample in Fig. 7.2, we can write  $e = V_v/V_s = A_v/A_s$ . Now the approach velocity  $v_a$  and the discharge velocity  $v_d$  in Fig. 7.2 both equal  $v = q/A$ , the discharge  $q$  divided by the total cross-sectional area  $A$ . Thus the  $v$  in this relationship is really a *superficial* velocity, a fictitious but statistically convenient "engineering" velocity. The actual *seepage* velocity  $v_s$ , the actual velocity of the water flowing in the voids, is greater than the superficial velocity. We can show this by

$$q = v_a A = v_d A = v A = v_s A_v \quad (7-6)$$

From Fig. 7.3 and Eq. 2-2,  $A_v/A = V_v/V = n$ ; then,

$$v = n v_s \quad (7-7)$$

Since  $0\% < n < 100\%$ , it follows that the seepage velocity is always greater than the superficial or discharge velocity.

From the preceding discussion you can see that the void ratio or porosity of a soil affects how water flows through it and thus the value of the permeability of a particular soil. From theoretical relationships for flow through capillary tubes developed by Hagen and Poiseuille about 1840 and from the more recent hydraulic radius models of Kozeny and Carman, we

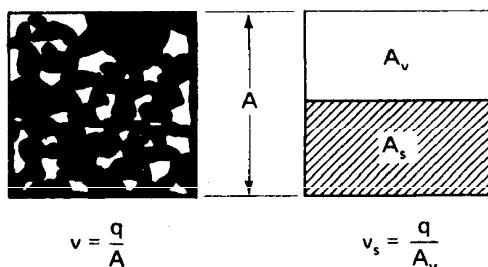


Fig. 7.3 Phase diagram for seepage and superficial velocities of flow (flow is perpendicular to page).

know that several other factors also affect permeability. (Leonards, 1962, Chapter 2, provides an excellent summary of these developments.) The effective grain size (or, better, the effective pore size) has an important influence, much as it does on the height of capillary rise (Sec. 6.2). The shapes of the voids and flow paths through the soil pores, called *tortuosity* also affect  $k$ . All of the previous discussion of permeability was for saturated soils only, so the degree of saturation  $S$  must influence the actual permeability. Finally the properties of the fluid have some effect; viscosity, which depends on the temperature, and the density immediately come to mind.

Since Darcy originally developed his relationship for clean filter sands, how valid is his law for other soils? Careful experiments have shown that Eq. 7-5 is valid for a wide range of soil types at engineering hydraulic gradients. In very clean gravels and open-graded rock fills, flow may be turbulent and Darcy's law would be invalid. At the other end of the spectrum, careful investigations by Hansbo (1960) found that in clays at very low hydraulic gradients the relationship between  $v$  and  $i$  is nonlinear (Fig. 7.4). Field measurements (Holtz and Broms, 1972) showed that the exponent  $n$  has an average value of about 1.5 in typical Swedish clays. However, there is by no means complete agreement with the concept shown in Fig. 7.4. Mitchell (1976, pp. 349–351) summarizes several investigations about this point, and he concludes that "...all other factors held constant, Darcy's law is valid."

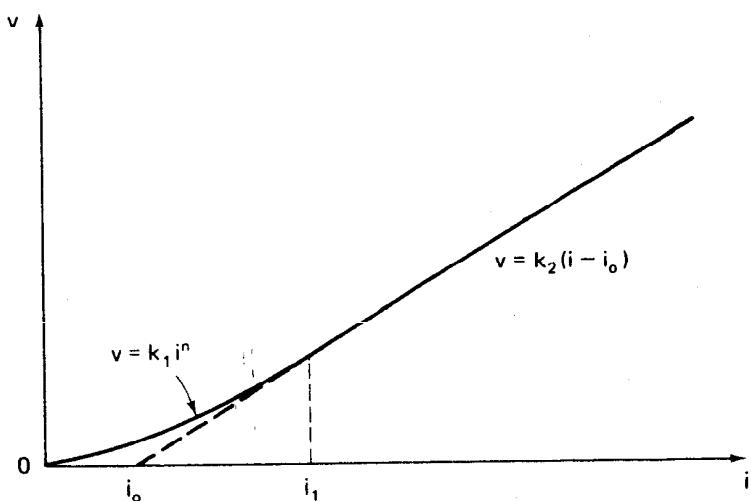


Fig. 7.4 Deviation from Darcy's law observed in Swedish clays (after Hansbo, 1960).

## 7.4 MEASUREMENT OF PERMEABILITY

How is the coefficient of permeability determined? A device called a *permeameter* is used in the laboratory, and either a *constant-head test* or a *falling-head test* is conducted (Figs. 7.5a and b). In the field, pumping tests are usually conducted, although it would be possible in principle to utilize either constant- or falling-head tests.

For the constant-head test, the volume of water  $Q$  collected in time  $t$  (Fig. 7.5a) is

$$Q = Avt$$

From Eq. 7-5,

$$v = ki = k \frac{h}{L}$$

so

$$k = \frac{QL}{hAt} \quad (7-8)$$

where  $Q$  = total discharge volume,  $\text{m}^3$ , in time  $t$ , s, and

$A$  = cross-sectional area of soil sample,  $\text{m}^2$ .

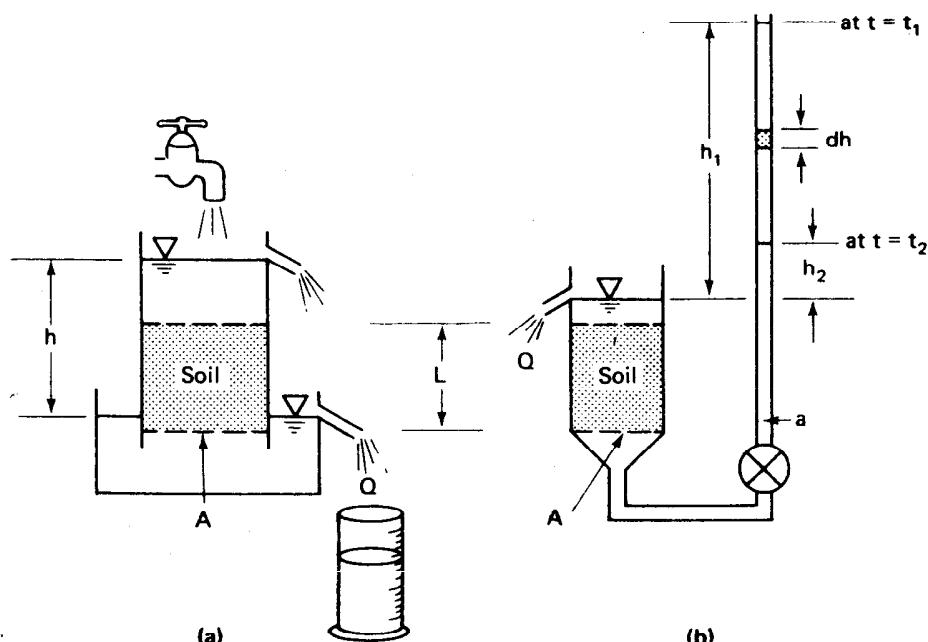


Fig. 7.5 Determining the coefficient of permeability by (a) constant-head test, (b) falling-head test.

---

### EXAMPLE 7.1

**Given:**

A cylindrical soil sample, 7.3 cm in diameter and 16.8 cm long, is tested in a constant-head permeability apparatus. A constant head of 75 cm is maintained during the test. After 1 min of testing, a total of 945.7 g of water was collected. The temperature was 20°C. The void ratio of the soil was 0.43.

**Required:**

Compute the coefficient of permeability in centimetres per second and in furlongs per fortnight.

**Solution:**

First, calculate the cross-sectional area of the sample.

$$A = \frac{\pi D^2}{4} = \frac{\pi}{4} (7.3 \text{ cm})^2 = 41.9 \text{ cm}^2$$

From Eq. 7-8, solve for  $k$ :

$$\begin{aligned} k &= \frac{QL}{hAt} \\ &= \frac{945.7 \text{ cm}^3 \times 16.8 \text{ cm}}{75 \text{ cm} \times 41.9 \text{ cm}^2 \times 1 \text{ min} \times 60 \text{ s/min}} \\ &= 0.08 \text{ cm/s} \end{aligned}$$

To convert to furlongs per fortnight (see Appendix A):

$$\begin{aligned} k &= \left(0.08 \frac{\text{cm}}{\text{s}}\right) \left(60 \frac{\text{s}}{\text{min}}\right) \left(60 \frac{\text{min}}{\text{h}}\right) \left(24 \frac{\text{h}}{\text{d}}\right) \left(14 \frac{\text{d}}{\text{fortnight}}\right) \\ &\quad \times \left(\frac{1 \text{ in.}}{2.54 \text{ cm}}\right) \left(\frac{1 \text{ ft}}{12 \text{ in.}}\right) \left(\frac{\text{mi}}{5280 \text{ ft}}\right) \left(\frac{8 \text{ furlongs}}{\text{mi}}\right) \\ &= 4.8 \frac{\text{furlongs}}{\text{fortnight}} \end{aligned}$$

---

For the falling-head test (Fig. 7.5b) the velocity of fall in the standpipe is

$$v = -\frac{dh}{dt}$$

and the flow into the sample is

$$q_{in} = -a \frac{dh}{dt}$$

From Darcy's law (Eq. 7-5), the flow out is

$$q_{out} = kiA = k \frac{h}{L} A$$

By Eq. 7-3 (continuity),  $q_{in} = q_{out}$ , or

$$-a \frac{dh}{dt} = k \frac{h}{L} A$$

Separating variables and integrating over the limits,

$$-a \int_{h_2}^{h_1} \frac{dh}{h} = k \frac{A}{L} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} dt$$

we obtain

$$k = \frac{aL}{A\Delta t} \ln \frac{h_1}{h_2} \quad (7-9a)$$

where  $\Delta t = t_2 - t_1$ . In terms of  $\log_{10}$ ,

$$k = 2.3 \frac{aL}{A\Delta t} \log_{10} \frac{h_1}{h_2} \quad (7-9b)$$

where  $a$  = area of standpipe,

$A, L$  = soil sample area and length,

$\Delta t$  = time for standpipe head to decrease from  $h_1$  to  $h_2$ .

## EXAMPLE 7.2

Given:

A laboratory falling-head permeability test is performed on a light-gray gravelly sand (SW), and the following data is obtained:

$$a = 6.25 \text{ cm}^2$$

$$A = 10.73 \text{ cm}^2$$

$$L = 16.28 \text{ cm}$$

$$h_1 = 160.2 \text{ cm}$$

$$h_2 = 80.1 \text{ cm, and}$$

$$\Delta t = 90 \text{ s for the head to fall from } h_1 \text{ to } h_2.$$

Water temperature = 20°C.

**Required:**

Compute the coefficient of permeability in cm/s.

**Solution:**

Use Eq. 7-9b and solve for  $k$ .

$$k = 2.3 \times \frac{6.25}{10.73} \times \frac{16.28}{90} \log \frac{160.2}{80.1}$$

$$= 0.07 \text{ cm/s at } 20^\circ\text{C}.$$

Note: If the water temperature is different than  $20^\circ\text{C}$ , a correction for differences in the value of the viscosity is made.

Several factors may influence the reliability of the permeability test in the laboratory. Air bubbles may be trapped in the test specimen, or air may come out of solution from the water. The degree of saturation could thus be less than 100%, which would affect the test results significantly. Migration of fines in testing sands and silts also affects the measured values. Temperature variation, especially in tests of long duration, may affect the measurements, and if the ground temperature is significantly less than the laboratory test temperature, a viscosity correction should be made. Although the small samples used in the laboratory are assumed to be representative of field conditions, it is difficult to duplicate the *in situ* soil structure, especially of granular deposits and of stratified and other nonhomogeneous materials. To properly account for the natural variability and inhomogeneity of soil deposits and difficulties in laboratory tests, the engineer may resort to field pumping tests from wells to measure the overall average coefficient of permeability.

The coefficient of permeability may also be obtained by performing a laboratory one-dimensional compression (consolidation) test or by testing a soil sample in the triaxial cell. The use of these devices is discussed in Chapters 8 and 10.

Besides the direct determination of permeability in the laboratory, useful empirical formulas and tabulated values of  $k$  exist for various soil types. For example, Fig. 7.6, adapted from Casagrande (1938), is useful. In this figure, the coefficient of permeability is plotted on a log scale since the range of permeabilities in soils is so large. Note that certain values of  $k$ ,  $1.0$ ,  $10^{-4}$ , and  $10^{-9}$  cm/s are emphasized. These are Casagrande's *benchmark values* of permeability, and they are useful reference values for engineering behavior. For example,  $1.0$  cm/s is the approximate boundary between laminar and turbulent flow and separates clean gravels from clean

		COEFFICIENT OF PERMEABILITY cm/s (log scale)										
		10 <sup>1</sup>	1.0	10 <sup>-1</sup>	10 <sup>-2</sup>	10 <sup>-3</sup>	10 <sup>-4</sup>	10 <sup>-5</sup>	10 <sup>-6</sup>	10 <sup>-7</sup>	10 <sup>-8</sup>	10 <sup>-9</sup>
Drainage property												
Application in earth dams and dikes	Pervious sections of dams and dikes											
Types of soil	Clean gravel	Clean sands, clean sand and gravel mixtures										
		"Impermeable" soils which are modified by the effect of vegetation and weathering, fissured, weathered clays; fractured OC clays										
Direct determination of coefficient of permeability	Constant Head Permeometer; little experience required.	Direct testing of soil in its original position (e.g., well points) if properly conducted, reliable; considerable experience required.					(Note: Considerable experience also required in this range.)					
Indirect determination of coefficient of permeability	Computation:											
	From the grain size distribution (e.g., Hazen's formula). Only applicable to clean, cohesionless sands and gravels											
	Horizontal Capillarity Test:											
	Very little experience necessary; especially useful for rapid testing of a large number of samples in the field without laboratory facilities.											

\*Due to migration of fines, channels, and air in voids.

Fig. 7.6 Permeability, drainage, soil type, and methods to determine the coefficient of permeability (after A. Casagrande, 1938, with minor additions).

sands and sandy gravels. A  $k$  of  $10^{-4}$  cm/s is the approximate boundary between pervious and poorly drained soils under low gradients. Soils around this value are also highly susceptible to migration of fines or *piping*. The next boundary,  $10^{-9}$  cm/s, is approximately the lower limit of the permeability of soils and concrete, although some recent measurements have found permeabilities as low as  $10^{-11}$  for highly plastic clays at the shrinkage limit. Prof. Casagrande recommends that  $k$  be related to the nearest benchmark value, for example,  $0.01 \times 10^{-4}$  cm/s rather than  $10^{-6}$  cm/s. For various soil types, Fig. 7.6 also indicates their general drainage properties, applications to earth dams and dikes, and the means for direct and indirect determination of the coefficient of permeability.

An empirical equation relating the coefficient of permeability to  $D_{10}$ , the *effective grain size*, was proposed by A. Hazen (1911). For *clean* sands (with less than 5% passing the No. 200 sieve) with  $D_{10}$  sizes between 0.1 and 3.0 mm, the coefficient of permeability  $k$  is

$$k = CD_{10}^2 \quad (7-10)$$

where the units of  $k$  are in cm/s and those of the effective grain size are in mm. The constant  $C$  varies from 0.4 to 1.2, with an average value of 1, and takes into account the conversion of units. The equation is valid for  $k > 10^{-3}$  cm/s (Fig. 7.6).

To estimate  $k$  at void ratios other than the test void ratio, Taylor (1948) offers the relationship

$$k_1:k_2 = \frac{C_1 e_1^3}{1 + e_1} : \frac{C_2 e_2^3}{1 + e_2} \quad (7-11)$$

where the coefficients  $C_1$  and  $C_2$ , which depend on the soil structure, must be determined empirically. *Very approximately for sands*,  $C_1 \approx C_2$ . Another relationship which has been found to be useful for sands is

$$k_1:k_2 = C'_1 e_1^2 : C'_2 e_2^2 \quad (7-12)$$

As before, *approximately for sands*,  $C'_1 \approx C'_2$ .

For silts and clays, neither of these relationships works very well. For kaolinites over a rather *narrow* range of permeabilities (say one order of magnitude),  $e$  versus  $\log_{10} k$  has been found to be approximately linear, all other factors being equal. However for compacted silts and silty clays Garcia-Bengochea, et al. (1979) found that the relationship between void ratio  $e$  and the logarithm of permeability  $k$  is far from linear (Fig. 7.7). They showed that porc size distribution parameters provide a better relationship with the ratio for some compacted soils.

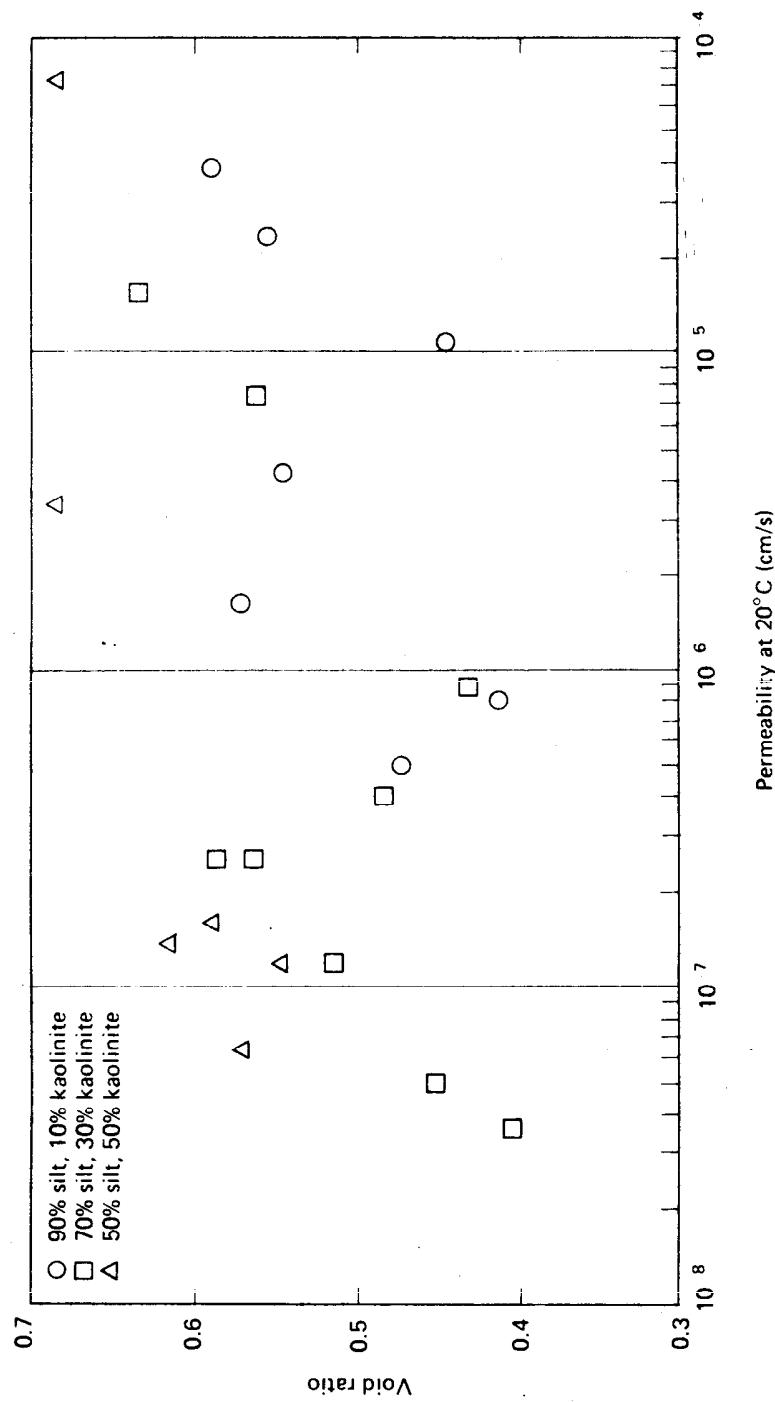


Fig. 7.7 Void ratio  $e$  versus permeability  $k$  for several compacted soils (after Garcia-Bengochea, et al., 1979).

## 7.5 INTERGRANULAR OR EFFECTIVE STRESS

The concept of intergranular or *effective stress* was introduced in Sec. 6.2. By definition,

$$\sigma = \sigma' + u \quad (7-13)$$

where  $\sigma$  = total normal stress,

$\sigma'$  = intergranular or effective normal stress, and

$u$  = pore water or neutral pressure.

Both the total stress and pore water pressure may readily be estimated or calculated with knowledge of the densities and thicknesses of the soil layers and location of the ground water table. The effective stress cannot be measured; it can only be calculated!

The total vertical stress is called the *body stress* because it is generated by the mass (acted upon by gravity) in the body. To calculate the total vertical stress  $\sigma_v$  at a point in a soil mass, you simply sum up the densities of all the material (soil solids + water) above that point multiplied by the gravitational constant  $g$ , or

$$\sigma_v = \int_0^h \rho g dz \quad (7-14a)$$

If  $\rho g$  is a constant throughout the depth, then

$$\sigma_v = \rho gh \quad (7-14b)$$

Typically, we divide the soil mass into  $n$  layers and evaluate the total stress incrementally for each layer or

$$\sigma_v = \sum_{i=1}^n \rho_i g z_i \quad (7-14c)$$

As an example, if a soil could have zero voids, then the total stress exerted on a particular plane would be the depth to the given point times the density of the material or, in this case,  $\rho_s$  times the gravitational constant  $g$ . If the soil were dry, then you would use  $\rho_d$  instead of  $\rho_s$ .

The neutral stress or pore water pressure is similarly calculated for static water conditions. It is simply the depth below the ground water table to the point in question,  $z_w$ , times the product of the density of water  $\rho_w$  and  $g$ , or

$$u = \rho_w g z_w \quad (7-15)$$

It is called the *neutral stress* because it has no shear component. Recall from fluid mechanics that by definition a liquid cannot support static shear stress. It has only normal stresses which act equally in all

directions. On the other hand, total and effective stresses can have both normal and shear components. By Eq. 7-13, the effective stress  $\sigma'$  is simply the difference between the total and neutral stresses.

What is the physical meaning of effective stress? First, let's discuss the concept of stress itself. You may recall from basic mechanics that stress is really a fictitious quantity. It is defined as a differential force divided by a differential area, as the area shrinks to a point in the limit. This concept is useful even though in reality, on the micro scale, it has no meaning physically. For example, what would happen in a sand or gravel when the particular differential area you chose ended up in a void? Of course the stress would have to be zero. Yet right next door, where two gravel particles might be in point-to-point contact, the contact stress might be extremely high; it could even exceed the crushing strength of the mineral grains. Stress then really calls for a continuous material and, depending on the scale, real materials are not really continuous. Soils, especially, are not continuous, as we have seen in Chapter 4. Even fine-grained clay soils are collections of discrete mineral particles held together by gravitational, chemical, ionic, van der Waals, and many other kinds of forces. Still the concept of stress is useful in engineering practice, and that is why we use it.

So now what does effective stress mean physically? In a granular material such as a sand or gravel, it is sometimes called the *intergranular stress*. However it is not really the same as the grain-to-grain contact stress since the contact area between granular particles can be very small. In fact, with rounded or spherical grains the contact area can approach a point. Therefore the actual contact stress can be very large. Rather, the intergranular stress is the sum of the contact forces divided by the total or gross (engineering) area, as shown in Fig. 7.8. If we look at forces, the total vertical force or load  $P$  can be considered to be the sum of the intergranular contact forces  $P'$  plus the hydrostatic force  $(A - A_c)u$  in the pore water. Since the neutral stress can obviously act only over the void or pore area, to get *force* the neutral stress  $u$  must be multiplied by the area of the voids  $A - A_c$ , or

$$P = P' + (A - A_c)u \quad (7-16a)$$

where  $A$  = total or gross (engineering) area, and

$A_c$  = contact area between grains.

Dividing by the gross area  $A$  to obtain stresses, we have

$$\frac{P}{A} = \frac{P'}{A} + \left( \frac{A - A_c}{A} \right) u \quad (7-16b)$$

or

$$\sigma = \sigma' + \left( 1 - \frac{A_c}{A} \right) u \quad (7-16c)$$

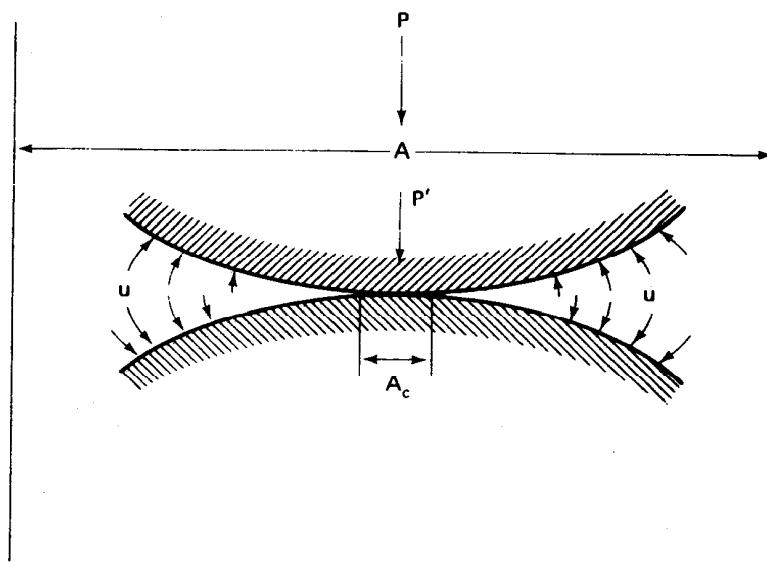


Fig. 7.8 Particles in solid contact (after Skempton, 1960).

or

$$\sigma = \sigma' + (1 - a)u \quad (7-16d)$$

where  $a$  = contact area between particles per unit gross area of the soil (Skempton, 1960).

In granular materials, since the contact areas approach point areas,  $a$  approaches zero. Thus Eq. 7-16d reduces to Eq. 7-13, or  $\sigma = \sigma' + u$ . This equation, which defines effective stress, was first proposed in the 1920's by Terzaghi, who is considered to be the father of soil mechanics. Equation 7-13 is an extremely useful and important equation. We believe that the effective stresses in a soil mass actually control or govern the engineering behavior of that mass. The response of a soil mass to changes in applied stresses (compressibility and shearing resistance) depend almost exclusively on the effective stresses in that soil mass. The principle of effective stress is probably the single most important concept in geotechnical engineering.

We have discussed effective stresses for granular particulate materials. What does the concept mean for fine-grained cohesive soils? From the discussion in Chapter 4, it is doubtful that the mineral crystals are in actual physical contact since they are surrounded by a tightly bound water film. On the micro scale, the interparticle force fields which would contribute to effective stress are extremely difficult to interpret and philosophically impossible to measure. Any inference about these force fields comes from a study of the fabric of the soil. So, in view of this complexity, what place

does such a simple equation as 7-13 have in engineering practice? Experimental evidence as well as a careful analysis by Skempton (1960) has shown that for saturated sands and clays the principle of effective stress is an excellent approximation to reality. However it is not so good for partially saturated soils or saturated rocks and concrete. Whatever it is physically, effective stress is defined as the difference between an engineering total stress and a measurable neutral stress (pore water pressure). The concept of effective stress is extremely useful, as we shall see in later chapters, for understanding soil behavior, interpreting laboratory test results, and making engineering design calculations. The concept works, and that is why we use it.

Now we shall work through some examples to show you how to calculate the total, neutral, and effective stresses in soil masses.

### EXAMPLE 7.3

**Given:**

The container of soil shown in Fig. Ex. 7.3. The saturated density is 2.0 Mg/m<sup>3</sup>.

**Required:**

Calculate the total, neutral, and effective stresses at elevation *A* when (a) the water table is at elevation *A* and (b) when the water table rises to elevation *B*.

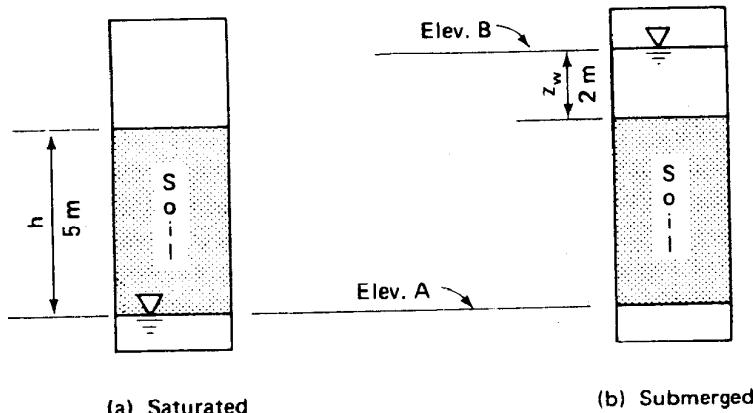


Fig. Ex. 7.3

**Solution:**

- a. Assume the soil in the container to be initially *saturated* (but not submerged). The water table is located at elevation *A*. Use Eqs. 7-14b, 7-15, and 7-13 to calculate the stresses at elevation *A*.

Total stress (Eq. 7-14b):

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma &= \rho_{\text{sat}}gh = 2.0 \text{ Mg/m}^3 \times 9.81 \text{ m/s}^2 \times 5 \text{ m} \\ &= 98.100 \text{ N/m}^2 = 98.1 \text{ kPa}\end{aligned}$$

Neutral stress (Eq. 7-15):

$$u = \rho_w g z_w = 1 \text{ Mg/m}^3 \times 9.81 \text{ m/s}^2 \times 0 = 0$$

From Eq. 7-13:

$$\sigma' = \sigma = 98.1 \text{ kPa}$$

Recall that  $1 \text{ N} = 1 \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m/s}^2$  and that  $1 \text{ N/m}^2 = 1 \text{ Pa}$  (Appendix A).

- b. If we raise the water table to elevation *B*, a change in effective stresses at elevation *A* occurs since the saturated soil becomes submerged or buoyant. The stresses at elevation *A* due to the soil and water above are as follows:

Total stress:

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma &= \rho_{\text{sat}}gh + \rho_w g z_w \\ &= (2.0 \times 9.81 \times 5) + (1 \times 9.81 \times 2) \\ &= 117.7 \text{ kPa}\end{aligned}$$

Neutral stress:

$$\begin{aligned}u &= \rho_w g(z_w + h) \\ &= 1 \times 9.81 \times (2 + 5) \\ &= 68.7 \text{ kPa}\end{aligned}$$

Effective stress at elevation *A*:

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma' &= \sigma - u = (\rho_{\text{sat}}gh + \rho_w g z_w) - \rho_w g(z_w + h) \\ &= 117.7 - 68.7 = 49.0 \text{ kPa}\end{aligned}$$

Thus by raising the elevation of the ground water table the intergranular pressure or effective stress in Example 7.3 drops from 98 kPa to 49 kPa, or a reduction of 50%! When the ground water table is *lowered*, the reverse occurs and the soil is subjected to an *increase* in effective stress. This overall increase in vertical stress may lead to substantial areal subsidence as is occurring, for example, in Mexico City and Las Vegas.

Ground water is being pumped for municipal water supply, and the resulting settlements have caused substantial damage to streets, buildings, and underground utilities.

Another way to calculate the effective stress in part (b) of Example 7.3 is to use the submerged or buoyant density (Eq. 2-11). Note that

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma' &= (\rho_{\text{sat}}gh + \rho_wgz_w) - \rho_wg(z_w + h) \\ &= (\rho_{\text{sat}} - \rho_w)gh \\ &= \rho'gh\end{aligned}\tag{7-17}$$

#### EXAMPLE 7.4

**Given:**

The data of Example 7.3.

**Required:**

Use Eq. 7-17 to compute the effective stress at elevation *A* when the water table is at elevation *B*.

**Solution:**

$$\rho' = \rho_{\text{sat}} - \rho_w = 2.0 - 1.0 = 1.0 \text{ Mg/m}^3$$

$$\sigma' = \rho'gh = 1.0 \times 9.81 \times 5 = 49.0 \text{ kPa}$$

---

#### EXAMPLE 7.5

**Given:**

The soil profile as shown in Fig. Ex. 7.5

**Required:**

What are the total and effective stresses at point *A*?

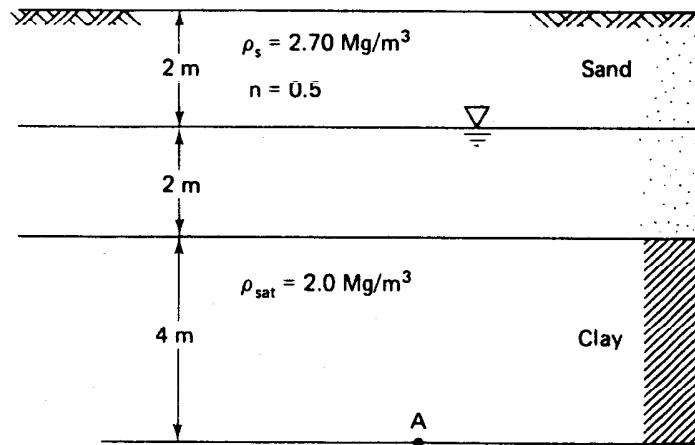


Fig. Ex. 7.5

**Solution:**

First find  $\rho_d$  and  $\rho_{sat}$  of the sand. This will be a review of phase relations. Let  $V_t = 1 \text{ m}^3$ ; therefore  $n = V_v$  and,

$$V_s = 1 - V_v = 1 - n. \text{ From Eq. 2-7,}$$

$$M_s = \rho_s(1 - n)$$

$$M_s = 2.70 \text{ Mg/m}^3 (1 - 0.5) \text{ m}^3 = 1.35 \text{ Mg (or } 1350 \text{ kg)}$$

$$\rho_d = \frac{M_s}{V_t} = \frac{1.35 \text{ Mg}}{1 \text{ m}^3} = 1.35 \text{ Mg/m}^3 (\text{or } 1350 \text{ kg/m}^3)$$

$$\rho_{sat} = \frac{M_s + M_w}{V_t} = \frac{M_s + \rho_w V_v}{V_t}$$

$$\rho_{sat} = \frac{1.35 \text{ Mg} + 1 \text{ Mg/m}^3(0.5 \text{ m}^3)}{1 \text{ m}^3} = 1.85 \text{ Mg/m}^3$$

The total stress at A is  $\Sigma \rho_i g h_i$ :

$$1.35 \text{ Mg/m}^3 \times 9.81 \text{ m/s}^2 \times 2 \text{ m} = 26.49 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

$$+ 1.85 \text{ Mg/m}^3 \times 9.81 \text{ m/s}^2 \times 2 \text{ m} = 36.30 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

$$+ 2.0 \text{ Mg/m}^3 \times 9.81 \text{ m/s}^2 \times 4 \text{ m} = 78.48 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

$$141.27 \text{ kN/m}^2, \text{ or } 141.3 \text{ kPa.}$$

The effective stress at A is

$$\sigma' = \sigma - \rho_w g h$$

$$= 141.3 - (1 \text{ Mg/m}^3 \times 9.81 \text{ m/s}^2 \times 6 \text{ m}) = 82.4 \text{ kPa}$$

The effective stress may also be computed by the  $\Sigma \rho gh$  above the water table and the  $\Sigma \rho'gh$  below the water table, or

$$\begin{aligned} 1.35 \text{ Mg/m}^3 \times 9.81 \text{ m/s}^2 \times 2 \text{ m} &= 26.49 \text{ kPa} \\ + (1.85 - 1.0) \times 9.81 \times 2 \text{ m} &= 16.68 \text{ kPa} \\ + (2.0 - 1.0) \times 9.81 \times 4 \text{ m} &= \frac{39.24 \text{ kPa}}{82.41 \text{ kPa}} \text{ (checks)} \end{aligned}$$

Note: In practice, computations would probably only be carried out to the nearest whole kPa.

### EXAMPLE 7.6

**Given:**

The soil profile of Example 7.5.

**Required:**

Plot the total, neutral, and effective stresses with depth for the entire soil profile.

**Solution:**

Figure Ex. 7.6. You should verify that the numerical values shown on the figure are correct. As in the previous example, computations to the nearest whole kPa are generally accurate enough.

Note how the slopes of the stress profiles change as the density changes. Profiles such as those shown in Fig. Ex. 7.6 are useful in foundation engineering, so you should become proficient in computing them. In engineering practice, the basic soils information comes from site investigations and borings which determine the thicknesses of the significant soil layers, the depth to the water table, and the water contents and densities of the various materials. Stress profiles are also useful for illustrating and understanding what happens to the stresses in the ground when conditions change, for example, when the ground water table is raised or lowered as a result of some construction operation, pumping, or flooding. Some of these effects are illustrated in the following examples.

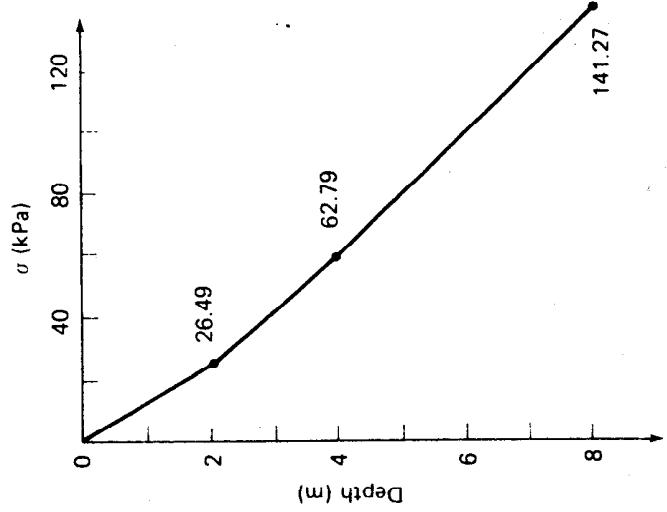
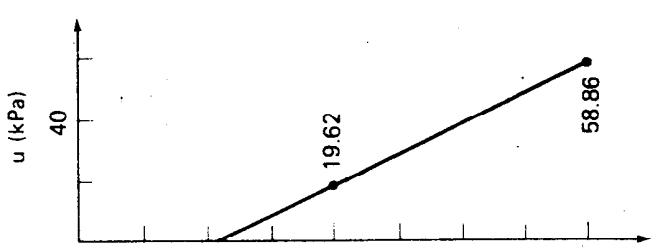
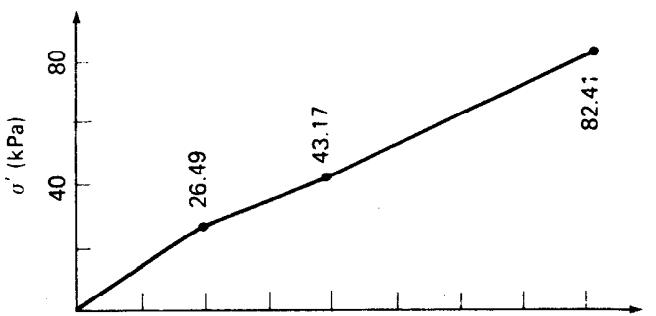


Fig. Ex. 7.6

---

### **EXAMPLE 7.7**

**Given:**

The soil profile of Example 7.5.

**Required:**

Plot the total, neutral, and effective stresses with depth if the ground water table rises to the ground surface.

**Solution:**

**Figure Ex. 7.7.**

Note that the effective stress at point *A* (at  $z = 8 \text{ m}$ ) is *reduced*! Had the ground water table dropped below its original elevation, the effective stress at point *A* would have increased.

---

### **EXAMPLE 7.8**

**Given:**

The soil profile of Example 7.5.

**Required:**

Plot the total, neutral, and effective stresses with depth for the case where the ground water table is 2 m *above* the ground surface.

**Solution:**

**Figure Ex. 7.8. (See page 224.)**

---

Consider carefully how the stress profiles change as the water table elevation changes. Note especially how the effective stresses decrease as the water table rises (Example 7.6 versus 7.7) and then how the effective stress is *not* changed even when the ground water table is *above* the ground

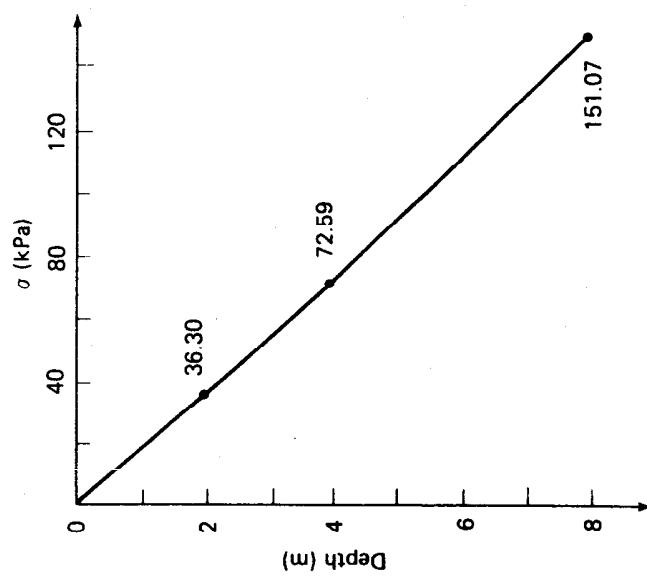
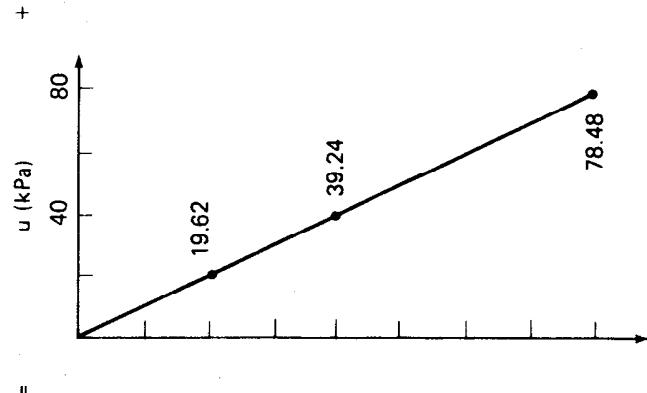
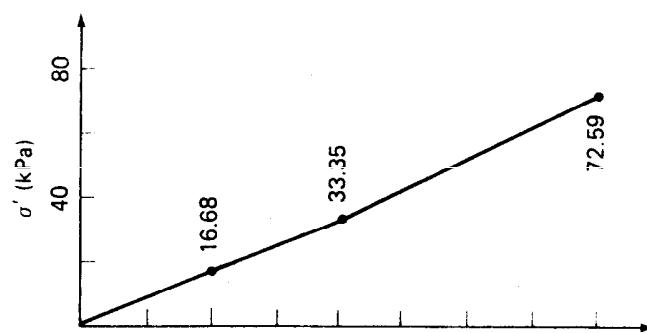


Fig. Ex. 7.7

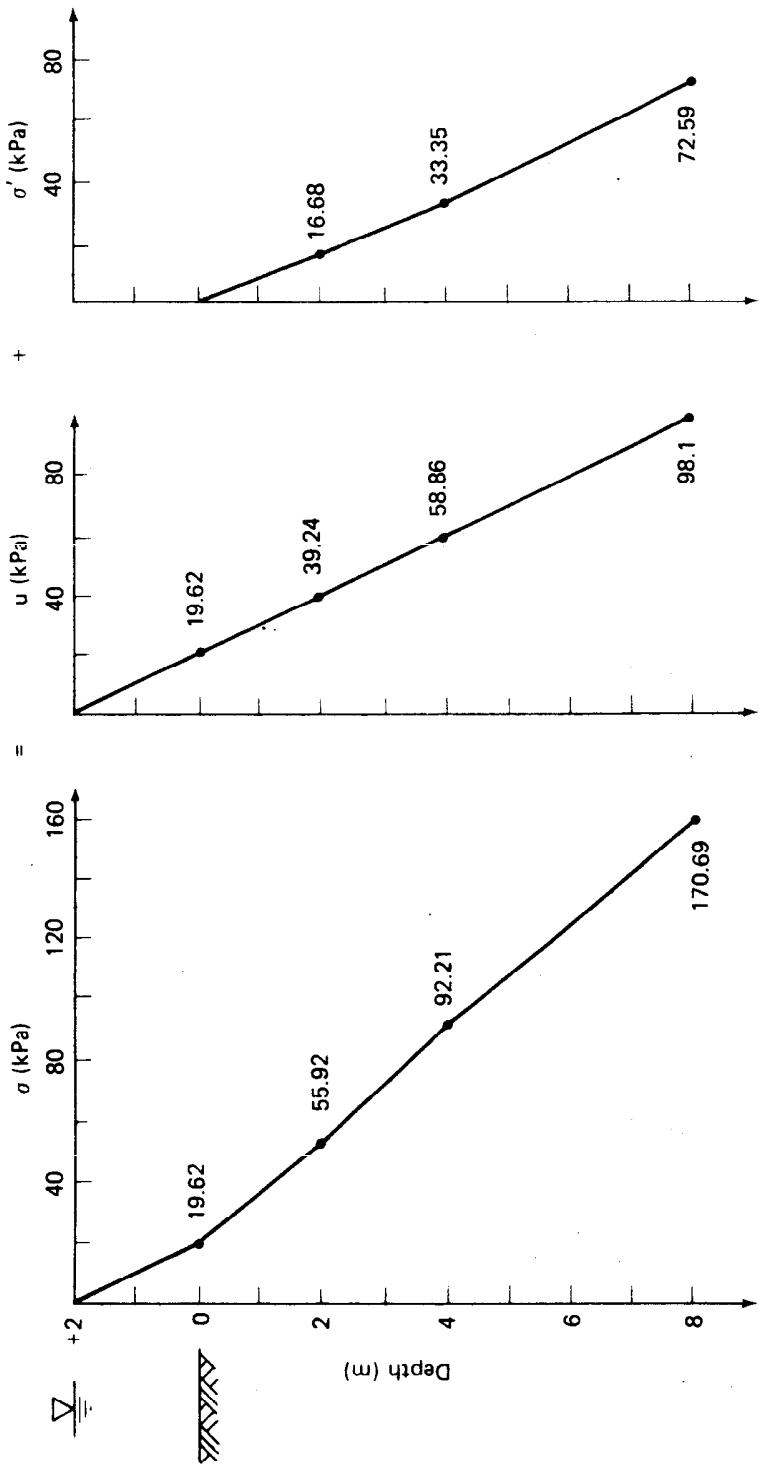


Fig. Ex. 7.8

surface (Example 7.8). Of course, for that case both the total and neutral stresses increase as the water table rises above the ground surface, but the effective stresses remain *unchanged*. The reasoning behind why the effective stresses remain unchanged is a very important concept, and you should be sure you understand why it happens.

Similar but opposite changes in effective stresses occur when the ground water table is lowered. For example, this might be caused by pumping from a deeper pervious layer. If this happens, as you might suspect by analogy, the effective stresses in the clay layer actually *increase*, causing compression of the clay and consequent surface settlements, as we shall see later. In a clay this process doesn't occur overnight; on the contrary it may take several decades for the compression to occur. These processes are discussed in detail in Chapters 8 and 9.

## 7.6 RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN HORIZONTAL AND VERTICAL STRESSES

You may recall from hydrostatics that the pressure in a liquid is the same in any direction—up, down, sideways, or at any inclination, it doesn't matter. However this is not true in soils. Rarely in natural soil deposits is the horizontal stress in the ground equal exactly to the vertical stress. In other words, the stresses *in situ* are not necessarily hydrostatic. We can express the ratio of the horizontal to vertical stress in the ground as

$$\sigma_h = K\sigma_v \quad (7-18)$$

where  $K$  is an *earth pressure coefficient*. Since the ground water table can fluctuate and the total stresses can change, the coefficient  $K$  is *not* a constant for a particular soil deposit. However, if we express this ratio in terms of effective stresses, we take care of the problem of a variable water table, or

$$\sigma'_h = K_o\sigma'_v \quad (7-19)$$

$K_o$  is a very important coefficient in geotechnical engineering. It is called the *coefficient of lateral earth pressure at rest*. It expresses the stress conditions in the ground in terms of *effective stresses*, and it is independent of the location of the ground water table. Even if the depth changes,  $K_o$  will be a constant as long as we are in the same soil layer and the density remains the same. However this coefficient is very sensitive to the geologic and engineering stress history, as well as to the densities of the overlying soil layers (see for example, Massarsch, et al., 1975). The value of  $K_o$  is important in stress and analyses, in assessing the shearing resistance of

particular soil layers, and in such geotechnical problems as the design of earth-retaining structures, earth dams and slopes, and many foundation engineering problems.

The  $K_o$  in natural soil deposits can be as low as 0.4 or 0.5 for sedimentary soils that have never been preloaded or up to 3.0 or greater for some very heavily preloaded deposits. Typical values of  $K_o$  for different geologic conditions are given in Chapter 11.

### EXAMPLE 7.9

**Given:**

The stress conditions of Example 7.5. Assume  $K_o$  for this soil deposit is 0.6.

**Required:**

Calculate both the horizontal total and effective stresses at depths of 4 m and 8 m in the deposit. Also, determine the value of  $K$  at these depths.

**Solution:**

From Fig. Ex. 7.6, at 4 m,  $\sigma'_v$  is 43 kPa. From Eq. 7-19,  $\sigma'_h = 0.6 \times 43$  kPa = 26 kPa. At 8 m,  $\sigma'_h = 0.6 \times 82 = 49$  kPa. For the total horizontal stresses, we cannot use Eq. 7-18 directly because we do not know  $K$ . So we use Eq. 7-13 to get  $\sigma_h$ , or  $\sigma_h = \sigma'_h + u$ . At 4 m,  $\sigma_h = 26 + 20 = 46$  kPa. At 8 m,  $\sigma_h = 49 + 59 = 108$ . Using Eq. 7-18, we can determine the value of the total stress coefficient  $K$ .

At 4 m,

$$K = \frac{\sigma_h}{\sigma'_v} = \frac{46}{63} = 0.73$$

At 8 m,

$$K = \frac{\sigma_h}{\sigma'_v} = \frac{108}{141} = 0.77$$

Note that  $K$  is *not* necessarily equal to  $K_o$ . To get  $K$ , we have to go through  $K_o$  and add the pore water pressure to the effective stress for the depth in question.

## 7.7 HEADS AND ONE-DIMENSIONAL FLOW

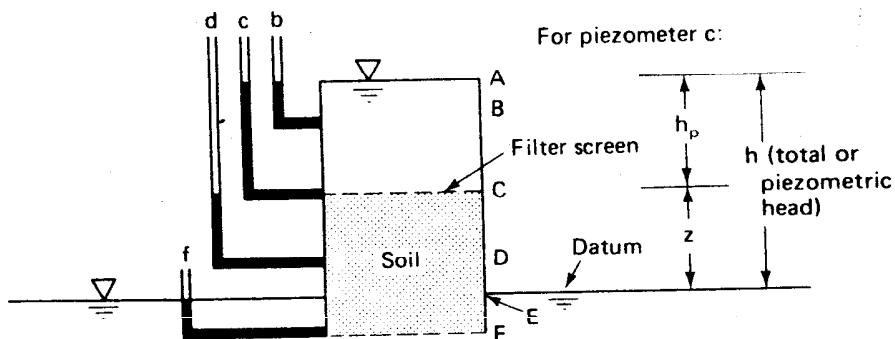
Very early in this chapter we mentioned the three types of heads associated with the Bernoulli energy equation (Eq. 7-4). They were the velocity head  $v^2/2g$ , the pressure head  $h_p = p/\rho_w g$ , and the position or elevation head  $z$ . We discussed why the energy per unit mass (or weight) was called *head* and had units of length. And we also stated that, for most seepage problems in soils, the velocity head was small enough to be neglected. Thus *total head h* becomes the sum of the *pressure head* and the *elevation head*, or  $h = h_p + z$ .

The elevation head at any point is the vertical distance above or below some *reference elevation* or *datum plane*. It is most often convenient to establish the datum plane for seepage problems at the tailwater elevation, but you could just as well use the bedrock or some other convenient plane as the datum. Pressure head is simply the water pressure divided by  $\rho_w g$  (Eq. 7-4). The quantity ( $h_p + z$ ) is also called the *piezometric head* since this is the head that would be measured by an open standpipe or *piezometer* referenced to some datum plane. The elevation of the water level in the standpipe is the total head whereas the actual height of rise of the water column in the standpipe is the pressure head  $h_p$ . These concepts are illustrated in Fig. 7.9. Here we have an open-ended cylinder of soil similar to the permeameter of Fig. 7.5a. The flow into the cylinder is sufficient to maintain the water elevation at  $A$ , and the tail water is constant at elevation  $E$ . All energy or head is lost in the soil.

Note that for piezometer  $c$  in the figure the pressure head  $h_p$  is the distance  $AC$  and the elevation head  $z$  is the distance  $CE$ . Thus the total head at point  $C$  is the sum of these two distances, or  $AE$ . Determinations of the piezometric heads at the other points in Fig. 7.9 are made in a similar manner, and these are shown in the table below the figure. Be sure you understand how each of the heads, including the head loss through the soil, is obtained in Fig. 7.9. Note that it is possible for the elevation head (as well as the pressure head) to be negative, depending on the geometry of the problem. The important thing is that the total head must equal the sum of the pressure and elevation head at all times.

As mentioned, we assume that all the energy or head lost in the system is lost in flowing through the soil sample of Fig. 7.9. Thus at elevation  $C$  no head loss has yet occurred; at  $D$ , the midpoint of the sample, half the head is lost ( $\frac{1}{2} AE$ ); and at  $F$ , all of the head has been lost ( $AE$ ).

The following examples illustrate how you determine the various types of heads and head loss in some simple one-dimensional flow systems.



Point	Pressure Head	Elevation Head	Total Head	Head Loss through Soil
B	AB	BE	AE	0
C	AC	CE	AE	0
D	CD	DE	CE	$\frac{1}{2} AE$
F	EF	-EF	0	AE

Fig. 7.9 Illustration of types of head (after Taylor, 1948).

### EXAMPLE 7.10

Given:

The test setup of Fig. 7.9 has the dimensions shown in Fig. Ex. 7.10a.

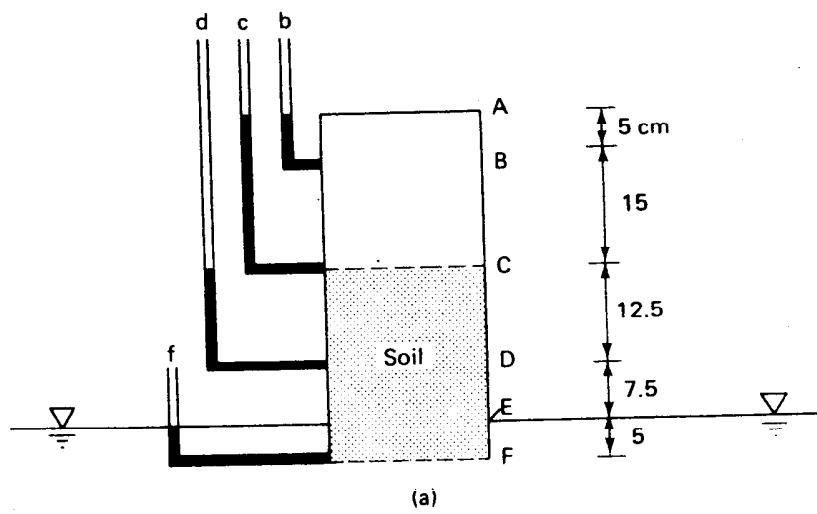


Fig. Ex. 7.10a

**Required:**

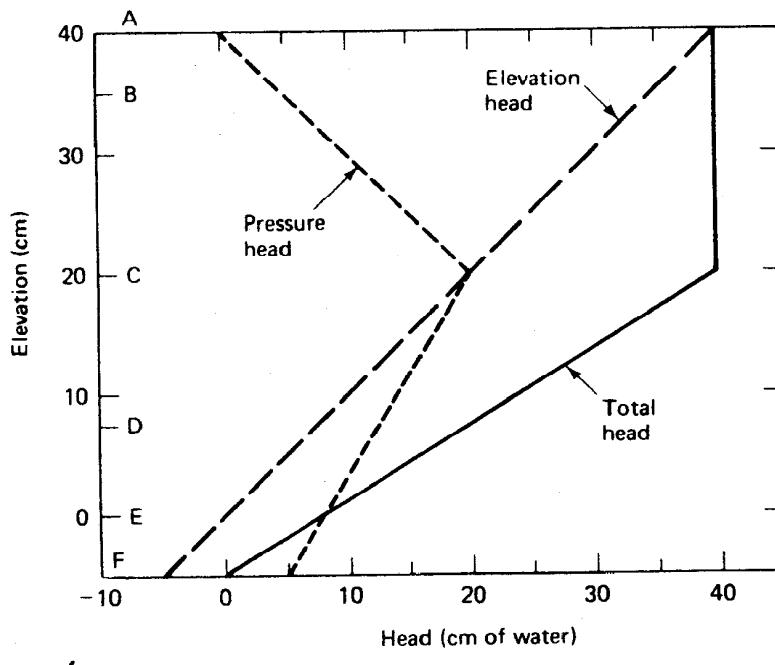
- (a) Calculate the actual magnitude of pressure head, elevation head, total head, and head loss at points *B*, *C*, *D*, and *F*, in centimetres of water. (b) Plot the heads versus the elevation.

**Solution:**

- a. List dimensions and heads in a table as in Fig. 7.9, as shown below; the heads are in units of centimetres of water.

Point	Pressure Head	Elevation Head	Total Head	Head Loss
<i>B</i>	5	35	40	0
<i>C</i>	20	20	40	0
<i>D</i>	12.5	7.5	20	20
<i>F</i>	5	-5	0	40

- b. See Fig. Ex. 7.10b.

**Fig. Ex. 7.10b**

## EXAMPLE 7.11

Given:

The cylinder of soil and standpipe arrangement shown in Fig. Ex. 7.11.

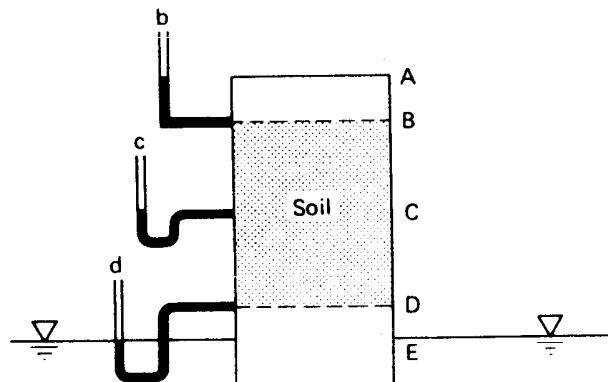


Fig. Ex. 7.11 (After Taylor, 1948.)

Required:

Determine the pressure head, elevation head, total head, and head loss at points *B*, *C*, and *D*.

Solution:

Set up a table similar to that of Fig. 7.9 and Example 7.10.

Point	Pressure Head	Elevation Head	Total Head	Head Loss
<i>B</i>	$AB$	$BE$	$AE$	0
<i>C</i>	0	$CE$	$CE$	$\frac{1}{2}AE$
<i>D</i>	$-DE$	$DE$	0	$AE$

## EXAMPLE 7.12

Given:

The horizontal cylinder of soil as shown in Fig. 7.2. Assume  $L = 10 \text{ cm}$ ,  $A = 10 \text{ cm}^2$ , and  $\Delta h = 5 \text{ cm}$ . Tailwater elevation is 5 cm above the centerline of the cylinder. The soil is a medium sand with  $e = 0.68$ .

Required:

Determine the pressure, elevation, and total head at sufficient points to be able to plot them versus horizontal distance.

Solution:

Redraw Fig. 7.2 in Fig. Ex. 7.12a with the key dimensions. Estimate the other required dimensions. Label the key points as shown. Assume the datum is the elevation of the tailwater. Set up a table as in Fig. 7.9, and fill in the blanks. The units are in centimetres of water.

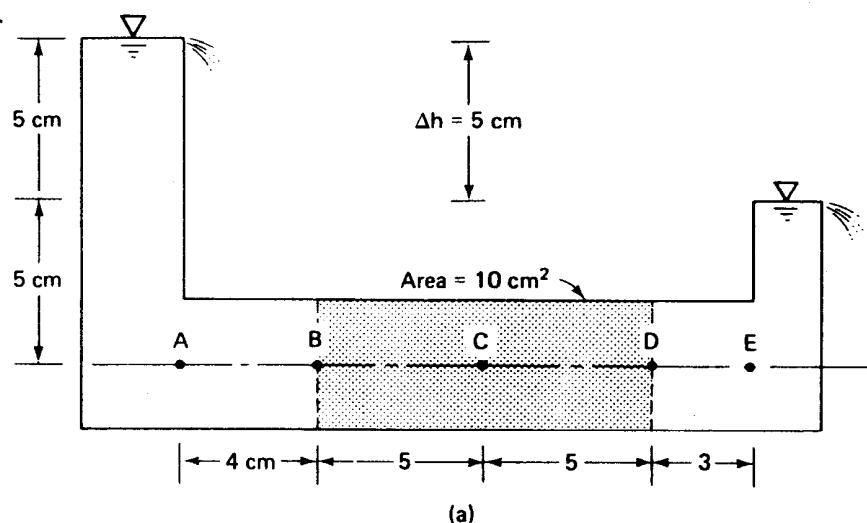


Fig. Ex. 7.12a

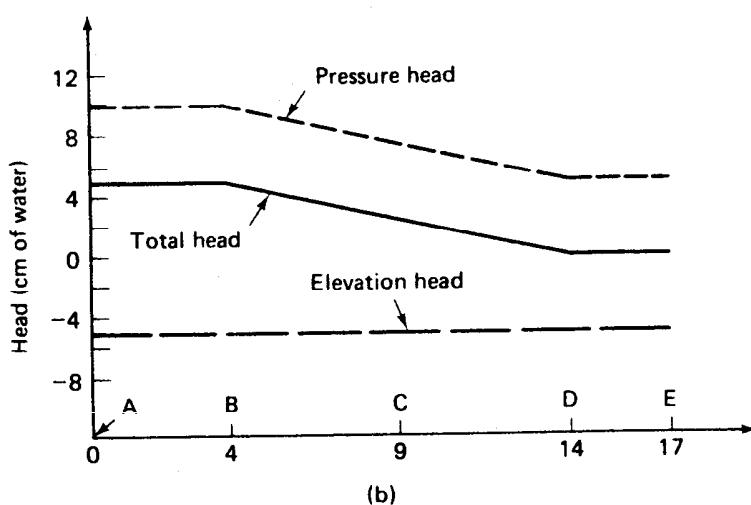


Fig. Ex. 7.12b

Point	Pressure Head	Elevation Head	Total Head	Head Loss
A	10	-5	5	0
B	10	-5	5	0
C	7½	-5	2½	2½
D	5	-5	0	5
E	5	-5	0	5

The plot of heads versus horizontal distance is in Fig. 7.12b for the centerline of the cylinder.

## 7.8 SEEPAGE FORCES, QUICKSAND, AND LIQUEFACTION

When water flows through soils (such as the flow of water in the permeability tests already discussed) it exerts forces called *seepage forces* on the individual soil grains. And you might imagine, seepage forces affect the intergranular or effective stresses in the soil mass.

Let us reconsider the 5 m column of soil of Example 7.3. By connecting a riser tube to the bottom of the sample, we can flow water into the column of soil, as shown in Fig. 7.10. When the water level in the riser tube is at elevation B, we again have the static case and all the standpipes

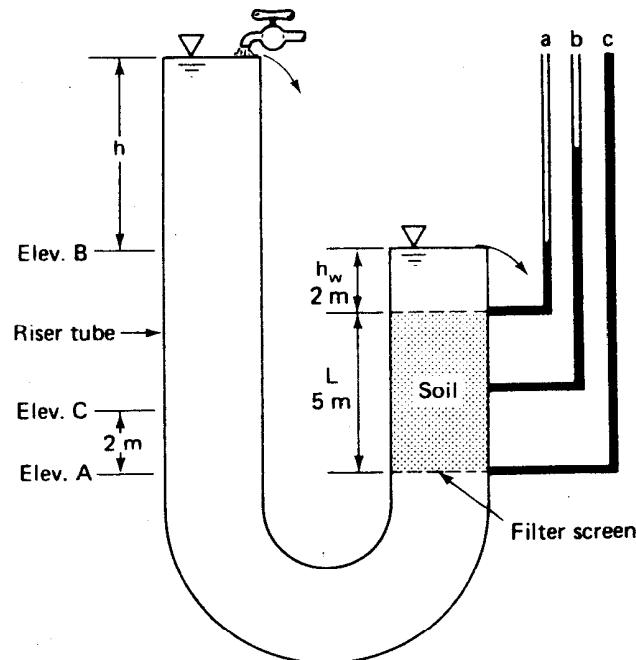


Fig. 7.10 Sample of soil from Example 7.3, but with a riser tube connected to the bottom of the sample. Standpipes are shown for the case where the water level in the riser pipe is at a distance  $h$  above elevation  $B$ .

would be at elevation  $B$ . If the water in the riser tube is below elevation  $B$ , water will flow *downward* through the soil; the reverse is true when the water elevation in the riser tube is above elevation  $B$ . This is the same case as the falling-head permeameter test setup of Fig. 7.5b in which water flows *upward* through the soil: when this happens, the water loses some of its energy through friction. The greater the head  $h$  above elevation  $B$  in Fig. 7.10, the larger the energy or head loss and the larger the seepage forces transmitted to the soil. As the seepage forces increase, they gradually overcome the gravitational forces acting on the soil column, and eventually a *quick* condition (quick = alive) or *boiling* will occur. Another name for this phenomenon is *quicksand*. To have a sand mass in a quick condition, the effective stresses throughout the sample must be zero.

What is the height  $h$  above elevation  $B$  that causes the soil to become quick? First from Fig. 7.10 we can calculate the total, neutral, and effective stress at elevation  $A$  when the water level in the riser tube is at elevation  $B$ . We will neglect any friction losses in the riser tube. Total stress at the bottom of the sample (elevation  $A$ ) is

$$\sigma = \rho_{\text{sat}} g L + \rho_w g h_w = \rho' g L + \rho_w g (L + h_w) \quad (\text{a})$$

The pore pressure at that point is

$$u = \rho_w g(L + h_w) \quad (b)$$

Therefore the effective stress is [Eqs. (a) – (b)]:

$$\sigma' = \sigma - u = \rho' g L \quad (c)$$

Let the water level rise a distance  $h$  above elevation  $B$  (Fig. 7.10). Now the pore water pressure at the bottom of the sample is

$$u = \rho_w g(L + h_w + h) \quad (d)$$

or the pore pressure difference acting at the bottom of the sample is [Eqs. (d) – (b)]:

$$\Delta u = \rho_w g h \quad (e)$$

The effective stress at the bottom of the soil column (elevation  $A$ ) is now [Eqs. (a) – (d)]:

$$\sigma' = [\rho' g L + \rho_w g(L + h_w)] - [\rho_w g(L + h_w + h)]$$

or

$$\sigma' = \rho' g L - \rho_w g h \quad (f)$$

Thus the effective stress decreased by exactly the increase in pore water pressure  $\Delta u$  at the base of the sample [Eqs. (f) – (c) = (e)].

What happens when the effective stress at the bottom of the soil column is zero? (Note that  $\sigma'$  cannot be less than zero.) Set Eq. (f) equal to zero and solve for Eq. (h), which is the head above elevation  $B$  to cause a *quick* condition, or

$$h = \frac{L \rho'}{\rho_w}$$

Rearranging,

$$\frac{h}{L} = i = \frac{\rho'}{\rho_w} = i_c \quad (7-20)$$

By Eq. 7-1, the head  $h$  divided by the sample length  $L$  equals the hydraulic gradient  $i$ . The value  $i$  when a quick condition occurs is called the *critical hydraulic gradient*  $i_c$ .

In Example 2.6 we obtained the following relationship for the submerged density  $\rho'$ :

$$\rho' = \frac{\rho_s - \rho_w}{1 + e} \quad (2-18)$$

Combining Eqs. 7-20 and 2-18 we obtain an expression for the critical hydraulic gradient necessary for a quick condition to develop,

$$i_c = \frac{\rho_s - \rho_w}{(1 + e)\rho_w} \quad (7-21)$$

or

$$i_c = \frac{1}{1+e} \left( \frac{\rho_s}{\rho_w} - 1 \right) \quad (7-22)$$

The approach just used to obtain  $i_c$  is based on the premise that quick conditions occur when the effective stress at the bottom of the soil column is zero.

Another way to obtain the formula for the critical gradient is to consider the *total boundary pore water pressure* and the *total weight* of all the material above that boundary. Quick conditions then occur if these forces are just equal. From Fig. 7.10, the upward force equals the pore water pressure acting on the filter screen at elevation  $A$  on the bottom of the soil column, or

$$F_{\text{water}} \uparrow = (h + h_w + L)\rho_w gA$$

where  $A$  is the cross-sectional area of the sample.

The total weight of soil and water acting downward at the bottom of the sample (elevation  $A$ ) is

$$F_{\text{soil + water}} \downarrow = \rho_{\text{sat}} gLA + \rho_w gh_w A$$

Equating these two forces, we obtain

$$(h + h_w + L)\rho_w gA = \rho_{\text{sat}} gLA + \rho_w gh_w A \quad (g)$$

Use Eq. 2-17 for  $\rho_{\text{sat}}$  and do the algebra to satisfy yourself that Eq. (g) reduces to Eq. 7-21. Therefore both approaches, total and effective, will give the same results.

We can compute typical values of the critical hydraulic gradient, assuming a value of  $\rho_s = 2.68 \text{ Mg/m}^3$  and void ratios representative of loose, medium, and dense conditions. The values of  $i_c$  are presented in Table 7-1. Thus, for estimation purposes,  $i_c$  is often taken to be about unity, which is a relatively easy number to remember.

TABLE 7-1 Typical Values of  $i_c$  for  $\rho_s = 2.68 \text{ Mg/m}^3$

Void Ratio	Approximate Relative Density	$i_c$
0.5	Dense	1.12
0.75	Medium	0.96
1.0	Loose	0.84

### EXAMPLE 7.13

Given:

The soil sample and flow conditions of Fig. 7.10 and Example 7.3.

**Required:**

- Find the head required to cause quick conditions.
- Find the critical hydraulic gradient.

**Solution:**

a. From Eq. 7-20,

$$\begin{aligned} h &= \frac{\rho' L}{\rho_w} = \frac{\rho_{sat} - \rho_w}{\rho_w} L \\ &= \left( \frac{2.0 - 1.0}{1.0} \right) 5 \text{ m} = 5.0 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

b. The critical hydraulic gradient (Eq. 7-20) is

$$i_c = \frac{\rho'}{\rho_w} = \frac{(2.0 - 1.0)}{1.0} = 1.0$$

We could also use Eq. 7-21 if we knew the value of  $\rho_s$  and  $e$ . Assume  $\rho_s = 2.65 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ . From Eq. 2-17, solve for  $e = 0.65$ . Therefore,

$$i_c = \frac{(2.65 - 1.0)}{(1 + 0.65)(1.0)} = 1.0$$

Seepage forces, which may but not necessarily cause quicksand to develop, are always present in soils where there is a gradient causing the flow of water. Seepage forces affect sands more than clays because sands are cohesionless whereas clay soils have some inherent cohesion which holds the particles together. To evaluate the seepage forces, let's look again at Fig. 7.10. For quick conditions to develop, the upward force of water due to the head  $h$  on the left side of the figure must just equal the *effective* downward force exerted by the submerged soil column on the right side of the figure, or

$$\begin{aligned} \text{upward force} &= \text{downward force} \\ \rho_w g h A &= \rho' g L A \end{aligned} \tag{7-23a}$$

Substituting Eq. 2-18 into this equation we get

$$\rho_w g h A = \frac{\rho_s - \rho_w}{1 + e} g L A \tag{7-23b}$$

After algebraic manipulation, this equation is identical to Eq. 7-22. In uniform flow the upward force  $\rho_w g h A$ , the left-hand side of Eq. 7-23a, is distributed (and dissipated) uniformly throughout the volume  $L A$  of the

soil column. Thus

$$\frac{\rho_w g h A}{L A} = \rho_w g i = j \quad (7-23c)$$

The term  $i \rho_w g$  is the *seepage force per unit volume*, and it is commonly represented by the symbol  $j$ . The value of this force at quick conditions equals  $i_c \rho_w g$ , and it acts in the direction of fluid flow in an isotropic soil. If the right-hand side of Eq. 7-23a is divided by  $LA$ , the unit volume, then we have

$$j = \rho' g \quad (7-23d)$$

These expressions, Eqs. 7-23c and 7-23d, can be shown to be identical when quick conditions occur (see Eq. 7-21).

#### EXAMPLE 7.14

**Given:**

The soil sample and flow conditions of Fig. 7.10 and Example 7.3.

**Required:**

- Find the head required to cause a quick condition.
- Compute the seepage force per unit volume at quick conditions.
- Show, using seepage forces, that quick conditions really develop under the head of part (a).
- Compute the total seepage force at elevation  $A$ .

**Solution:**

- From Example 7.13,  $h$  above elevation  $B$  to cause a quick condition is 5.0 m.
- The seepage force per unit volume is computed from Eq. 7-23c.

$$j = i \rho_w g = \frac{5 \text{ m}}{5 \text{ m}} \times 1 \frac{\text{Mg}}{\text{m}^3} \times 9.81 \frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}^2} = 9.81 \frac{\text{kN}}{\text{m}^3}$$

We also could use Eq. 7-23d if we knew the value of  $\rho_s$  or  $e$ . Assume, as in Example 7.13,  $\rho_s = 2.65 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ . Then  $e = 0.65$ . Therefore

$$j = \frac{2.65 - 1.0}{1.65} g = 9.81 \frac{\text{kN}}{\text{m}^3}$$

Note that the units check ( $F/L^3 = ML^{-2}T^{-2}$ ).

- c. Quick conditions develop when the upward seepage force just equals the downward buoyant force of the soil. Or, from Eq. 7-23c and d:

$$\frac{j}{\text{vol}}(\text{vol})\uparrow = \rho'g(\text{vol})\downarrow$$

$$9.81 \frac{\text{kN}}{\text{m}^3} \times 5 \text{ m} \times 1 \text{ m}^2 = (2.0 - 1.0) \frac{\text{Mg}}{\text{m}^3} \times 9.81 \frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}^2} \times 5 \text{ m} \times 1 \text{ m}^2$$

$$49.05 \text{ kN}\uparrow = 49.05 \text{ kN}\downarrow$$

- d. The total seepage force at elevation *A* is

$$j(\text{vol}) = 9.81 \frac{\text{kN}}{\text{m}^3} \times 5 \text{ m} \times 1 \text{ m}^2 = 49.05 \text{ kN}$$

This force is distributed uniformly through the volume of the soil column.

The seepage force is a real force and it is added vectorially to the body or gravitational forces to give the net force acting on the soil particles. We can represent these forces in two different ways but each way gives identical results. In Example 7.14 we treat the problem considering seepage forces and submerged densities. A quick condition resulted because the effective or buoyant density of the soil volume (acting downward) just equalled the seepage force (acting upward).

An alternative approach is to consider the *total* saturated weight of soil and the boundary water forces acting on the soil, top and bottom, as shown in Example 7.15.

### EXAMPLE 7.15

**Given:**

The soil sample and conditions of Fig. 7.10 and Examples 7.3 and 7.14.

**Required:**

Show, using total (saturated) weight of the soil above elevation *A* and the boundary water forces, that quick conditions develop when the head *h* is 5 m.

**Solution:**

For a quick condition,  $\sum F_v = 0$ .

$$\begin{aligned} F_{\text{soil}} \downarrow &= \rho_{\text{sat}} g L A \\ &= 2.0 \frac{\text{Mg}}{\text{m}^3} \times 9.81 \frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}^2} \times 5 \text{ m} \times 1 \text{ m}^2 = 98.1 \text{ kN} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} F_{\text{water top}} \downarrow &= \rho_w g h_w A \\ &= 1 \frac{\text{Mg}}{\text{m}^3} \times 9.81 \frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}^2} \times 2 \text{ m} \times 1 \text{ m}^2 = 19.6 \text{ kN} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} F_{\text{water bottom}} \uparrow &= \rho_w g (L + h_w + h) A \\ &= 1 \frac{\text{Mg}}{\text{m}^3} \times 9.81 \frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}^2} \times (5 + 2 + 5) \text{ m} \\ &= 117.7 \text{ kN} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore  $\sum F_{\text{down}} = \sum F_{\text{up}}$  for a quick condition ( $117.7 \text{ kN} = 117.7 \text{ kN}$ ).

### EXAMPLE 7.16

**Given:**

The soil and flow condition of Fig. 7.10, except that the left-hand riser tube is at elevation *C*, or 2 m above elevation *A*. Assume the water level is maintained constant at elevation *C*.

**Required:**

Compute (a) the hydraulic gradient, (b) effective stress, and (c) seepage force at elevation *A*.

**Solution:**

In this case the flow of water is downward through the soil. Assume the datum plane is at the tailwater elevation, or at elevation *B*.

- a. Use Eq. 7-1; since the head loss is  $-5 \text{ m}$  (below elevation *B*),

$$i = \frac{-H}{L} = \frac{-5}{5} = -1$$

- b. The effective stress at elevation *A* may be computed in the two ways just described.

1. Using *boundary* water forces and saturated densities we get  
(units are the same as Example 7.15)

$$\begin{aligned} F_{\text{soil}} \downarrow &= \rho_{\text{sat}} g L A \\ &= 2.0(9.81)(5)(1) = 98.1 \text{ kN} \downarrow \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} F_{\text{water top}} \downarrow &= \rho_w g h_w A \\ &= 1(9.81)(2)(1) = 19.6 \text{ kN} \downarrow \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} F_{\text{water bottom}} \uparrow &= \rho_w g h A \\ &= 1(9.81)(2)(1) = 19.6 \text{ kN} \uparrow \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \sum F_{v_A} &= 19.6 + 98.1 - 19.6 \\ &= 98.1 \text{ kN} \downarrow (\text{net or effective force}) \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{the effective stress} = \frac{F}{A} = 98.1 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

Thus the filter screen at elevation *A* must support a force of 98.1 kN per unit area or a stress of 98.1 kN/m<sup>2</sup> in this case.

2. The other way to compute the effective stress at elevation *A* is to use seepage forces, buoyant densities, and Eq. 7-23. Note that *h* = -5 m referenced to elevation *B*.

$$\begin{aligned} j &= \rho_w g i(\text{vol}) = 1(9.81) \left( \frac{-5}{5} \right) (5)(1) \\ &= 49.05 \text{ kN acting down in the direction of flow} \end{aligned}$$

To this we add the effective or buoyant weight:

$$\begin{aligned} F_{\text{down}} \downarrow &= \rho' g L A = (\rho_{\text{sat}} - \rho_w) g L A \\ &= (2.0 - 1)(9.81)(5)(1) = 49.05 \text{ kN} \downarrow \end{aligned}$$

Therefore adding vectorially these two forces, we get the seepage force plus the effective soil force acting on area *A*, or 49.05 + 49.05 = 98.1 kN per unit area as before. Or the effective stress at *A* = 98.1 kN/m<sup>2</sup>. Note that this second approach also automatically gives the solution to part (c), the seepage force at *A*. Note that the seepage force at the top of the soil is zero and increases linearly to 49 kN at elevation *A*.

---

An apparatus that is commonly used in soil mechanics teaching laboratories to demonstrate the phenomenon of quicksand is shown in Fig. 7.11. Instead of a standpipe as in Fig. 7.10, a pump is used to create the upward flow in the quicksand tank. The water flows through a porous

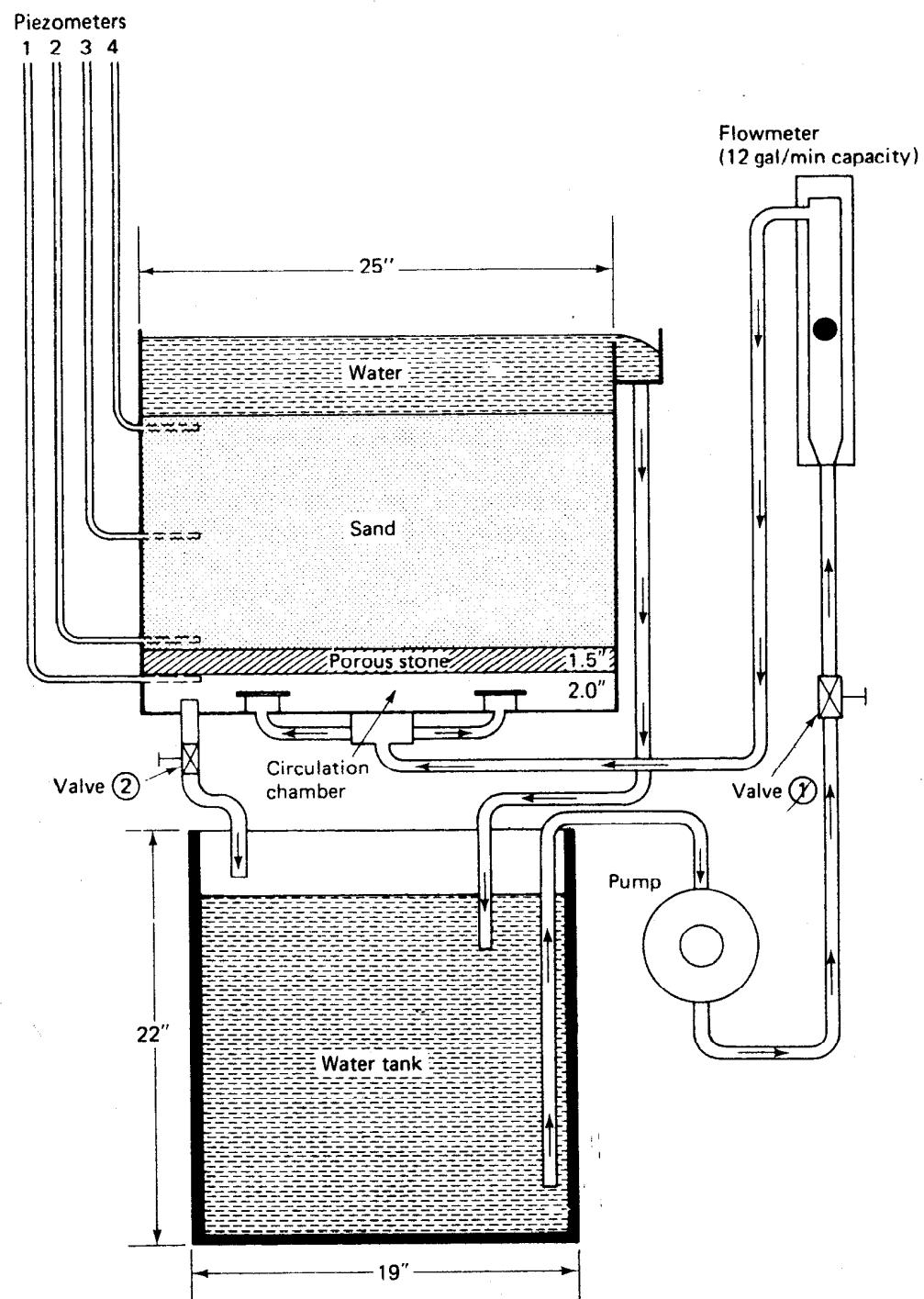


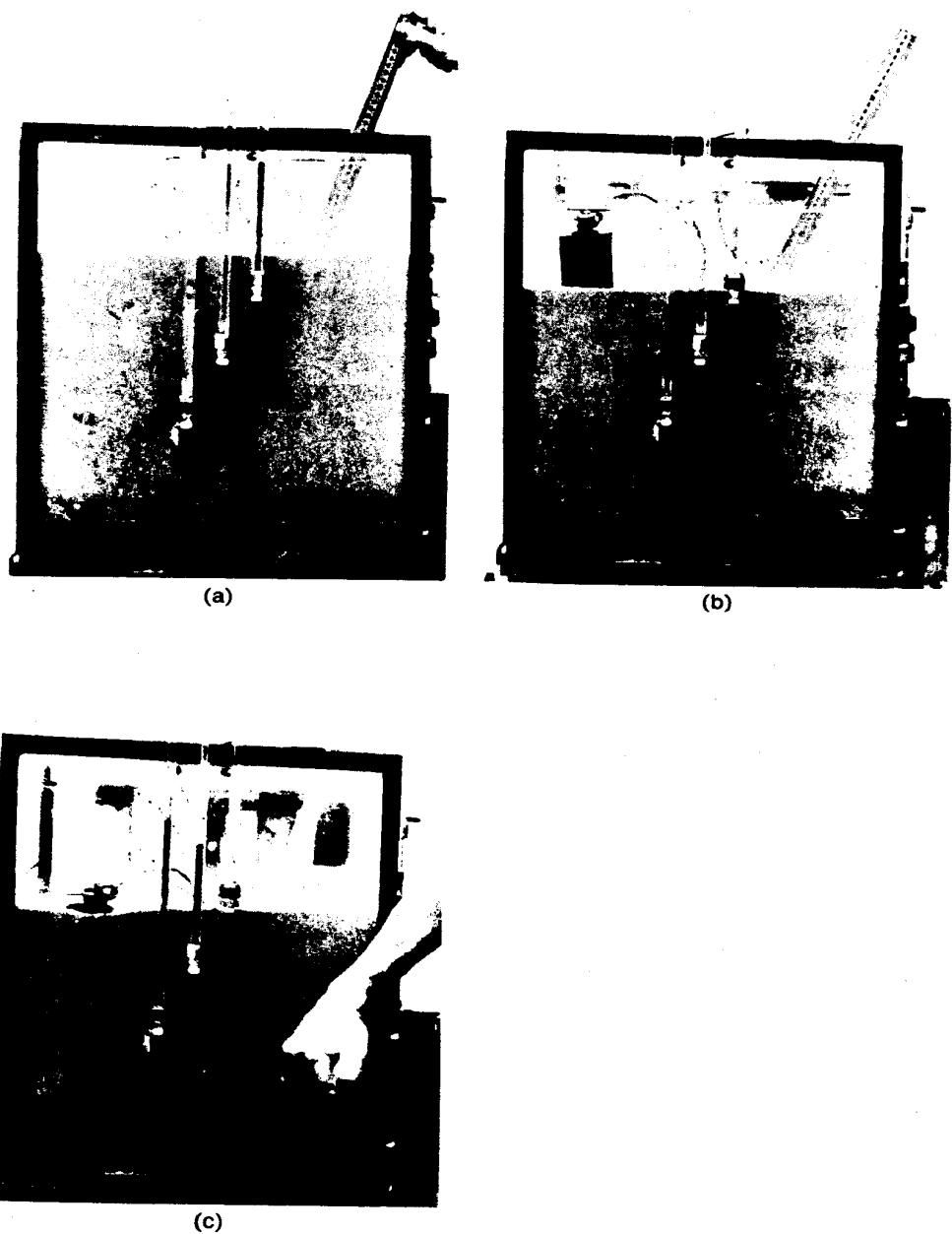
Fig. 7.11 Diagram of a quicksand tank (courtesy J. O. Osterberg, Northwestern University).

stone to distribute the pressure evenly on the bottom of the sand mass. Piezometers at various levels on the tank enable heads to be observed and measured. As valve 1 is gradually opened, the head applied to the bottom of the sand mass increases, and eventually it becomes sufficient to cause the entire sand mass to boil or *liquefy*. As in Examples 7.14 and 7.15, the seepage forces are acting upward and just balance the downward-acting gravitational forces. The effective stresses between the sand grains are zero, and the soil has no shear resistance. As long as the pump is running, the soil mass can easily be stirred with a rod or metre stick, and it acts like a dense liquid (Fig. 7.12a).

Next we shut off the pump, close valve 1, and open valve 2. Now the direction of the water flow is reversed, and the seepage forces act downward along with gravity and increase the effective stresses. A rod or metre stick left buried in the sand has resistance to movement, and the sand mass can no longer be stirred easily. Even though the sand is very loose, it can support some static loads at the surface, as shown in Fig. 7.12b. This case is similar to Example 7.16. Therefore, depending on their direction, seepage forces can significantly increase the effective stresses and the strength of the soil mass.

Some practical examples of quick conditions include excavations in granular materials behind cofferdams alongside rivers. To excavate and proceed with construction, the water table at the site is lowered by a system of wells and pumps. Of course water from the river invariably seeps into the excavation and must be pumped out to keep the excavation dry. If upward gradients approach unity, the sand can become quick and failure of the cofferdam can occur. As is explained in the next section, such failures are usually catastrophic so high safety factors must be used in design. Another place quick conditions often occur is behind levees during floods. The water seeps under the levee and, as in the case of the cofferdam, if the gradient is high enough localized quick conditions can occur. This phenomenon is known as a *sand boil* and must be halted quickly (usually by stacking sand bags in a ring around the boil), otherwise the erosion can spread and undermine the levee. Quick conditions are also possible almost any place where *artesian* pressures exist, that is, where the head is greater than the usual static water pressure. Such pressures occur where a pervious underground stratum is continuous and connected to a place where the head is higher.

Contrary to popular belief, it is not possible to drown in quicksand, unless you really work at it, because the density of quicksand is much greater than that of water. Since you can almost float in water, you should easily be able to float in quicksand.



**Fig. 7.12** Quicksand tank: (a) under an upward gradient, the sand mass is easily stirred with a metre stick; (b) gradient is downward; sand is able to support a static load; (c) after a shock load is applied to the side of the tank, the sand mass liquefies and momentarily loses all bearing capacity. Notice water level in piezometers (photograph by M. Surendra; hand by R. D. Holtz).

### EXAMPLE 7.17

**Given:**

The conditions as shown in Fig. Ex. 7.17. The silty clay acts as an impervious layer and prevents flow of water up from the fine sand layer below it. Because of a river nearby, the fine sand layer is under a head of water greater than the existing ground surface (artesian conditions). If a standpipe or piezometer were installed through the silty clay layer, it would rise a distance  $h$  above the top of the sand layer. If  $H_s$  is not sufficiently large, the uplift pressure in the middle of the excavation could cause the bottom of the excavation to "blow up."

**Required:**

Calculate how deep an excavation can be made, based on the assumption that you neglect the shear force on the sides of the soil plug.

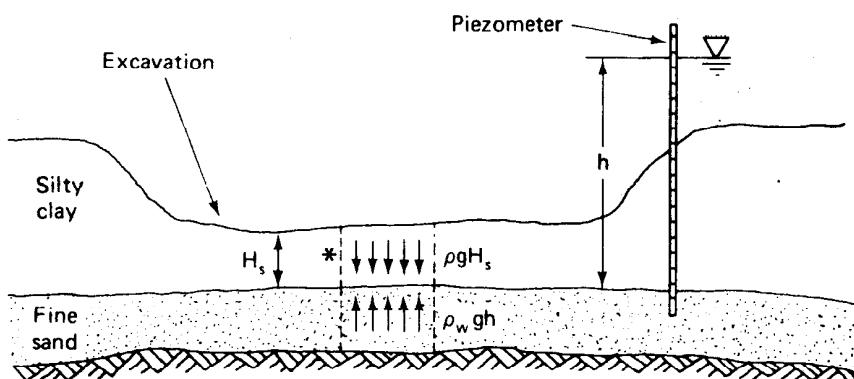
**Solution:**

At equilibrium,  $\sum F_c = 0$ .

$$H_s \rho g = \rho_w g h$$

or

$$H_s = \frac{\rho_w g h}{\rho g}$$



\* Neglect shear along sides.

Fig. Ex. 7.17

Failure will occur if  $H_s < \rho_w gh / \rho g$ . If  $H_s > \rho_w gh / \rho g$ , then failure cannot happen. In practice, the factor of safety against blow up should be rather high since, if it occurs, it is catastrophic. You must be very conservative in designing such situations because of the possible consequences.

Another phenomenon related to quicksand is *liquefaction*, which can be demonstrated in a quicksand tank. After the sand has been made quick and in a very loose state, the flow is reversed and the water level is allowed to drop just slightly below the sand surface. A sharp blow is applied to the side of the tank, and instantly the entire soil mass liquefies and the sand loses all bearing capacity (Fig. 7.12c). This reaction is exactly what happens when a loose saturated deposit of sand is subjected to loads of very short duration, such as occur during earthquakes, pile driving, and blasting. The loose sand tries to densify during shear and this tends to squeeze the water out of the pores. Normally, under static loading, the sand has sufficient permeability so the water can escape and any induced pore water pressures can dissipate. But in this situation because the loading occurs in such a short time, the water doesn't have time to escape and the pore water pressure increases. Since the total stresses have not increased during loading, the effective stresses then tend toward zero (by Eq. 7-13), and the soil loses all strength. Note the position of the water level in the standpipes of Fig. 7.12c. The photograph was taken just after a sharp blow against the side of the tank.

Casagrande (1936a) was the first to explain liquefaction in terms of soil mechanics, and he also describes (1950, 1975) some situations in practice where liquefaction has occurred. Among these are the failure of Ft. Peck Dam in Montana in 1938 and *flow slides* along the lower Mississippi River. Here sands are deposited during floods in a very loose state. Somehow strains are induced in these deposits, and it seems that they almost spontaneously liquefy and flow out into the river. The problem is that they often take levees and other flood protection works along with them, and repairs of these features are expensive. Bank erosion leading to progressive liquefaction, seepage pressures from high water tables, and even traffic vibrations have been blamed for flow slides. Flow slides also occur in mine tailings dams. These structures are often very large and constructed hydraulically of very loose sands and silts. Since they are a waste dump, very little engineering and construction inspection goes into them. Failures are relatively common.

Since the Niigata, Japan, and the Anchorage, Alaska, earthquakes of 1964, where severe damage occurred due to liquefaction, there has been increasing interest in liquefaction. It has been found that liquefaction can occur in the laboratory in even moderately dense sands due to a repeated

or cyclic application of shear stress, which means that if an earthquake lasted long enough, then even moderately dense saturated sands could possibly liquefy. This important, though controversial point, is discussed by Casagrande (1975) and Seed (1979). (See Sec. 11.8.)

### 7.9 SEEPAGE AND FLOW NETS: TWO-DIMENSIONAL FLOW

The concept of head and energy loss as water flows through soils has been mentioned several times in this chapter. When water flows through a porous medium such as soil, energy or head is lost through friction similar to what happens in flow through pipes and in open channels. As in the laboratory permeability test described earlier, for example, similar energy or head losses occur when water seeps through an earth dam or under a sheet pile cofferdam (Fig. 7.13).

Different kinds of heads and head losses were described in Sec. 7.7, and it might be a good idea to review that material before proceeding further in this section. Figure 7.14 shows how the piezometric heads ( $h_p + z$ ) might be determined from the positions and elevations of the

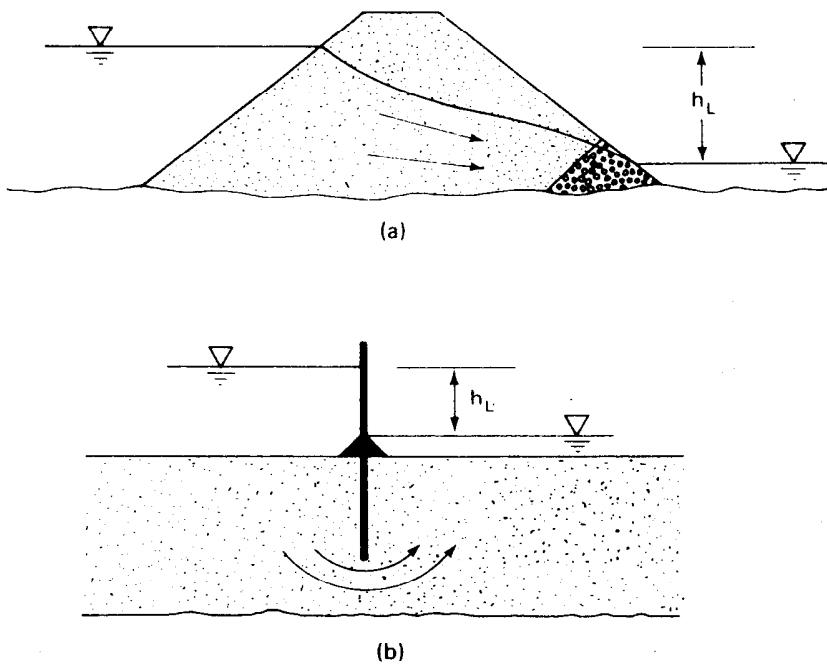


Fig. 7.13 Engineering examples of head loss because of seepage through soils.

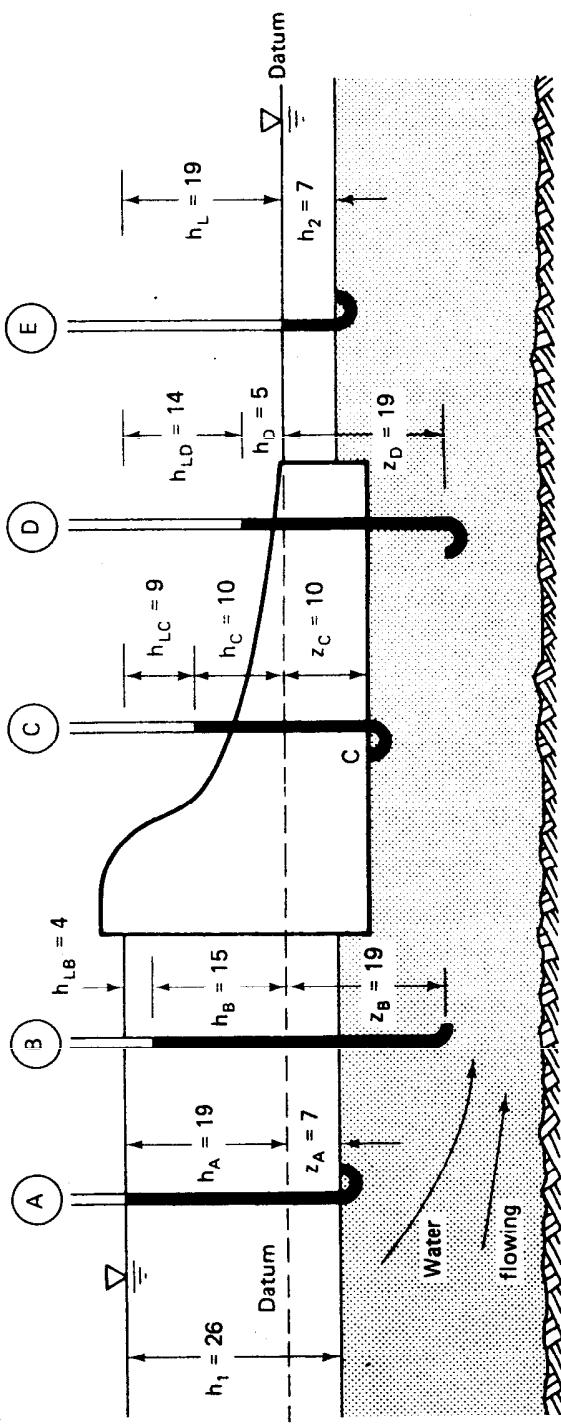


Fig. 7.14 Example of piezometric heads and head loss due to seepage under a dam. All dimensions in m.

water levels in the standpipes. Also shown in this figure is how energy or head is lost in flowing under a dam. Note how the water levels in each successive piezometer decrease as water flows from the heel to the toe of the dam. Example 7.18 explains in detail how head computations are made.

### EXAMPLE 7.18

**Given:**

The dam with piezometers shown in Fig. 7.14.

**Required:**

- Calculate the pressure heads  $h_p$  and the total (piezometric) heads  $h$  for piezometers *A* through *E*.
- Determine the uplift pressure acting on the base of the dam at point *C*.

**Solution:**

- a. Pressure and total (piezometric) heads.

Piezometer *A*: The pressure head is the length of the column of water in the standpipe, or

$$h_p = h_A + z_A = h_1 = 19 + 7 = 26 \text{ m}$$

Note that this dimension is also numerically equal to

$$h_L + h_2 = 19 + 7 = 26 \text{ m}$$

The total or piezometric head is

$$h = (h_p + z) = h_A + z_A - z_A = 19 \text{ m}$$

which is the height of rise above the datum.

Piezometer *B*:

$$h_p = h_B + z_B = 15 + 19 = 34 \text{ m}$$

$$h = (h_p + z) = h_B + z_B - z_B = 15 \text{ m}$$

Note that  $h$  is also numerically the same as

$$h_L - h_{LB} \quad \text{or} \quad h = 19 - 4 = 15 \text{ m}$$

Piezometer *C*:

$$h_p = h_C + z_C = 10 + 10 = 20 \text{ m}$$

$$h = h_C + z_C - z_C = 10 \text{ m}$$

(Check:  $h = h_L - h_{LC} = 19 - 9 = 10 \text{ m.}$ )

Piezometer D:

$$h_p = h_D + z_D = 5 + 19 = 24 \text{ m}$$

$$h = h_D + z_D - z_D = 5 \text{ m}$$

(Check:  $h = h_L - h_{LD} = 19 - 14 = 5 \text{ m.}$ )

Piezometer E:

$$h_p = h_2 = 7 \text{ m}$$

$$h = h_p - z_E = 7 - 7 = 0$$

$$h_L = 19 \text{ m}$$

Note that at the tailwater all of the head has been lost. Thus the total head at this point is zero.

b. Uplift pressure at point C:

$$\begin{aligned} p_C &= h_p \rho_w g = (h_C + z_C) \rho_w g = (h_L - h_{LC} + z_C) \rho_w g \\ &= 20 \text{ m } (1000 \text{ kg/m}^3)(9.81 \text{ m/s}^2) = 196.2 \text{ kPa} \end{aligned}$$

We could represent the flow of water through the foundation under the dam in Fig. 7.14 by *flow lines*, which would be the average flow path of a particle of water flowing from the upstream reservoir down to the tailwater. Similarly, we could represent the energy of flow by lines of equal potential, called, naturally, *equipotential lines*. Along any equipotential line, the energy available to cause flow is the same; conversely, the energy lost by the water getting to that line is the same all along that line. The network of flow lines and equipotential lines is called a *flow net*, a concept that illustrates graphically how the head or energy is lost as water flows through a porous medium, as shown in Fig. 7.15.

You probably can see that we could, if we wanted to, draw an infinite number of flow lines and equipotential lines to represent the seepage shown in Fig. 7.15, but it is more convenient to select only a few representative lines of each type. The hydraulic gradient between any two adjacent equipotential lines is the drop in potential (head) between those lines divided by the distance traversed. Or, in Fig. 7.15 along flow line 2, the gradient between equipotential lines *a* and *b* is the head drop between those lines divided by *l*. Because in an *isotropic* soil the flow must follow paths of the largest gradient, the flow lines have to cross the equipotential lines at right angles, as shown in Fig. 7.15. Note that, as the equipotential lines become closer together, *l* decreases and the gradient increases.

Figure 7.15 represents a typical cross section of the dam and foundation. Thus the flow condition is *two dimensional*, like all seepage problems

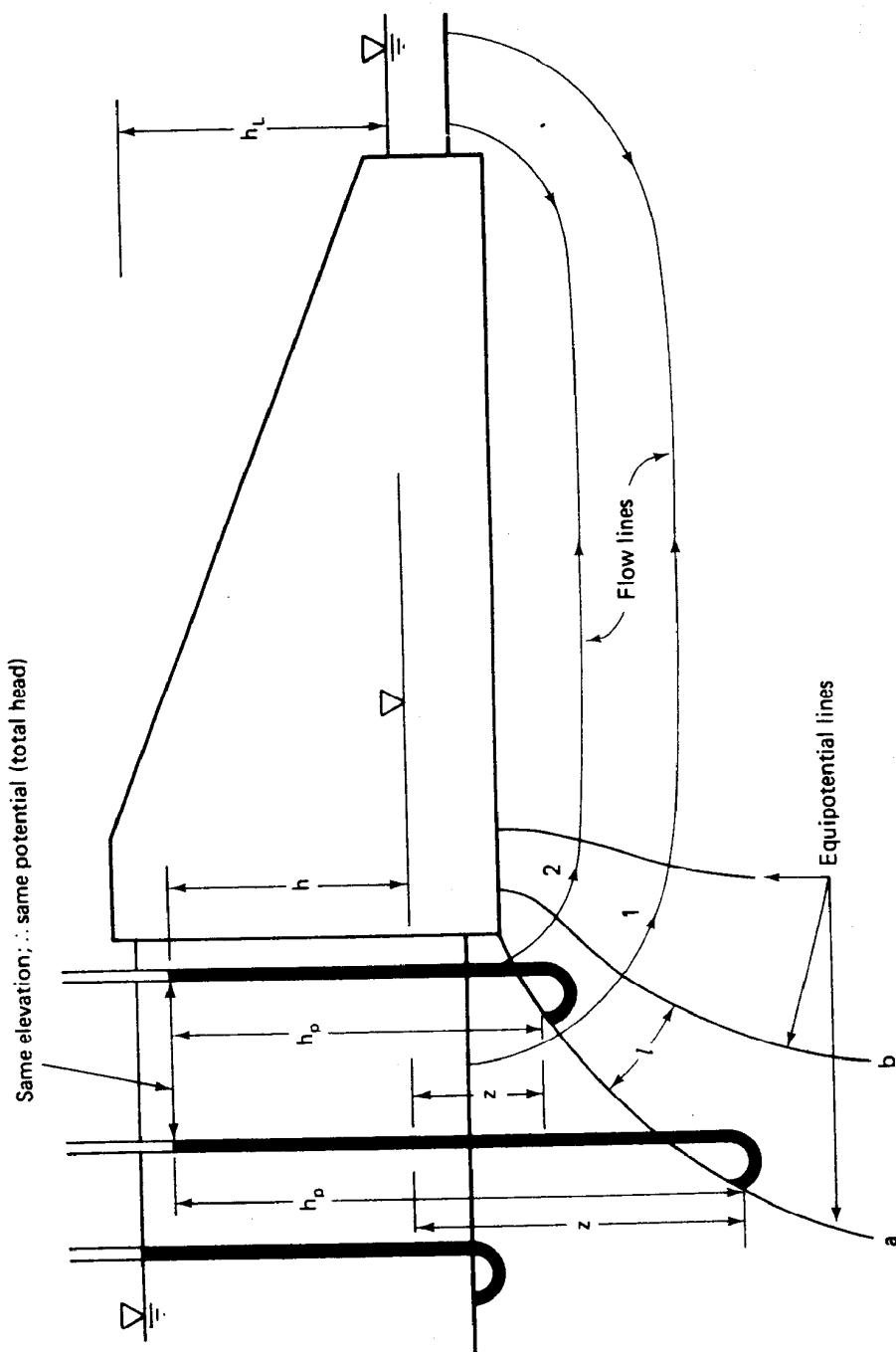


Fig. 7.15 Equipotential and flow lines (only a few shown).

considered in this text. Three-dimensional flow is the more general situation in many geotechnical problems, but seepage analyses of these problems are just too complicated to be practical, so we usually simplify the problem to two dimensions. Also in this text we will only consider the simple case of *confined* flow, that is, where the seepage is confined between two impervious surfaces. For a discussion of unconfined flow problems (such as for earth dams and seepage toward wells), see Casagrande (1937), Taylor (1948), Leonards (1962), and Cedergren (1977).

Flow nets are very useful in solving seepage problems in engineering practice, for example to estimate seepage losses from reservoirs, uplift pressures under dams, and check points of potential detrimental erosion where  $i \rightarrow i_{cr}$ . We shall explain the techniques in this section.

A flow net is actually a graphical solution of *Laplace's equation* in two dimensions,

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial y^2} = 0 \quad (7-24)$$

where  $x$  and  $y$  are the two coordinate directions. Laplace's equation, derived in Appendix B, is a very important equation in mathematical physics; it represents the energy loss through any resistive medium. For example, besides the flow of water through soils, it describes electron flow, the flow of people to hospitals, etc. If the *boundary conditions* (geometry, flow conditions, and head conditions at the boundaries) are simple, then it is even possible to solve the equation in closed form, that is, exactly. But for most practical engineering problems, it is simpler to solve such problems graphically albeit somewhat inexactly. Flow nets are such graphical solutions to Laplace's equation for a given set of boundary conditions.

How do you make a flow net? By sketching. For two-dimensional steady-state problems, you simply draw the medium with its boundaries to some convenient scale. By trial and error (mostly error, until you get some practice!) sketch a network of flow lines and equipotential lines spaced so that the enclosed figures resemble "squares." Their sides intersect at right angles. Look again at Fig. 7.15 and the "square" enclosed by flow lines 1 and 2 and equipotential lines  $a$  and  $b$ . Not all the "squares" in a flow net have to be the same size either. Since the squares are made of curved lines, they are only squares in the strictest sense when they can be subdivided down the truly equilateral figures. Note that a flow line cannot intersect an impervious boundary; in fact, an impervious boundary is a flow line. Note too that all equipotential lines must meet impervious boundaries at right angles. Neither the number of *flow channels* (channels between flow lines)

nor the number of *equipotential drops* (a *drop* is the decrease in head  $\Delta h$  from one equipotential line to the next) need to be a whole number; fractional squares are allowed. Figure 7-16 defines some of the terms associated with flow nets. Look at the "square" with dimensions  $a \times b$ . Note that the gradient is

$$i = \frac{\Delta h}{\Delta l} = \frac{\Delta h}{b} = \frac{h_L/N_d}{b} \quad (7-25)$$

where the length of the flow path in one square is  $b = \Delta l$ . The equipotential drop between two flow lines is  $\Delta h = h_L/N_d$ , where  $N_d$  is the total number of potential drops, and  $h_L$  is the total head lost in the system. From Darcy's law we know that the flow in each flow channel is

$$\Delta q = k \frac{\Delta h}{\Delta l} A = k \left( \frac{h_L/N_d}{b} \right) a$$

and the total discharge  $q$  per unit depth (perpendicular to the paper) is

$$q = \Delta q N_f = k h_L \left( \frac{a}{b} \right) \left( \frac{N_f}{N_d} \right) \quad (7-26)$$

where  $N_f$  is the total number of flow channels in the flow net. If we sketched squares in our flow net, then  $a = b$ . Thus we can readily estimate the quantity of flow  $q$  by simply counting the number of potential drops  $N_d$  and the number of flow channels  $N_f$ , if we know the  $k$  of the material and the total head loss  $h_L$ . Even a crude flow net provides a fairly accurate estimate of the flow quantities.

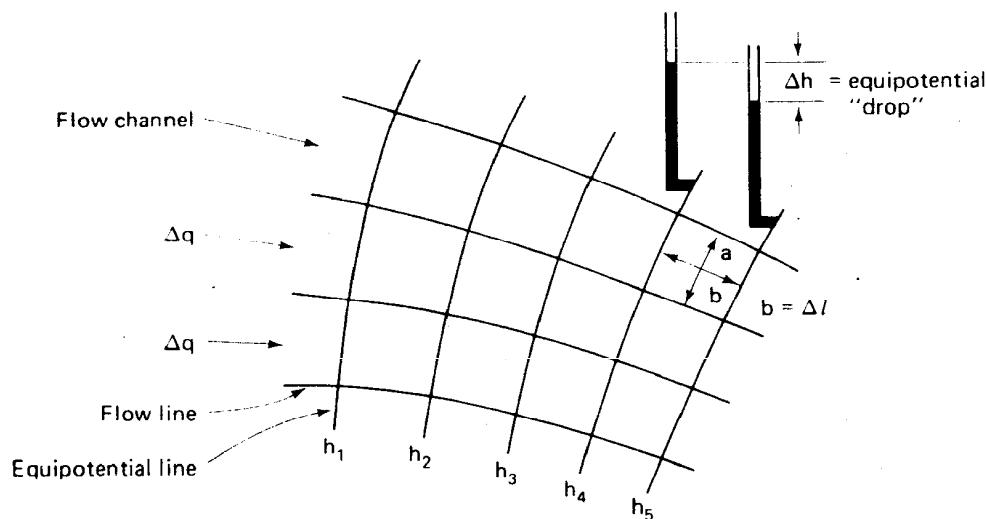


Fig. 7.16 Flow net illustrating some definitions.

With confined flow problems, where there is no phreatic (free) surface, sketching a flow net is not so difficult. Start with a sketch, to scale, of the soil mass, boundaries, etc. Keep the sketch small so you can observe the entire picture as it develops. Use good quality paper, a soft pencil, and have a good eraser handy—you'll need it! Draw the boundaries in ink on the reverse side of the sheet. Start with, at most, only three or four lines at first; by trial and error, sketch the net (lightly) until you get "squares" throughout the region of flow. It's easier if you can manage to keep the number of flow channels to a whole number. The flow lines and equipotential lines should be smooth, gradual curves, all intersecting at right angles. As mentioned, you should be able to subdivide each square to make additional small squares. The flow net shown in Fig. 7.17 is an example of a fairly well-drawn flow net for confined flow.

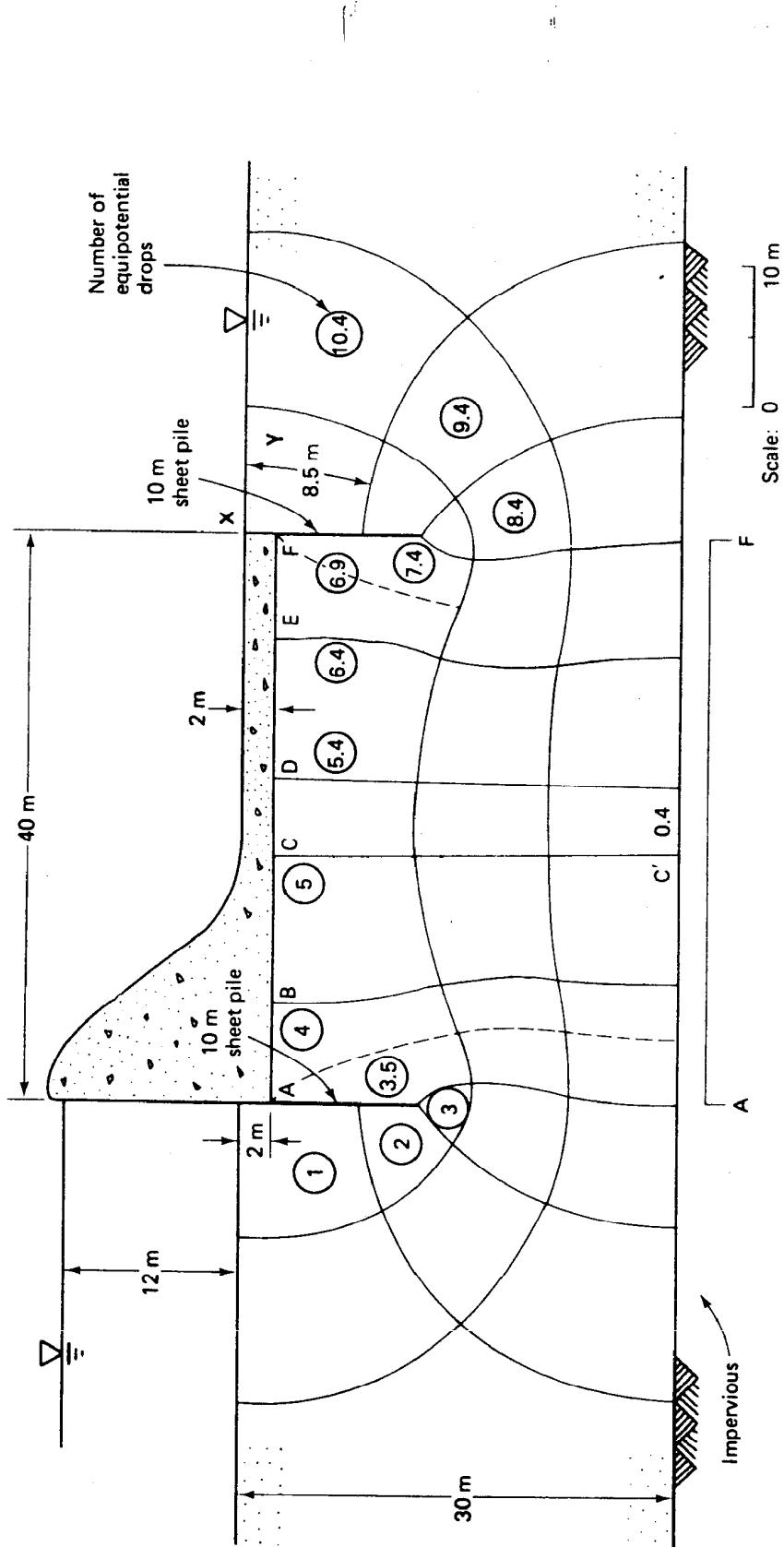
We mentioned earlier that flow nets were valid for isotropic soils only, a condition that is unlikely in natural soil deposits or even in earth dams. However it is easy to take the directional difference in permeability into account by transforming the scale to which you draw the flow net. For example, if the horizontal permeability is much greater than the vertical permeability, then you shorten the horizontal dimensions of the problem by the ratio  $\sqrt{k_h/k_v}$ . The proof of this transformation as well as examples for its use are shown in Taylor (1948). Equation 7-28 for the quantity of seepage then becomes

$$q = \frac{N_f}{N_d} \sqrt{k_v k_h} h_L$$

For unconfined flow, where there is a free surface at atmospheric pressure (for example, seepage through earth dams, levees, and toward wells), the major problem is to establish the shape of the top line of seepage. This is not so easy, and if you have such a problem it is best to consult one of the references cited earlier in this section. One of the serious problems, practically speaking, is when the top line of seepage intersects the top downstream surface of an earth dam or levee. This condition leads to surface erosion, piping, and eventually possible failure of the structure. Therefore, in design, keep the top line of seepage well below the downstream surface. In the dam of Fig. 7.13a, the toe drain tends to keep the top seepage line from intersecting the downstream surface.

Other methods besides sketching for obtaining flow nets include mathematical solutions (for example, Harr, 1962), electrical analogs, viscous flow (Hele-Shaw) models, small-scale laboratory flow models, and the method of fragments (Harr, 1962). This last method is so simple and practical that we explain it in the next section.

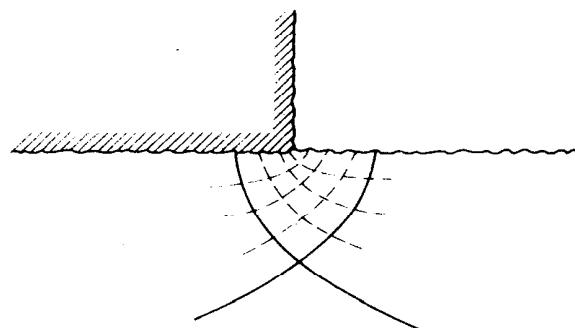
Example 7.18 indicates how the uplift pressure under a dam can be calculated. From the flow net, it is not difficult to determine what the  $h_p$  is



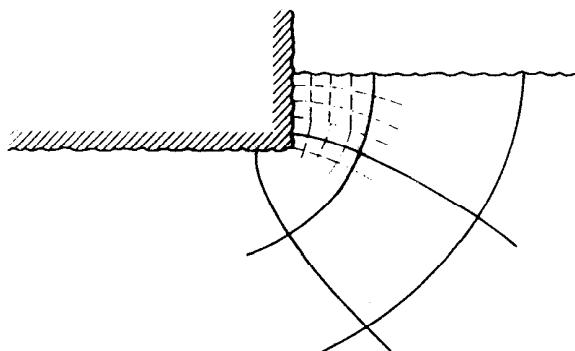
**Fig. 7.17** Example of a reasonably well-drawn flow net for confined flow.

at the bottom of the dam. Then the distribution of uplift pressures can be drawn. This distribution is important for the analysis of the stability of concrete gravity dams.

Another important use of flow nets is to determine gradients, especially at certain critical points, for example, at the toe of a dam or any place where seepage water exits. From Sec. 7.8 you know that when the gradient approaches unity, critical conditions can occur, which leads to *piping* and *erosion* and may lead to complete failure of the structure. Piping is a phenomenon where seeping water progressively erodes or washes away soil particles, leaving large voids (pipes) in the soil. These voids simply continue to erode and work their way backwards under the structure, or they may collapse. Either way, if piping is not stopped promptly, failure is imminent. The critical place for piping is usually right at the corner of the toe of a dam, and we can see why if we study an enlargement of the flow net at the toe (Fig. 7.18).



(a) Dam constructed directly on ground surface.



(b) Dam placed somewhat below ground surface

Fig. 7.18 Exit gradients at toe of dams.

For the case of the dam placed (foolishly) right on the ground surface (Fig. 7.18a), if we keep subdividing the squares,  $l$  rapidly approaches zero and, since  $\Delta h$  is still finite, the gradient rapidly increases. If this actually happened in a real structure, piping and probably failure of the structure (by undermining) would occur.

For the example shown in Fig. 7.18b, the dam is somewhat safer than in Fig. 7.18a since, for typical cases, the exit gradient is much less than critical. From Eq. 7-25, the exit gradient  $i_E$  equals  $\Delta h_L/\Delta l$ , where  $\Delta h_L$  equals the head loss  $h_L$  divided by the number of equipotential drops  $N_d$ . Thus if all other things are the same, an embedded foundation will have more equipotential drops and a lower exit gradient. Remember that the flow net in its enlarged condition in Fig. 7.18 merely shows the *concentration* of flow. As the squares get smaller and smaller, the tendency is to think that the exit gradient is steadily increasing! This is not so. As the number of equipotential drops increases,  $\Delta h_L$  also decreases per drop, and the ratio of  $\Delta h_L/\Delta l$  remains about the same. For this example, too, you can see why the critical place is right next to the downstream toe. There, the  $\Delta l$  is the least for a given  $\Delta h_L$ . The next flow channel over, for example, is safer since the same head ( $\Delta h_L$ ) is lost over a greater length (greater distance between equipotential lines).

For practical problems, where there is a danger that  $i$  could approach  $i_c$ , be very conservative in your design. Use a factor of safety of at least 5 or 6 for such cases. For one thing, failure is usually catastrophic and occurs rapidly and with little warning. For another, it is extremely difficult to know exactly what is going on underground, especially locally. Local defects, gravel pockets, etc., can significantly alter the flow regime and concentrate flow, for example, where you might not want it and not be prepared for it. Concentration of flow occurs, too, at corners of temporary structures like cofferdams. As Taylor (1948) points out, the entire flow regime may be widely different from that assumed in our (idealized) flow net. Great variation in horizontal and vertical permeability may exist from point to point under a foundation; the flow may not be entirely two-dimensional; geologic defects in the underlying subsoils may provide express routes for the water to concentrate and seep under and out of a foundation. If sheet piling is used, cutoff is often uncertain (for example, piling unknowingly driven into boulders), and you would be wise to assume that the worst possible conditions could happen—then prepare for such eventualities. Since failure of cofferdams is often catastrophic, it is extremely important that large factors of safety be used, especially where people's lives are at stake. Failures of earth structures resulting from piping have caused more deaths than all other failures of civil engineering structures combined. Therefore your responsibility is clear—be careful and conservative, and be sure of your ground conditions and design.

### EXAMPLE 7.19

**Given:**

The dam and flow net shown in Fig. 7.17. The dam is 120 m long and has two 10 m sheet piles driven partially into the granular soil layer. Datum is at tailwater elevation.

**Required:**

- The quantity of seepage loss under the dam when  $k = 20 \times 10^{-4}$  cm/s.
- The exit gradient (at point X).
- The pressure distribution on the base of the dam.

**Solution:**

- From Eq. 7-26, the quantity of seepage is

$$\begin{aligned} q &= kh_L \left( \frac{N_f}{N_d} \right) \times \text{length} \\ &= (20 \times 10^{-4} \frac{\text{cm}}{\text{s}}) \left( \frac{\text{m}}{100 \text{ cm}} \right) 12 \text{ m} \frac{3}{10.4} 120 \text{ m} \\ &= 8.31 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m}^3/\text{s} \end{aligned}$$

- At point X, the exit gradient is

$$i_E = \frac{\Delta h_L}{L} = \frac{1.15}{8.5} = 0.14, \text{ which is not critical}$$

Note:  $\Delta h_L = h_L/N_d = 12 \text{ m}/10.4 = 1.15 \text{ m}$ .  $L = 8.5 \text{ m}$ , scaled from Fig. 7.17, is the length of square Y.

- Pressure heads are evaluated for point A through F along the base of the dam in Fig. Ex. 7.19.

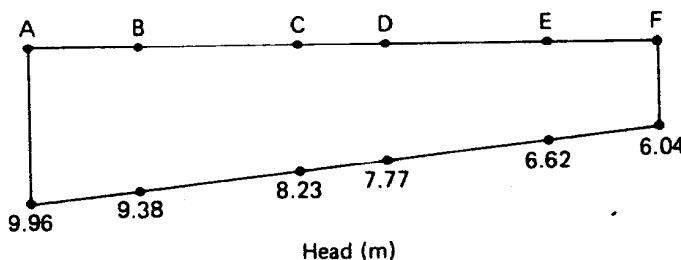


Fig. Ex. 7.19 Pressure head for locations A through F.

The pressure head at point *A*, at the base of the dam and just to the right of the left sheet pile is found this way: the percentage of the head loss is proportional to the number of equipotential drops. Of the total of 10.4 drops for the entire flow net, only 3.5 have occurred by point *A*. Thus the pressure head at point *A* is

$$h_A = 12 \text{ m} - 12 \text{ m} \times \frac{3.5}{10.4} + 2 \text{ m}$$

$$= 12 - 4.04 + 2 = 9.96 \text{ m}$$

The extra 2 m brings the head from the water-soil interface down to the base of the dam.

In a similar manner, we can calculate the head at point *D*:

$$h_D = 12 - 12 \times \frac{5.4}{10.4} + 2 = 7.77 \text{ m}$$

The heads at all the points under the dam are as follows:

Location	Head (m)	Pressure (kPa)
<i>A</i>	9.96	97.7
<i>B</i>	9.38	92.0
<i>C</i>	8.23	80.7
<i>D</i>	7.77	76.2
<i>E</i>	6.62	64.9
<i>F</i>	6.04	59.2

These values of head are plotted in Fig. Ex. 7.19. To compute the *uplift pressures* on the base of the dam, we multiply the head times the product  $\rho_w g$ . The pressures are given above. If the density of concrete is 2.4 Mg/m<sup>3</sup>, then the pressure exerted by 2 m of concrete is

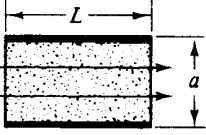
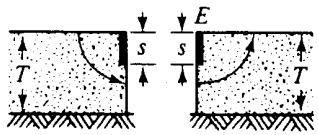
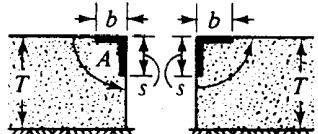
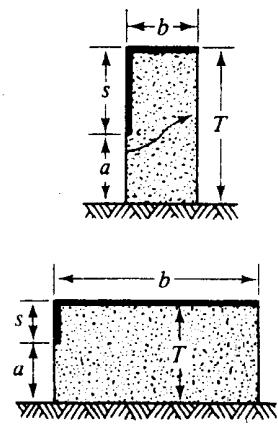
$$2.4 \text{ Mg/m}^3 \times 9.81 \text{ m/s}^2 \times 2 \text{ m} = 47 \text{ kPa}$$

Thus at any point along the base of the dam from point *C* through *F* the uplift force exceeds the weight of the dam so the dam is *unstable* with this design.

## 7.10 THE METHOD OF FRAGMENTS

The *method of fragments* presents a useful, rapid, although approximate, analytical design method for the solution of confined flow problems. After you learn the procedure, many cases may be investigated in little more than the time it usually takes to assemble paper, pencils and erasers for drawing flow nets. The method originated with Pavlovsky (1956) and was brought to the attention of the western world by Harr (1962). The

**TABLE 7-2 Summary of Fragment Types and Form Factors\***

Fragment Type	Illustration	Form Factor, $\Phi$ ( $h$ is head loss through fragment)
I		$\Phi = \frac{L}{a}$
II		$\Phi = \frac{K}{K'} ; m = \sin \frac{\pi s}{2T}$ $i_E = \frac{h_m \pi}{2KTm}$
III		$\Phi = \frac{K}{K'}$ $m = \cos \frac{\pi s}{2T} \sqrt{\tanh^2 \frac{\pi b}{2T} + \tan^2 \frac{\pi s}{2T}}$
IV		<i>Exact solution:</i> $\frac{\Lambda}{\Lambda'} = \frac{T}{b} ; \text{modulus} = \lambda$ $\Phi = \frac{K'(m)}{K(m)} ; m = \lambda \operatorname{sn}\left(\frac{a}{T} \Lambda, \lambda\right)$ <i>Approximate solution:</i> $s \geq b:$ $\Phi = \ln \left(1 + \frac{b}{a}\right)$ $b \geq s:$ $\Phi = \ln \left(1 + \frac{s}{a}\right) + \frac{b-s}{T}$

\*After *Groundwater and Seepage* by M. E. Harr. Copyright© 1962 McGraw-Hill Book Company. Used with permission.

TABLE 7-2 Continued

Fragment Type	Illustration	Form Factor, $\Phi$ ( $h$ is head loss through fragment)
V		$L \leq 2s:$ $\Phi = 2 \ln \left( 1 + \frac{L}{2a} \right)$ $L \geq 2s:$ $\Phi = 2 \ln \left( 1 + \frac{s}{a} \right) + \left( \frac{L - 2s}{T} \right)$
VI		$L > s' + s'':$ $\Phi = \ln \left[ \left( 1 + \frac{s'}{a'} \right) \left( 1 + \frac{s''}{a''} \right) \right] + \frac{L - (s' + s'')}{T}$ $L = s' + s'':$ $\Phi = \ln \left[ \left( 1 + \frac{s'}{a'} \right) \left( 1 + \frac{s''}{a''} \right) \right]$ $L < s' + s'':$ $\Phi = \ln \left[ \left( 1 + \frac{b'}{a'} \right) \left( 1 + \frac{b''}{a''} \right) \right]$ where $b' = \frac{L + (s' - s'')}{2}$ $b'' = \frac{L - (s' - s'')}{2}$

basic assumption in this approach is that the equipotential lines at selected critical points in a flow net are *vertical* and that they divide the flow net into *fragments*. Table 7-2 summarizes fragment types and form factors.

Perhaps the best way to illustrate the procedure is by an example. If you are interested in the theory behind the method, consult Harr (1962 and 1977).

## EXAMPLE 7.20

**Given:**

The dam with the same data as in Example 7.19 (shown in Fig. Ex. 7.20a).

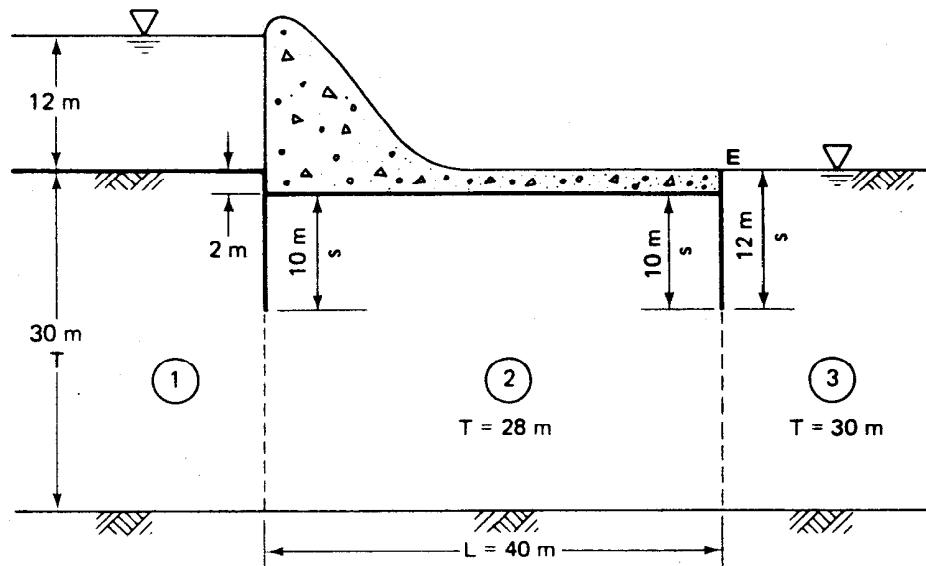


Fig. Ex. 7.20a

**Required:**

By means of the method of fragments, compute:

- The quantity of seepage loss under the dam when  $k = 20 \times 10^{-4} \text{ cm/s}$ , per metre of dam.
- The exit gradient (at point  $E$ ).
- The pressure distribution on the base of the dam.
- Compare these values with those obtained from the flow net in Example 7.19.

**Solution:**

- Divide the flow system into fragments. The critical points chosen are the bottoms of the sheet piles. Refer to Table 7-2 and review the fragments. The heavy lines represent impervious boundaries which can be

in vertical or horizontal directions. You choose the fragments to match the particular boundary conditions of your problem. Notice how the definitions of  $s$  and  $T$  are used. Their values are shown in Fig. Ex. 7.20a. The vertical, dashed (equipotential) lines separate the flow regime into three fragments, as shown circled in the figure. Clearly, the flow  $q$  through each fragment must be the same and is stated by Eq. 7-26. However in the method of fragments this equation is changed slightly to

$$q = kh_L \frac{N_f}{N_d} = \frac{kh_m}{\Phi_m} \quad (7-27)$$

where  $h_m$  is the head loss in the  $m$ th fragment where  $m = 1, 2, 3, \dots, n$ , and  $\Phi_m$  is the dimensionless *form factor* for the  $m$ th fragment. The form factor is equal to  $N_d/N_f$ .

In this example  $h_L = 12 \text{ m} = \sum h_m$ , that is, the sum of the head loss in each fragment. Also, since the flow is equal in each fragment and is equal to the total flow, we have

$$\frac{q}{k} = h_1 \frac{N_f}{N_d} = h_2 \frac{N_f}{N_d} = h_3 \frac{N_f}{N_d} \quad (7-28)$$

or

$$\frac{q}{k} = \frac{h_1}{\Phi_1} = \frac{h_2}{\Phi_2} = \frac{h_3}{\Phi_3} = \frac{h}{\sum \Phi} \quad (7-29)$$

and, finally, the flow is

$$q = \frac{kh}{\sum_{m=1}^n \Phi} \quad (7-30)$$

The next step is to define the types of fragments for our problem and to determine the value of the form factors  $\Phi$  for each fragment. Six general types of fragments are shown in Table 7-2, where the heavy lines represent impervious boundaries. Other fragments are also available in the literature. Also given are the values of  $\Phi$  in terms of the geometry of each problem. If you study Fig. Ex. 7.20a, you can see that fragments 1 and 3 are type II but fragment 2 is a type V fragment. Had the sheet piles been of different lengths, then fragment 2 would be a type VI instead of type V fragment.

Next, we have to determine the form factors for our two types of fragments. For type II fragments, we see from Table 7-2 that  $\Phi = K/K'$ . Both  $K$  and  $K'$  are functions of  $m$ , which is defined as

$$m = \sin \frac{\pi s}{2T} \quad (7-31)$$

where  $s$  = depth of the sheet pile, and

$T$  = thickness of the soil layer.

Substituting the values for  $s$  and  $T$  of our example into Eq. 7-31, we find that

$$m = \sin \frac{\pi s}{2T} = \sin \frac{\pi}{2} \frac{12}{30} = 0.588$$

The value of  $K/K'$  can be found from Table 7-3. For  $m = 0.588$ ,  $m^2 = 0.345$ , so  $K/K'$  is equal to about 0.865 (by interpolation), which equals  $\Phi_1$ . By inspection,  $\Phi_1$  is also equal to  $\Phi_3$ . These values are tabulated in Table Ex. 7.20a.

TABLE EX. 7.20a

Fragment	Type	$\Phi$
1	II	$K/K' = 0.865$
2	V	1.598
3	II	$K/K' = 0.865$

For fragment 2, which is a type V, we need to compare  $L$  and  $2s$  to obtain  $\Phi$ . For our example,  $L = 40$  m and  $2s = 20$  m. Since  $L > 2s$ ,  $\Phi$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned}\Phi_2 &= 2 \ln \left( 1 + \frac{s}{a} \right) + \frac{L - 2s}{T} \\ &= 2 \ln \left( 1 + \frac{10}{18} \right) + \frac{40 - 2 \times 10}{28} \\ &= 0.884 + 0.714 = 1.598\end{aligned}$$

Note that the distance  $a = 18$  m is the distance from the bottom impervious boundary to the bottom end of the sheet pile.

The quantity of flow is found from Eq. 7-30,

$$\begin{aligned}q &= \frac{kh}{\sum_{m=1}^n \Phi} = \frac{20 \times 10^{-4} \frac{\text{cm}}{\text{s}} \left( \frac{\text{m}}{100 \text{ cm}} \right) (12 \text{ m})}{0.865 + 1.598 + 0.865} \text{ per metre} \\ &= 7.21 \times 10^{-5} \text{ m}^2/\text{s per metre of dam} \\ &= 8.65 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m}^3/\text{s for a 120 m long dam}\end{aligned}$$

This compares satisfactorily with the value of  $8.31 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$  obtained in Example 7.19.

An alternative way to determine the form factor is to use Fig. 7.19. Since  $s/T = 10/28 = 0.36$ , find  $1/(2\Phi)$  equal to 0.60 for  $b/T = 0$ . Solving for  $\Phi$ , we obtain 0.83, which is close to our previously determined value of 0.865.

b. Computation of the exit gradient  $i_E$  at point  $E$  is easy. From

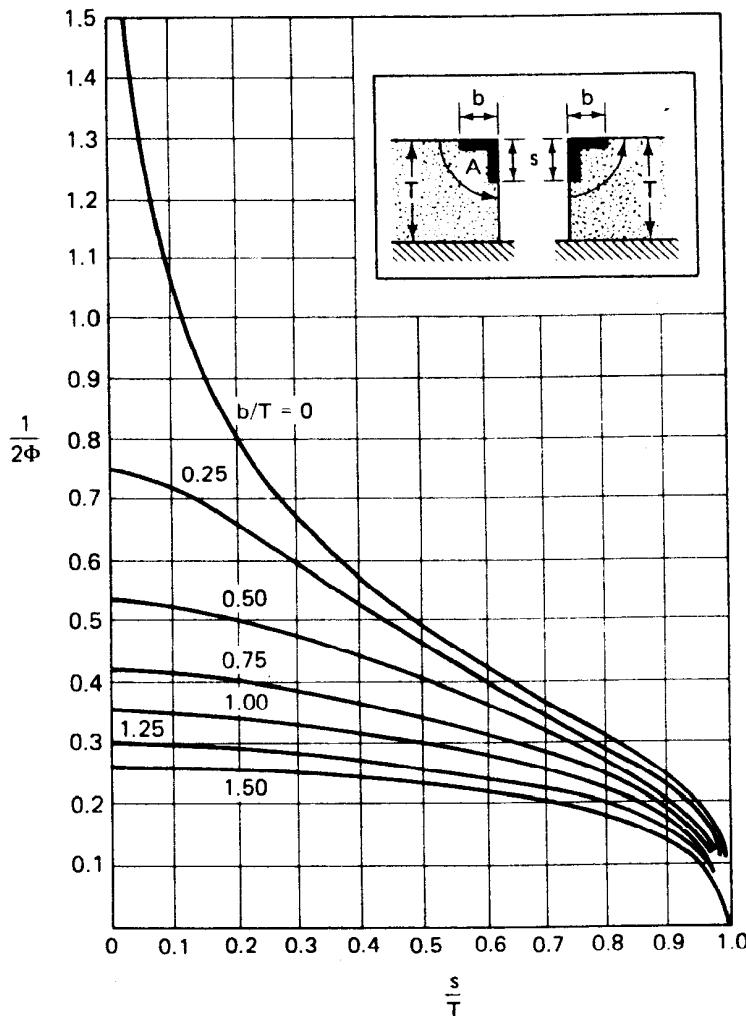


Fig. 7.19 Relationship between form factor  $\Phi$  and  $s/T$  ratio for type II and type III fragments. (After Harr, 1977, © copyright McGraw-Hill Book Company. Used with permission.)

Table 7-2, fragment type II, we find the formula for the exit gradient is

$$i_E = \frac{h\pi}{2KTm} \quad (7-32)$$

where the value of  $m$  is from Eq. 7-31 and equals 0.588; the value of  $h$  is the head loss in the third (exit) fragment. The value of  $K$  is found in Table 7-3 for  $m^2 = 0.345$ ; interpolating,  $K = 1.741$ . The value of  $h$  to use in Eq. 7-32 is the head loss in the *third fragment*, where the water exits, and it is

**TABLE 7-3** Values of Parameters Used for Types II and III Fragments Described in Table 7-2\*

$m^2$	$K$	$K'$	$\frac{K}{K'}$	$\frac{K'}{K}$	$m'^2$	$m^2$	$K$	$K'$	$\frac{K}{K'}$	$\frac{K'}{K}$	$m'^2$
0.000	1.571	$\infty$	0.000	$\infty$	1.000	0.21	1.665	2.235	0.745	1.34	0.79
0.001	1.571	4.841	0.325	3.08	0.999	0.22	1.670	2.214	0.754	1.33	0.78
0.002	1.572	4.495	0.349	2.86	0.998	0.23	1.675	2.194	0.763	1.31	0.77
0.003	1.572	4.293	0.366	2.73	0.997	0.24	1.680	2.175	0.773	1.29	0.76
0.004	1.572	4.150	0.379	2.64	0.996	0.25	1.686	2.157	0.782	1.28	0.75
0.005	1.573	4.039	0.389	2.57	0.995	0.26	1.691	2.139	0.791	1.26	0.74
0.006	1.573	3.949	0.398	2.51	0.994	0.27	1.697	2.122	0.800	1.25	0.73
0.007	1.574	3.872	0.406	2.46	0.993	0.28	1.702	2.106	0.808	1.24	0.72
0.008	1.574	3.806	0.413	2.42	0.992	0.29	1.708	2.090	0.817	1.22	0.71
0.009	1.574	3.748	0.420	2.38	0.991	0.30	1.714	2.075	0.826	1.21	0.70
0.01	1.575	3.696	0.426	2.35	0.99	0.31	1.720	2.061	0.834	1.20	0.69
0.02	1.579	3.354	0.471	2.12	0.98	0.32	1.726	2.047	0.843	1.19	0.68
0.03	1.583	3.156	0.502	1.99	0.97	0.33	1.732	2.033	0.852	1.17	0.67
0.04	1.587	3.016	0.526	1.90	0.96	0.34	1.738	2.020	0.860	1.16	0.66
0.05	1.591	2.908	0.547	1.83	0.95	0.35	1.744	2.003	0.869	1.15	0.65
0.06	1.595	2.821	0.565	1.77	0.94	0.36	1.751	1.995	0.877	1.14	0.64
0.07	1.599	2.747	0.582	1.72	0.93	0.37	1.757	1.983	0.886	1.13	0.63
0.08	1.604	2.684	0.598	1.67	0.92	0.38	1.764	1.972	0.895	1.12	0.62
0.09	1.608	2.628	0.612	1.63	0.91	0.39	1.771	1.961	0.903	1.11	0.61
0.10	1.612	2.578	0.625	1.60	0.90	0.40	1.778	1.950	0.911	1.10	0.60
0.11	1.617	2.533	0.638	1.57	0.89	0.41	1.785	1.939	0.920	1.09	0.59
0.12	1.621	2.493	0.650	1.54	0.88	0.42	1.792	1.929	0.929	1.08	0.58
0.13	1.626	2.455	0.662	1.51	0.87	0.43	1.799	1.918	0.938	1.07	0.57
0.14	1.631	2.421	0.674	1.48	0.86	0.44	1.806	1.909	0.946	1.06	0.56
0.15	1.635	2.389	0.684	1.46	0.85	0.45	1.814	1.899	0.955	1.05	0.55
0.16	1.640	2.359	0.695	1.44	0.84	0.46	1.822	1.890	0.964	1.04	0.54
0.17	1.645	2.331	0.706	1.42	0.83	0.47	1.829	1.880	0.973	1.03	0.53
0.18	1.650	2.305	0.716	1.40	0.82	0.48	1.837	1.871	0.982	1.02	0.52
0.19	1.655	2.281	0.726	1.38	0.81	0.49	1.846	1.863	0.991	1.01	0.51
0.20	1.660	2.257	0.735	1.36	0.80	0.50	1.854	1.854	1.000	1.00	0.50
$m'^2$	$K'$	$K$	$\frac{K}{K'}$	$\frac{K'}{K}$	$m^2$	$m'^2$	$K'$	$K$	$\frac{K}{K'}$	$\frac{K'}{K}$	$m^2$

from Eq. 7-29

$$h_3 = \frac{\Phi_3 h}{\sum_{m=1}^n \Phi_m} = \frac{0.865 \times 12 \text{ m}}{3.328} = 3.12 \text{ m} \quad (7-33)$$

Substituting these values and  $m_3 = 0.588$  into Eq. 7-32, we obtain

$$i_E = \frac{3.12 \text{ m } (\pi)}{2 \times 1.741 \times 30 \text{ m} \times 0.588} = 0.16$$

This result compares well with the value of 0.14 found in Example 7.19.

An alternative procedure to find the exit gradient at point E is to use Fig. 7.20. For this example,  $s/T = 12/30 = 0.40$ ; enter the graph and find  $(i_E s)/h_m = 0.6$ . Solving for  $i_E$ , we find that

$$i_E = \frac{0.6 h_m}{s} = \frac{0.6 \times 3.12 \text{ m}}{12 \text{ m}} = 0.16$$

c. To compute the pressure distribution under the dam, the assumption is made that the head loss varies *linearly* from fragment 1 to fragment 3.

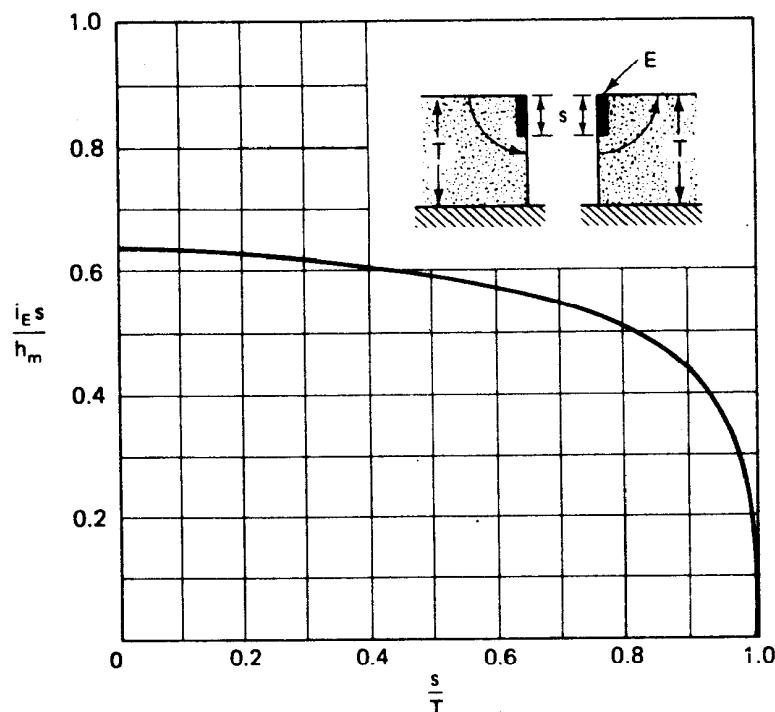


Fig. 7.20 Graph to evaluate the exit gradient  $i_E$  at point E for a type II fragment for a given  $s/T$  ratio. (After Harr, 1977. © copyright McGraw-Hill Book Company. Used with permission.)

Compute the head loss per fragment:

$$\begin{aligned}\sum \Phi &= \Phi_1 + \Phi_2 + \Phi_3 \\ &= 0.865 + 1.598 + 0.865 = 3.328\end{aligned}$$

The head loss per fragment is given by Eq. 7-33,

$$h_1 = \frac{\Phi_1 h}{\sum \Phi} = \frac{0.865 \times 12 \text{ m}}{3.328} = 3.12 \text{ m}$$

$$h_2 = \frac{\Phi_2 h}{\sum \Phi} = \frac{1.598 \times 12 \text{ m}}{3.328} = 5.76 \text{ m}$$

$$h_3 = h_1 \text{ due to symmetry}$$

Redraw the dam to scale and place the values of head at selected points (Fig. Ex. 7.20b). At equipotential line  $A'$ , the head loss is  $h_1 = 3.12 \text{ m}$ ; the head loss is therefore  $h - h_1 = 12 \text{ m} - 3.12 \text{ m} = 8.88 \text{ m}$ . Similarly, at equipotential line  $F'$ ,  $h_2 = 5.76 \text{ m}$ . Therefore the head at  $F'$  is

$$h - h_1 - h_2 = 12 - 3.12 - 5.76 = 3.12 \text{ m}$$

Assuming that the head loss varies linearly from points  $A'-A-F-F'$ , which is equal to the total distance of  $10 \text{ m} + 40 \text{ m} + 10 \text{ m} = 60 \text{ m}$ , then the head loss per metre is  $h_2/60 \text{ m}$ , or  $5.76 \text{ m}/60 \text{ m} = 0.096 \text{ m/m}$ . Thus the head at point  $A$  = the head at  $A' - 10 \text{ m} \times 0.096 \text{ m per metre}$ , or  $8.88 - 10 \times 0.096 = 7.92 \text{ m}$ . Likewise, the head at  $F$  is  $4.08 \text{ m}$ .

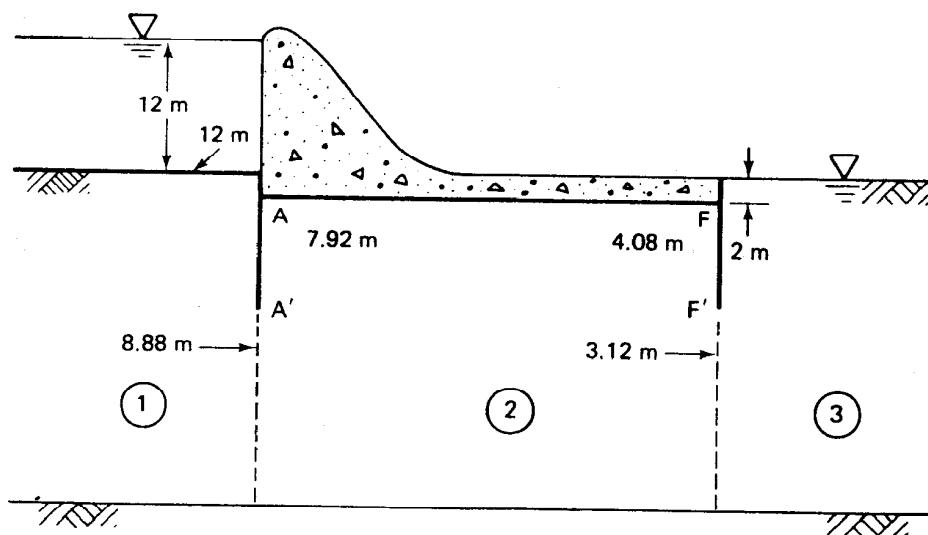


Fig. Ex. 7.20b

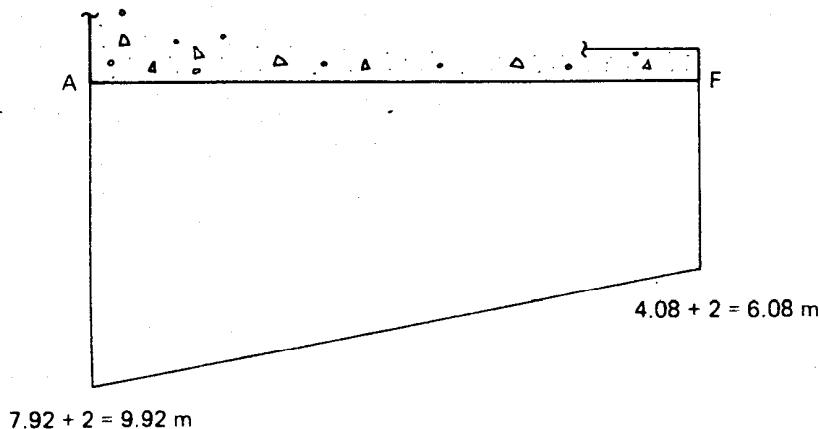


Fig. Ex. 7.20c

To this head we add the tailwater head of 2 m. The vertical uplift pressures may now be computed, as shown in Fig. Ex. 7.20c. These values compare almost exactly with those shown in Fig. Ex. 7.19.

d. Comparison of values of flow, exit gradient, and uplift pressures as determined by the two different procedures are summarized in Table Ex. 7.20b.

TABLE EX. 7.20b

Parameter	From Flow Net	From Method of Fragments
$q$	$8.31 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$	$8.65 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$
$i_E$	0.14	0.16
Uplift pressures at A*	9.96 m	9.92 m
Uplift pressures at F*	6.04 m	6.08 m

\*In metres of water.

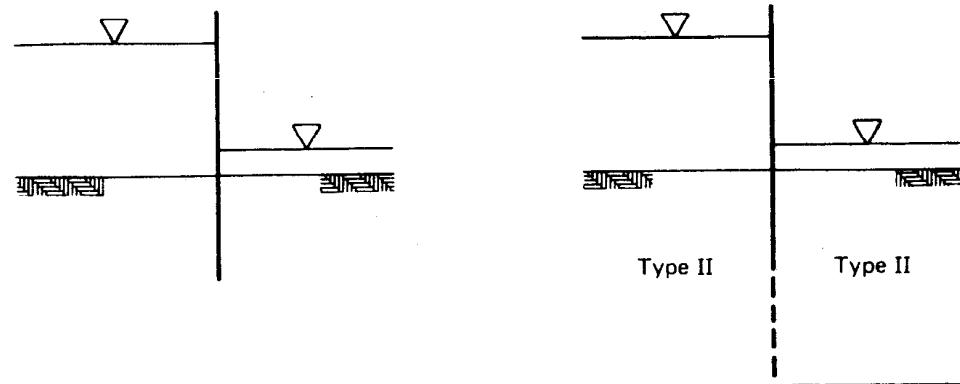
### EXAMPLE 7.21

**Given:**

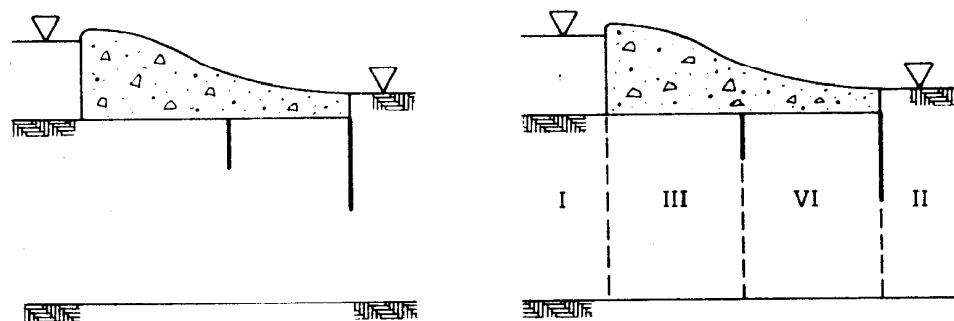
Several cases of confined flow.

**Required:**

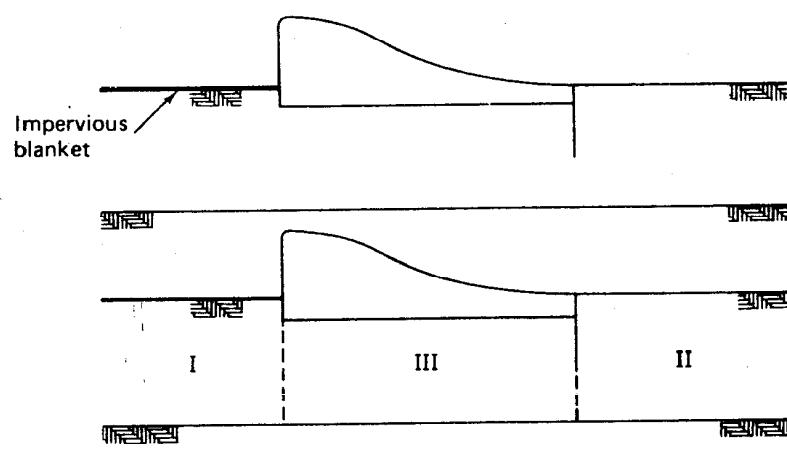
Without computing the quantities as we did in Example 7.20, just identify the fragment types shown in Fig. Ex. 7.21.



(a)



(b)



(c)

**Fig. Ex. 7.21**

**Solution:**

**Fig. Ex. 7.21.**

It should be obvious now that the method of fragments is a powerful analytical and design technique. Solutions to many complex problems can be found quickly, whereas to solve a series of complex problems by means of flow nets would require a large amount of time. Take, for example, the problem illustrated by Example 7.21c. A practical design question is: How long should the drainage blanket be constructed to reduce the quantity of flow by one-third or to reduce the uplift pressures by one-half? Many trial and error flow net solutions would be required to solve the problem, whereas with the method of fragments the solution could be obtained directly!

### 7.11 CONTROL OF SEEPAGE AND FILTERS

In the discussion of seepage forces and flow nets, piping and erosion were mentioned as a possibility if, somewhere in the porous medium, the gradient exceeded the critical gradient. Piping can occur any place in the system, but usually it occurs where the flow is concentrated, as shown in Fig. 7.18. Once the seepage forces are large enough to move particles, piping and erosion can start, and it usually continues until either all the soils in the vicinity are carried away or the structure collapses. Cohesionless soils, especially silty soils, are highly susceptible to piping, and if you must use such soils in an embankment dam, for example, then you must be very careful to see that the seepage is controlled and that the chance for piping to occur is very small.

How is seepage controlled? Methods used depend on the situation, but sometimes a cutoff wall or trench is constructed to completely block the seeping water. Sometimes the drainage path is lengthened by an impervious blanket, so that more of the head is lost and thus the gradient in the critical region is reduced. If properly designed and constructed, relief wells and other kinds of drains can be used to positively relieve high uplift pressures at the base of hydraulic structures (Cedergren, 1977).

Another way to prevent erosion and piping and to reduce potentially damaging uplift pressures is to use a *protective filter*. A filter consists of one or more layers of free-draining granular materials placed in less pervious foundation or base materials to prevent the movement of soil particles that are susceptible to piping while at the same time allowing the seepage water

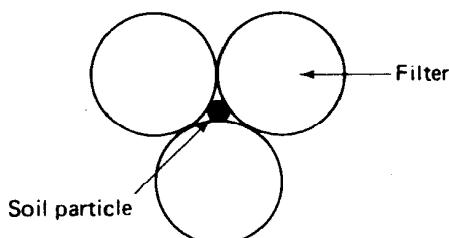


Fig. 7.21

to escape with relatively little head loss. Thus the seepage forces within the filter itself are reduced. Figure 7.21 illustrates the principle of the first requirement, that of preventing the movement of particles from the foundation soil into the filter. If the particles are perfect spheres, it can be shown that, for loose packing, the grain size of the filter material should be about 6.5 times larger than the foundation material. However, laboratory tests have shown that the grain size of a uniform filter material can be as large as 10 times the grain size of a uniform foundation soil and still prevent particle movement. It is clear that particle shape and the porosity of the filter material also affect this limiting size.

Hazen (1911) was working with water treatment filters around the turn of the century, and he found that the *effective size* of a filter was the  $D_{10}$  (for example, Eq. 7-10); that is, this size affected the performance of a filter sand as much as the remaining 90% of the sizes.

In 1922, Terzaghi delineated some requirements for protective filters based on the grain size distributions of both the filter and the material to be protected. These requirements have since been modified slightly after laboratory tests by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers and the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation. The four main requirements (U.S.B.R., 1974) for a protective filter are:

1. The filter material should be more pervious than the base material in order that no hydraulic pressure will build up to disrupt the filter and adjacent structures.
2. The voids of the inplace filter material must be small enough to prevent base material particles from penetrating the filter and causing clogging and failure of the protective filter system.
3. The layer of the protective filter must be sufficiently thick to provide a good distribution of all particle sizes throughout the filter and also to provide adequate insulation for the base material where frost action is involved.
4. Filter material particles must be prevented from movement into the drainage pipes by providing sufficiently small slot openings or perforations, or additional coarser filter zones if necessary.

The last requirement could be fulfilled by some of the modern nonwoven and woven fabric filter materials that have been developed in recent years.

Gradation requirements for protective filters are given in Table 7-4. The first ratio,  $R_{15}$ , ensures that the small particles of the material to be protected are prevented from passing through the pores of the filter; the second ratio,  $R_{50}$ , ensures that seepage forces within the filter are reasonably small. If the criteria in this table cannot be met by one layer of filter material, then a zoned or multilayered filter can be designed and specified.

Some additional practical requirements for the design of filters are also shown in Table 7-4.

A special comment concerning the use of modern woven and nonwoven fabric materials for filters: these materials have recently been introduced into civil engineering practice and with considerable success. However, because of the rather limited research and experience with them, fabric filters are mostly built by trial and error. As natural deposits of sand and gravel become depleted, fabric filters will become increasingly important in drainage and seepage control. An additional advantage is that they are easy to use in the field, and thus construction costs are often less than with conventional granular filters. For additional information about filter fabrics, see Barrett (1966), Cedergren (1977), Dallaire (1976), Seemel (1976), and Steward, et al. (1977).

**TABLE 7-4 Gradation Requirements for Filter Materials\***

Filter Material Characteristics	$R_{15}$	$R_{50}$
Uniform grain size filters, $C_u = 3$ to 4	—	5 to 10
Graded filters, subrounded particles	12 to 40	12 to 58
Graded filters, angular particles	6 to 18	9 to 30

$$R_{15} = \frac{D_{15} \text{ of filter material}}{D_{15} \text{ of material to be protected}}$$

$$R_{50} = \frac{D_{50} \text{ of filter material}}{D_{50} \text{ of material to be protected}}$$

Notes: Maximum size of the filter material should be less than 76 mm (3 in.). Use the minus No. 4 fraction of the base material for setting filter limits when the gravel content (plus No. 4) is more than 10%, and the fines (minus No. 200) are more than 10%. Filters must not have more than 5% minus No. 200 particles to prevent excessive movement of fines in the filter and into drainage pipes. The grain size distribution curves of the filter and the base material should approximately parallel in the range of finer sizes.

\*After U.S.B.R. (1974).

## PROBLEMS

- 7-1. A clean sand having a permeability of  $5 \times 10^{-2}$  cm/s and a void ratio of 0.5 is placed in a horizontal permeability apparatus, as shown in Fig. 7.2. Compute the discharge velocity and the seepage velocity as the head  $\Delta h$  goes from 0 to 100 cm. The cross-sectional area of the horizontal pipe is 100 cm<sup>2</sup>, and the soil sample is 0.5 m long.
- 7-2. A sample of medium quartz sand is tested in a constant head permeameter. The sample diameter is 50 mm and its length is 120 mm. Under an applied head of 50 cm, 113 cm<sup>3</sup> flows through the sample in 5 min. The  $M_s$  of the sample is 385 g. Calculate (a) the Darcy coefficient of permeability, (b) the discharge velocity, and (c) the seepage velocity. (After A. Casagrande.)
- 7-3. A permeability test was run on a compacted sample of dirty sandy gravel. The sample was 150 mm long and the diameter of the mold 150 mm. In 83 s the discharge under a constant head of 40 cm was 392 cm<sup>3</sup>. The sample had a dry mass of 5300 g and its  $\rho_s$  was 2680 kg/m<sup>3</sup>. Calculate (a) the coefficient of permeability, (b) the seepage velocity, and (c) the discharge velocity during the test.
- 7-4. During a falling-head permeability test, the head fell from 50 to 30 cm in 4.5 min. The specimen was 5 cm in diameter and had a length of 90 mm. The area of the standpipe was 0.5 cm<sup>2</sup>. Compute the coefficient of permeability of the soil in cm/s, m/s, and ft/d. What was the probable classification of the soil tested? (After A. Casagrande.)
- 7-5. A falling-head permeability test is to be performed on a soil whose permeability is estimated to be  $3 \times 10^{-7}$  m/s. What diameter standpipe should you use if you want the head to drop from 27.5 cm to 20.0 cm in about 5 min? The sample's cross section is 15 cm<sup>2</sup> and its length is 8.5 cm. (After Taylor, 1948.)
- 7-6. Show that the units of Eq. 7-4a are in fact energy/mass. Show that Eq. 7-4b has units of energy/weight, and that this comes out as a length (head).
- 7-7. You have just been placed in charge of a small soils laboratory and there is a tight budget for permeability equipment. Make a decision as to what *type* of equipment you would order so as to perform laboratory tests on the widest range of soils.

- 7-8. Briefly describe exactly how you make a correction for temperature in a permeability test if the water is not exactly 20°C. State your reference.
- 7-9. In Example 7.1, the void ratio is specified as 0.43. If the void ratio of the same soil were 0.38, evaluate its coefficient of permeability. First estimate in which direction  $k$  will go, higher or lower; then proceed.
- 7-10. Estimate the coefficient of permeability for soil 2 of Fig. Ex. 3.1. Will the same approach work for soil 1 of the same figure?
- 7-11. A falling-head permeability test on a specimen of fine sand 16 cm<sup>2</sup> in area and 9 cm long gave a  $k$  of  $7 \times 10^{-4}$  cm/s. The dry mass of the sand specimen was 210 g and its  $\rho_s$  was 2.68 Mg/m<sup>3</sup>. The test temperature was 26°C. Compute the coefficient of permeability of the sand for a void ratio of 0.70 and the standard temperature of 20°C. (After A. Casagrande.)
- 7-12. The coefficient of permeability of a clean sand was  $400 \times 10^{-4}$  cm/s at a void ratio of 0.42. Estimate the permeability of this soil when the void ratio is 0.58.
- 7-13. Permeability tests on a soil supplied the following data:

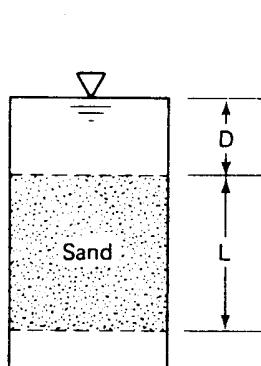
Run No.	$e$	Temp. (°C)	$k$ (cm/s)
1	0.70	25	$0.32 \times 10^{-4}$
2	1.10	40	$1.80 \times 10^{-4}$

Estimate the coefficient of permeability at 20°C and a void ratio of 0.85. (After Taylor, 1948.)

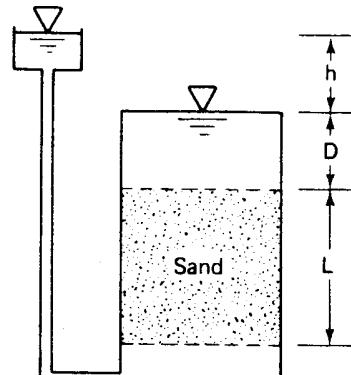
- 7-14. For the soil profile of Example 7-5 plot the total, neutral, and effective stresses with depth if the ground water table is *lowered* 4 m below the ground surface.
- 7-15. Soil borings made at a site near Chicago indicate that the top 6 m is a loose sand and miscellaneous fill, with the ground water table at 3 m below the ground surface. Below this is a fairly soft blue-gray silty clay with an average water content of 30%. The boring was terminated at 16 m below the ground surface when a fairly stiff silty clay was encountered. Make reasonable assumptions as to soil properties and calculate the total, neutral, and effective stresses at 3, 6, 11, and 16 m below the ground surface.
- 7-16. Plot the soil profile of Problem 7-15 and the total, neutral, and effective stresses with depth.
- 7-17. A soil profile consists of 5 m of compacted sandy clay followed by 5 m of medium dense sand. Below the sand is a layer of compressible

silty clay 20 m thick. The initial ground water table is located at the bottom of the first layer (at 5 m below the ground surface). The densities are  $2.05 \text{ Mg/m}^3 (\rho)$ ,  $1.94 \text{ Mg/m}^3 (\rho_{\text{sat}})$ , and  $1.22 \text{ Mg/m}^3 (\rho')$  for the three layers, respectively. Compute the effective stress at a point at middepth in the compressible clay layer. Then, assuming that the medium dense sand remains *saturated*, compute the effective stress in the clay layer at midpoint again, when the ground water table drops 5 m to the top of the silty clay layer. Comment on the difference in effective stress.

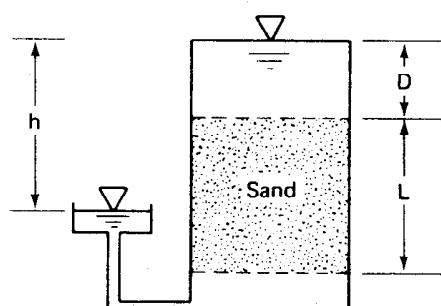
- 7-18. For the initial case in Problem 7-17, compute the head of water required at the top of the silty clay layer to cause a quick condition.
- 7-19. Sand is supported on a porous disc and screen in vertical cylinder, as shown in Fig. P7-19. These are equilibrium conditions.



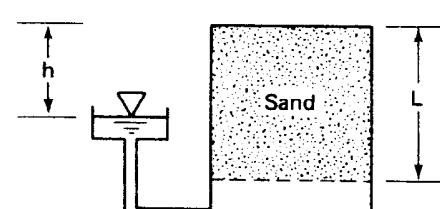
Case I



Case II

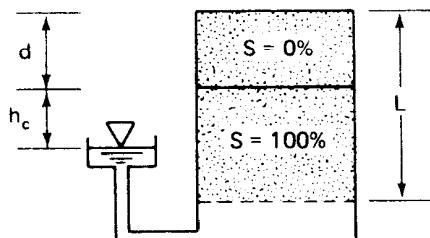


Case III



Case IV. Assume that the sand is fine enough to remain 100% saturated up to its top surface by capillarity.

Fig. P7-19



Case V. Assume an idealized case in which the height of capillary rise is  $h_c$ . All soil below that height is 100% saturated, and all soil above that height is 0% saturated.

Fig. P7-19 Continued

- (a) For each of the five cases, plot the total, neutral, and effective stresses versus height. These plots should be approximately to scale.
  - (b) Derive formulas for those three stresses in terms of the dimensions shown and  $e$ ,  $\rho_s$ , and  $\rho_w$  for each case at both the top and bottom of the sand layer. For case IV, assume the sand is 100% saturated to the upper surface by capillarity. For case V, assume the sand above level  $h_c$  is completely dry and below  $h_c$  is completely saturated. (After A. Casagrande.)
- 7-20. Specify the conditions under which it is possible for  $K_o$  to equal  $K$ .
- 7-21. For the soil profile of Problem 7-15, calculate both the horizontal, total, and effective stresses at 3, 6, 11 and 16 m depths, assuming (a)  $K_o$  is 0.5 and (b)  $K_o$  is 1.5.
- 7-22. The value of  $K_o$  for the compressible silty clay layer of Problem 7-17 is 0.75. What are the total and effective horizontal stresses at middepth of the layer?
- 7-23. Given, the soil cylinder and test setup of Example 7.11, with actual dimensions as follows:  $AB = 5$  cm,  $BC = 10$  cm,  $CD = 10$  cm, and  $DE = 5$  cm. Calculate the pressure, elevation, and total heads at points  $A$  through  $E$  in centimetres of water, and plot these values versus elevation.
- 7-24. For each of the cases I, II, and III of Fig. P7-24, determine the pressure, elevation, and total head at the entering end, exit end, and point  $A$  of the sample. (After Taylor, 1948.)

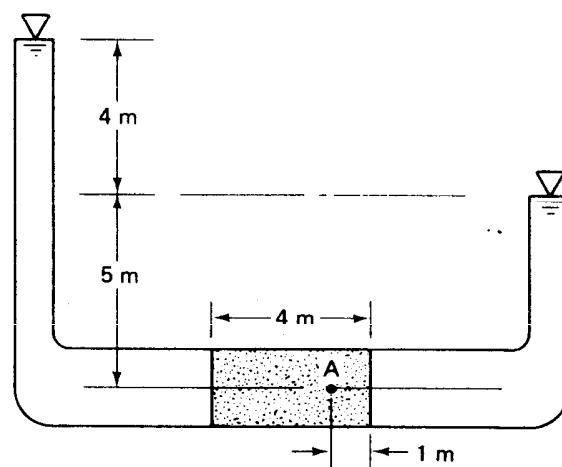
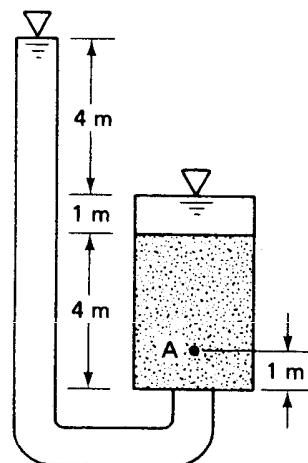
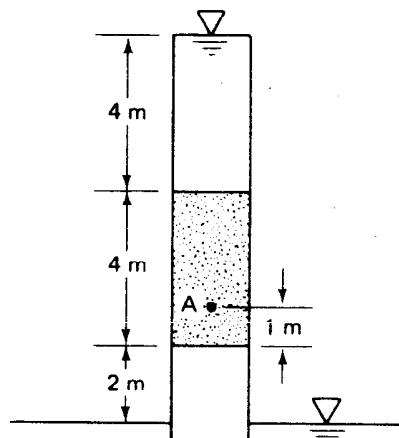


Fig. P7-24

7-25. For each of the cases shown in Fig. P7-24, determine the discharge velocity, the seepage velocity, and the seepage force per unit volume for (a) a permeability of  $0.1 \text{ cm/s}$  and a porosity of 50% and (b) a permeability of  $0.001 \text{ cm/s}$  and a void ratio of 0.67. (After Taylor, 1948.)

7-26. An inclined permeameter tube is filled with three layers of soil of

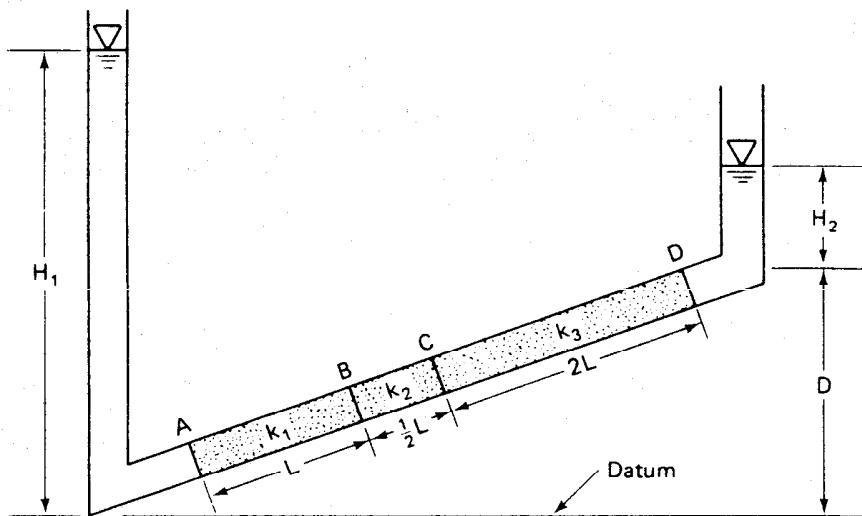


Fig. P7-26

different permeabilities as in Fig. P7-26. Express the head at points  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ , and  $D$  (with respect to the datum indicated) in terms of the different dimensions and permeabilities. (a) Work the problem first assuming  $k_1 = k_2 = k_3$ . (b) Then work it assuming  $3k_1 = k_2 = 2k_3$ . Plot the various heads versus horizontal distance for both parts (a) and (b). (After A. Casagrande.)

- 7-27. Assume the soil of Fig. 7.10. has a saturated density of  $1.94 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ . If the head of water  $h$  above elevation  $B$  is 2.34 m, compute the effective stress at elevation  $A$  at the bottom of the soil sample during flow. What is the effective stress under these conditions at midheight in the soil column during steady-state flow?
- 7-28. (a) Show that Eq. 7-20 is identical to Eq. 7-21. (b) Show that Eq. (g) in Sec. 7.8 also reduces to Eq. 7-21. (c) Show that Eq. 7-23c is identical to Eq. 7-23d at a critical condition.
- 7-29. The foundation soil at the toe of a masonry dam has a porosity of 41% and a  $\rho_s$  of  $2.68 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ . To assure safety against piping, the specifications state that the upward gradient must not exceed 25% of the gradient at which a quick condition occurs. What is the maximum permissible upward gradient? (After Taylor, 1948.)
- 7-30. Show that it is impossible to drown in quicksand. Hint: Calculate the density of the quicksand.
- 7-31. A contractor plans to dig an excavation as shown in Fig. P7-31. If the river is at level  $A$ , what is the factor of safety against quick

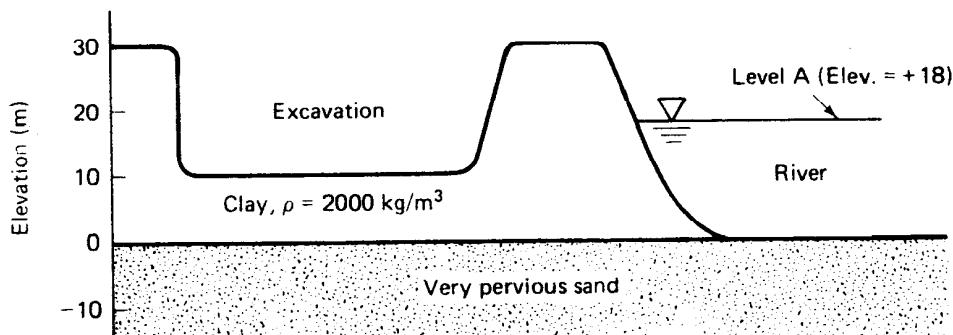


Fig. P7-31

conditions? Neglect any vertical shear. To what elevation can the water rise before a quick condition will develop? (After D. N. Humphrey.)

- 7-32. Given, the excavation as shown in Example 7.17, with  $h = 20 \text{ m}$  and  $\rho = 1850 \text{ kg/m}^3$ . Calculate the minimum allowable  $H_s$ .
- 7-33. A sheet pile wall has been installed partially through a silty sand layer, similar to the one shown in Fig. 7.13b. Assume a 14 m long sheet pile penetrates 7 m (half way) into the silty sand layer of thickness 14 m. For this condition:
  - (a) Draw a flow net using three (or four at most) flow channels. Note that the flow net is completely symmetrical about the bottom of the sheet pile. (This part is needed for the solution of Problem 7-35.)
  - (b) If the water height on the upstream side is 5 m and 1 m on the downstream side, compute the amount of water flowing under the sheet pile per metre of wall if the coefficient of permeability is  $2 \times 10^{-4} \text{ cm/s}$ .
  - (c) Compute the maximum hydraulic gradient at the downstream side of the sheet pile.
- 7-34. Using the data of Fig. 7.17, compute the total head, piezometric head, pressure head, and elevation head for points C and C'. Assume any convenient datum.
- 7-35. Assuming that you have completed the flow net of Problem 7-33, compute the total head, piezometric head, pressure head, and elevation head for a point half way up the sheet pile from its base, on either side of the sheet pile. Assume the datum is at the bottom of the silty sand layer. Plot gradient versus depth of piling and extrapolate to find the exit gradient.

- 7-36. Draw a flow net for the case shown in Fig. P7-36. Assume three or four flow channels. Use any convenient scale, like 1 cm = 5 m.

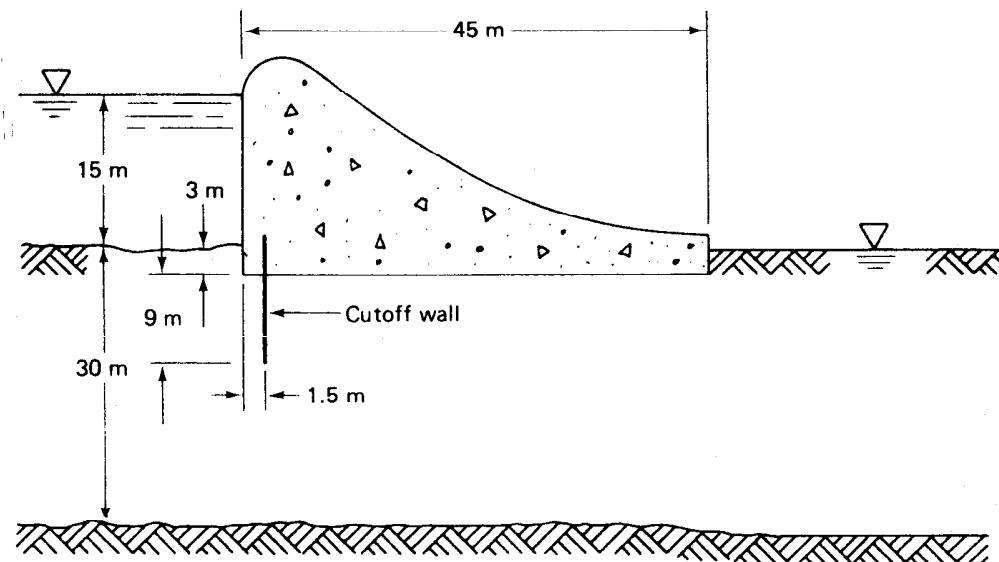


Fig. P7-36 (Adapted from Taylor, 1948.)

- 7-37. Draw a flow net for the case shown in Fig. P7-37. Use any convenient scale.

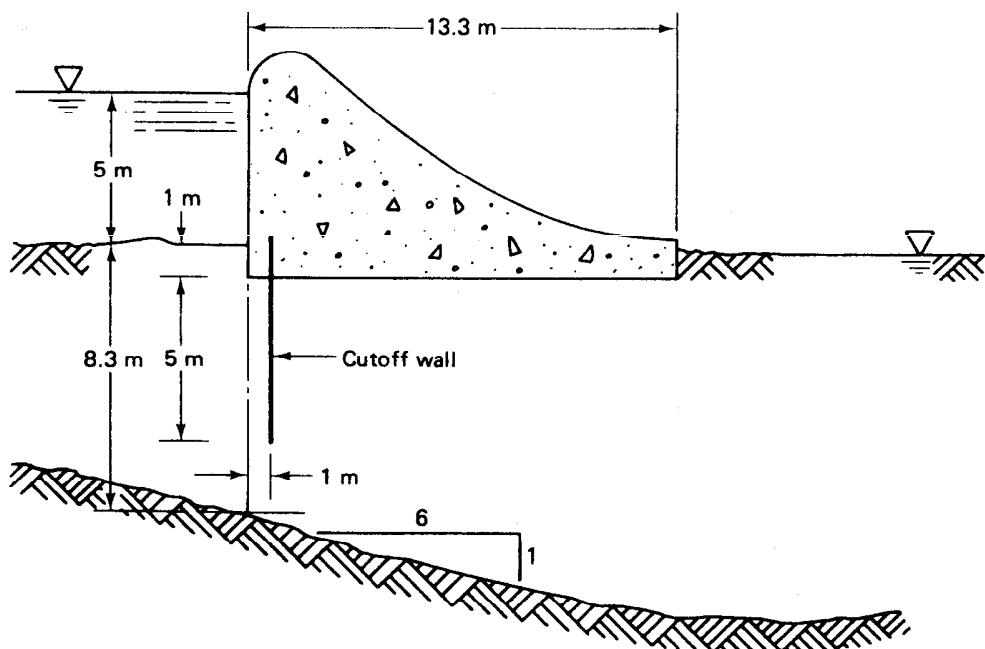


Fig. P7-37 (Adapted from Taylor, 1948.)

- 7-38. For the completed flow net of Fig. P7-38, compute the flow under the dam per metre of dam if the coefficient of permeability is  $3.5 \times 10^{-4} \text{ cm/s}$ .

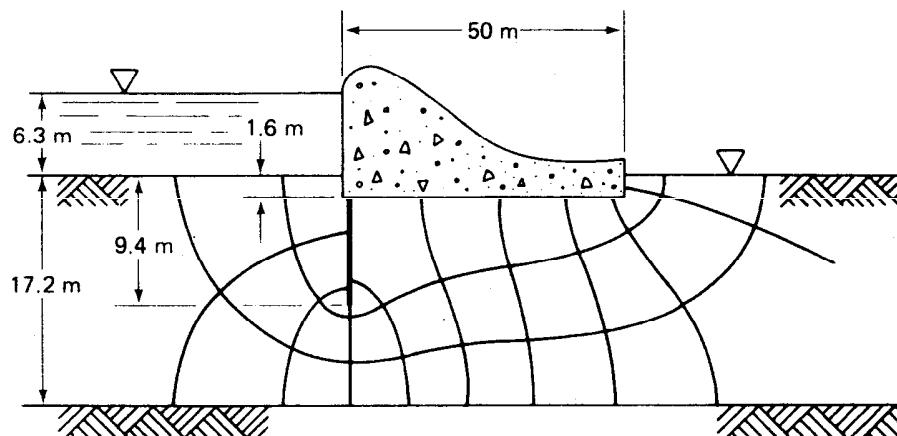


Fig. P7-38

- 7-39. For the completed flow net of Fig. P7-38, compute the uplift pressure all along the base of the dam.
- 7-40. Given, the data of Problem 7-33. Using the method of fragments determine:
- The amount of water flowing under the sheet pile per metre of wall.
  - The exit gradient.
- 7-41. For the dam of Fig. 7.14 set up the problem and solve as far as you can by the method of fragments.
- 7-42. Using the method of fragments, show that one case of Fig. 7.18 is more critical than the other.
- 7-43. If one of the rows of sheet piles had to be removed for the problem given in Fig. Ex. 7.20a, which one when removed would cause the least reduction in flow?
- 7-44. Same as Problem 7-43, but do for the least amount of uplift pressure. Give your answer in terms of head.
- 7-45. Assume a row of sheet piles as shown in Fig. Ex. 7.21a. The total thickness of the soil layer is 20 m, while the difference between the head and tailwater is 10 m. Plot a graph showing how the flow under the sheet pile varies when the depth of the sheet pile goes for 8 m

and approaches 20 m. Ignore problems associated with the exit gradient.

- 7-46. Suppose there is a problem with the exit gradients, as in Problem 7-45. One solution would be to place a horizontal filter over the soil where the water exits. How does this help? Is it better for the filter to have a similar coefficient of permeability? One that is much smaller? Or one that is much larger? Explain which one is most desirable.
- 7-47. Soil 4 of Fig. Ex. 3.1 is used as the core material of a compacted earth dam. Design a filter to protect this soil. Present your results on a grain size distribution curve (or semilog plot) as in Fig. Ex. 3.1.
- 7-48. A protective three-layer filter is proposed between the foundation and rock drain located near the toe of a compacted earth-fill dam. Samples were taken and the grain sizes of the materials were determined to be as follows:

	$D_{15}$ (mm)	$D_{85}$ (mm)
Foundation, finest samples	0.024	0.1
Foundation, coarsest samples	0.12	0.9
Filter layer No. 1	0.3	1.0
Filter layer No. 2	2.0	3.5
Filter layer No. 3	5.0	10.0
Rock drain	15.0	40.0

Analyze this filter with the U.S.B.R. (1974) criteria. Does it meet the criteria? If not, comment briefly on any practical consequences. (After Taylor, 1948.)

## **eight**

# **Consolidation and Consolidation Settlements**

---

### **8.1 INTRODUCTION**

You are undoubtedly aware that when materials are loaded or stressed they deform or strain. Sometimes, such as with elastic materials, the response under load is instantaneous. Other materials (some soils are very good examples) require a relatively long time for deformations to occur; this is especially true for clay soils. Most of this chapter is devoted to the compressibility of these kinds of soils.

The simplest type of stress-strain-time relationship applies to *elastic* materials—where, as mentioned, the stresses and strains occur simultaneously. In fact, elastic stress-strain relationships can either be *linear* or *nonlinear*. Materials which have time as a factor in their stress-strain response are called *visco-elastic*. Soils, then, are visco-elastic materials from the viewpoint of their mechanical behavior. The problem with using the theory of visco-elasticity is that, in its present state of development, the theory is only applicable to materials that are linear and, as we shall soon see, soils are highly nonlinear materials. In other words, the interrelationship between stress, strain, and time for soils is not simple and cannot be treated mathematically with present theory. Soils have another property that complicates matters: they have a “memory.” Thus the material is *nonconservative*. When soils are stressed, they deform, and even when the stress is released some permanent deformation remains. Deformations in general can be either a change of shape (*distortion*), or a change of volume (*compression*), or both.

The following notation is introduced in this chapter.

Symbol	Dimension	Unit	Definition
$a_v$	$M^{-1}LT^2$	$(kPa)^{-1}$	Coefficient of compressibility (Eq. 8-5)
$B$	$L$	m	Width of footing (Eq. 8-22)
$C_c$	—	—	Compression index (Eq. 8-7)

Symbol	Dimension	Unit	Definition
$C_{ce}$	—	—	Modified compression index (Eq. 8-8)
$C_r$	—	—	Recompression index (Eq. 8-15); $C_E$ and $C_r$ are sometimes used
$C_{rc}$	—	—	Modified recompression index
$D, E_{oed}$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Constrained or oedometric modulus (Eq. 8-6)
$e_o$	—	(decimal)	Initial or in situ void ratio
$\Delta e$	—	(decimal)	Change in void ratio
$H_o$	$L$	m	Original thickness of a soil layer (Eq. 8-3)
$\Delta H$	$L$	m	Change in thickness of a soil layer (Eq. 8-3)
$I$	—	—	Influence factor (Eq. 8-30)
$L$	$L$	m	Length of foundation (Eq. 8-23)
LIR	—	—	Load increment ratio (Eq. 8-20)
$m, n$	—	—	Ratios of foundation width to depth (Eqs. 8-28 and 8-29)
$m_v$	$M^{-1}LT^2$	$(kPa)^{-1}$	Coefficient of volume change (Eq. 8-6)
$N_B$	—	—	Influence factor (Eq. 8-25)
$N_w$	—	—	Influence factor (Eq. 8-34)
OCR	—	—	Overconsolidation ratio (Eq. 8-2)
$P$	$MT^{-2}$	$kN/m$	Line load (Eq. 8-26)
$Q$	$MLT^{-2}$	kN	Force or load (Eq. 8-24)
$q_o$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Surface or contact stress (Eq. 8-27)
$r$	$L$	m	Horizontal distance from load to a point (Eq. 8-24)
$s$	$L$	m	Settlement (Eq. 8-4)
$s_c$	$L$	m	Consolidation settlement (Eq. 8-1)
$s_i$	$L$	m	Immediate or distortion settlement (Eq. 8-1)
$s_s$	$L$	m	Secondary compression (Eq. 8-1)
$s_t$	$L$	m	Total settlement (Eq. 8-1)
$u$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Pore water pressure
$u_o$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Initial or hydrostatic pore water pressure
$z$	$L$	m	Depth
$\epsilon_h$	—	(%)	Horizontal strain (Eq. 8-33)
$\epsilon_v$	—	(%)	Vertical strain (Eq. 8-3)
$\nu$	—	—	Poisson's ratio (Eq. 8-33)
$\sigma_o$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Surface or contact stress (Eq. 8-22)
$\sigma'_{oc}$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Vertical effective consolidation stress
$\sigma'_p$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	The preconsolidation stress or maximum past vertical effective stress (Eq. 8-2); $p'_c$ and $\sigma'_{om}$ are sometimes used
$\sigma'_{oo}$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Vertical (effective) overburden stress (Eq. 8-2)
$\sigma_z$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Vertical stress at depth $z$ (Eq. 8-22)

## 8.2 COMPONENTS OF SETTLEMENT

When a soil deposit is loaded, for example by a structure or a man-made fill, deformations will occur. The total vertical deformation at the surface resulting from the load is called *settlement*. The movement may be downward with an increase in load or upward (called *swelling*) with a

decrease in load. Temporary construction excavations and permanent excavations such as highway cuts will cause a reduction in the stress, and swelling may result. As shown in Chapter 7, a lowering of the water table will also cause an increase in the effective stresses within the soil, which will lead to settlements. Another important aspect about settlements of especially fine-grained soils is that they are often time-dependent.

In the design of foundations for engineering structures, we are interested in how much settlement will occur and how fast it will occur. Excessive settlement may cause structural as well as other damage, especially if such settlement occurs rapidly. The total settlement,  $s_t$ , of a loaded soil has three components, or

$$s_t = s_i + s_c + s_s \quad (8-1)$$

where  $s_i$  = the *immediate*, or *distortion*, settlement,

$s_c$  = the *consolidation* (time-dependent) settlement, and

$s_s$  = the *secondary compression* (also time-dependent).

The immediate, or distortion, settlement although not actually elastic is usually estimated by using elastic theory. The equations for this component of settlement are in principle similar to the deformation of a column under an axial load  $P$ , where the deformation is equal to  $PL/AE$ . In most foundations, however, the loading is usually three dimensional, which causes some distortion of the foundation soils. Problems arise concerning the proper evaluation of a compression modulus and the volume of soil that is stressed. Immediate settlements must be considered in the design of shallow foundations, and procedures for dealing with this problem can be found in textbooks on foundation engineering.

The consolidation settlement is a time-dependent process that occurs in saturated fine-grained soils which have a low coefficient of permeability. The rate of settlement depends on the rate of pore water drainage. Secondary compression, which is also time-dependent, occurs at constant effective stress and with no subsequent changes in pore water pressure. Settlement computations are discussed in this chapter; the time rate of consolidation and secondary compression are discussed in Chapter 9.

### 8.3 COMPRESSIBILITY OF SOILS

Assume for the time being that the deformations of our compressible soil layer will occur in only one dimension. An example of one-dimensional compression would be the deformation caused by a fill covering a very large area. Later on we shall discuss what happens when a structure of finite size loads the soil and produces deformation.

When a soil is loaded, it will compress because of:

1. deformation of soil grains,
2. compression of air and water in the voids, and/or
3. squeezing out of water and air from the voids.

At typical engineering loads, the amount of compression of the soil mineral grains themselves is small and usually can be neglected. Often, compressible soils are found below the water table, and they can be considered fully saturated. At least we usually assume 100% saturation for most settlement problems. Thus the compression of the pore fluid can be neglected. Therefore the last item contributes the most to the volume change of loaded soil deposits. As the pore fluid is squeezed out, the soil grains rearrange themselves into a more stable and denser configuration, and a decrease in volume and surface settlement results. How fast this process occurs depends on the permeability of the soil. How much rearrangement and compression takes place depends on the rigidity of the soil skeleton, which is a function of the structure of the soil. Soil structure, as discussed in Chapter 4, depends on the geologic and engineering history of the deposit.

Consider the case where granular materials are one-dimensionally compressed. The curve shown in Fig. 8.1a is typical for sands in compression in terms of stress-strain; Fig. 8.1b shows the same data as a void ratio versus pressure curve. Note that it is common to rotate the coordinate axes 90° when plotting  $e$  versus  $\sigma_v$  data. Fig. 8.1c shows the compression versus time; note how rapidly compression occurs. The deformations take place in a very short time due to the relatively high permeability of granular soils. It is very easy for the water (and air) in the voids to squeeze out. Many times, for all practical purposes, the compression of sands occurs during construction and, as a result, most of the settlements have taken place by the time the structure is completed. However, because they occur so fast, even the relatively small total settlements of granular layers may be detrimental to a structure which is particularly sensitive to rapid settlements. The settlement of granular soils is estimated by using Eq. 8-1 with  $s_c$  and  $s_s$  neglected. Details of these analyses can be found in books on foundation engineering.

When clays undergo loading, because of their relatively low permeability their compression is controlled by the rate at which water is squeezed out of the pores. This process is called *consolidation*, which is a stress-strain-time phenomenon. Deformation may continue for months, years, or even decades. This is the fundamental and only difference between the compression of granular materials and the consolidation of cohesive soil: compression of sands occurs almost instantly, whereas consolidation is a very time-dependent process. The difference in settlement rates depends on the difference in permeabilities.

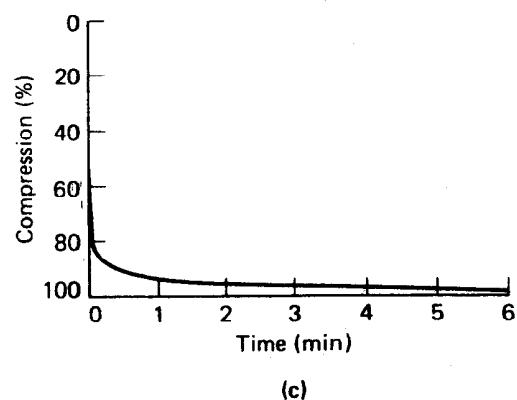
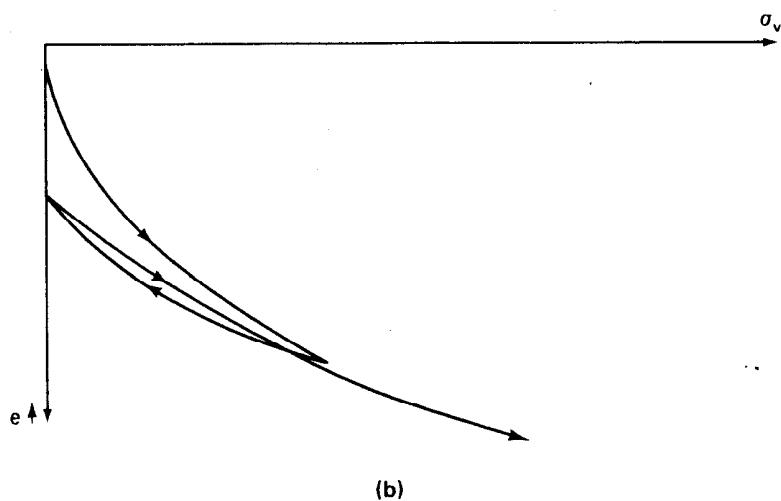
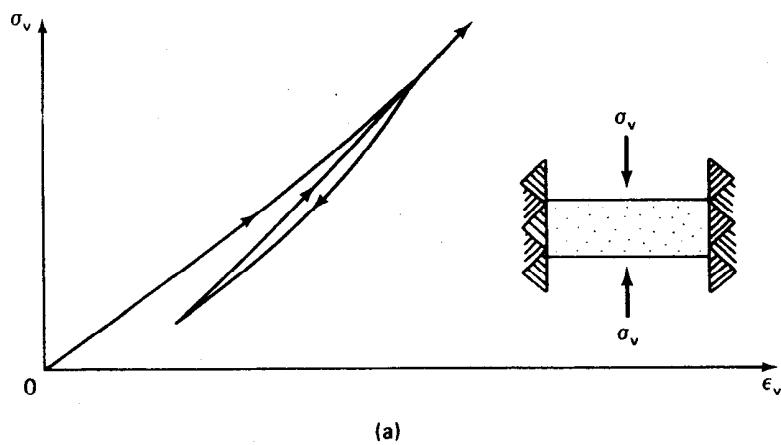
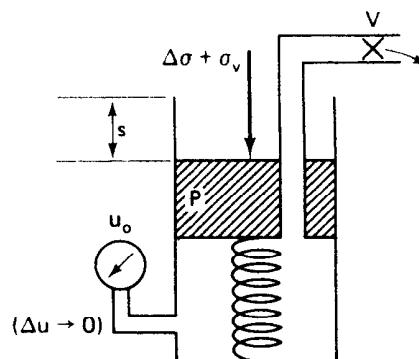
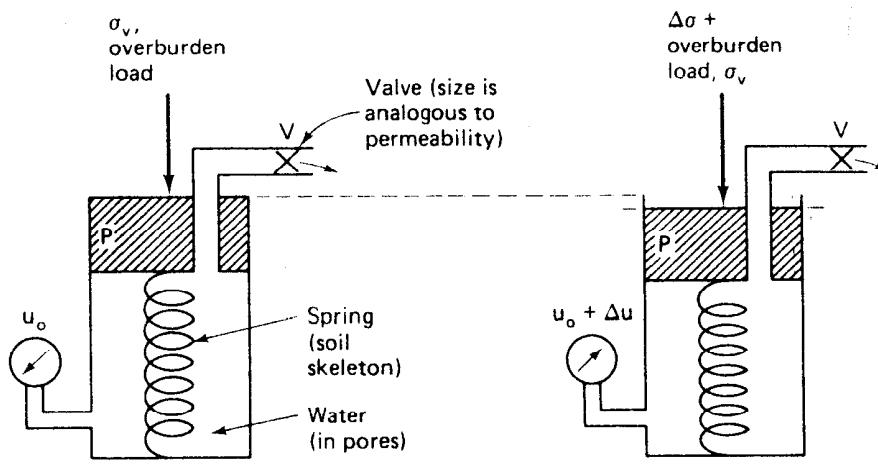


Fig. 8.1 Stress-strain and stress-time curves for a typical sand: (a) stress versus strain; (b) void ratio versus pressure; (c) compression versus time (after Taylor, 1948).

## Consolidation and Consolidation Settlements



(c) At equilibrium under  $\sigma_v + \Delta\sigma$ .  
Note settlement  $s$ .

Fig. 8.2 Spring analogy as applied to consolidation.

The consolidation of clay is readily explained by the *spring analogy* shown in Fig. 8.2. A piston  $P$  is loaded vertically and compresses a spring inside the chamber, which is filled with water. The spring is analogous to the soil mineral skeleton, while the water in the cylinder represents the water in the soil voids. The valve  $V$  at the top of the piston represents the pore sizes in the soil, and at equilibrium when the valve is open no water flows out. This situation is analogous to one where a soil layer is at equilibrium with the weight of all soil layers (called *overburden*) above it. A

pressure gage is connected to the cylinder and it shows the hydrostatic pressure  $u_o$  at this particular location in the soil. Now the soil layer is loaded by an additional load increment  $\Delta\sigma$ , Fig. 8.2b. At the start of the consolidation process, let us assume that the valve  $V$  is initially closed. Upon application of the load, the pressure is immediately transferred to the water inside the cylinder. Since the water is relatively incompressible and the valve is shut so that no water can get out, there is no deformation of the piston, and the pressure gage reads  $\Delta u = \Delta\sigma$  (Fig. 8.2b). The pore water pressure  $\Delta u$  is called the *excess hydrostatic pressure* since it is in excess of the original hydrostatic pressure  $u_o$ .

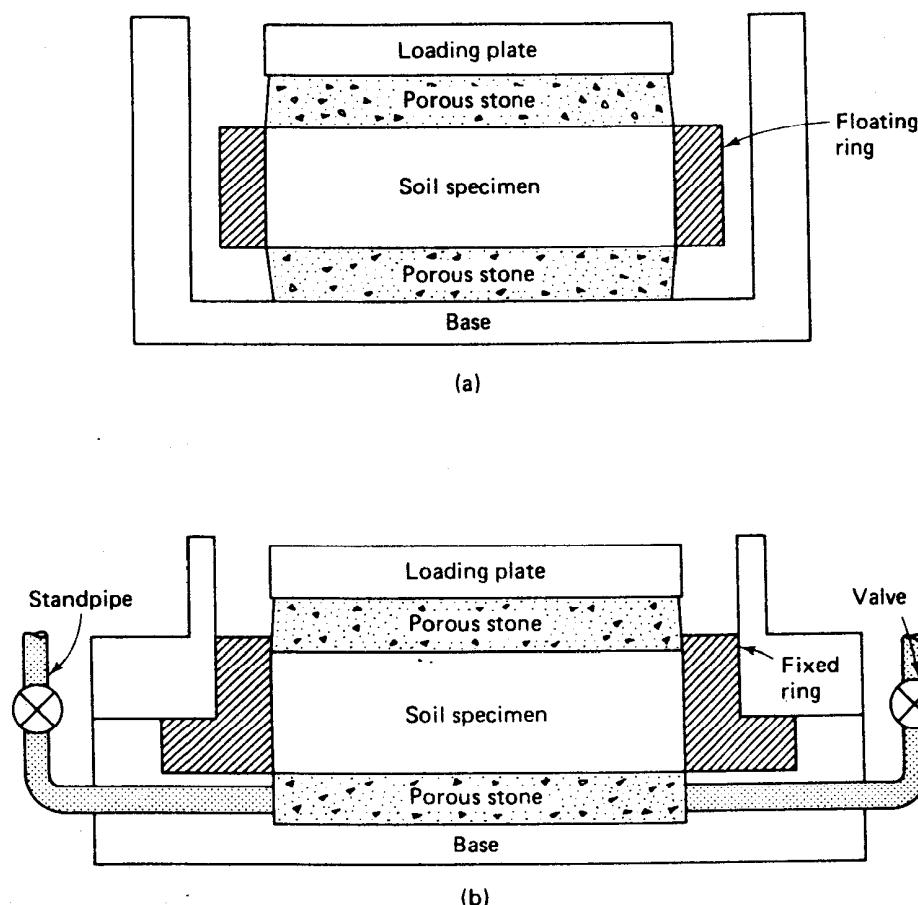
To simulate a fine-grained cohesive soil with its low permeability, we can open the valve and allow water to slowly leave the cylinder under the initial excess pressure  $\Delta u$ . With time, as the water flows out, the water pressure decreases and gradually the load  $\Delta\sigma$  is transferred to the spring, which compresses under the load. Finally, at equilibrium (Fig. 8.2c) no further water is squeezed out of the cylinder, the pore water pressure is again hydrostatic, and the spring is in equilibrium with the load,  $\sigma_o + \Delta\sigma$ .

Although the model is rather crude, the process is analogous to what happens when cohesive soils in the field and laboratory are loaded. Initially, all the external load is transferred into excess pore water or excess hydrostatic pressure. Thus at first there is no change in the effective stress in the soil. Gradually, as the water is squeezed out under a pressure gradient, the soil skeleton compresses, takes up the load, and the effective stresses increase. The compressibility of the spring is analogous to the compressibility of the soil skeleton. Eventually the excess hydrostatic pressure becomes zero and the pore water pressure is the same as the hydrostatic pressure prior to loading.

## 8.4 THE OEDOMETER AND CONSOLIDATION TESTING

When soil layers covering a large area are loaded vertically, the compression can be assumed to be one dimensional. To simulate one-dimensional compression in the laboratory, we compress the soil in a special device called an *oedometer* or *consolidometer*. Principal components of two types of oedometers are shown in Fig. 8.3.

An undisturbed soil specimen, which represents an element of the compressible soil layer under investigation, is carefully trimmed and placed into the confining ring. The ring is relatively rigid so that no lateral deformation takes place. On the top and bottom of the sample are porous "stones" which allow drainage during the consolidation process. Porous stones are made of sintered corundum or porous brass. Ordinarily, the top



**Fig. 8.3** Schematic of an oedometer or consolidation test apparatus: (a) floating-ring oedometer; (b) fixed-ring oedometer (after U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, 1970).

porous stone has a diameter approximately 0.5 mm smaller than the ring, so that it does not drag along the side of the ring when the specimen is being loaded. Usually the ratio of the diameter to height of the specimen is between 2.5 and 5, and the diameter depends on the diameter of the undisturbed soil samples tested. There is more trimming disturbance with thinner and to a lesser extent smaller diameter specimens; on the other hand, taller specimens have greater side friction. Side friction can be reduced to some extent by the use of ceramic or Teflon-lined rings or by application of a lubricant like molybdenum disulphide.

In the *floating-ring test* (Fig. 8.3a) the compression takes place from both faces of the soil sample. It can be shown (Lambe, 1951) that the ring

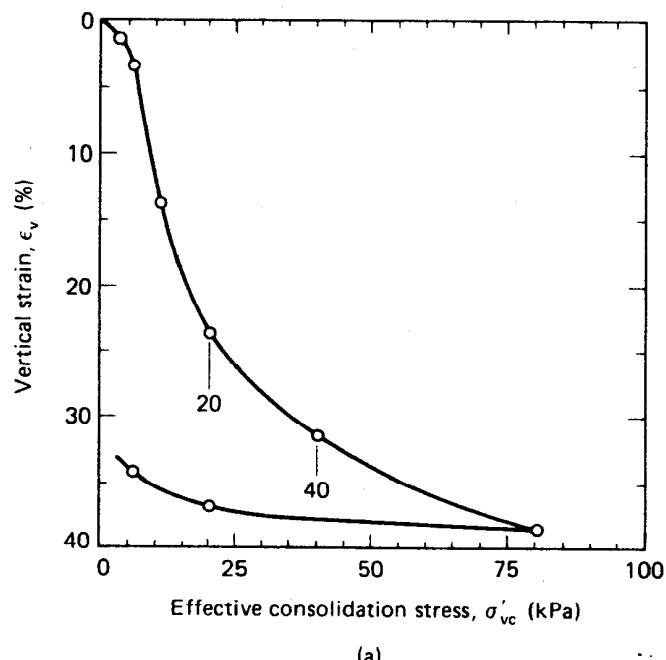
friction is somewhat less in this test than in a *fixed-ring test* (Fig. 8.3b), in which all movement is downward relative to the ring. The primary advantage of the fixed-ring test is that drainage from the bottom porous stone may be measured or otherwise controlled. In this manner, for example, permeability tests may be conducted in the oedometer.

To establish the relationship between load and deformation in the laboratory sample, during the consolidation test, the applied load as well as the deformation of the sample are carefully measured. Stress is of course computed by dividing the applied load by the area of the specimen. It is common practice to load the specimen incrementally, either through a mechanical lever-arm system or by an air or air-hydraulic pressure cylinder. Each stress increment is applied, and the sample is allowed to consolidate and come to equilibrium with little or no further deformation and with the *excess* pore water pressure within the sample approximately equal to zero. Thus the final or equilibrium stress is an *effective stress*. The process is repeated until sufficient points are obtained to adequately define the stress-deformation curve.

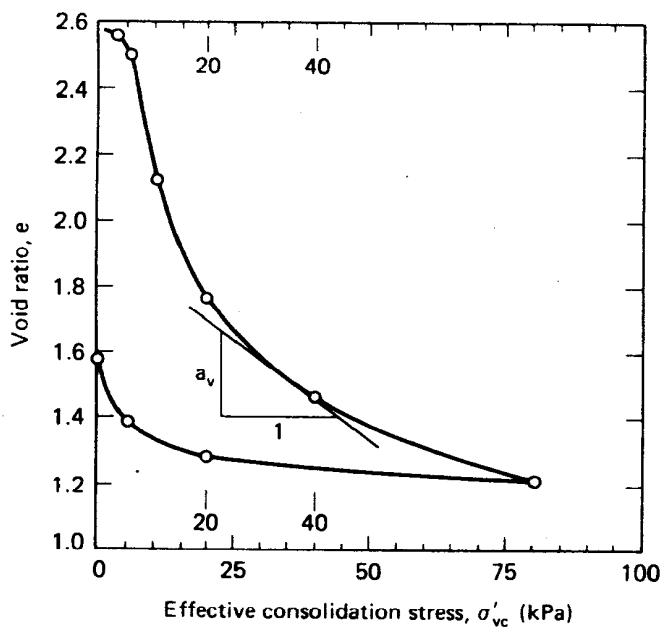
The object of the consolidation test, then, is to simulate the compression of the soil under given external loads. What we are in fact measuring is the modulus of the soil in confined compression (Fig. 8.1a). By evaluating the compression characteristics of an *undisturbed representative* sample, we can predict the settlement of the soil layer in the field.

Engineers use several methods to present load-deformation data. Two methods are shown in Fig. 8.4. In one, *percent consolidation* or *vertical strain* is plotted versus the equilibrium or *effective consolidation stress*  $\sigma'_{vc}$ . (The subscripts  $vc$  refer to vertical consolidation, and the prime mark indicates effective stress.) A second way is to relate the *void ratio* to the *effective consolidation stress*. Both of these graphs show that soil is a strain hardening material; that is, the (instantaneous) modulus increases as the stresses increase.

Since the stress-strain relationships shown in Fig. 8.4 are highly nonlinear, more common ways to present the results of a consolidation test are shown in Fig. 8.5. The data shown in Fig. 8.4 are now presented as percent consolidation (or vertical strain) and void ratio versus the *logarithm* of effective consolidation stress. It can be seen that both plots have two approximately straight line portions connected by a smooth transitional curve. The stress at which the transition or "break" occurs in the curves shown in Fig. 8.5 is an indication of the *maximum* vertical overburden stress that this particular sample has sustained in the past; this stress, which is very important in geotechnical engineering, is known as the *preconsolidation pressure*,  $\sigma'_p$ . Sometimes the symbol  $p'_c$  or  $\sigma'_{vm}$  is used, where the subscript  $m$  indicates maximum past pressure.

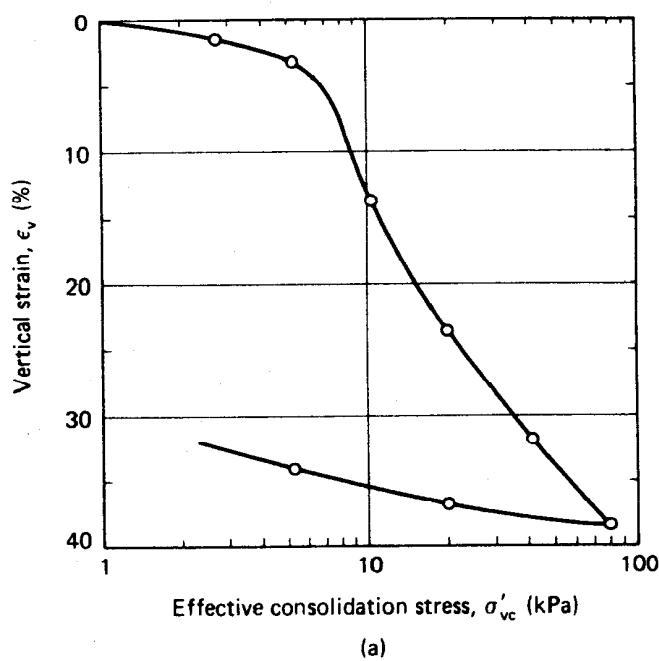


(a)

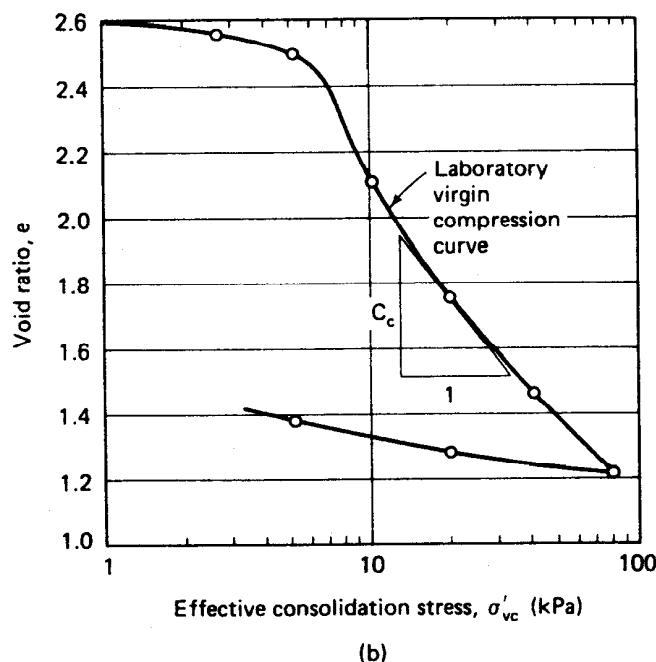


(b)

Fig. 8.4 Two ways to present consolidation test data: (a) percent consolidation (or strain) versus effective stress; (b) void ratio versus effective stress. Test on a sample of San Francisco Bay Mud from -7.3 m.



(a)



(b)

Fig. 8.5 Consolidation test data presented as: (a) percent consolidation (or strain) versus log effective stress and (b) void ratio versus log effective stress (same data as in Fig. 8.4).

## 8.5 PRECONSOLIDATION PRESSURE; NORMAL CONSOLIDATION, OVERCONSOLIDATION, UNDERCONSOLIDATION

Soils have a "memory," so to speak, of the stress and other changes that have occurred during their history, and these changes are preserved in the soil structure (Casagrande, 1932c). When the specimen or soil deposit in the field is loaded to a stress level greater than it ever "experienced" in the past, the soil structure is no longer able to sustain the increased load and the structure starts to break down. Depending on the type of soil and its geologic history, this breakdown may result in a quite drastic difference in the slopes of the two portions of the consolidation curve. In other words, the transition region may be small, and such soils are often very sensitive to even small changes in the applied stresses. With other less sensitive soils, for example silty soils, there never really is a "break" in the curve because the fabric gradually alters and adjusts as the applied stress increases. The initial flatter portion of the void ratio-log pressure consolidation curve is termed the *reconsolidation* curve, and the part after the "break" in the curve is called the *virgin compression curve* (Fig. 8.5b). As the latter name implies, the soil has never before "experienced" a stress greater than the preconsolidation stress.

We say that the soil is *normally consolidated* when the preconsolidation pressure  $\sigma'_p$  just equals the existing effective vertical overburden pressure  $\sigma'_{vo}$  (that is,  $\sigma'_p = \sigma'_{vo}$ ). If we have a soil whose preconsolidation pressure is *greater* than the existing overburden pressure (that is,  $\sigma'_p > \sigma'_{vo}$ ), then we say the soil is *overconsolidated* (or *preconsolidated*). We can define the *overconsolidation ratio*, OCR, as the ratio of the preconsolidation stress to the existing vertical effective overburden stress, or

$$\text{OCR} = \frac{\sigma'_p}{\sigma'_{vo}} \quad (8-2)$$

Soils that are normally consolidated have an  $\text{OCR} = 1$ , and soils with an  $\text{OCR} > 1$  are overconsolidated. Also, it is not impossible to find a soil that has an  $\text{OCR} < 1$ , in which case the soil would be *underconsolidated*. Underconsolidation can occur, for example, in soils that have only recently been deposited, either geologically or by man. Under these conditions, the clay layer has not yet come to equilibrium under the weight of the overburden load. If the pore water pressure were measured under conditions of underconsolidation, the pressure would be in excess of hydrostatic.

There are many reasons why a soil may be overconsolidated. It could be due to either a change in the total stress or a change in pore water

pressure; both changes would alter the effective stress. Geologic deposition followed by subsequent erosion is an example of a change in the total stress that will preconsolidate the underlying soils. Desiccation of the upper layers due to surface drying will also produce overconsolidation. Sometimes an increase in  $\sigma'_p$  occurs due to changes in the soil structure and alterations of the chemical environment of the soil deposit. Table 8-1 lists some of the mechanisms leading to preconsolidation of soils.

How is the preconsolidation pressure determined? Several procedures have been proposed to determine the value of  $\sigma'_p$ . The most popular method is the Casagrande (1936b) construction, which is illustrated in Fig. 8.6, where a typical void ratio versus log pressure curve is plotted for a clay soil. The procedure is also applicable to  $\epsilon_v$  versus log  $\sigma'_{vc}$  curves. The

TABLE 8-1 Mechanisms Causing Preconsolidation\*

Mechanism	Remarks and References
Change in total stress due to:	
Removal of overburden	Geologic erosion or excavation by man
Past structures	
Glaciation	
Change in pore water pressure due to:	
Change in water table elevation	Kenney (1964) gives sea level changes
Artesian pressures	Common in glaciated areas
Deep pumping; flow into tunnels	Common in many cities
Desiccation due to surface drying	May have occurred during deposition
Desiccation due to plant life	May have occurred during deposition
Change in soil structure due to:	
Secondary compression (aging)†	Raju (1956) Leonards and Ramiah (1959) Leonards and Altschaeffl (1964) Bjerrum (1967, 1972)
Environmental changes such as pH, temperature, and salt concentration	Lambe (1958a and b)
Chemical alterations due to "weathering," precipitation, cementing agents, ion exchange	Bjerrum (1967)
Change of strain rate on loading‡	Lowe (1974)

\* After Brumund, Jonas, and Ladd (1976).

† The magnitude of  $\sigma'_p/\sigma'_{vo}$  related to secondary compression for mature natural deposits of highly plastic clays may reach values of 1.9 or higher.

‡ Further research is needed to determine whether this mechanism should take the place of secondary compression.

## Consolidation and Consolidation Settlements

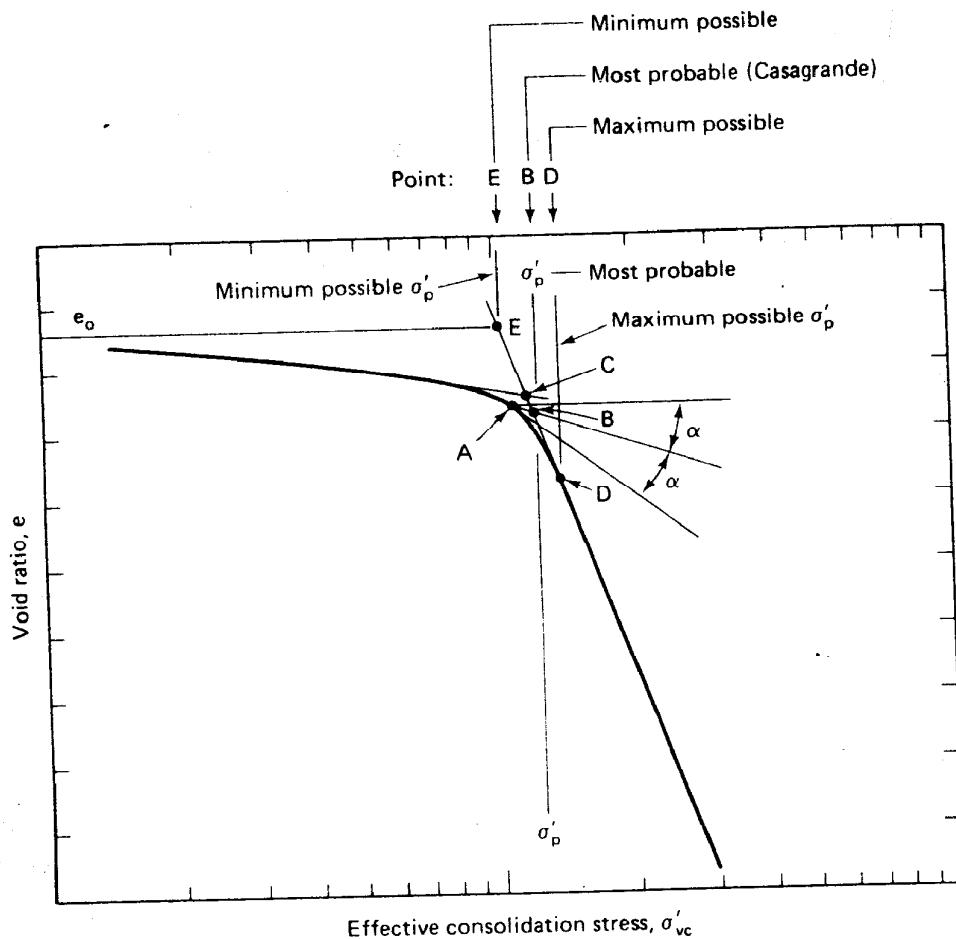


Fig. 8.6 The Casagrande (1936b) construction for determining the pre-consolidation stress. Also shown are the minimum possible, the most probable, and the maximum possible preconsolidation stresses.

Casagrande procedure is as follows:

1. Choose by eye the point of minimum radius (or maximum curvature) on the consolidation curve (point *A* in Fig. 8.6).
2. Draw a horizontal line from point *A*.
3. Draw a line tangent to the curve at point *A*.
4. Bisect the angle made by steps 2 and 3.
5. Extend the straight line portion of the *virgin* compression curve up to where it meets the bisector line obtained in step 4. The point of intersection of these two lines is the preconsolidation stress (point *B* of Fig. 8.6).

An even simpler method for estimating the preconsolidation stress is used by some engineers. The two straight line portions of the consolidation curve are extended; their intersection defines another "most probable" preconsolidation pressure (point *C* of Fig. 8.6). If you think about it, the maximum possible  $\sigma'_p$  is at point *D*, the minimum possible  $\sigma'_p$  is at point *E*, the intersection of the virgin compression curve with a horizontal line drawn from  $e_o$ .

How is it possible that these graphical procedures predict the preconsolidation pressure? To understand the reason, let us follow the complete stress-strain history of a sedimentary clay soil during deposition, sampling, and finally reloading in the laboratory by the consolidation test. This history is shown in Fig. 8.7. The line *OA* represents the relationship between the void ratio and the logarithm of effective stress of a particular element in the ground during deposition. In this case, additional material is deposited above our element, and the process consolidates the element to point *A*. This point represents the in situ  $e$  versus  $\log \sigma'_{vc}$  coordinates of the normally consolidated clay element. When a boring is made and the soil is sampled, the overburden stresses are removed by the sampling operation and the sample rebounds or swells along the (dashed) curve *AB*. When the sample is transferred from the sampling tube into a consolidometer ring and then reloaded in the consolidation test, the (solid) reloading curve *BC* is obtained. About point *C*, the soil structure starts to break down, and if loading continues the laboratory virgin compression curve *CD* is obtained. Eventually the field and laboratory curves *OAD* and *BCD* will converge beyond point *D*. If you perform the Casagrande construction on the curve in Fig. 8.7, you will find that the most probable preconsolidation pressure is very close to point *A* on the graph, which is the actual maximum past pressure. Observations of this sort enabled Casagrande to develop his graphical procedure to find the preconsolidation stress. If the sampling operation was of poor quality and mechanical disturbance to the soil structure occurred, a different curve *BC'D* (long dashes) would result upon reloading of the sample in the consolidometer. Note that with the "disturbed" curve the preconsolidation stress has all but disappeared with increasing mechanical disturbance; the reloading curve will move away from point *A* in the direction of the arrow. The preconsolidation pressure is much more difficult to define when sample disturbance has occurred.

In the consolidation test, after the maximum stress is reached, the specimen is rebounded incrementally to essentially zero stress (points *D* to *E* of Fig. 8.7). This process allows you to determine the final void ratio, which you need in order to plot the entire  $e$  versus  $\log \sigma'_{vc}$  curve. Sometimes another reload cycle is applied, like curve *E* to *F* of Fig. 8.7. Just as with the initial reconsolidation curve (*BCD*), this loading curve eventually rejoins the virgin compression curve.

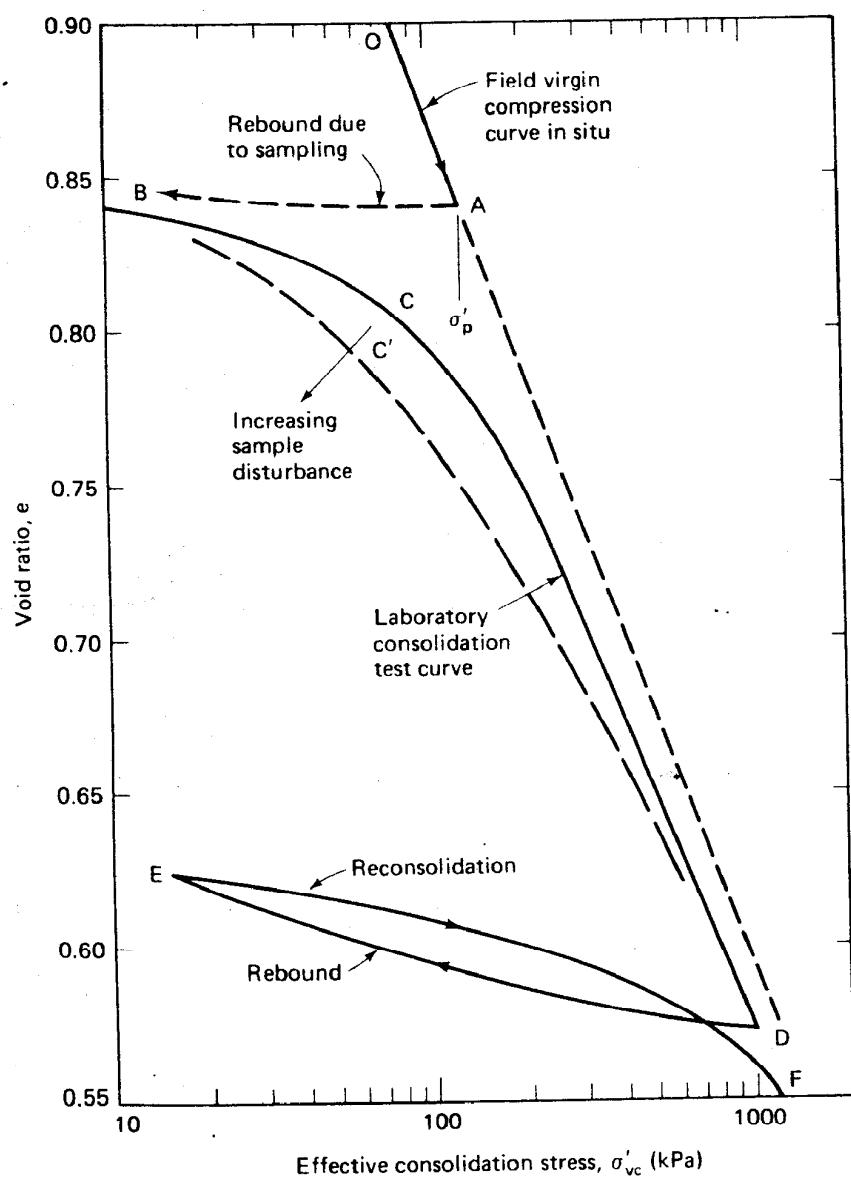


Fig. 8.7 Void ratio versus log pressure curve illustrating deposition, sampling (unloading) and reconsolidation in the consolidation test apparatus.

## EXAMPLE 8.1

Given:

The results of the laboratory consolidation test of Fig. 8.7.

Required:

For the laboratory compression curve (*BCD*), determine (a) the preconsolidation stress using the Casagrande procedure; (b) find both the minimum and maximum possible values of this stress; and (c) determine the OCR if the in situ effective overburden stress is 80 kPa.

Solution:

- a. Go through the steps of the Casagrande construction as shown on Fig. 8.6. The  $\sigma'_p$  is about 130 kPa.
- b. Assume  $e_o = 0.84$ . Minimum possible  $\sigma'_p$  is about 90 kPa, and the maximum possible  $\sigma'_p$  is about 200 kPa.
- c. Use Eq. 8-2.

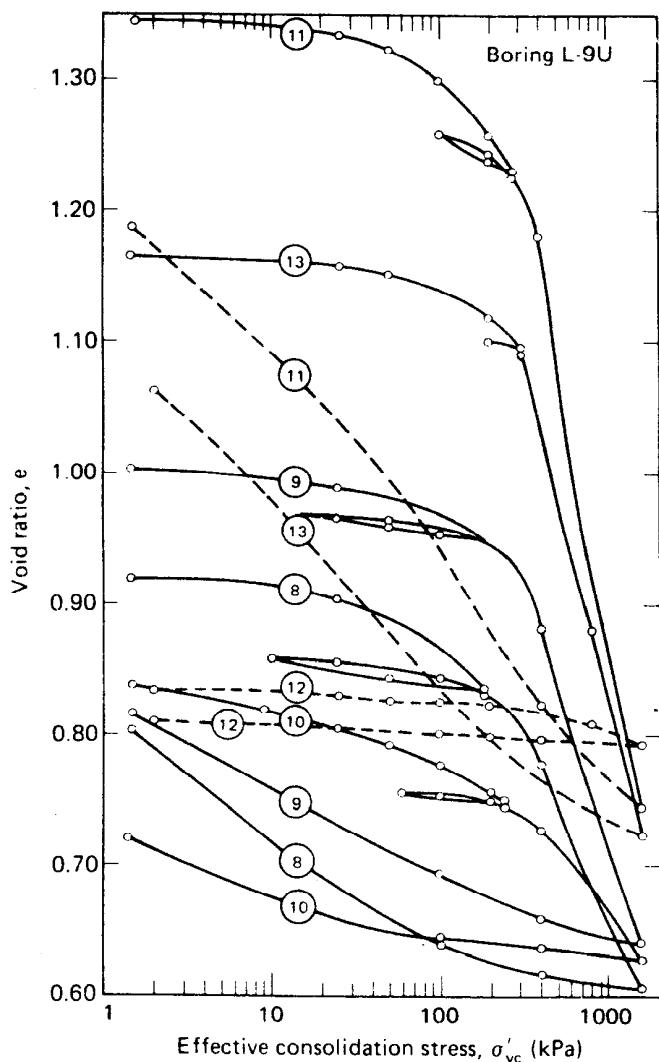
$$\text{OCR} = \frac{\sigma'_p}{\sigma'_{vo}} = \frac{130}{80} = 1.6$$

Because of the uncertainties in determining both  $\sigma'_p$  and  $\sigma'_{vo}$ , OCR's are usually given to only one decimal place.

## 8.6 CONSOLIDATION BEHAVIOR OF NATURAL SOILS

Typical consolidation curves for a wide variety of soils are presented in Figs. 8.8a through 8.8j. You should become familiar with the general shapes of these curves, especially around the preconsolidation stress, for the different soil types. Also study the amount of compression  $\Delta e$  as well as the slopes of the various curves.

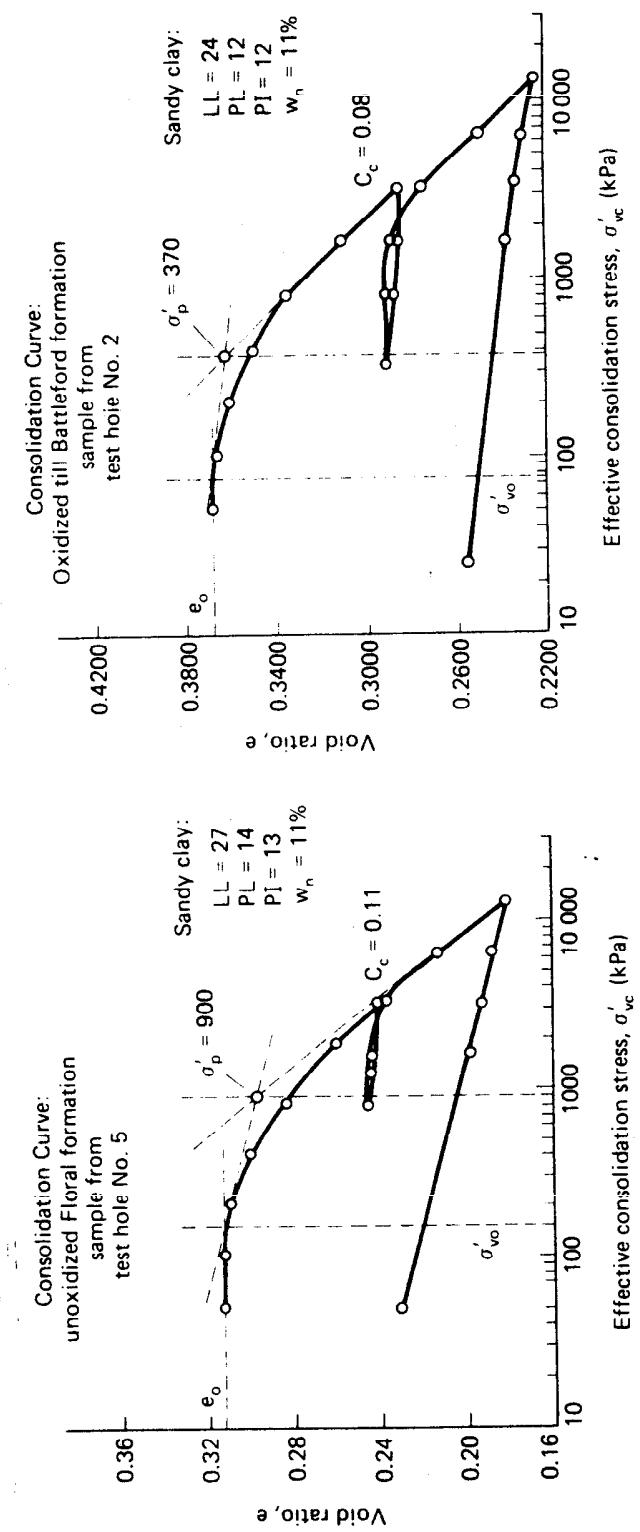
The test results in Fig. 8.8a are typical of soils from the lower Mississippi River Valley near Baton Rouge, Louisiana. These soils, primarily silts and sand silts with clay strata, are slightly overconsolidated due to wetting and drying cycles during deposition (Kaufman and Sherman, 1964). Figs. 8.8b and 8.8c show test results from heavily overconsolidated



Test No.	Elev. (m)	Classification	Atterberg Limits			$w_n$ (%)	$e_o$	$\sigma'_{vo}$ (kPa)	$\sigma'_{vp}$ (kPa)	$C_c$
			LL	PL	PI					
8	-8.8	CL-clay, soft	41	24	17	34.0	0.94	160	200	0.34
9	-9.8	CL-clay, firm	50	23	27	36.4	1.00	170	250	0.44
10	-17.1	ML-sandy silt	31	25	6	29.8	0.83	230	350	0.16
11	-20.1	CH-clay, soft	81	25	56	50.6	1.35	280	350	0.84
12	-23.2	SP-sand	Nonplastic			27.8	0.83	320	—	—
13	-26.2	CH-clay w/silt strata	71	28	43	43.3	1.17	340	290	0.52

(a)

Fig. 8.8(a) Nearly normally consolidated clays and silts (after Kaufman and Sherman, 1964).



(b)

Fig. 8.8(b) Overconsolidated clay tills (after MacDonald and Sauer, 1970).

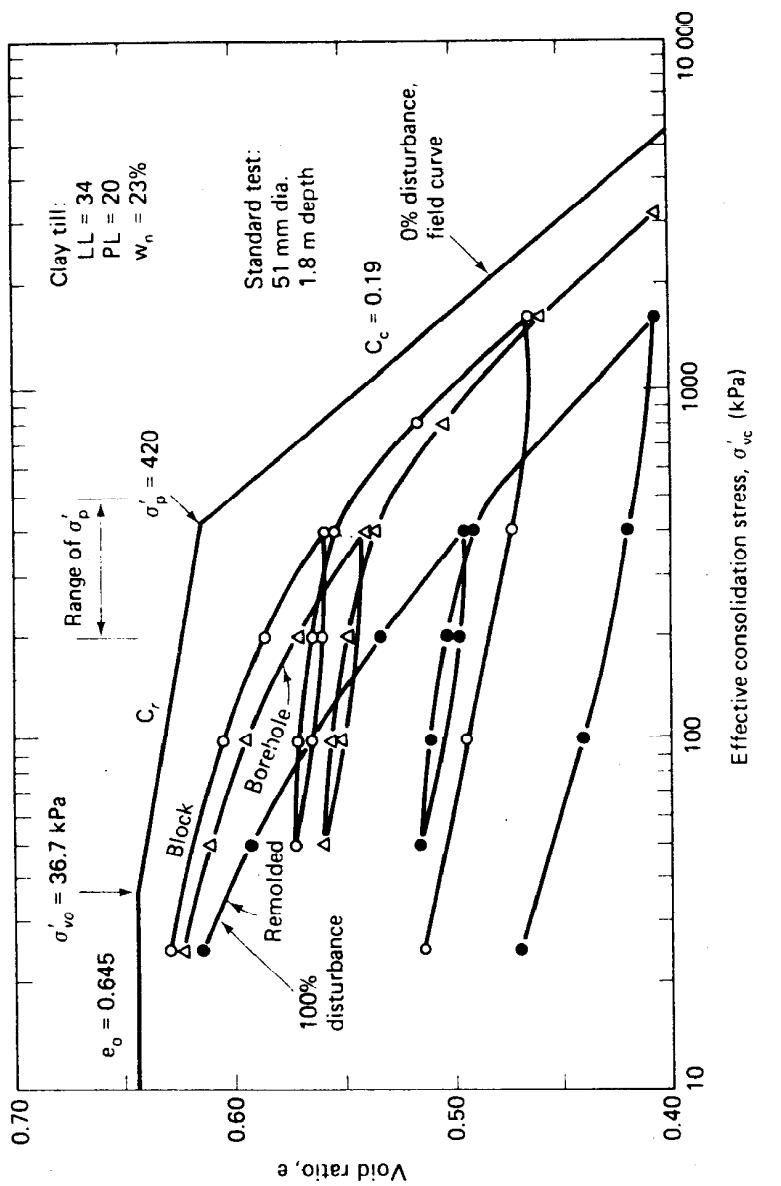
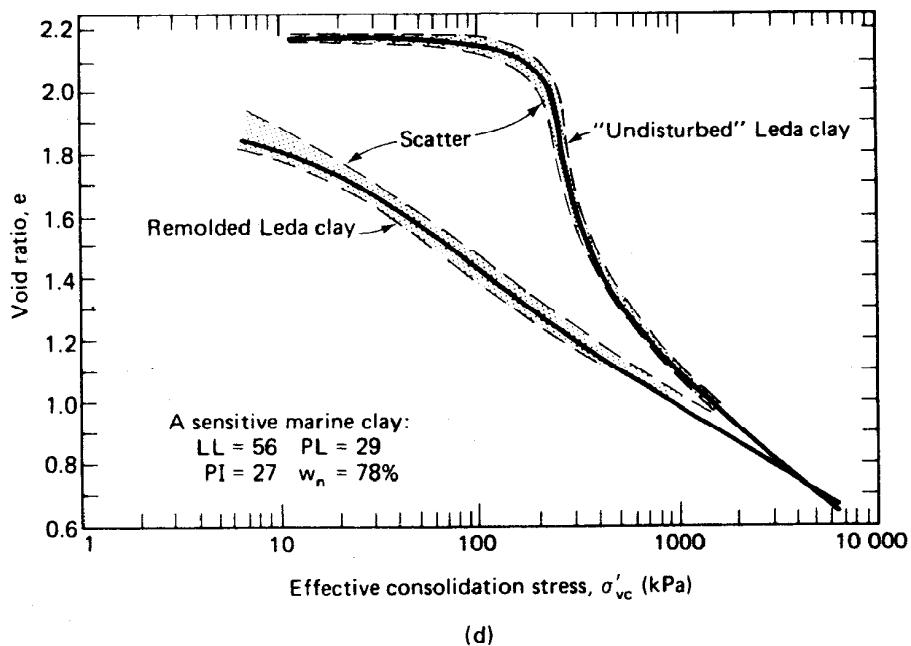


Fig. 8.8(c) Overconsolidated clay tills, showing effects of different types of sampling (after Soderman and Kim, 1970).



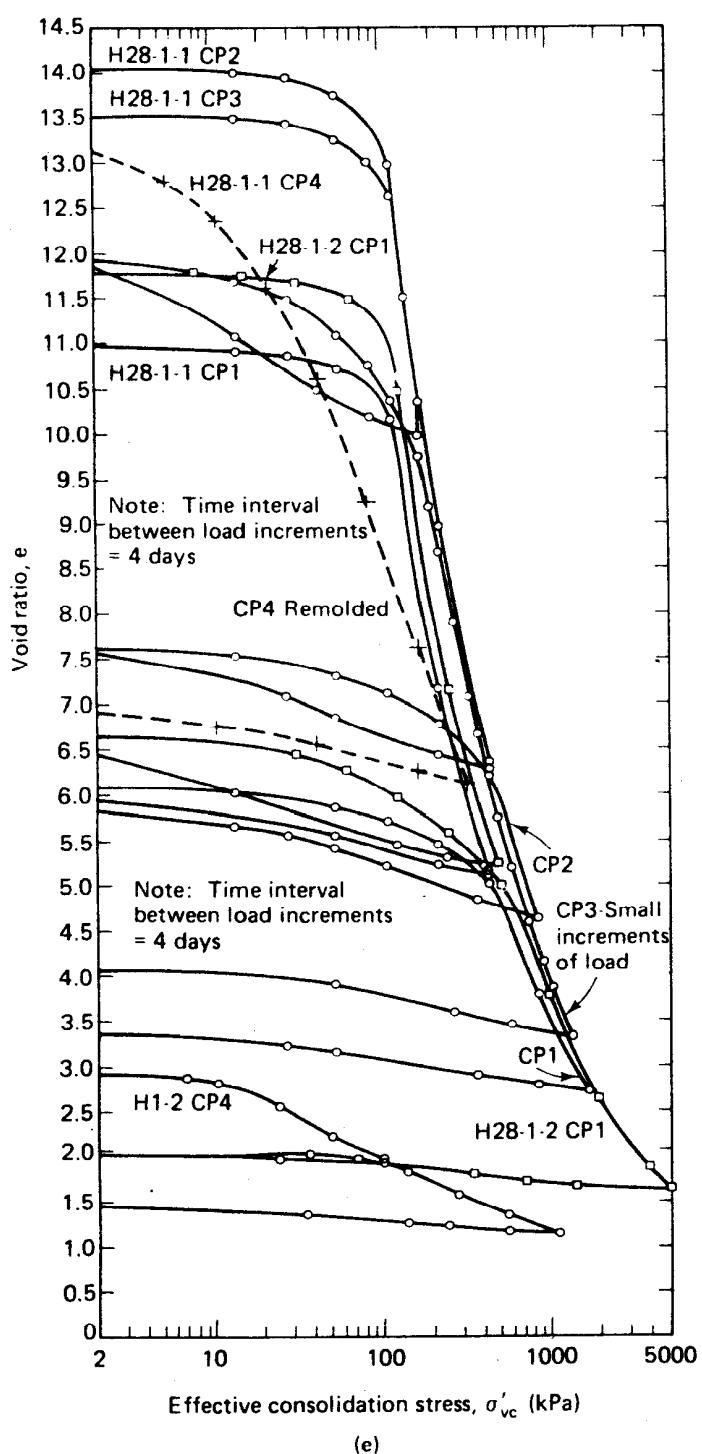
(d)

Fig. 8.8(d) Leda clay (after Quigley and Thompson, 1966).

clays. Note the very low void ratios for the precompressed glacial till soils from Canada in Fig. 8.8b (MacDonald and Sauer, 1970). The effects of sample disturbance on clay tills are shown in Fig. 8.8c. Note how the consolidation curves move downward and to the left (see Fig. 8.7) as disturbance increases (Soderman and Kim, 1970).

Compression curves for another Canadian clay, a sensitive marine clay called *Laurentian* or *Leda clay*, are shown in Fig. 8.8d (Quigley and Thompson, 1966). Both the undisturbed and remolded curves are shown. The very sharp "break" or drop-off in the undisturbed curve when the preconsolidation stress is reached is typical of highly sensitive clays. Until then the compression curve is very flat, but once a "critical" or preconsolidation stress is reached, the soil structure breaks down quickly and dramatically.

Figure 8.8e shows the consolidation characteristics of Mexico City clay (Rutledge, 1944). This sediment is not really a clay but is composed primarily of microfossils and diatoms. The porous structure of the fossils gives the soil a very high void ratio, natural water content, and compressibility. Mexico City clay was previously thought to be composed primarily of volcanic ash which weathered to allophane (Chapter 4) since it is amorphous to X-rays. Note the extremely high void ratios of Mexico City



(e)

Fig. 8.8(e) Mexico City clay (after Rutledge, 1944).

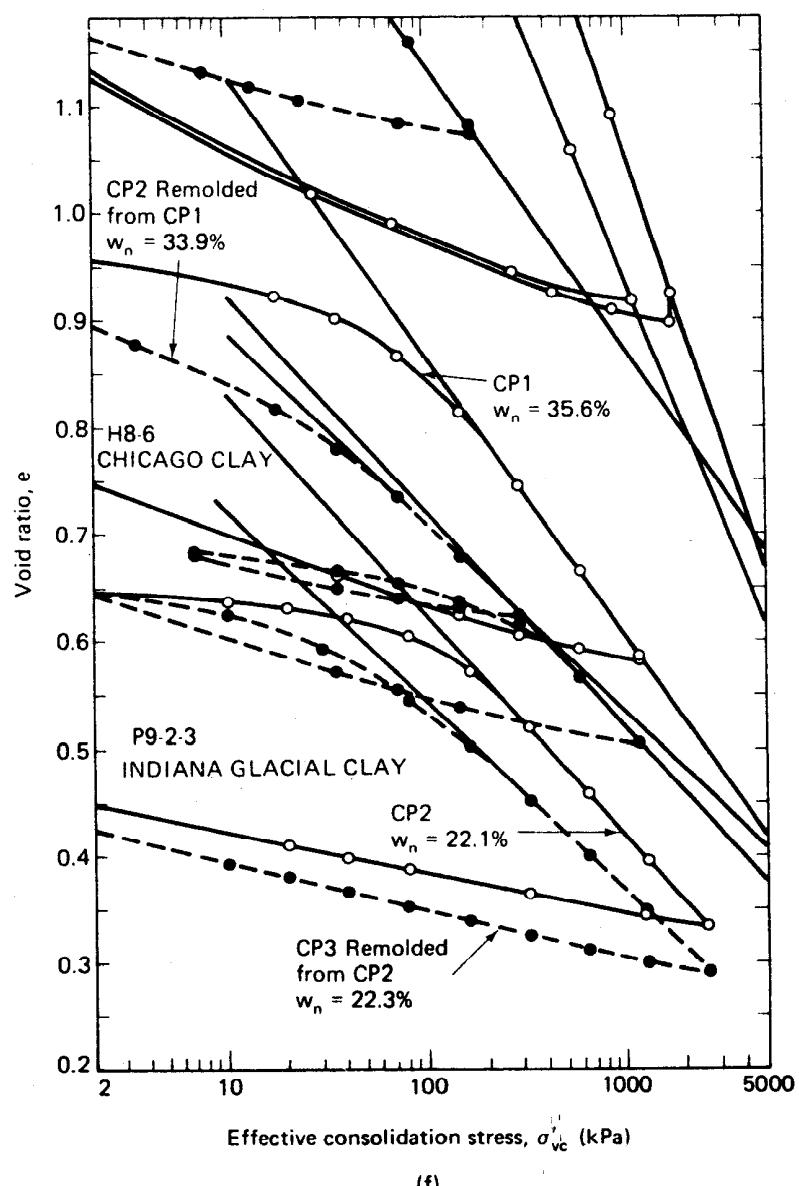


Fig. 8.8(f) Chicago and Indiana glacial clay (after Rutledge, 1944).

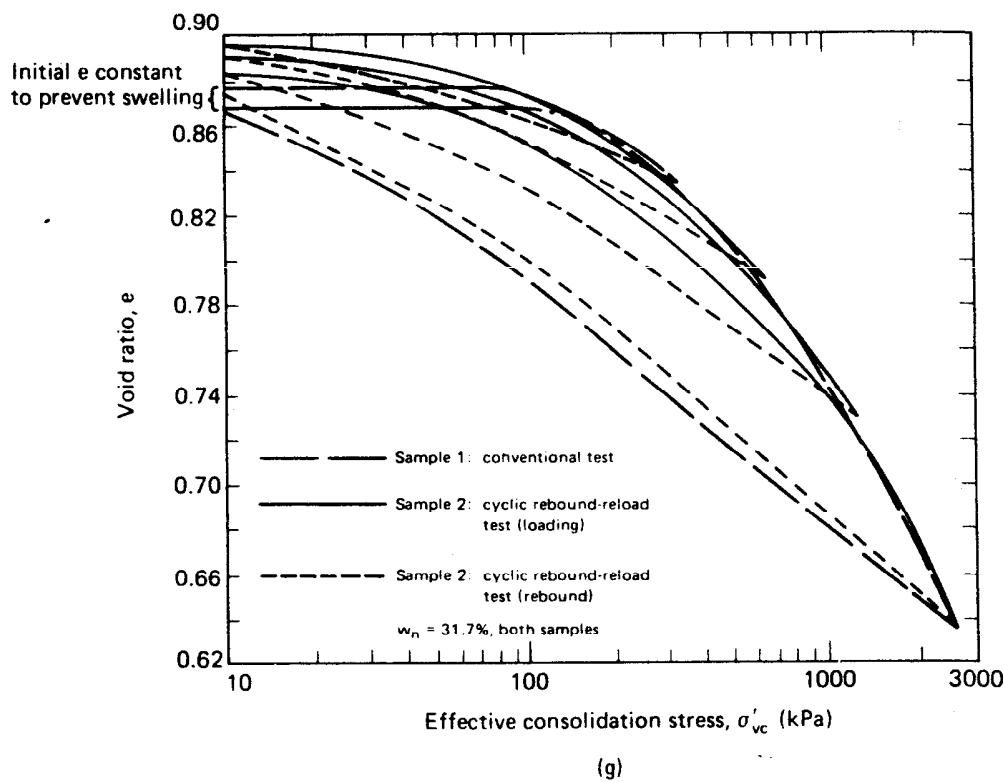


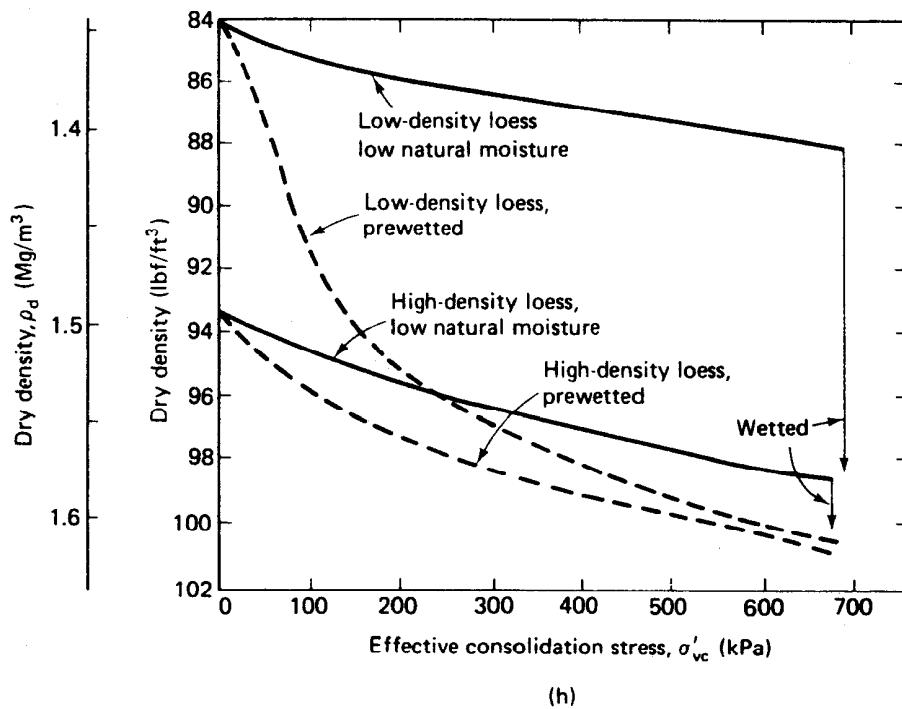
Fig. 8.8(g) Swelling clays from Texas (after Dawson, 1944).

clay. Also, see how the compression increases markedly once the preconsolidation stress is reached. As expected, remolding almost completely destroys the preconsolidation effect (see the dashed curve).

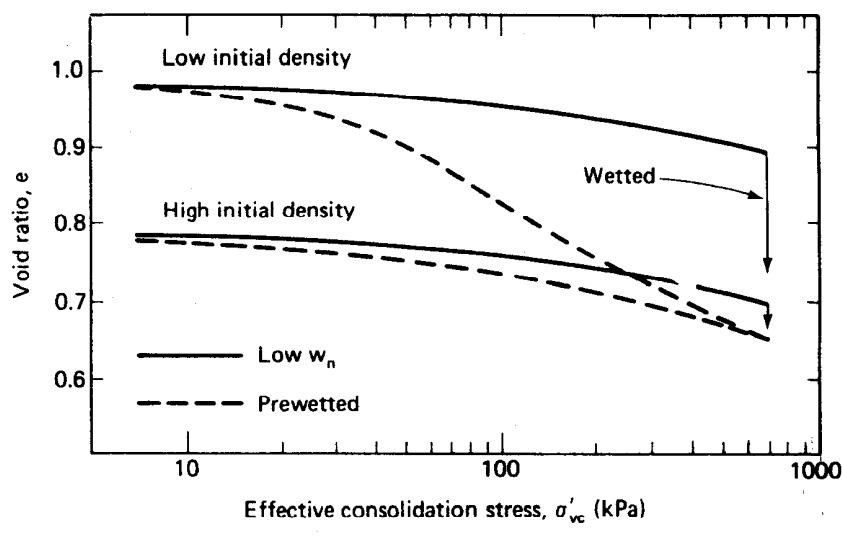
Fig. 8.8f shows the consolidation curves for two typical glacial lake clays (Rutledge, 1944). Both of these clays are rather silty and have much lower in situ void ratios and natural water contents than either the Leda or Mexico City clays.

Highly expansive or swelling clays from the southwest United States have consolidation curves like those shown in Fig. 8.8g. Both tests started out at about the same void ratio and water content. Both were initially loaded so that the void ratios remained constant. Then one sample (1) was loaded incrementally and continuously in the conventional manner; the other was repeatedly rebounded and reloaded. Notice how much rebound (swell) occurred and also that the cyclic test (2) had essentially the same compression characteristics as the conventional test. These variations probably occurred because the samples had a long history of alternate wetting and drying (desiccation), which caused the soils to be heavily overconsolidated (Chapter 6 and Table 8-1).

Consolidation curves for windblown silts (loess) are shown in Fig. 8.8h. The first figure from Clevenger (1958) shows dry density versus

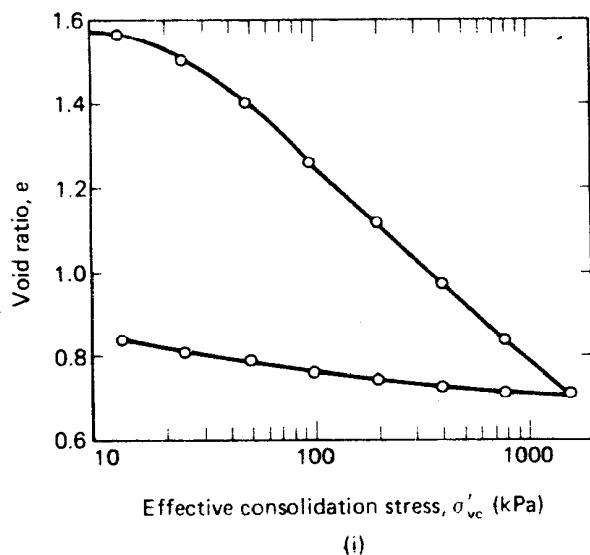


(h)



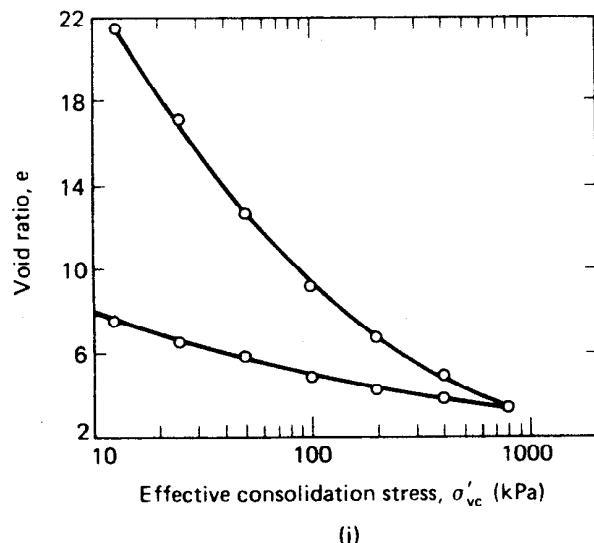
(h)

**Fig. 8.8(h) Loessial soils from the Missouri River Basin, showing effect of prewetting on consolidation. Note the drastic reduction in the void ratio when the low natural water content soil is wetted (after Clevenger, 1958).**



(i)

Fig. 8.8 (i) Newfoundland silt (after Taylor, 1948).



(j)

Fig. 8.8 (j) Newfoundland peat (after Taylor, 1948).

applied load (arithmetic) for an initially low and an initially high density sample. The second figure is the same data conventionally plotted as an  $e$  versus  $\log \sigma'_{vc}$  curve. Notice what happens when the samples are prewetted. In its natural state, loess is typically partially saturated, and when it is submerged or inundated collapse of the soil structure occurs. This condition is shown by the prewetted (dashed) curves of Fig. 8.8h. The amount of collapse upon wetting depends, as you might expect, on the initial density. Had the water not been added, the consolidation would have followed the upper curve. Sometimes prewetting loessial soils may be desirable to reduce settlements after construction.

Consolidation characteristics of another undisturbed silt are shown in Fig. 8.8i. Notice the lack of a "break" in the curve; this is typical of silty soils, and it makes determination of the preconsolidation stress difficult in practice.

Besides Mexico City clay, peats and other highly organic soils also have high void ratios and high natural water contents. The very high void ratio and concave upward shape of the compression curve is typical for peat, as shown in Fig. 8.8j. Just as with silts, determination of the preconsolidation stress is often difficult for such soils.

## 8.7 SETTLEMENT CALCULATIONS

How are settlements calculated? Figure 8.9 shows a soil layer of height  $H$  that is composed of both solids and voids, as shown in the middle of the figure. From the phase relationships described in Chapter 2, we can assume that the volume of solids  $V_s$  is equal to unity, and therefore the volume of voids is equal to  $e_o$ , the initial or original void ratio. Finally, upon completion of consolidation, the column of soil would look like that shown at the right side of Fig. 8.9. The volume of solids remains the same, of course, but the void ratio has decreased by the amount  $\Delta e$ . As you know, linear strain is defined as a change in length divided by the original length. Likewise, we may define the vertical strain in a soil layer as the ratio of the change in height to the original height of our soil column. Strain may be related to void ratio by using Fig. 8.9, or

$$\epsilon_v = \frac{\Delta L}{L_o} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\Delta H}{H_o} = \frac{s}{H_o} = \frac{\Delta e}{1 + e_o} \quad (8-3)$$

Solving for the settlement  $s$  in terms of the void ratio, we obtain:

$$s = \frac{\Delta e}{1 + e_o} H_o = \epsilon_v H_o \quad (8-4)$$

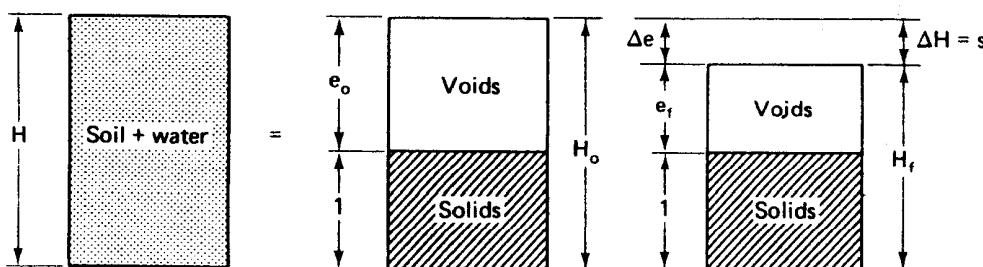


Fig. 8.9 Calculation of settlement from the phase diagram.

Note that Eq. 8-4 is based only on phase relationships and applies for both sands and clays.

### EXAMPLE 8.2

**Given:**

Prior to placement of a fill covering a large area at a site, the thickness of a compressible soil layer was 10 m. Its original in situ void ratio was 1.0. Some time after the fill was constructed, measurements indicated that the average void ratio was 0.8.

**Required:**

Estimate the settlement of the soil layer.

**Solution:**

Use Eq. 8-4.

$$s = \frac{\Delta e}{1 + e_o} H_o = \frac{1.0 - 0.8}{1 + 1.0} 10 \text{ m} = 1.0 \text{ m}$$

By knowing the relationship between void ratio and effective stress it is possible to compute the settlement of a compressible layer due to the applied load. This relationship is, of course, determined from a one-dimensional compression or consolidation test, and we have already shown several ways to display the test results. The slope of the compression curve, when the results are plotted arithmetically, is called the *coefficient of*

*compressibility,  $a_v$ , or*

$$a_v = \frac{-de}{d\sigma'_v} \quad (8-5a)$$

Since the curve is not linear (see Figs. 8.1b and 8.4b),  $a_v$  is approximately constant over only a small pressure range,  $\sigma'_1$  to  $\sigma'_2$ ; or

$$a_v = \frac{-\Delta e}{\Delta\sigma'_v} = \frac{e_1 - e_2}{\sigma'_2 - \sigma'_1} \quad (8-5b)$$

where the void ratios  $e_1$  and  $e_2$  correspond to the respective pressures  $\sigma'_1$  and  $\sigma'_2$ .

### EXAMPLE 8.3

**Given:**

The compression curve shown in Fig. 8.4b.

**Required:**

Compute the coefficient of compressibility  $a_v$  for the stress increment from 20 to 40 kPa.

**Solution:**

From Fig. 8.4b, we find the void ratios corresponding to these stresses are  $e_1 = 1.76$  and  $e_2 = 1.47$ . Using Eq. 8-5b we have,

$$a_v = \frac{1.47 - 1.76}{40 - 20} = -0.0145 \text{ per kPa}$$

Note that the units of  $a_v$  are the *reciprocal* of stress, or  $1/\text{kPa}$  or  $\text{m}^2/\text{kN}$ ;  $a_v$  could be reported as  $15 \text{ m}^2/\text{N}$ .

When the test results are plotted in terms of the percent consolidation or strain as in Fig. 8.4a, then the slope of the compression curve is the *coefficient of volume change,  $m_v$* , or

$$m_v = \frac{d\epsilon_v}{d\sigma'_v} = \frac{\Delta\epsilon_v}{\Delta\sigma'_v} = \frac{a_v}{1 + e_v} = \frac{1}{D} \quad (8-6)$$

where  $\epsilon_v$  is the vertical compression or strain (Eq. 8-3), and  $D$  is the *constrained or oedometric modulus*. Sometimes the symbol  $E_{\text{oed}}$  is used for  $D$ . In one-dimensional compression,  $\epsilon_v$  is equal to  $\Delta e/(1 + e_o)$ .

---

### EXAMPLE 8.4

**Given:**

The compression curve shown in Fig. 8.4a.

**Required:**

- Compute the coefficient of volume change  $m_v$  for the stress increment from 20 to 40 kPa.
- Determine the constrained modulus  $D$ .

**Solution:**

- From Fig. 8.4a, the  $\epsilon_v$  corresponding to  $\sigma'_v$  of 20 kPa is 23.7% and the  $\epsilon_v$  corresponding to 40 kPa is 31.4%. Use Eq. 8-6.

$$m_v = \frac{0.314 - 0.237}{40 - 20} = 0.00385 \text{ per kPa}$$

As with  $a_v$ , the units of  $m_v$  are the reciprocal of stress.

- The constrained modulus is the reciprocal of  $m_v$ , or

$$D = E_{\text{oed}} = 260 \text{ kPa}$$

---

### EXAMPLE 8.5

**Given:**

The results of Examples 8.3 and 8.4.

**Required:**

Show that  $m_v = a_v/(1 + e_o)$  for the increment 20 to 40 kPa.

**Solution:**

From Examples 8.3 and 8.4,  $a_v = 0.0145 \text{ per kPa}$  and  $m_v = 0.0039 \text{ per}$

kPa. From Fig. 8.4b,  $e_o = 2.60$ .

$$m_v = \frac{a_v}{1 + e_o} = \frac{0.0145}{1 + 2.6} = 0.0040, \text{ which is close to } 0.0039.$$


---

When test results are plotted in terms of the void ratio versus the *logarithm* of effective stress (Fig. 8.5b), then the slope of the virgin compression curve is called the *compression index*  $C_c$ , or

$$C_c = \frac{-de}{d\log \sigma'_v} = \frac{e_1 - e_2}{\log \sigma'_2 - \log \sigma'_1} = \frac{e_1 - e_2}{\log \frac{\sigma'_2}{\sigma'_1}} \quad (8-7)$$


---

### EXAMPLE 8.6

**Given:**

The consolidation test data of Fig. 8.5b.

**Required:**

Determine the compression index of this soil by (a) Eq. 8-7 and (b) graphically.

**Solution:**

- a. The virgin compression curve of Fig. 8.5b is approximately linear from 10 to 80 kPa. At least we can take the average slope between these two points. Therefore from Eq. 8-7, we have

$$C_c = \frac{2.1 - 1.21}{\log \frac{80}{10}} = 0.986$$

Note that  $C_c$  is dimensionless.

- b. To determine the  $C_c$  graphically, we note that

$$\log \frac{\sigma'_2}{\sigma'_1} = \log \frac{100}{10} = \log 10 = 1$$

Therefore if we find the difference in void ratio of the virgin compression curve over *one log cycle*, we automatically have the  $C_c$  (because the

denominator of Eq. 8-7 is one). If you do this for the log cycle 10 to 100 kPa for example, you find that  $\Delta e$  is slightly less than 1.0 for a line parallel to the average slope between 10 and 80 kPa. Therefore  $C_c$  is slightly less than 1.0, which checks the calculation of part (a).

### EXAMPLE 8.7

**Given:**

The consolidation test data of Fig. 8.8a.

**Required:**

Determine the  $C_c$  of tests 9 and 13.

**Solution:**

We can either use Eq. 8-7 or do this graphically. For test 9, using Eq. 8-7,

$$C_c = \frac{0.88 - 0.64}{\log \frac{1500}{400}} = 0.42$$

This is close to what Kaufman and Sherman (1964) obtained (0.44), as shown in Fig. 8.8a. Since the virgin compression curve is not exactly a straight line past  $\sigma'_p$ , the value of  $C_c$  depends on where you determine the slope.

For test 13, find  $\Delta e$  for the log cycle from 200 to 2000 kPa.  $\Delta e = 1.20 - 0.67 = 0.53$ ; so  $C_c = 0.53$ .

The slope of the virgin compression curve when the test results are plotted as percent consolidation or vertical strain versus *logarithm* of effective stress (Fig. 8.5a) is called the *modified compression index*,  $C_{ce}$ , and it is expressed as

$$C_{ce} = \frac{\Delta e_v}{\log \frac{\sigma'_2}{\sigma'_1}} \quad (8-8)$$

Sometimes  $C_{ce}$  is called the *compression ratio*. The relationship between the modified compression index  $C_{ce}$  and the compression index  $C_c$ , is

given by

$$C_{c\epsilon} = \frac{C_c}{1 + e_o} \quad (8-9)$$

### EXAMPLE 8.8

**Given:**

The consolidation data of Fig. 8.5a.

**Required:**

Determine the modified compression index of this soil by (a) Eq. 8-8 and (b) graphically. (c) Check the  $C_c$  from Example 8.6 by Eq. 8-9.

**Solution:**

Do this problem just like Example 8.6.

- a. Consider the virgin compression curve to be approximately a straight line over the stress range 10 to 80 kPa. Thus, using Eq. 8-8, we have

$$C_{c\epsilon} = \frac{0.385 - 0.138}{\log \frac{80}{10}} = 0.274$$

- b. To find  $C_{c\epsilon}$  graphically, choose any convenient log cycle; in this case use the cycle 10 to 100 kPa. Then the  $\Delta e_o$  for this cycle is  $38 - 10 = 28\%$ , or  $C_{c\epsilon} = 0.28$ , which checks part (a) adequately.
- c. Assume  $e_o = 2.60$  from Fig. 8.5b. Use Eq. 8-9. Therefore

$$C_c = C_{c\epsilon}(1 + e_o) = 0.274(1 + 2.6) = 0.985$$

which checks the  $C_c$  from Example 8.6.

### EXAMPLE 8.9

**Given:**

The void ratio versus log effective pressure data shown in Fig. Ex. 8.9.

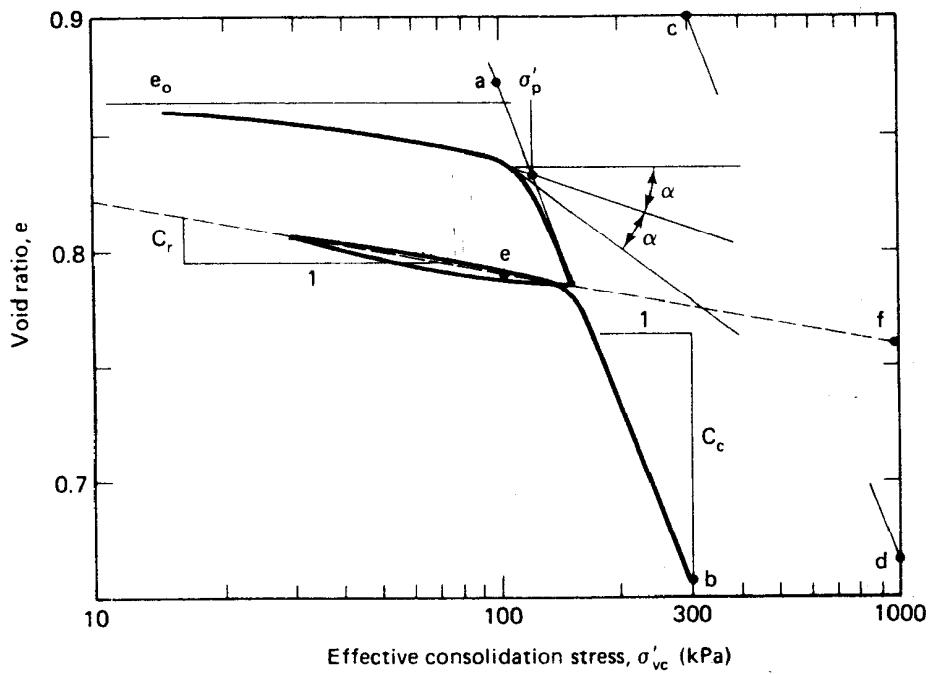


Fig. Ex. 8.9

**Required:**

Determine (a) the preconsolidation pressure  $\sigma'_p$ , (b) the compression index  $C_c$ , and (c) the modified compression index  $C_{ce}$ .

**Solution:**

- Perform the Casagrande construction according to the procedure outlined in Sec. 8.4, and find  $\sigma'_p = 121$  kPa.
- By definition (Eq. 8-7),

$$C_c = \frac{\Delta e}{\log \frac{\sigma'_2}{\sigma'_1}}$$

Using the points  $a$  and  $b$  of Fig. Ex. 8.9,  $e_a = 0.870$ ,  $e_b = 0.655$ ,  $\sigma'_a = 100$  kPa, and  $\sigma'_b = 300$  kPa. Therefore

$$C_c = \frac{e_a - e_b}{\log \frac{\sigma'_b}{\sigma'_a}} = \frac{0.870 - 0.655}{\log \frac{300}{100}} = \frac{0.215}{0.477} = 0.451$$

A second graphical way is to find  $\Delta e$  over one cycle; for example,  $\log \frac{1000}{100} = \log 10 = 1$ . When this is done,  $C_c = \Delta e$ . In Fig. Ex. 8.9 the vertical scale is not sufficient for  $\Delta \sigma' = 1$  log cycle, but it can be done in two steps,  $e_a$  to  $e_b$  and  $e_c$  to  $e_d$ . (To extend the line  $\overline{e_a e_b}$  to one full log cycle on the same graph, choose  $e_c$  at the same pressure as  $e_b$ . Then draw the line  $\overline{e_c e_d}$  parallel to  $\overline{e_a e_b}$ . This second line is merely the extension of  $\overline{e_a e_b}$  if the graph paper extended lower than shown.) Or,

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta e &= C_c = (e_a - e_b) + (e_c - e_d) \\ &= (0.870 - 0.655) + (0.90 - 0.664) \\ &= 0.215 + 0.236 \\ &= 0.451, \text{ or same as above}\end{aligned}$$

c. The modified compression index  $C_{ce}$  is

$$C_{ce} = \frac{C_c}{1 + e_o} = \frac{0.451}{1 + 0.865} = 0.242$$

To calculate consolidation settlement, Eqs. 8-5, 8-6, or 8-7 and 8-8 may be combined with Eq. 8-4. For example, using Eqs. 8-7 and 8-4 we obtain

$$s_c = C_c \frac{H_o}{1 + e_o} \log \frac{\sigma'_2}{\sigma'_1} \quad (8-10)$$

If the soil is normally consolidated, then  $\sigma'_1$  would be equal to the existing vertical overburden stress  $\sigma'_{vo}$ , and  $\sigma'_2$  would include the additional stress  $\Delta\sigma_v$  applied by the structure, or

$$s_c = C_c \frac{H_o}{1 + e_o} \log \frac{\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v}{\sigma'_{vo}} \quad (8-11)$$

When computing the settlement by means of the percent consolidation versus log effective stress curve, Eq. 8-8 is combined with Eq. 8-4 to get

$$s_c = C_{ce} H_o \log \frac{\sigma'_2}{\sigma'_1} \quad (8-12)$$

or, analogous to Eq. 8-11, for normally consolidated clays,

$$s_c = C_{ce} H_o \log \frac{\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v}{\sigma'_{vo}} \quad (8-13)$$

Other similar settlement equations can be derived using  $a_v$  and  $m_v$ . In this case the average stress for a given stress increment must be used since the compression curves are nonlinear.

## EXAMPLE 8.10

**Given:**

Test results shown in Fig. 8.4 and 8.5 are representative of the compressibility of a 10 m layer of normally consolidated San Francisco Bay Mud. The initial void ratio is about 2.5.

**Required:**

Estimate the consolidation settlement of a large fill on the site if the average total stress increase on the clay layer is 10 kPa.

**Solution:**

First estimate the preconsolidation stress to be about 7 kPa. Since the clay is normally consolidated,  $\sigma'_p \approx \sigma'_{vo}$ . Use the results of Examples 8.6 and 8.8.  $C_c$  is 0.986 and  $C_{ce}$  is 0.274. Use Eq. 8-11.

$$s_c = 0.986 \left( \frac{10 \text{ m}}{1 + 2.5} \right) \log \frac{7 + 10}{7} = 1.09 \text{ m}$$

Use Eq. 8-13.

$$s_c = 0.274(10 \text{ m}) \log \frac{7 + 10}{7} = 1.06 \text{ m}$$

This slight difference is the result of obtaining data from the small graphs. The settlement would be reported as "about 1 m." With a high water table, the actual settlement would be even slightly less since, with settlements this large, fill that was above the water table would now be submerged. Thus the resulting fill load would be reduced. To take this aspect into account, trial and error computations are required.

There are a couple of reasons for the popularity in engineering practice of using the percent consolidation or vertical strain versus log effective stress curve to compute settlements. First, estimating field settlements is simple. You can read the percent compression directly from the graph, once you have a good estimate of the in situ vertical overburden stress.

Another reason the percent consolidation versus log effective stress plots are popular is that during the consolidation test it is often desirable to know what the shape of the compression curve looks like, so as to be

able to obtain an early evaluation of the preconsolidation pressure. The void ratio versus log effective stress curve cannot be plotted during the test as it is necessary to know both the initial and final values of the void ratio. This calculation requires the determination of the dry mass of solids, which can only be determined at the *end* of the test. Therefore the  $e$  versus  $\log \sigma'_{vv}$  curve cannot be plotted during the test. However the percent consolidation versus log pressure curve can be plotted while the test is being performed. Another advantage is that when the preconsolidation pressure is being approached, the load increments placed on the sample can be reduced so as to define more carefully the transition between the reloading curve and the virgin compression curve. Also, the test can be stopped when two or three points define the straight line portion of the virgin compression curve. Finally, as Ladd (1971a) pointed out, two samples may show very different  $e$  versus  $\log \sigma'_{vv}$  plots but may have similar vertical strain versus log effective stress curves because of differences in initial void ratio.

---

### EXAMPLE 8.11

**Given:**

The data of Example 8.10.

**Required:**

Estimate the settlement *directly* from Fig. 8.5a.

**Solution:**

If the preconsolidation stress is about 7 kPa, the final stress after loading is 17 kPa. Refer to Fig. 8.5a. At the  $\sigma'_p$ , which is equal to  $\sigma'_{vv}$  since it is normally consolidated, the  $\epsilon_v$  is about 5.5%. At  $\sigma'_v = 17$  kPa, the  $\epsilon_v$  is about 22%. Therefore the  $\Delta\epsilon_v$  is 16.5%, so the estimated settlement will be

$$s_c = 0.165(10 \text{ m}) = 1.65 \text{ m}$$

The settlement is more in this example because the slope of the virgin compression curve is steeper from 7 to 17 kPa than it is from 10 to 80 kPa (see Example 8.6).

---

All the equations for settlement presented above were for a single compressible layer. When the consolidation properties or the void ratio

vary significantly with depth or are different for distinct soil layers, then the total consolidation settlement is merely the sum of the settlements of the individual layers, or

$$s_c = \sum_{i=1}^n s_{ci} \quad (8-14)$$

where  $s_{ci}$  is the settlement of the  $i$ th layer of  $n$  layers as calculated by Eqs. 8-10 through 8-13.

So far in this section we have only discussed settlement calculations for normally consolidated soils. What happens if the soil is overconsolidated? You will recall that an overconsolidated soil is one in which  $\sigma'_{vo}$  is less than  $\sigma'_p$ . Overconsolidated soils are probably encountered more often in engineering practice than normally consolidated soils. So it is important to know how to make settlement calculations for this important class of soil deposits.

The first thing to do is to check whether the soil is preconsolidated. You do this by comparing the preconsolidation pressure  $\sigma'_p$  to the existing vertical effective overburden pressure,  $\sigma'_{vo}$ . You already know how to calculate  $\sigma'_{vo}$  from Chapter 7. If the soil layer is definitely overconsolidated, then you have to check to see if the stress added by the engineering structure,  $\Delta\sigma_v$ , plus the  $\sigma'_{vo}$  exceeds the preconsolidation pressure  $\sigma'_p$ . Whether or not it does can make a large difference in the amount of settlement calculated, as is shown in Fig. 8.10.

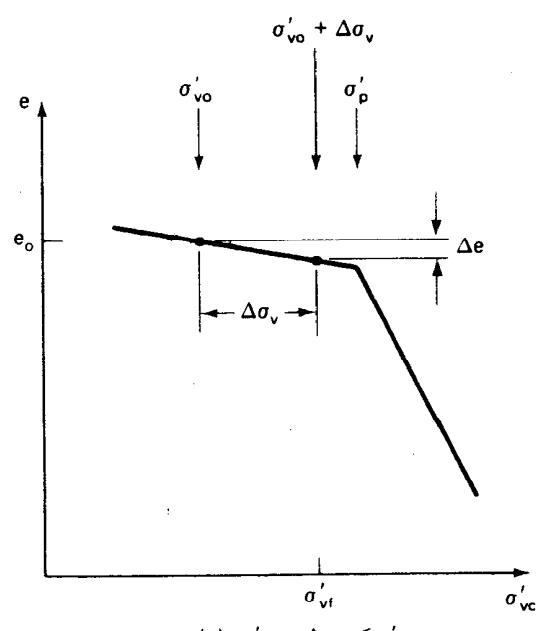
If you have the case shown in Fig. 8.10a, that is, if  $\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v \leq \sigma'_p$ , then use either Eq. 8-11 or 8-13, but with the recompression indices  $C_r$  or  $C_{re}$  in place of  $C_c$  and  $C_{ce}$ , respectively. The *recompression index*,  $C_r$ , is defined just like  $C_c$ , except that it is for the average slope of the recompression part of the  $e$  versus  $\log\sigma'_v$  curve (Fig. 8.7). If the data are plotted in terms of  $\epsilon_v$  versus  $\log\sigma'_v$ , then the slope of the recompression curve is called the *modified recompression index*  $C_{re}$  (sometimes called the *recompression ratio*).  $C_r$  and  $C_{re}$  are related just like  $C_c$  and  $C_{ce}$  (Eq. 8-9), or

$$C_{re} = \frac{C_r}{1 + e_0} \quad (8-15)$$

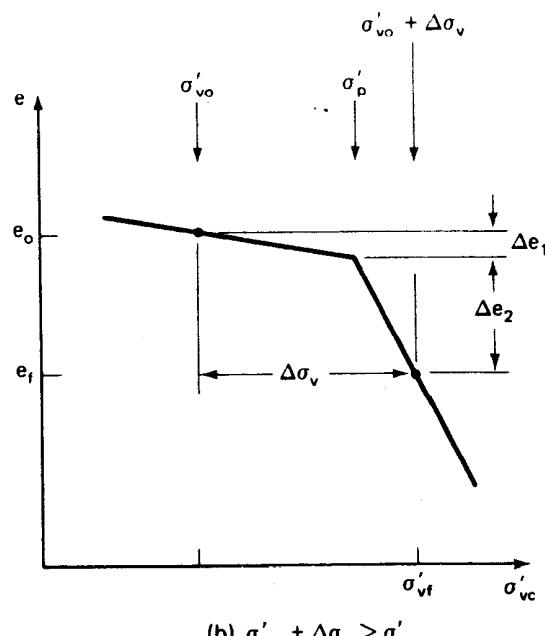
### EXAMPLE 8.12

**Given:**

The void ratio versus log effective pressure data shown in Fig. Ex. 8.9.



$$(a) \sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v \leq \sigma'_p$$



$$(b) \sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v > \sigma'_p$$

Fig. 8.10 Principle of settlement calculations for overconsolidated soils.

**Required:**

Calculate (a) the recompression index  $C_r$  and (b) the modified recompression index  $C_{re}$ .

**Solution:**

- a. The recompression index  $C_r$  is found in a similar manner to the  $C_c$  (Eq. 8-7). Using the points  $e$  and  $f$  over 1 log cycle, we find that

$$C_r = e_e - e_f = 0.790 - 0.760 = 0.030$$

- b. The modified recompression index  $C_{re}$  is found from Eq. 8-15.

$$C_{re} = \frac{C_r}{1 + e_o} = \frac{0.030}{1 + 0.865} = 0.016$$

Note that neither of these terms has units.

To calculate settlements of overconsolidated clays, Eqs. 8-11 and 8-13 become

$$s_c = C_r \frac{H_o}{1 + e_o} \log \frac{\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v}{\sigma'_{vo}} \quad (8-16)$$

$$s_c = C_{re} H_o \log \frac{\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v}{\sigma'_{vo}} \quad (8-17)$$

when  $\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v \leq \sigma'_p$ . Since  $C_r$  is usually much less than  $C_c$ , the settlements occurring when  $\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v \leq \sigma'_p$  are much less than if the soil were normally consolidated.

If the added stress caused by the structure exceeds the preconsolidation stress, then much larger settlements would be expected. This is because the compressibility of the soil is much greater on the virgin compression curve than on the recompression curve as was shown, for example, in Fig. 8.7. For the case, then, where  $\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v > \sigma'_p$  the settlement equation consists of two parts: (1) the change in void ratio or strain on the recompression curve from the original in situ conditions of  $(e_o, \sigma'_{vo})$  or  $(\epsilon_{vo}, \sigma'_{vo})$  to  $\sigma'_p$ ; and (2) the change in void ratio or strain on the virgin compression curve from  $\sigma'_p$  to the final conditions of  $(e_f, \sigma'_{vf})$  or  $(\epsilon_{vf}, \sigma'_{vf})$ . Note that  $\sigma'_{vf} = \sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v$ . These two parts are shown graphically in Fig. 8.10b. The complete settlement equation then becomes

$$s_c = C_r \frac{H_o}{1 + e_o} \log \frac{\sigma'_{vo} + (\sigma'_p - \sigma'_{vo})}{\sigma'_{vo}} + C_c \frac{H_o}{1 + e_o} \log \frac{\sigma'_p + (\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v - \sigma'_p)}{\sigma'_p} \quad (8-18a)$$

This equation reduces to

$$s_c = C_r \frac{H_o}{1 + e_o} \log \frac{\sigma'_p}{\sigma'_{vo}} + C_c \frac{H_o}{1 + e_o} \log \frac{\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v}{\sigma'_p} \quad (8-18b)$$

In terms of the modified indices, we have

$$s_c = C_{rc} H_o \log \frac{\sigma'_p}{\sigma'_{vo}} + C_{cc} H_o \log \frac{\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v}{\sigma'_p} \quad (8-19)$$

Both Eqs. 8-18 and 8-19 give the same results. One could argue that in the right-hand term of Eq. 8-18 the void ratio corresponding to the preconsolidation pressure on the true virgin compression curve should be used. Although this is technically correct, it doesn't make any significant difference in the answer.

Sometimes the degree of overconsolidation varies throughout the compressible layer. You could apply Eq. 8-16 or 8-17 to the part where  $\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v < \sigma'_p$  and Eq. 8-18 or 8-19 to the part where  $\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v > \sigma'_p$ . In practice, however, it is usually easier to simply divide the entire stratum into several layers, apply the appropriate equation to calculate the average settlement for each layer, and then sum up the settlements by Eq. 8-14.

What is the best way to get  $C_r$  and  $C_{rc}$  for use in Eqs. 8-16 through 8-19? Because of sample disturbance, the slope of the initial recompression portion of the laboratory consolidation curve (Fig. 8.7) is too steep and would yield values that are too large for these indices. Leonards (1976) offers the reasons why in situ values are generally smaller than those obtained from laboratory measurements: (1) disturbance during sampling, storage, and preparation of test specimens; (2) recompression of gas bubbles in the voids; and (3) errors in test procedures and methods of interpreting test results. This latter item includes the problem of reproducing the in situ state of stress in the specimen. Leonards recommends that the  $\sigma'_{vo}$  be applied to the specimen and that it be innundated and allowed to come to equilibrium for at least 24 hours before starting the incremental loading. Any tendency to swell should be controlled. Then the consolidation test is continued with relatively large load increments. To reproduce as closely as possible the in situ stress state, Leonards recommends that the sample be consolidated to slightly less than the  $\sigma'_p$  and then be allowed to rebound. This is the first cycle shown in Fig. 8.11. If you don't have a good idea of the  $\sigma'_p$ , then consolidate initially to  $\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v$  only, which is presumably less than  $\sigma'_p$ . The determination of  $C_r$  or  $C_{rc}$  is over the range of  $\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v$ , as shown in Fig. 8.11. It is common practice to take the average slope of the two curves. From the typical test results shown in Fig. 8.11, you can see that the actual values of the recompression index depend on the stress at which the rebound-reload cycle starts, especially whether it starts at a stress less than or greater than the  $\sigma'_p$ . See the difference in

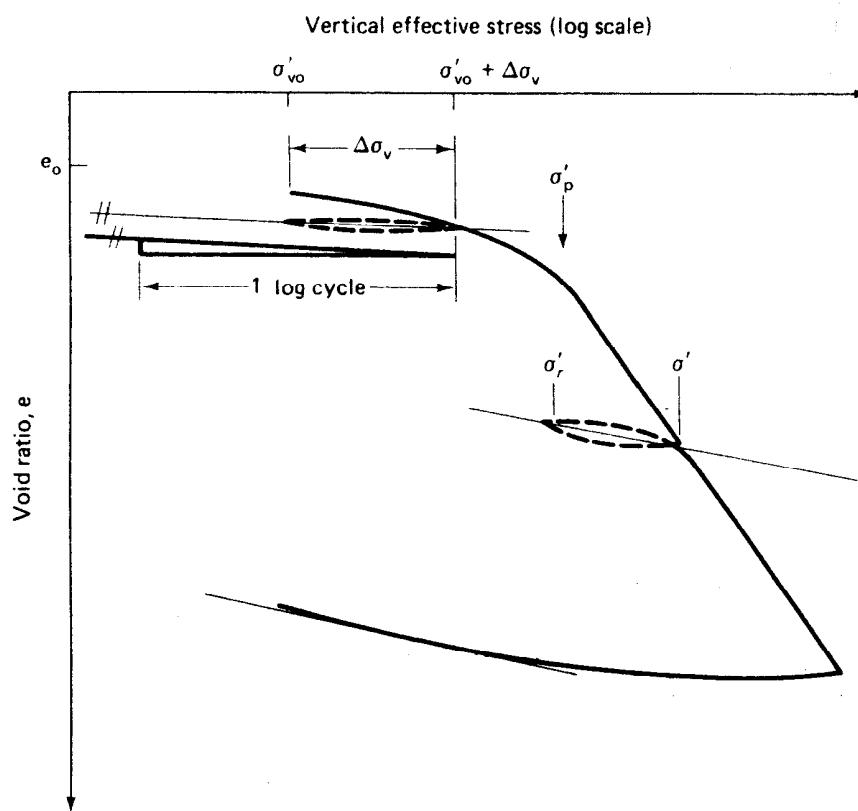


Fig. 8.11 Typical consolidation curve showing the recommended procedure for determining the  $C_r$  (after Leonards, 1976).

slopes of the rebound curves shown in the figure. The  $C_r$  also depends on the OCR to which rebounding and reloading take place, for example, the ratio of  $\sigma'/\sigma'_r$  in Fig. 8.11. The final consideration affecting the value of  $C_r$  is the presence of gas bubbles in the pores of the soil. Use of back pressure (Chapter 11) can sometimes take care of this problem.

### EXAMPLE 8.13

**Given:**

The data in Example 8.1 and Fig. 8.7 is representative of a layer of silty clay 10 m thick.

**Required:**

Estimate the consolidation settlement if the structural loads at the surface will increase the average stress in the layer by 35 kPa.

**Solution:**

From Example 8.1, we know that the  $\sigma'_{vo}$  is 80 kPa and the  $\sigma'_p$  is about 130 kPa;  $e_o$  is about 0.84. Since the applied stress is 35 kPa, the  $\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v = 115$  kPa < 130 kPa. Therefore use Eq. 8-16. To get  $C_r$ , we will take the average slope of the two curves *DE* and *EF* near the bottom of Fig. 8.7.  $C_r$  is approximately 0.03. Now use Eq. 8-16.

$$s_c = 0.03 \frac{10 \text{ m}}{1 + 0.84} \log \frac{80 + 35}{80} = 0.026 \text{ m or } 26 \text{ mm}$$

From the preceding discussion, the  $C_r$  in this example is probably too large since we determined it from a recycle well beyond the  $\sigma'_p$ . It is therefore very likely that the settlements in the field will be less than the prediction of 26 mm.

---

**EXAMPLE 8.14****Given:**

The data in Example 8.13, except that the structural engineer made an error in computing the loads; the correct loads now will produce an average stress increase of 90 kPa in the silty clay layer.

**Required:**

Estimate the consolidation settlement due to the new loads.

**Solution:**

Now the applied stress is much greater than  $\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v$ , or  $80 + 90 = 170 > 130$  kPa. Therefore we must use Eq. 8-18. In addition to the  $C_r$ , we need the compression index  $C_c$ . From Fig. 8.7 we find that  $C_c$  is about 0.25. Substitution into Eq. 8-18b gives

$$\begin{aligned} s_c &= 0.03 \frac{10 \text{ m}}{1 + 0.84} \log \frac{130}{80} + 0.25 \frac{10 \text{ m}}{1 + 0.84} \log \frac{80 + 90}{130} \\ &= 0.034 \text{ m} + 0.158 \text{ m} \\ &= 0.193 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

As in Example 8.10, this value would be reported as "about 20 cm" due to the uncertainties in sampling, testing, and in estimating the  $\sigma'_p$ , the applied stress increase, and  $C_r$  and  $C_c$ .

## 8.8 FACTORS AFFECTING THE DETERMINATION OF $\sigma'_p$

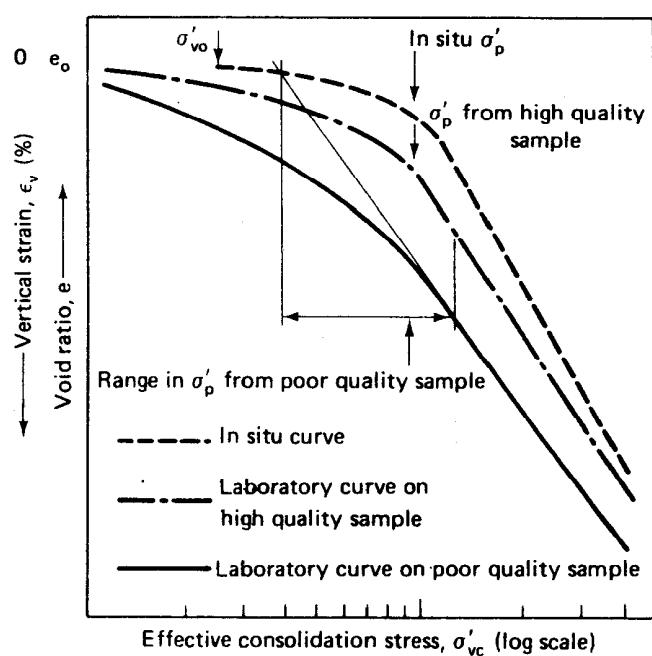
Brumund, Jonas, and Ladd (1976) discuss three factors which significantly influence the determination of  $\sigma'_p$  from laboratory consolidation tests. We have already mentioned one, the effect of sample disturbance on the shape of the consolidation curve (Fig. 8.7). We showed how the "break" in the curve became less sharp with increasing disturbance. You can see these effects in Fig. 8.12a. With sensitive clays especially (for example, Figs. 8.8d and e), increasing sample disturbance lowers the value of the  $\sigma'_p$ . At the same time the void ratio is decreased (or the strain increased) for any given value of  $\sigma'_{vc}$ . As a consequence, the compressibility at stresses less than the  $\sigma'_p$  are increased, and at stresses greater than the  $\sigma'_p$  the compressibility is decreased.

A load increment ratio (LIR) of unity is used in conventional consolidation testing (for example, ASTM D 2435). The LIR is defined as the change in pressure or the pressure increment divided by the initial pressure before the load is applied. This relationship is as follows:

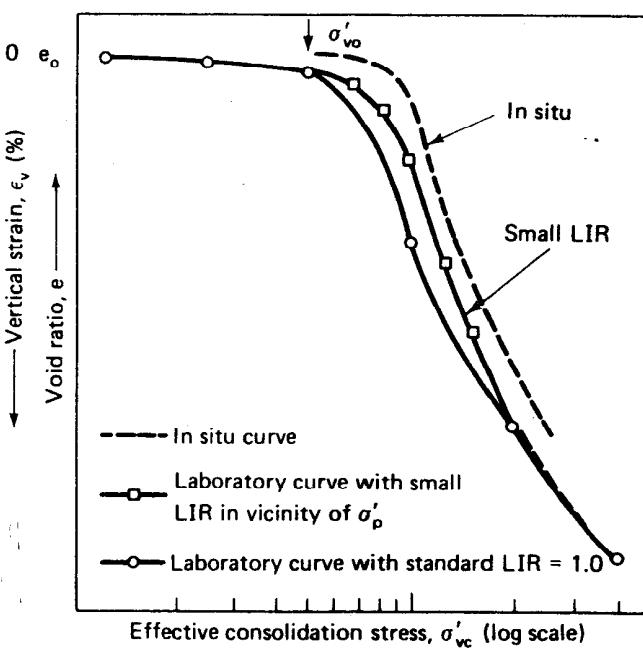
$$\text{LIR} = \frac{\Delta\sigma}{\sigma_{\text{initial}}} \quad (8-20)$$

where  $\Delta\sigma$  is the incremental stress, and  $\sigma_{\text{initial}}$  is the previous stress. An LIR of unity means that the load is doubled each time. This procedure results in evenly spaced data points on the void ratio versus log effective stress curve such as shown in Fig. 8.5b.

Experience with soft, sensitive clays (Fig. 8.8d), has shown that a small stress change or even vibration may drastically alter the soil structure. For such soils a load increment ratio of unity may not accurately define the value of the preconsolidation stress, so an LIR of less than one is often used. The influence of varying the LIR on the compressibility as well as on the  $\sigma'_p$  of a typical clay is shown in Fig. 8.12b. The effect of the duration of the load increment is shown in Fig. 8.12c. The common (ASTM D 2435) procedure is for each increment to be left on the sample



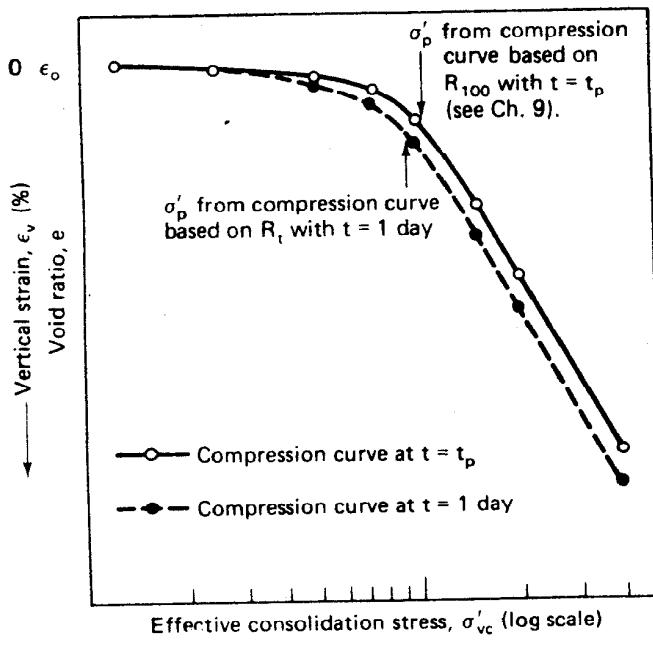
(a)



(b)

Fig. 8.12 Factors affecting the laboratory determination of  $d'_p$ : (a) effect of sample disturbance; (b) effect of load increment ratio;

## Consolidation and Consolidation Settlements



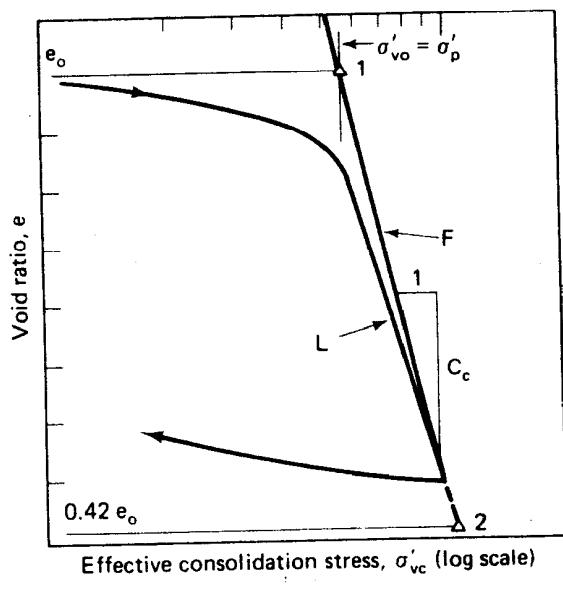
(c)

Fig. 8.12 (c) effect of load increment duration (after Brumund, Jonas, and Ladd, 1976).

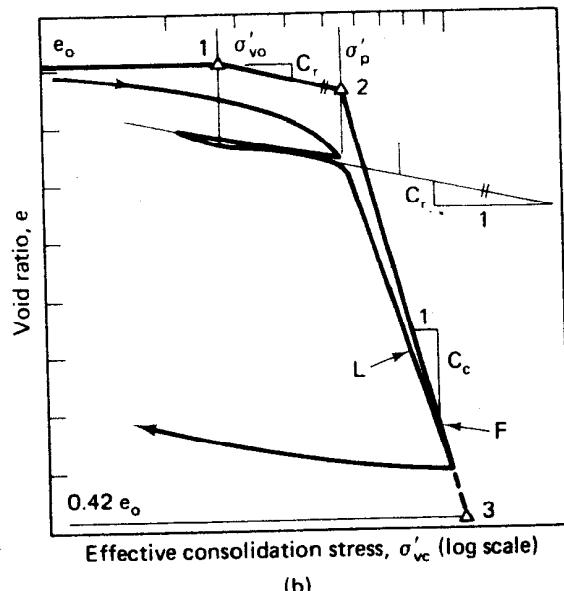
for 24 hours. Note how this procedure affects the  $\sigma'_p$ . Some of the terminology used for these figures will become clearer after you read Chapter 9.

## 8.9 PREDICTION OF FIELD CONSOLIDATION CURVES

Since the consolidation test really is a reloading of the soil (shown by curve *BCD* of Fig. 8.7), even with high-quality sampling and testing the actual recompression curve has a slope which is somewhat *less* than the slope of the *field virgin compression curve* (*OAD* in Fig. 8.7). Schmertmann (1955) developed a graphical procedure to evaluate the slope of the field virgin compression curve. The procedure for this construction technique is illustrated in Fig. 8.13, where typical void ratio versus log effective stress



(a)



(b)

Fig. 8.13 Illustration of the Schmertmann (1955) procedure to obtain the field virgin compression curve: (a) normally consolidated soil; (b) overconsolidated soil.

curves are plotted. To correct the laboratory virgin compression curve for a normally consolidated soil in the field, proceed as follows:

1. Perform the Casagrande construction and evaluate the preconsolidation pressure  $\sigma'_p$ .
2. Calculate the initial void ratio  $e_o$ . Draw a horizontal line from  $e_o$ , parallel to the log effective stress axis, to the preconsolidation pressure  $\sigma'_p$ . This defines control point 1, illustrated by triangle 1 in Fig. 8.13a.
3. From a point on the void ratio axis equal to  $0.42e_o$ , draw a horizontal line, and where the line meets the extension of the laboratory virgin compression curve  $L$ , define another control point, as shown by triangle 2. You should note that the coefficient of  $e_o$  is not a "magic number," but is a result of many observations on different clays.
4. Connect the two control points by a straight line. The slope of this line,  $F$ , defines the compression index  $C_c$  that most probably exists in the field. Line  $F$  is the *field virgin compression curve*. The Schmertmann correction allows for disturbance of the clay due to sampling, transportation, and storage of the sample plus subsequent trimming and reloading during the consolidation test.

### EXAMPLE 8.15

**Given:**

The  $e$  versus  $\log \sigma$  data of Fig. Ex. 8.15. This consolidation data is from an undisturbed clay sample taken from the midpoint of a compressible layer 10 m thick. The OCR = 1.0

**Required:**

Using the Schmertmann procedure determine (a) the slope of the field virgin compression curve. (b) Compute the settlement of this clay layer if the stress is increased from 275 to 800 kPa. Calculate, using both the laboratory and field virgin compression curves. (c) Comment on the difference, if any.

**Solution:**

- a. First, establish the field virgin compression curve according to the Schmertmann procedure outlined above. Perform the Casagrande con-

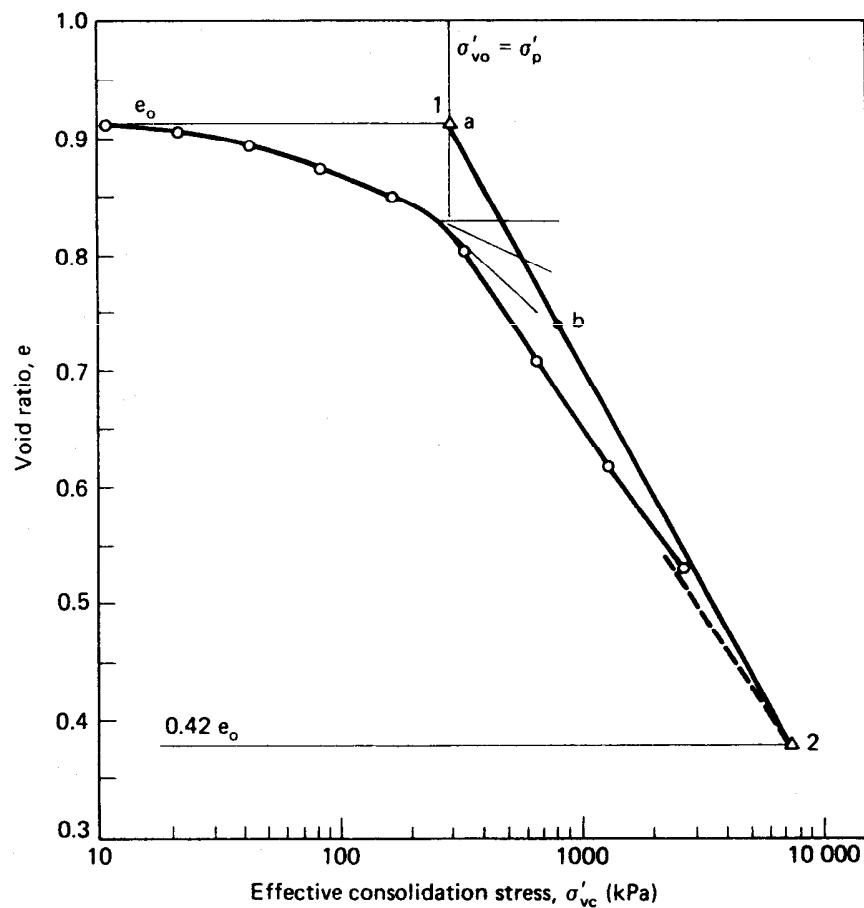


Fig. Ex. 8.15

struction on the curve shown in Fig. Ex. 8.15 to obtain the preconsolidation pressure.  $\sigma'_p$  is found to be 275 kPa. Draw a horizontal line from  $e_0 = 0.912$  to the point where it intersects the preconsolidation pressure to establish control point 1, shown by triangle 1. Extend the virgin compression curve to  $0.42 e_0$  ( $0.42 \times 0.912$ ) or 0.38, to establish control point 2. Connecting the two control points 1 to 2 creates the field virgin compression curve.

The value of  $C_c$  from the field virgin compression curve is determined just like you did for the laboratory consolidation curve (see Examples 8.6, 8.7, and 8.9). For the log cycle from 1000 to 10 000 kPa,  $e_{1000} = 0.705$  and  $e_{10000} = 0.329$ ; therefore  $C_c = 0.705 - 0.329 = 0.376$ . The slope of the laboratory virgin compression curve is found in the same way and equals 0.31. We'll need this value later.

b. To compute the settlement, we may use either Eq. 8-4 or 8-11. Use Eq. 8-4 first:

$$s_c = \frac{\Delta e}{1 + e_o} H_o$$

The change in void ratio,  $\Delta e$ , is merely the difference in void ratio for  $\sigma = 275$  kPa and  $\sigma = 800$  kPa. These values are 0.912 at point *a* and 0.744 at point *b* in Fig. Ex. 8.15 on the field virgin compression curve. Therefore,

$$s_c = \frac{0.912 - 0.744}{1 + 0.912} 10 \text{ m} = 0.88 \text{ m}$$

Using Eq. 8-11:

$$\begin{aligned} s_c &= \frac{C_c}{1 + e_o} H_o \log \frac{\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v}{\sigma'_{vo}} \\ &= \frac{0.376}{1 + 0.912} (10 \text{ m}) \log \frac{800}{275} = 0.91 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

The slight difference in the calculated values of the consolidation settlement  $s_c$  is due to small errors in reading data points from Fig. Ex. 8.15.

If we calculate the consolidation settlement using the laboratory virgin compression curve to establish  $C_c$ , we would obtain (Eq. 8-11)

$$s_c = \frac{0.31}{1 + 0.912} (10 \text{ m}) \log \frac{800}{275} = 0.75 \text{ m, or } 16\% \text{ lower}$$

c. Comment on the difference. Sixteen percent could be significant in some cases, especially if the proposed structure is particularly sensitive to settlements. Ladd (1971a) has found the Schmertmann correction will increase compression indices about 15% for fairly good samples of soft to medium clay. Since the procedure is simple, it would seem prudent to use it to make the best possible estimates of field compressibility. On the other hand, beware of too much precision in settlement calculations. When foundation engineers present their results in an engineering report, the expected settlement would be stated as "approximately 0.9 m", because including more significant figures would imply more than the actual precision.

---

The Schmertmann procedure for an overconsolidated soil is illustrated in Fig. 8.13b. If it is suspected that an overconsolidated soil is being tested, then it is good practice to follow the test procedure suggested in Sec. 8.7 and Fig. 8.11. A cycle of partial unloading and reloading is shown in Fig. 8.13b and in Figs. 8.8a, b, and c. The average slope of the

rebound-reload curve establishes  $C_r$ . The remaining steps in the Schmertmann procedure are as follows:

1. Calculate the initial void ratio  $e_o$ . Draw a horizontal line from  $e_o$ , parallel to the log effective stress axis, to the existing vertical overburden pressure  $\sigma'_{vo}$ . This establishes control point 1, as shown by triangle 1 in Fig. 8.13b.
2. From control point 1, draw a line parallel to the rebound-reload curve to the preconsolidation pressure  $\sigma'_p$ . This will establish control point 2, as shown by triangle 2 in Fig. 8.13b.
3. In a manner similar to that used for the normally consolidated soil, draw a horizontal line from a void ratio equal to  $0.42e_o$ . Where this line intersects the laboratory virgin compression curve  $L$ , establish a third control point, as shown by triangle 3 in Fig. 8.13b. Connect control points 1 and 2, and 2 and 3 by straight lines. The slope of the line  $F$  joining control points 2 and 3 defines the compression index  $C_c$  for the field virgin compression curve. The slope of the line joining control points 1 and 2 of course represents the recompression index  $C_r$ . An example of a field compression curve is shown in Fig. 8.8c.

### EXAMPLE 8.16

**Given:**

The void ratio versus pressure data shown below. The initial void ratio is 0.725, and the existing vertical effective overburden pressure is 130 kPa.

Void Ratio	Pressure (kPa)
0.708	25
0.691	50
0.670	100
0.632	200
0.635	100
0.650	25
0.642	50
0.623	200
0.574	400
0.510	800
0.445	1600
0.460	400
0.492	100
0.530	25

**Required:**

- Plot the data as  $e$  versus  $\log \sigma'_{vc}$ .
- Evaluate the overconsolidation ratio.
- Determine the field compression index using the Schmertmann procedure.
- If this consolidation test is representative of a 12 m thick clay layer, compute the settlement of this layer if an additional stress of 220 kPa were added.

**Solution:**

- a. The data is plotted in Fig. Ex. 8.16.

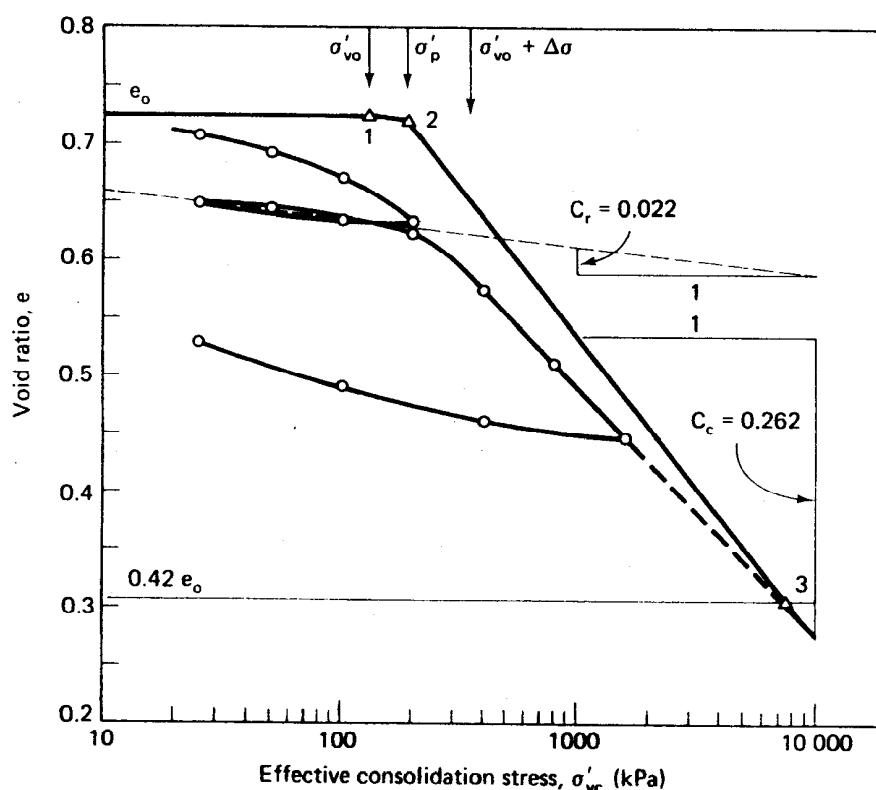


Fig. Ex. 8.16 (Data modified slightly from Soderman and Kim, 1970.)

b. The given value of  $\sigma'_{vo}$  is plotted on the graph, and the Casagrande construction performed to evaluate  $\sigma'_p$ . A value of 190 kPa is found.

$$\text{OCR} = \frac{\sigma'_p}{\sigma'_{vo}} = \frac{190}{130} = 1.46$$

Thus the soil is slightly overconsolidated.

c. Using the Schmertmann procedure for overconsolidated clays as given previously, control points 1, 2, and 3 are established, as shown in Fig. Ex. 8.16. The values of  $C_r$  and  $C_c$  are evaluated directly from Fig. Ex. 8.16 over one log cycle.  $C_r = 0.611 - 0.589 = 0.022$ , and  $C_c = 0.534 - 0.272 = 0.262$ . (Note that  $C_r \approx 10\%$  of  $C_c$ .)

d. Using Eq. 8-18b, the settlement is computed:

$$\begin{aligned} s_c &= \frac{C_r}{1 + e_o} H_o \log \frac{\sigma'_p}{\sigma'_{vo}} + \frac{C_c}{1 + e_o} H_o \log \frac{\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma}{\sigma'_p} \\ &= \frac{0.022}{1 + 0.725} (12 \text{ m}) \log \frac{190}{130} + \frac{0.262}{1 + 0.725} (12 \text{ m}) \log \frac{130 + 220}{190} \\ &= 0.025 \text{ m} + 0.484 \text{ m} \\ &= 0.509 \text{ m} \approx 0.5 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$


---

## 8.10 SOIL PROFILES

In Table 8-1 we list some of the causes of preconsolidation in soil deposits. In this section, we study some typical soil profiles from various parts of the world and indicate their preconsolidation stresses as well as their effective vertical overburden stresses with depth. These overburden stress profiles were calculated just like those of Chapter 7, using the densities and thicknesses of the soil layers as well as the depths to the water table. To perform a detailed settlement analysis, typical profiles such as these are established for the proposed site and are based on subsurface investigations, undisturbed sampling, and laboratory testing. The typical soil profiles are presented in Figs. 8.14 through 8.18.

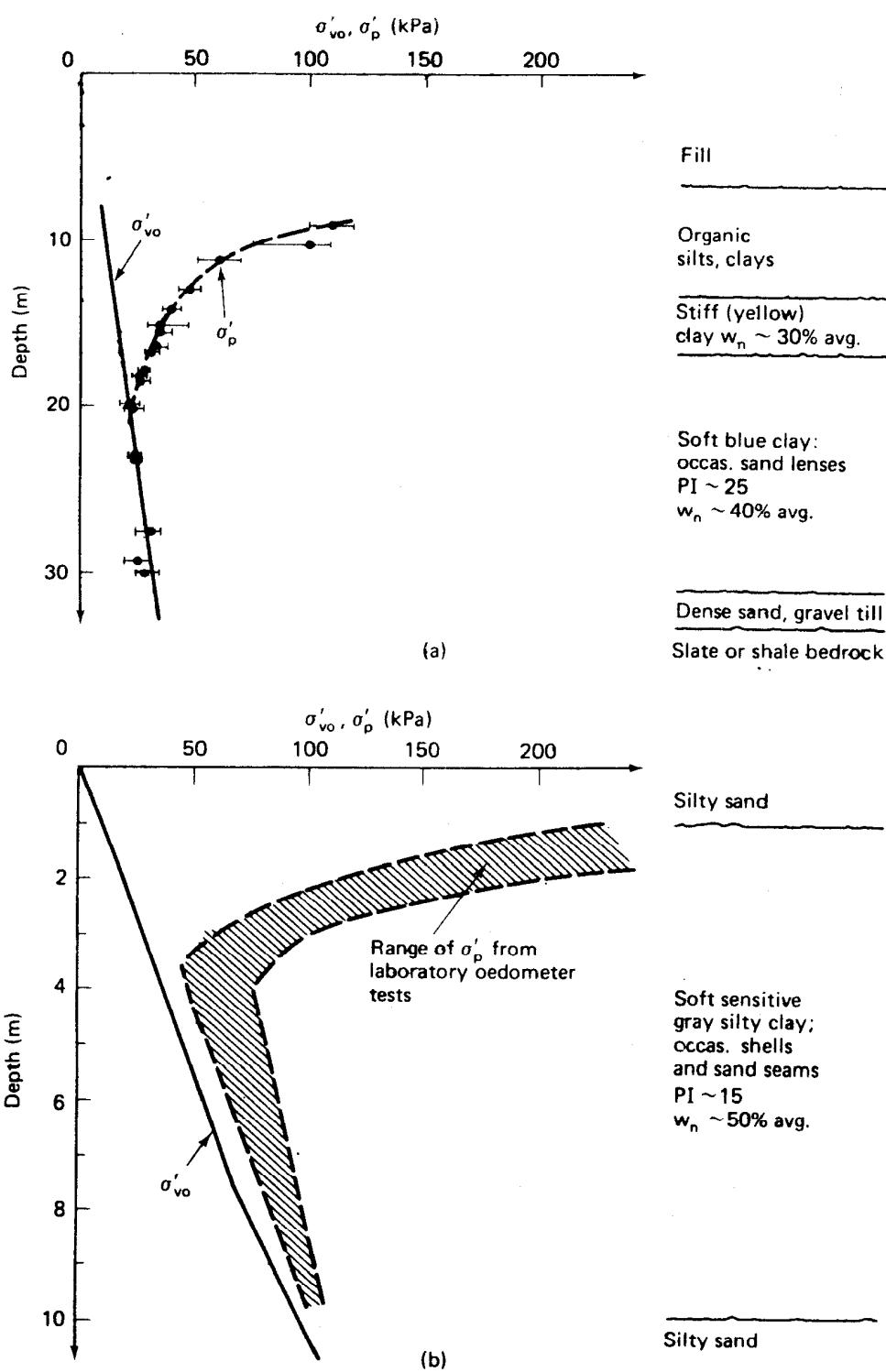
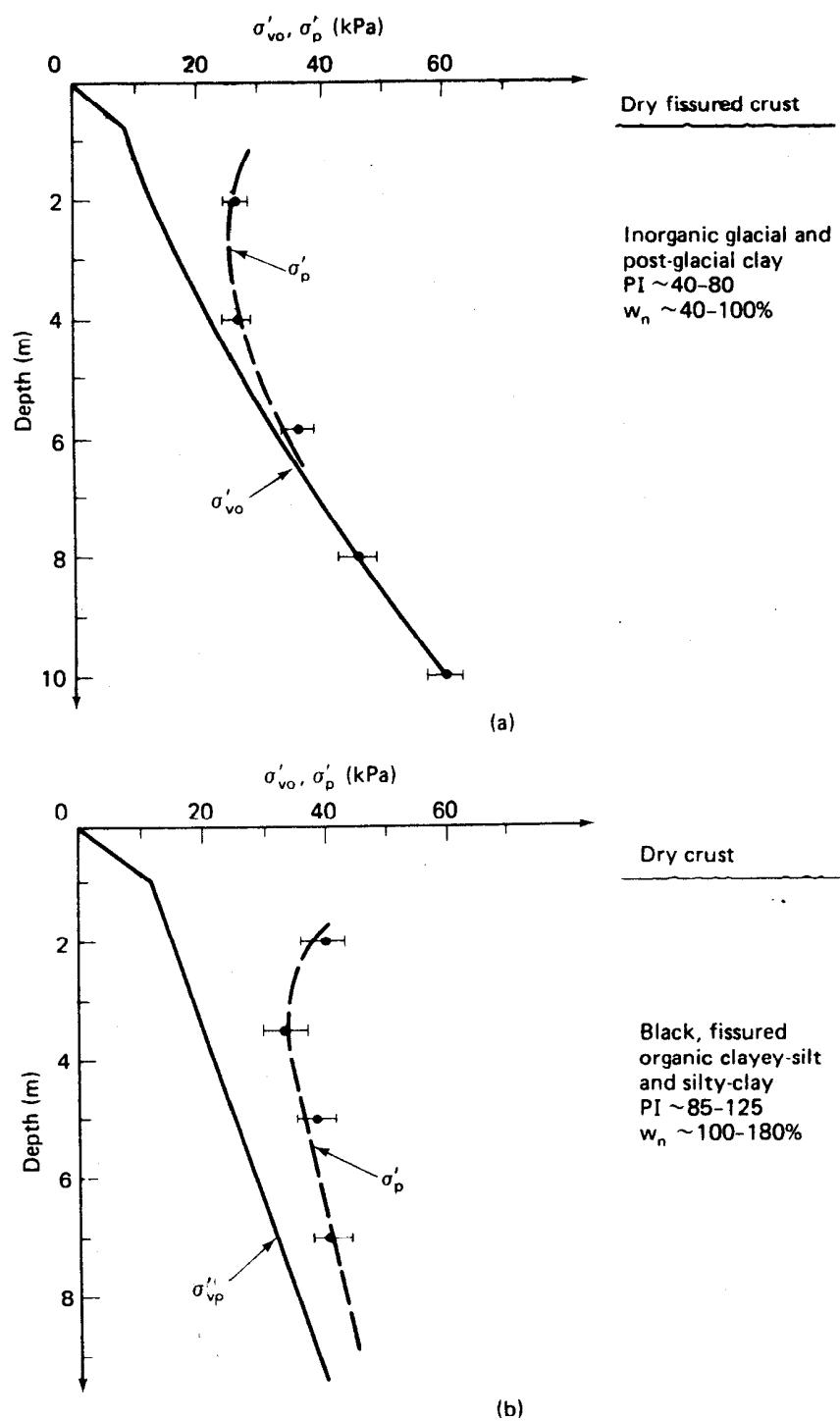


Fig. 8.14 Overburden and preconsolidation stress profiles for marine clays of the Boston area: (a) Mystic power station (after Casagrande and Fadum, 1944); (b) I-95 test section, Portsmouth, NH (after Ladd, 1972).



**Fig. 8.15 Overburden and preconsolidation profiles for two Swedish clays: (a) Skå-Edeby test field near Stockholm (after Holm and Holtz, 1977); (b) Kalix test site (after Holtz and Holm, 1979).**

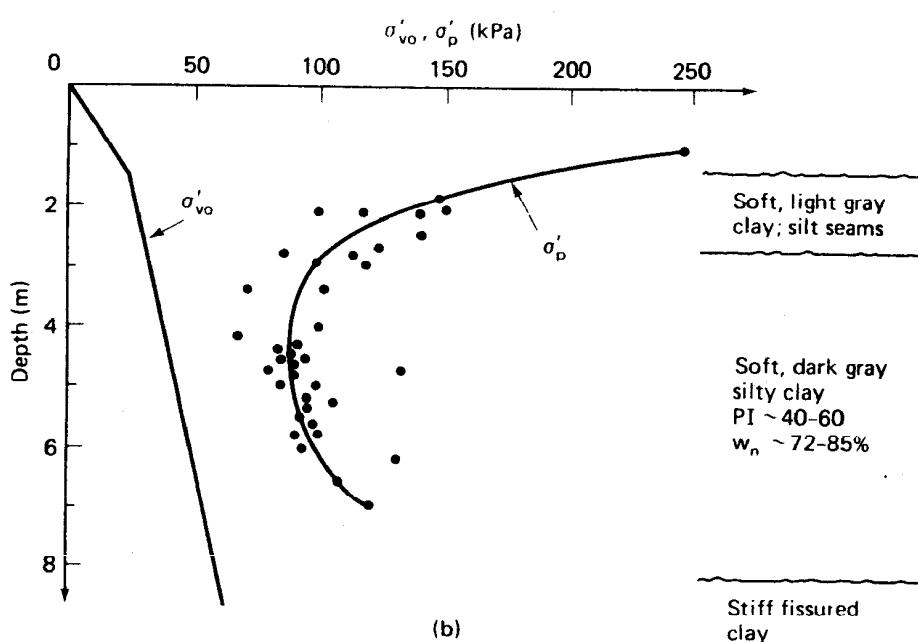
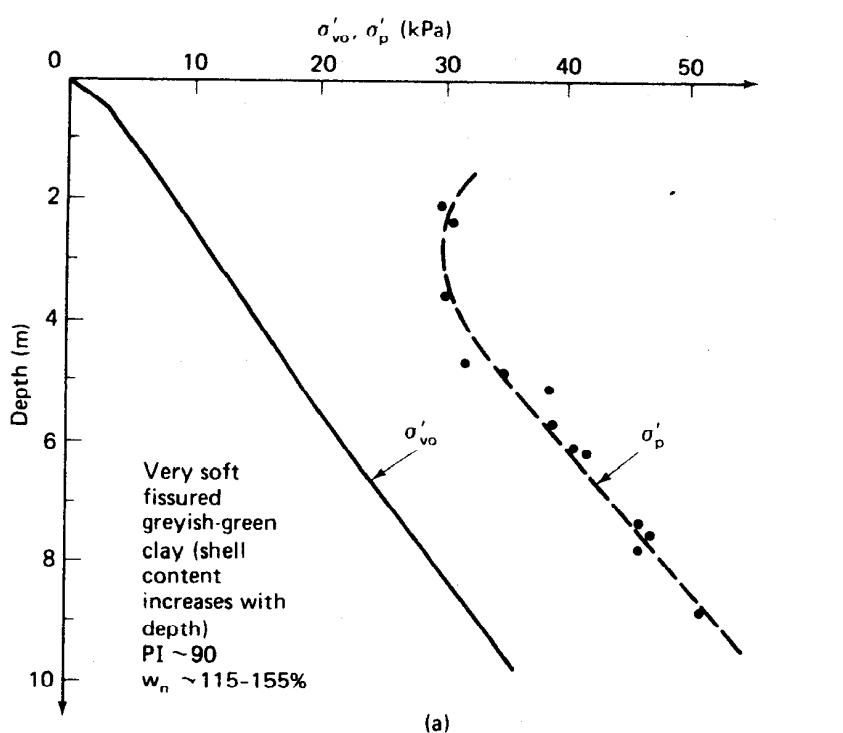
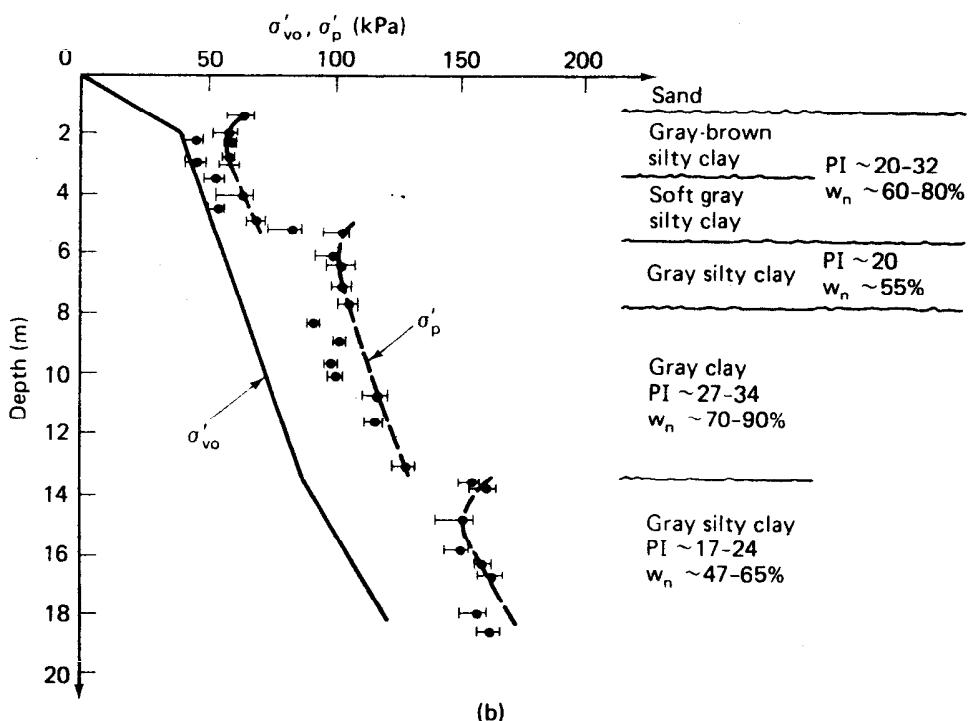
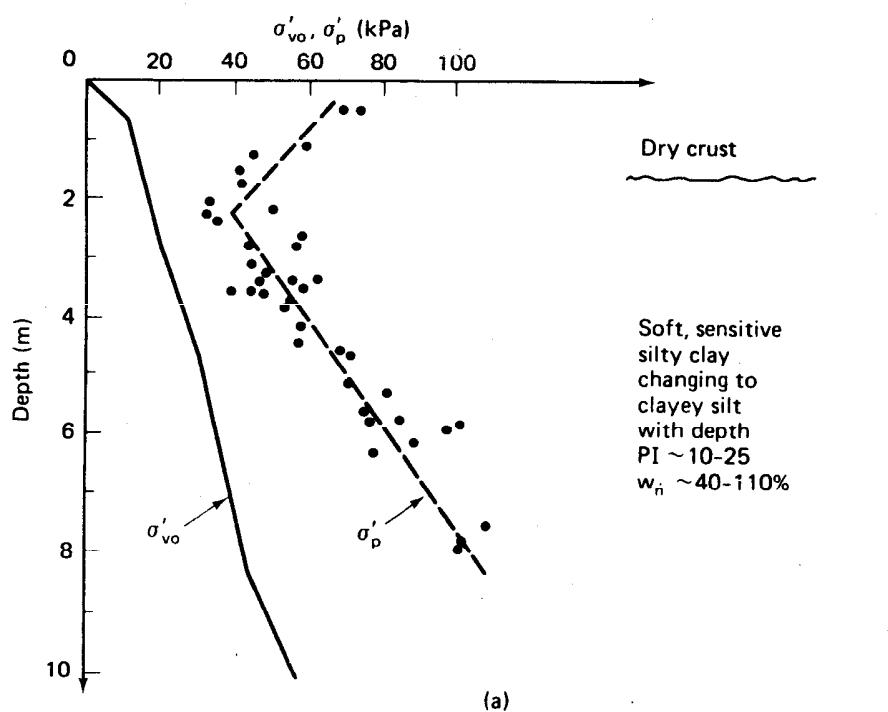
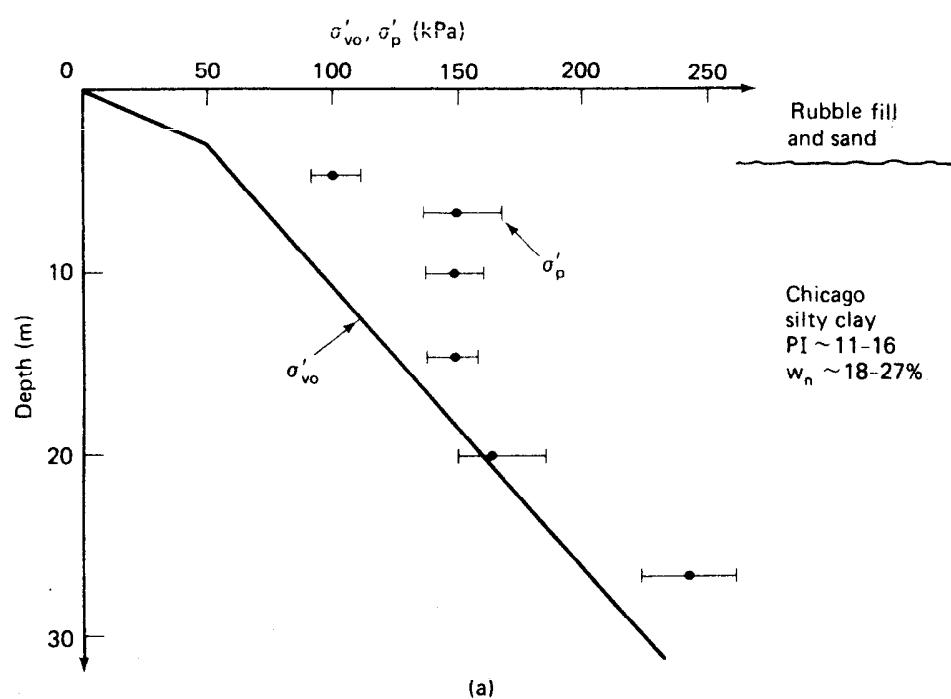


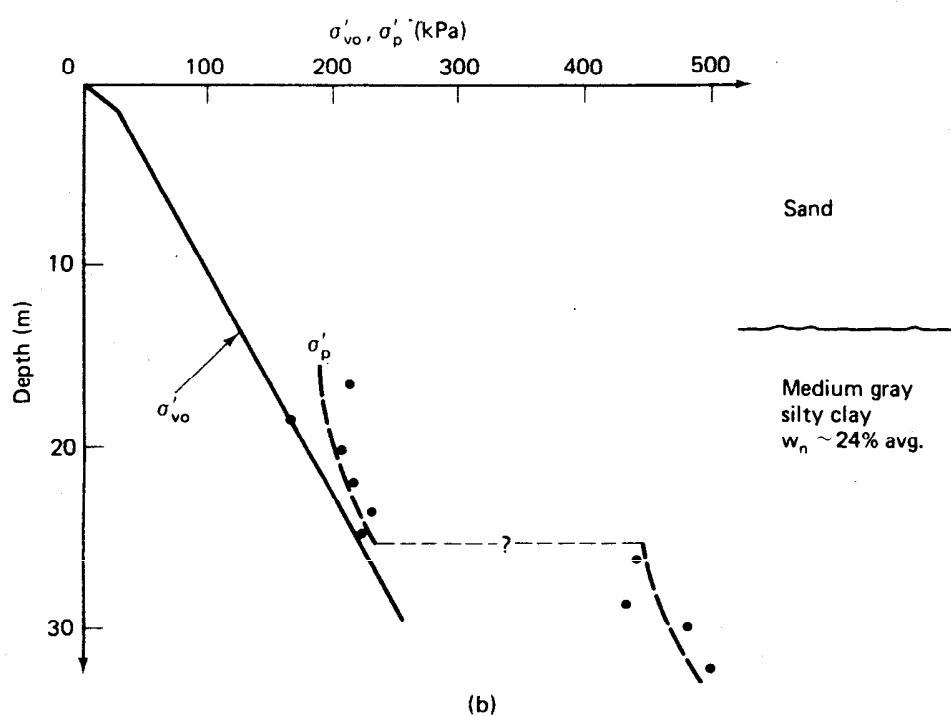
Fig. 8.16 Overburden and preconsolidation stress profiles for marine clays near Bangkok, Thailand: (a) Bangkok-Siracha highway (after Eide and Holmberg, 1972); (b) Asian Institute of Technology (after Moh, Brand, and Nelson, 1972).



**Fig. 8.17** Overburden and preconsolidation stress profiles for Lake Champlain deposits (Laurentian or Leda clays) of Eastern Canada: (a) Saint-Alban, Québec, test fills (after Leroueil, et al., 1978a); (b) C. F. S. Gloucester test (after Bozozuk and Leonards, 1972).



(a)



(b)

Fig. 8.18 Overburden and preconsolidation stress profiles for glacial lake clays (reworked till?) of the Chicago area: (a) Chicago "Loop" (after data from Prof. J. O. Osterberg's graduate soil mechanics class, Northwestern University, 1966); (b) Hammond, Indiana (after Osterberg, 1963).

## 8.11 APPROXIMATE METHODS AND TYPICAL VALUES OF COMPRESSION INDICES

Because of the time and expense involved in consolidation testing, it is sometimes desirable to be able to relate the compression indices to the simple classification properties of soils. These relationships are also commonly used for preliminary designs and estimates and for checking the validity of test results.

Table 8-2 is a list of some published equations for the prediction of compression indices (Azzouz, Krizek, and Corotis, 1976).

**TABLE 8-2 Some Empirical Equations for  $C_c$  and  $C_{c\epsilon}$ \***

Equation	Regions of Applicability
$C_c = 0.007(\text{LL} - 7)$	Remolded clays
$C_{c\epsilon} = 0.208e_o + 0.0083$	Chicago clays
$C_c = 17.66 \times 10^{-5} w_n^2 + 5.93 \times 10^{-3} w_n - 1.35 \times 10^{-1}$	Chicago clays
$C_c = 1.15(e_o - 0.35)$	All clays
$C_c = 0.30(e_o - 0.27)$	Inorganic, cohesive soil; silt, some clay; silty clay; clay
$C_c = 1.15 \times 10^{-2} w_n$	Organic soils—meadow mats, peats, and organic silt and clay
$C_c = 0.75(e_o - 0.50)$	Soils of very low plasticity
$C_{c\epsilon} = 0.156e_o + 0.0107$	All clays
$C_c = 0.01w_n$	Chicago clays

\*As summarized by Azzouz, Krizek, and Corotis (1976).

Note:  $w_n$  = natural water content.

Terzaghi and Peck (1967) proposed the following equation, based on research on undisturbed clays of low to medium sensitivity:

$$C_c = 0.009(\text{LL} - 10) \quad (8-21)$$

which has a reliability range of about  $\pm 30\%$ . This equation is widely used, despite its wide reliability range, to make initial consolidation settlement estimates. The equation should not be used where the sensitivity of the clay is greater than 4, if the LL is greater than 100, or if the clay contains a high percentage of organic matter. Some typical values of the compression index, based on our experience and the geotechnical literature, are listed in Table 8-3.

Often,  $C_r$  is assumed to be 5% to 10% of  $C_c$ . Typical values of  $C_r$  range from 0.015 to 0.035 (Leonards, 1976). The lower values are for clays of lower plasticity and low OCR. Values of  $C_r$  outside the range of 0.005 to 0.05 should be considered questionable.

**TABLE 8-3** Typical Values of the Compression Index  $C_c$ 

Soil	$C_c$
Normally consolidated medium sensitive clays	0.2 to 0.5
Chicago silty clay (CL)	0.15 to 0.3
Boston blue clay (CL)	0.3 to 0.5
Vicksburg buckshot clay (CH)	0.5 to 0.6
Swedish medium sensitive clays (CL-CH)	1 to 3
Canadian Leda clays (CL-CH)	1 to 4
Mexico City clay (MH)	7 to 10
Organic clays (OH)	4 and up
Peats (Pt)	10 to 15
Organic silt and clayey silts (ML-MH)	1.5 to 4.0
San Francisco Bay Mud (CL)	0.4 to 1.2
San Francisco Old Bay clays (CH)	0.7 to 0.9
Bangkok clay (CH)	0.4

## 8.12 STRESS DISTRIBUTION

In the previous sections of this chapter when we calculated settlements, the increase in stress  $\Delta\sigma$  caused by an applied load was given. In this section, we shall show you how to estimate the stress increase in the soil due to boundary or surface loads.

Suppose a very large area such as a subdivision or shopping mall is to be filled with several metres of select compacted material. In this instance, the loading is *one dimensional*, and the stress increase felt at depth would be 100% of the applied stress at the surface. However, near the edge or end of the filled area you might expect a certain amount of attenuation of stress with depth because no stress is applied beyond the edge. Likewise, with a footing of limited size, the applied stress would dissipate rather rapidly with depth.

One of the simplest methods to compute the distribution of stress with depth for a loaded area is to use the *2 to 1 (2:1) method*. This is an empirical approach based on the assumption that the area over which the load acts increases in a systematic way with depth. Since the same vertical force is spread over an increasingly larger area, the unit stress decreases with depth, as shown in Fig. 8.19. In Fig. 8.19a, a strip or continuous footing is seen in elevation view. At a depth  $z$ , the enlarged area of the footing increases by  $z/2$  on each side. The width at depth  $z$  is then  $B + z$ , and the stress  $\sigma_z$  at that depth is

$$\sigma_z = \frac{\text{load}}{(B + z) \times 1} = \frac{\sigma_o(B \times 1)}{(B + z) \times 1} \quad (8-22)$$

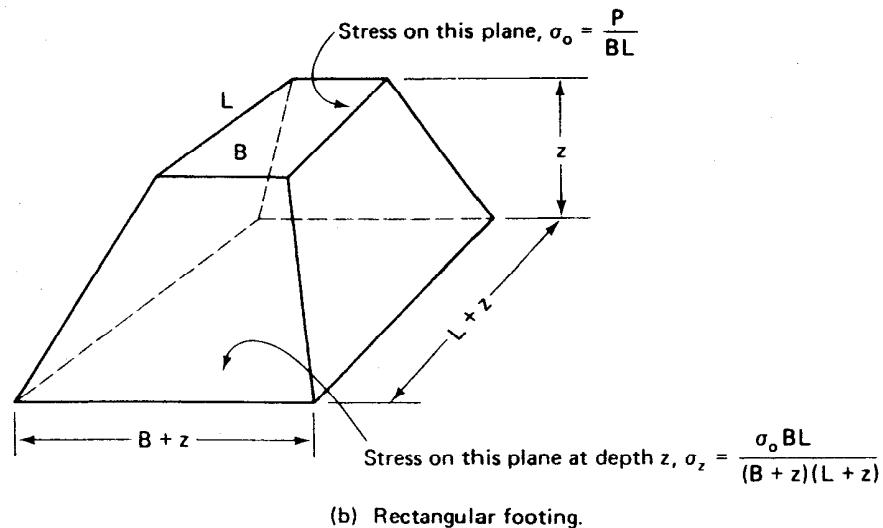
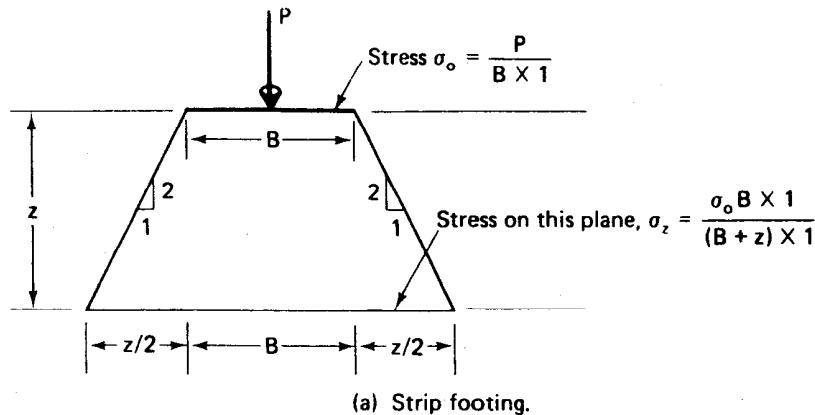


Fig. 8.19 The 2:1 approximation for the distribution of vertical stress with depth.

where  $\sigma_0$  is the surface or contact stress.

By analogy, a rectangular footing of width  $B$  and length  $L$  would have an area of  $(B + Z)(L + Z)$  at a depth  $z$ , as shown in Fig. 8.19b. The corresponding stress at depth  $z$  would be

$$\Delta\sigma_z = \frac{\text{load}}{(B + z)(L + z)} = \frac{\sigma_0 BL}{(B + z)(L + z)} \quad (8-23)$$

Example 8.17 illustrates the use of the 2:1 method.

## EXAMPLE 8.17

**Given:**

Two metres of fill ( $\rho = 2.04 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ ) are compacted over a large area. On top of the compacted fill, a  $3 \times 4 \text{ m}$  spread footing loaded with  $1400 \text{ kN}$  is placed. Assume that the average density of the soil prior to placement of the fill is  $1.68 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ . The water table is very deep.

**Required:**

- Compute and plot the effective vertical stress profile with depth prior to fill placement.
- Compute and plot the added stress,  $\Delta\sigma$ , due to the fill.
- Compute the additional stress with depth due to the  $3 \times 4 \text{ m}$  footing when the footing base is placed  $1 \text{ m}$  below the top of the filled ground surface. Use the 2:1 method. (Assume weight of footing plus backfill equals weight of soil removed.)

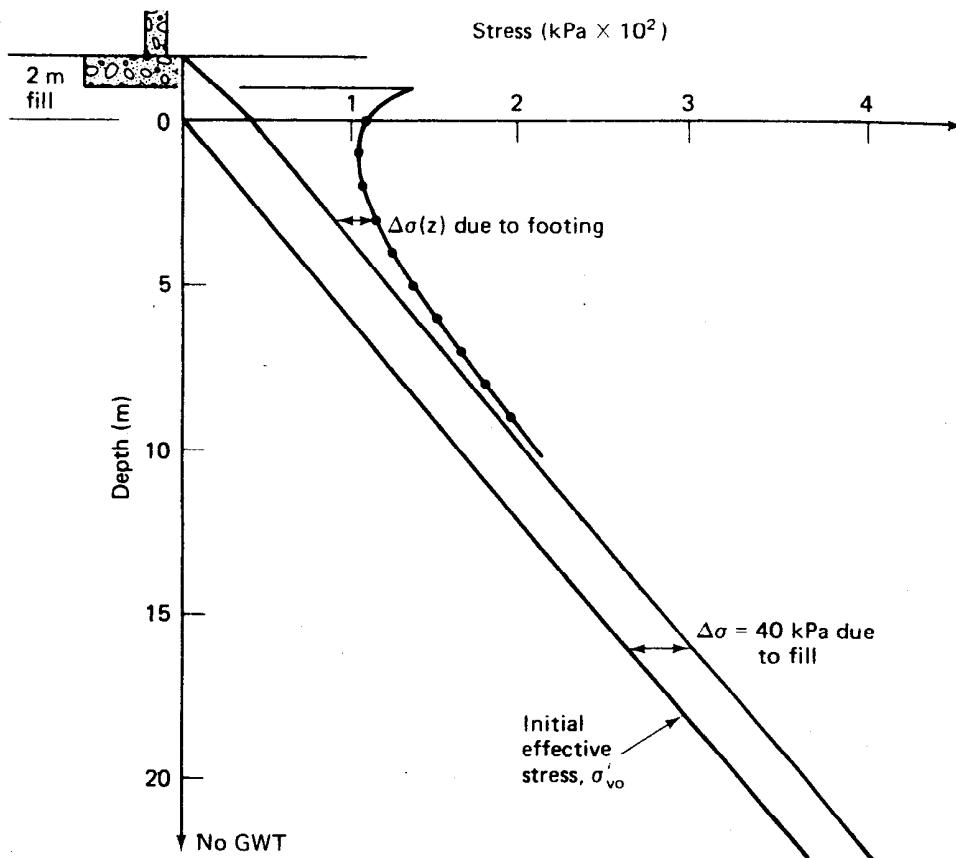
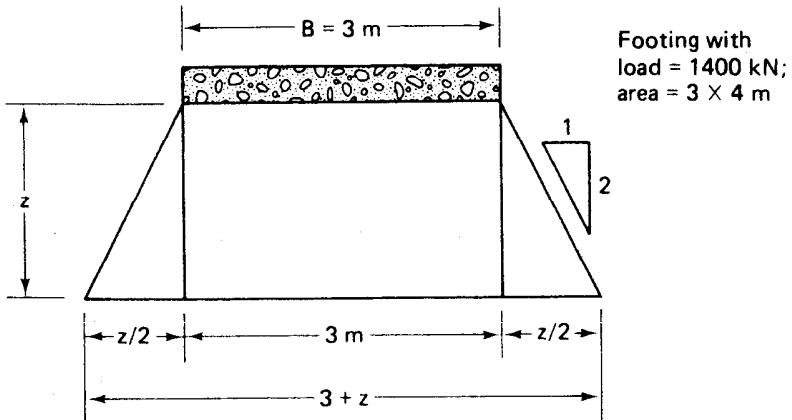


Fig. Ex. 8.17a



(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
$z$ (m)	$(B + z)$	$(L + z)$	Area ( $m^2$ )	$\Delta\sigma(z)$ (kPa)
0	3	4	12	117
1	4	5	20	70
2	5	6	30	47
3	6	7	42	33
4	7	8	56	25
5	8	9	72	19
6	9	10	90	16
7	10	11	110	13
8	11	12	132	11
9	12	13	156	9
10	13	14	182	8

Note:  $z$  taken below bottom of footing.

Fig. Ex. 8.17b

**Solution:**

- a. Just as you did in Chapter 7, the initial effective stress distribution is calculated and plotted in Fig. Ex. 8.17a. The stress is zero at zero depth and 330 kPa at a depth of 20 m ( $\rho g z = 1.68 \times 9.81 \times 20 = 330$  kPa).
- b. The added stress due to the 2 m fill is  $2 \times 2.04 \times 9.81 = 40$  kPa. This is shown in Fig. Ex. 8.17a by the line parallel to the in situ vertical effective stress line. Notice that at any depth, the additional stress due to the fill is a constant 40 kPa because the fill is large in areal extent and thus 100% of its influence is felt throughout.

c. The contact stress  $\sigma_o$  between the footing and the soil equals the column load, 1400 kN, divided by the footing area,  $3 \times 4$  m, or  $12 \text{ m}^2$ , or

$$\sigma_o = \frac{\text{load}}{\text{area}} = \frac{1400 \text{ kN}}{12 \text{ m}^2} = 117 \text{ kN/m}^2 \text{ or kPa}$$

Using the 2:1 method, a tabulation of how the stress changes with depth  $z$  is shown in Fig. Ex. 8.17b. The change in stress,  $\Delta\sigma(z)$ , in column 5 is added to the change in stress due to the fill in Fig. Ex. 8.17a. It can be seen that the stress due to the footing diminishes quite rapidly with depth.

The *theory of elasticity* is also used by foundation engineers to estimate stresses within soil masses. The soil does not necessarily have to be elastic for the theory to work, at least for vertical stresses; only the ratio of stress to strain should be constant. As long as the added stresses are well below failure, the strains are still approximately proportional to stresses.

In 1885, Boussinesq developed equations for the state of stress within a homogeneous, isotropic, linearly elastic half-space for a *point load* acting perpendicular to the surface. The value of the vertical stress is

$$\sigma_z = \frac{Q(3z^3)}{2\pi(r^2 + z^2)^{5/2}} \quad (8-24)$$

where  $Q$  = point load,

$z$  = depth from ground surface to the place where  $\sigma_z$  is desired, and

$r$  = horizontal distance from point load to the place where  $\sigma_z$  is desired.

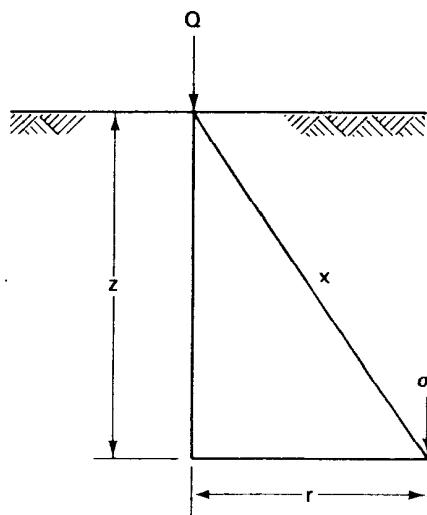
Equation 8-24 may also be written as

$$\sigma_z = \frac{Q}{z^2} N_B \quad (8-25)$$

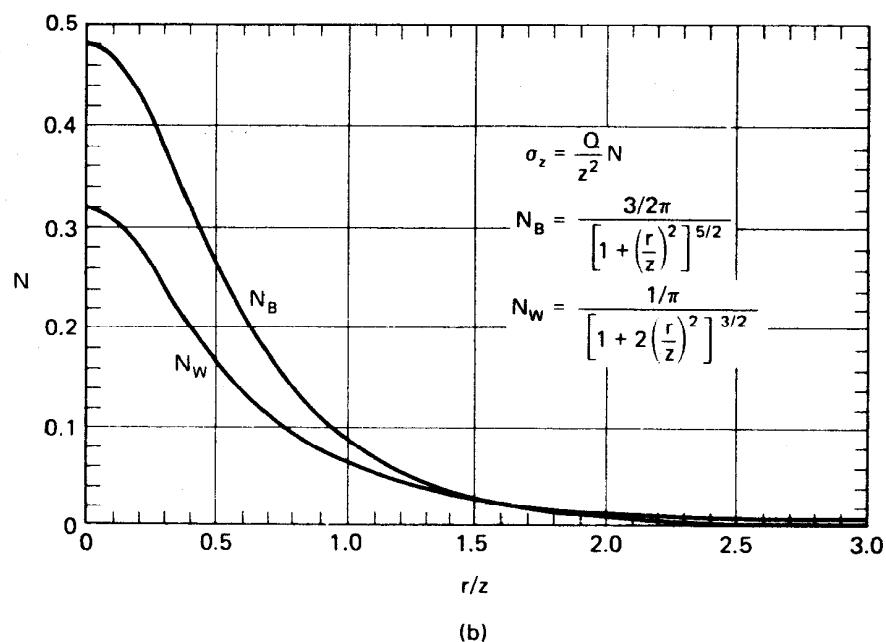
where  $N_B$  is an influence factor which combines the constant terms in Eq. 8-24 and is a function of  $r/z$ .

These terms are illustrated in Fig. 8.20a; values of  $N_B$  versus  $r/z$  are shown in Fig. 8.20b. Boussinesq also derived equations for the radial, tangential, and shear stress; these can be found in most advanced textbooks on soil mechanics. Note that the equation for  $\sigma_z$  is independent of the material; the modulus does not enter into the equation at all.

By integrating the point load equation along a line, the stress due to a *line load* (force per unit length) may be found. In this case, the value of the



(a)



(b)

Fig. 8.20 (a) Definition of terms used in Eq. 8-25 and Eq. 8-26; (b) relationship between  $N_B$ ,  $N_W$ , and  $r/z$  for a point load (after Taylor, 1948).

vertical stress is

$$\sigma_z = \frac{2P}{\pi} \frac{z^3}{x^4} \quad (8-26)$$

where  $P$  = line load, and

$$x = (z^2 + r^2)^{1/2} \text{ (see Fig. 8.20a).}$$

Equations for the horizontal and shear stress are also available.

The next logical step is to integrate a line load over a finite area. Newmark (1935) performed the integration of Eq. 8.26 and derived the following equation for the vertical stress under the corner of a *uniformly loaded rectangular area*:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_z = q_o & \frac{1}{4\pi} \left[ \frac{2mn(m^2 + n^2 + 1)^{1/2}}{m^2 + n^2 + 1 + m^2n^2} \times \frac{(m^2 + n^2 + 2)}{(m^2 + n^2 + 1)} \right. \\ & \left. + \arctan \frac{2mn(m^2 + n^2 + 1)^{1/2}}{m^2 + n^2 + 1 - m^2n^2} \right] \end{aligned} \quad (8-27)$$

where  $q_o$  = surface or contact stress,

$$m = x/z, \quad (8-28)$$

$$n = y/z, \text{ and} \quad (8-29)$$

$x, y$  = length and width of the uniformly loaded area, respectively. The parameters  $m$  and  $n$  are interchangeable. Fortunately Eq. 8-27 may be rewritten as

$$\sigma_z = q_o I \quad (8-30)$$

where  $I$  = an influence value which depends on  $m$  and  $n$ .

Values of  $I$  for various values of  $m$  and  $n$  are shown in Fig. 8.21.

### EXAMPLE 8.18

**Given:**

The  $3 \times 4$  m rectangular footing of Example 8.17 is loaded uniformly by 117 kPa.

**Required:**

- Find the vertical stress under the corner of the footing at a depth of 2 m.

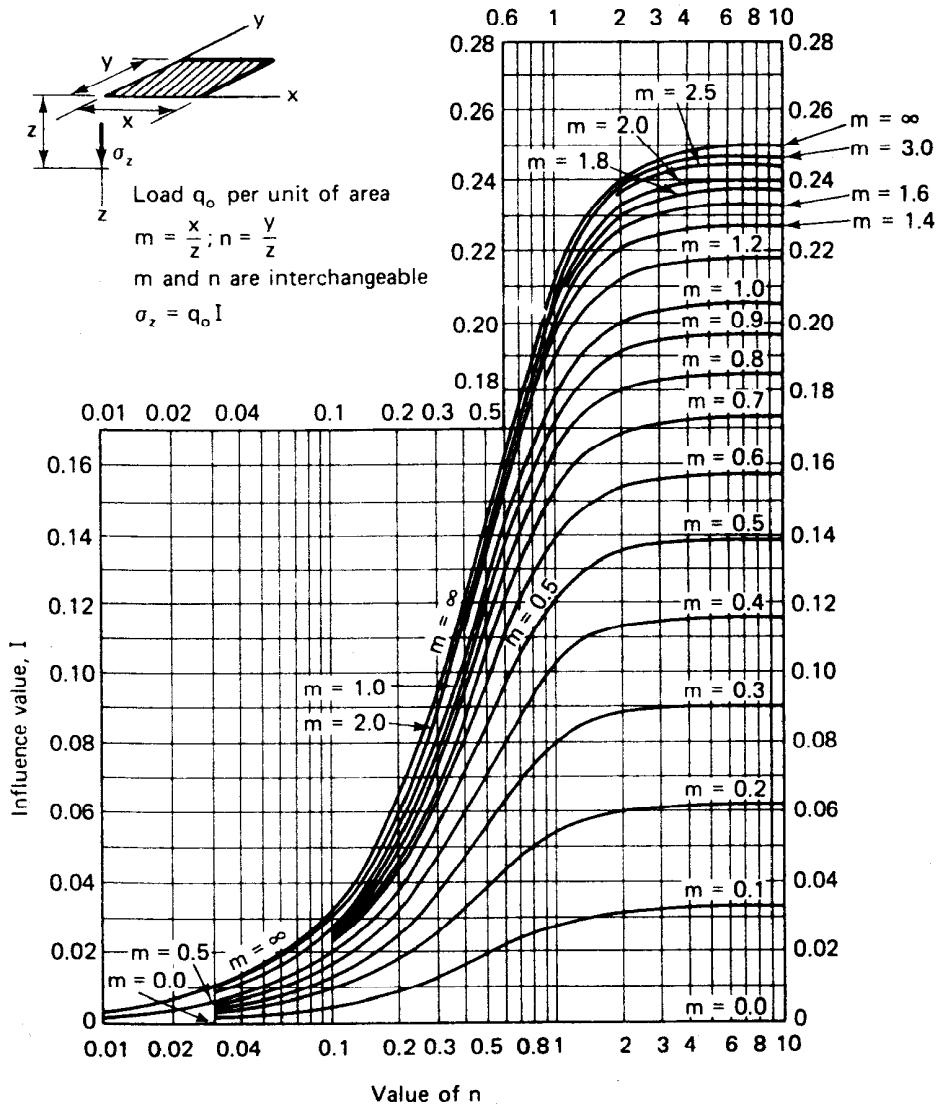


Fig. 8.21 Influence value for vertical stress under corner of a uniformly loaded rectangular area (after U.S. Navy, 1971).

- b. Find the vertical stress under the center of the footing at a depth of 2 m.
- c. Compare results with Fig. Ex. 8.17a.

**Solution:**

a.  $x = 3 \text{ m}$

$y = 4 \text{ m}$

$z = 2 \text{ m}$ : therefore from Eqs. 8-28 and 8-29,

$$m = \frac{x}{z} = \frac{3}{2} = 1.5$$

$$n = \frac{y}{z} = \frac{4}{2} = 2$$

From Fig. 8.21, find  $I = 0.223$ . From Eq. 8-30,

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_z &= q_o I \\ &= 117 \times 0.223 \\ &= 26 \text{ kPa}\end{aligned}$$

b. To compute the stress under the center, it is necessary to divide the  $3 \times 4 \text{ m}$  rectangular footing into four sections of  $1.5 \times 2 \text{ m}$  in size. Find the stress under one corner and multiply this value by 4 to take into account the four quadrants of the uniformly loaded area. We can do this because, for an elastic material, superposition is valid.

$x = 1.5 \text{ m}$

$y = 2 \text{ m}$

$z = 2 \text{ m}$ ; then

$$m = \frac{x}{z} = \frac{1.5}{2} = 0.75$$

$$n = \frac{y}{z} = \frac{2}{2} = 1$$

The corresponding value of  $I$  from Fig. 8.21 is 0.159. From Eq. 8-30,

$$\sigma_z = 4q_o I = 4 \times 117 \times 0.159 = 74 \text{ kPa}$$

Thus the vertical stress under the center for this case is about three times that under the corner. This seems reasonable since the center is loaded from all sides but under the corner it is not.

c. At a depth of 2 m below the  $3 \times 4 \text{ m}$  footing, the vertical stress according to the 2:1 theory is 47 kPa (see Fig. Ex. 8.17b). This value represents the *average* stress beneath the footing at -2 m. The average of the corner and center stress by elastic theory is  $(26 + 74.2)/2 = 50.1 \text{ kPa}$ .

Thus the 2:1 method underestimates the vertical stress at the center but overestimates  $\sigma_z$  at the corners.

Suppose we want to find the vertical stress at some depth  $z$  *outside* the loaded area. Under these conditions we merely fabricate other uniformly loaded rectangles, all with corners above the point where the vertical stress is desired, and subtract and add their stress contributions as necessary.

### EXAMPLE 8.19

**Given:**

A  $5 \times 10$  m area uniformly loaded with 100 kPa.

**Required:**

- Find the stress at a depth of 5 m under point A in Fig. Ex. 8.19.
- Find the stress at point A if the right half of the  $5 \times 10$  m area were loaded with an additional 100 kPa.

**Solution:**

- Refer to Fig. Ex. 8.19 and the numbered points as shown. Add the rectangles in the following manner (+ for loaded areas and - for unloaded areas): +A123 - A164 - A573 + A584 result in the loaded rectangle we want 8627. Find four separate influence values from Fig. 8.21 for each rectangle at a depth of 5 m, then add and subtract the computed stresses. Note that it is necessary to add rectangle A584 because it was subtracted twice as part of rectangles A164 and A573.

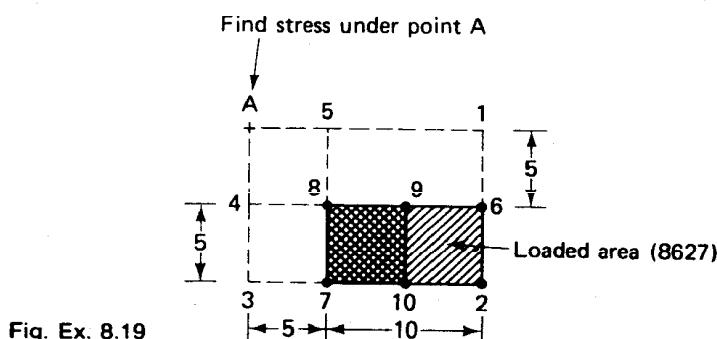


Fig. Ex. 8.19

The computations are shown in the following table.

Item \ Area	+ A123	- A164	- A573	+ A584
x	15	15	10	5
y	10	5	5	5
z	5	5	5	5
$m = x/z$	3	3	2	1
$n = y/z$	2	1	1	1
I	0.238	0.209	0.206	0.180
$\sigma_z$	23.8	- 20.9	- 20.6	+ 18.0

$$\text{Total } \sigma_z = 23.8 - 20.9 - 20.6 + 18.0 = 0.3 \text{ kPa}$$

b. When rectangle 78910 is loaded with 100 kPa and rectangle 96210 is loaded with 200 kPa, repeat part (a) above to obtain the stress under point A at 5 m depth for the entire rectangle 8627 loaded with 100 kPa. Next, a second set of four rectangles would have to be calculated just as for part (a) above but only rectangle 96210 would be loaded with +100 kPa; the others would be -100 kPa. The total  $\sigma_z$  equals 0.3 kPa from part (a) plus  $23.8 - 21.0 - 23.2 + 20.6$  or 0.5 kPa.

Thus it is possible to find the stress at any depth  $z$ , in or around a uniformly loaded area or even under a step loaded area, by using the procedures outlined in Examples 8.18 and 8.19. Remember that a new set of calculations is required for each depth where  $\sigma_z$  is desired.

Similar procedures are available for vertical stresses under *uniformly loaded circular areas*. Use Fig. 8.22 to obtain influence values in terms of  $x/r$  and  $z/r$ , where  $z = \text{depth}$ ,

$r$  = radius of uniformly loaded area,

$x$  = horizontal distance from the center of the circular area, and

$q_0$  = surface contact pressure, in kPa.

### EXAMPLE 8.20

Given:

A circular tank 3.91 m in diameter is uniformly loaded with 117 kPa.

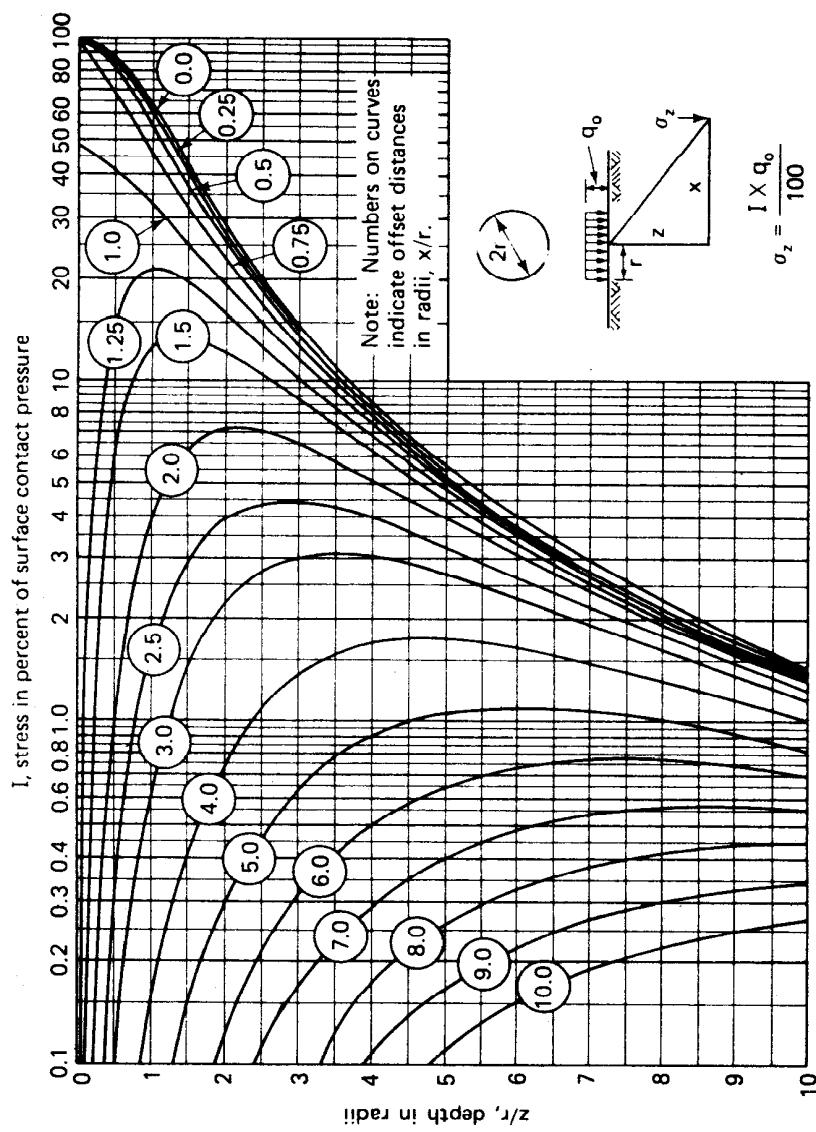


Fig. 8.22 Influence values, expressed in percentage of surface contact pressure,  $q_0$ , for vertical stress under uniformly loaded circular area (after Foster and Ahlvin, 1954, as cited by U.S. Navy, 1971).

**Required:**

- Compute the stress under the center of the tank at a depth of 2 m below the tank.
- Compute the stress under the edge of the tank, also a depth of 2 m.

**Solution:**

- a. Refer to Fig. 8.22.

$$\begin{aligned}z &= 2 \text{ m} \\r &= 3.91/2 = 1.95 \text{ m} \\x &= 0; \text{ then} \\z/r &= 2/1.95 = 1.02 \\x/r &= 0/1.95 = 0.\end{aligned}$$

Find  $I = 0.63$ . Using Eq. 8-30 we obtain,

$$\sigma_z = q_o I = 117 \times 0.63 = 74 \text{ kPa}$$

(This compares exactly with  $\sigma_z = 74 \text{ kPa}$  at the center for a  $3 \times 4 \text{ m}$  rectangular area in Example 8.18. In both cases, the area is  $12 \text{ m}^2$ .)

- b. Again, refer to Fig. 8.22. For the edge of the circular loaded area:

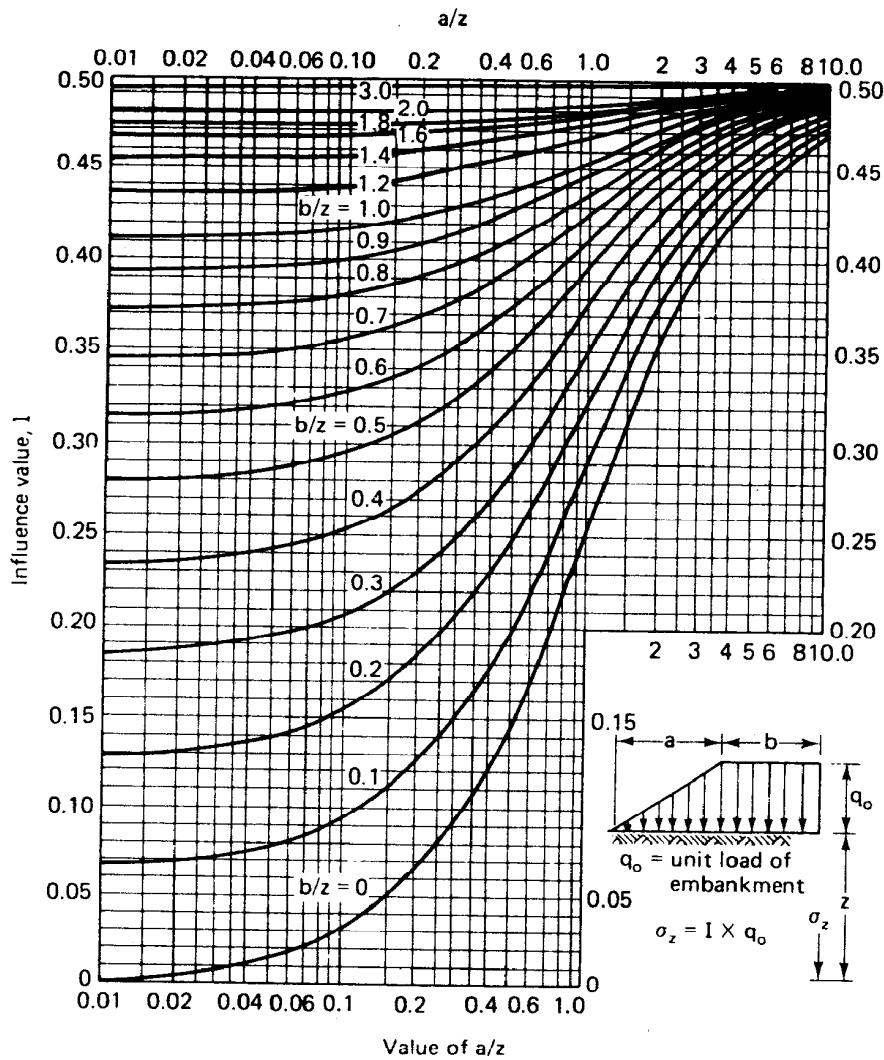
$$\begin{aligned}z &= 2 \text{ m} \\r &= 1.95 \text{ m} \\x &= r = 1.95 \text{ m} \\z/r &= 2/1.95 = 1.02 \\x/r &= 1.0\end{aligned}$$

Find  $I = 0.33$ ; then using Eq. 8-30,

$$\sigma_z = q_o I = 117 \times 0.33 = 39 \text{ kPa}$$

(This compares with  $\sigma_z = 26 \text{ kPa}$  at a corner for a  $3 \times 4 \text{ m}$  uniformly loaded rectangular area. In both cases, the area of the loaded area is the same.)

Another useful integration of the Boussinesq equations is the trapezoidal loading shown in Fig. 8.23, which models the loading caused by a *long embankment*. Influence values are in terms of the dimensions  $a$  and  $b$ , as shown in the figure. If the embankment is not infinitely long, then use Fig. 8.24 together with Fig. 8.21 to represent different load configurations.



**Fig. 8.23 Influence values for vertical stress under a very long embankment; length =  $\infty$  (from U.S. Navy, 1971, after Osterberg, 1957).**

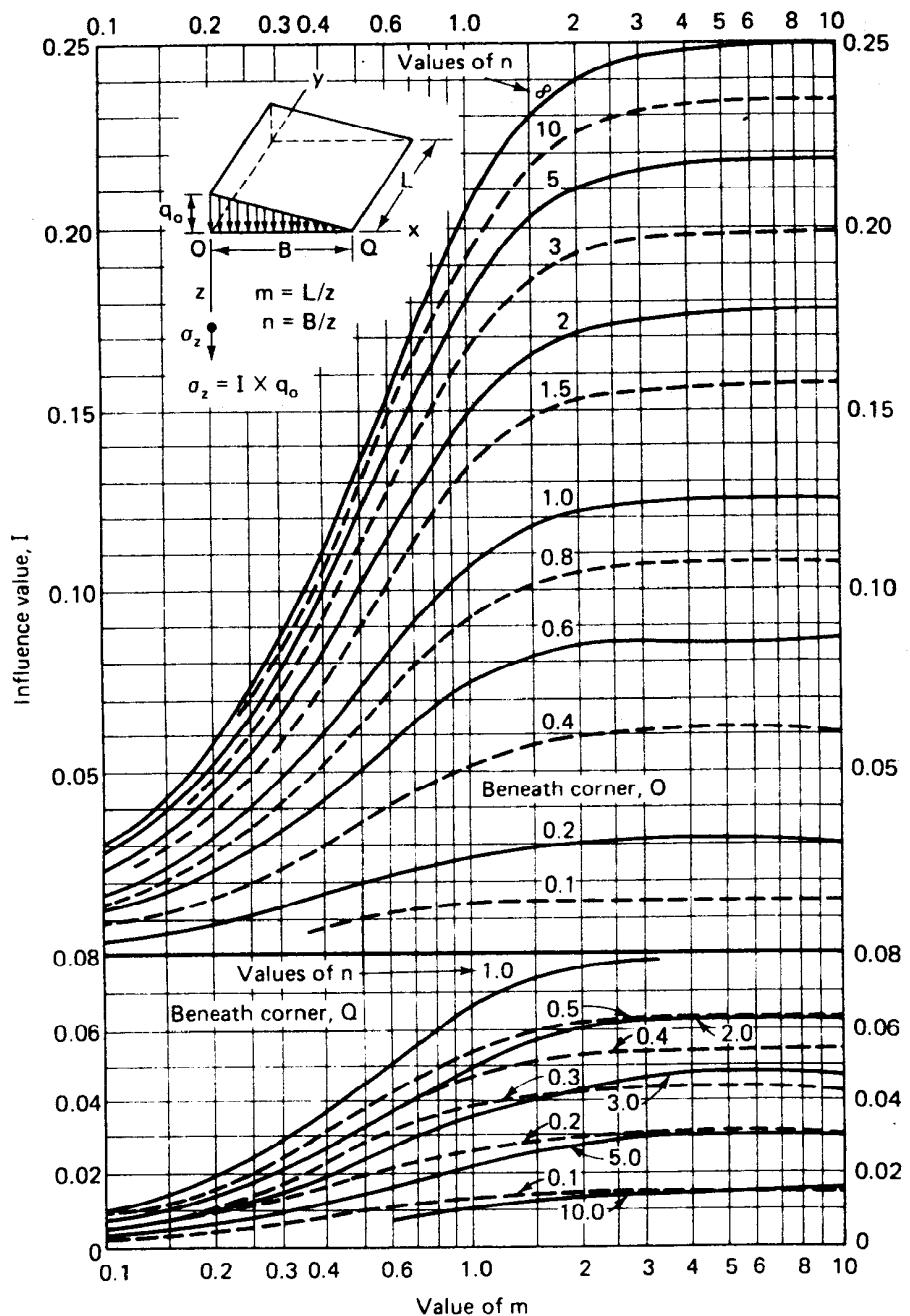


Fig. 8.24 Influence values for vertical stress under the corners of a triangular load of limited length (after U.S. Navy, 1971).

### EXAMPLE 8.21

**Given:**

A highway embankment, as shown in Fig. Ex. 8.21. Assume the average density of the material in the embankment is  $2.0 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ .

**Required:**

Compute the vertical stress under the centerline at depths of 3 and 6 m.

**Solution:**

First, calculate the applied surface stress  $q_o$  and the dimensions of the embankment in terms of  $a$  and  $b$ .

$$q_o = \rho gh = 2.0 \text{ Mg/m}^3 \times 9.81 \text{ m/s}^2 \times 3 \text{ m} = 59 \text{ kPa}$$

From Fig. 8.23, and Fig. Ex. 8.21,

$$b = 5 \text{ m}$$

$$a = 2 \times 3 \text{ m} = 6 \text{ m}$$

Next, calculate the vertical stress for  $z = 3 \text{ m}$ .

$$a/z = 6/3 = 2$$

$$b/z = 5/3 = 1.67$$

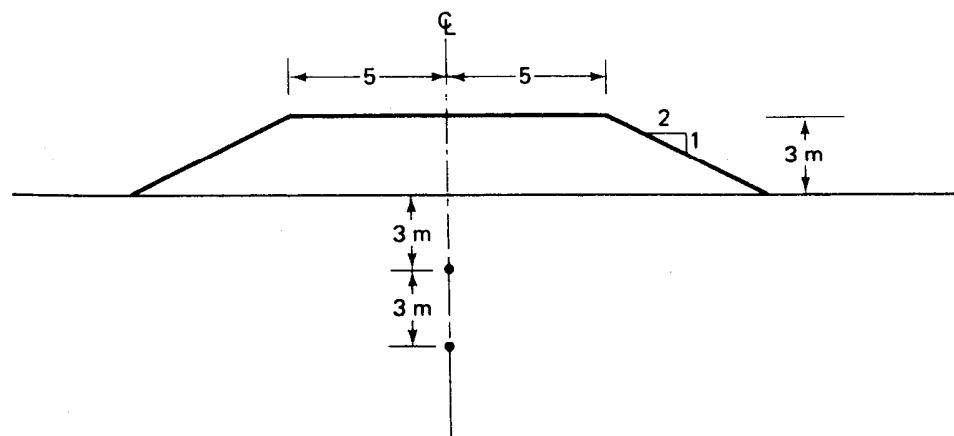


Fig. Ex. 8.21

From Fig. 8.23,  $I = 0.49$ ,

$$\sigma_z = q_o I = 59 \text{ kPa} \times 0.488 = 29 \text{ kPa}$$

for one-half of the embankment, or 58 kPa for the entire embankment. Thus at this shallow depth  $\sigma_z$  is almost the same as the contact stress.

Finally, calculate the vertical stress for  $z = 6 \text{ m}$ .

$$a/z = 6/6 = 1$$

$$b/z = 5/6 = 0.83$$

From Fig. 8.23,  $I = 0.44$ ,

$$\sigma_z = q_o I = 59 \text{ kPa} \times 0.44 \times 2 = 52 \text{ kPa}$$


---

Now and then it becomes necessary to compute the vertical stress due to an irregularly shaped loaded area at various points inside and/or outside an area. To facilitate computations, Newmark (1942) developed *influence charts* from which the vertical stress (and even the horizontal and shear stresses) may be computed. These influence charts are based on Boussinesq's theory, although similar charts have been prepared for the Westergaard theory, to be discussed shortly. Examples of influence charts may be found in foundation engineering textbooks, for example, Leonards (1962) and Peck, Hanson, and Thornburn (1974). Figure 8-25 shows the Newmark influence chart for the computation of vertical stresses due to a loaded area. Think of the chart as a contour map that shows a volcano, the top of which is located at the center ( $O$ ) of the influence chart. If it were possible to look normal to a three-dimensional surface of the chart, you would see that each of the "areas" or "blocks" has the *same surface area*. We see only the projection on the contour map; the blocks grow smaller as the center is approached.

The charts are scaled with respect to depth so that they may be used for a structure of any size, in the following manner. On the chart is the line  $OQ$ . This line represents the distance below the ground surface  $z$  for which the vertical stress  $\sigma_z$  is desired, and this distance is used as the scale for a drawing of the loaded area. The vertical stress is computed by merely counting the number of areas or blocks on the chart, *within* the boundary of the loaded area that is drawn to the proper scale and then placed upon the chart. The number of areas is multiplied by an influence value  $I$ , specified on the chart, and by the contact pressure to obtain the stress at the desired depth. The point at which the vertical stress is desired is placed *over the center* of the chart. Example 8.22 illustrates the use of the chart.

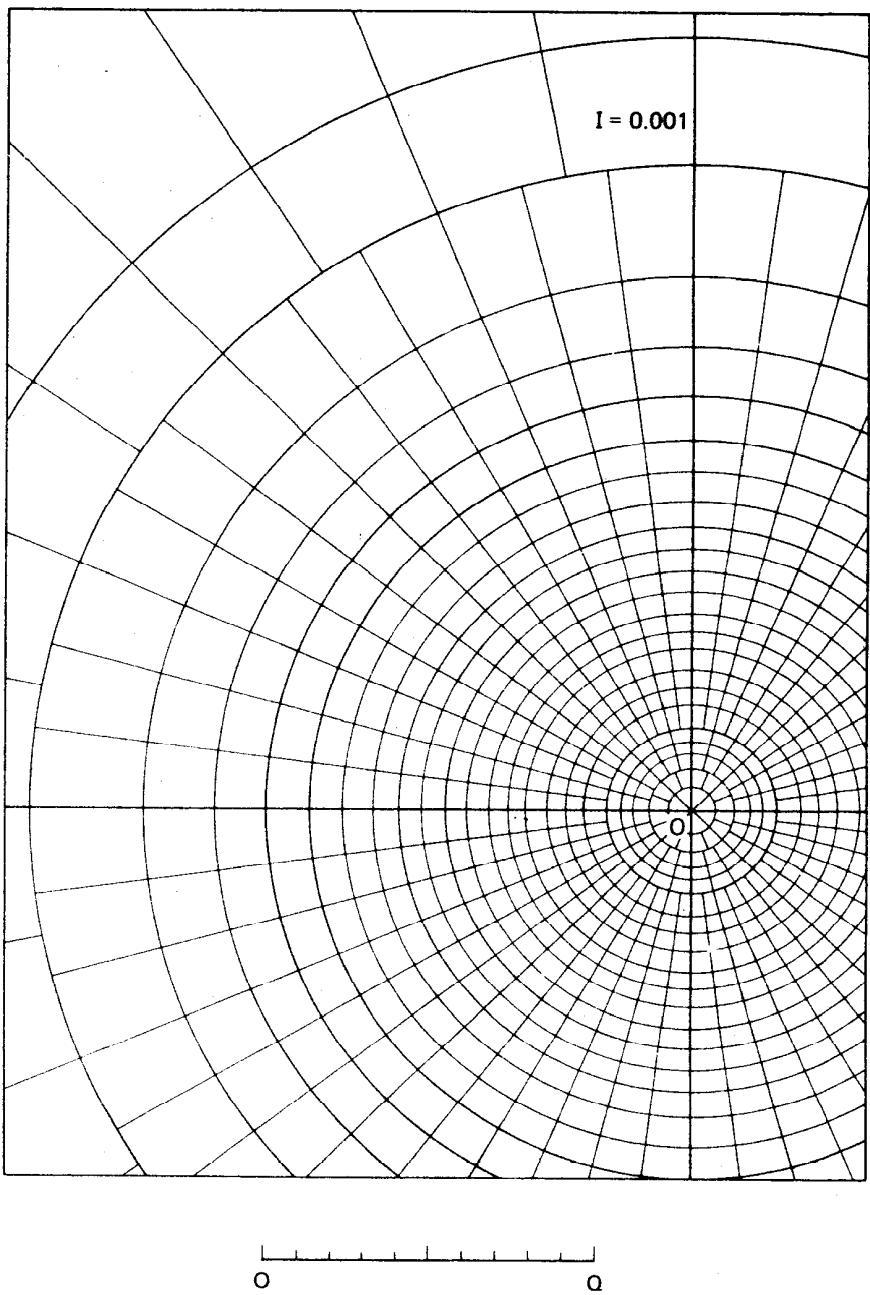


Fig. 8.25 Influence chart for vertical stress on horizontal planes (after Newmark, 1942).

## EXAMPLE 8.22

Given:

A uniform stress of 250 kPa is applied to the loaded area shown in Fig. Ex. 8.22a.

Required:

Compute the stress at a depth of 80 m below the ground surface due to the loaded area under point  $O'$ .

Solution:

Draw the loaded area such that the length of the line  $\overline{OQ}$  is scaled to 80 m. For example, the distance  $\overline{AB}$  in Fig. Ex. 8.22a is 1.5 times the distance  $\overline{OQ}$ .  $\overline{OQ} = 80$  m and  $\overline{AB} = 120$  m. Next, place point  $O'$ , the point where the stress is required, over the center of the influence chart (as shown in Fig. Ex. 8.22b to a slightly smaller scale). The number of blocks (and partial blocks) are counted under the loaded area. In this case, about eight blocks are found. The vertical stress at 80 m is then indicated by

$$\sigma_v = q_o I \times \text{No. of blocks} \quad (8-31)$$

where  $q_o$  = surface or contact stress, and

$I$  = influence value per block (0.02 in Fig. Ex. 8.22b).

Therefore,

$$\sigma_v = 250 \text{ kPa} \times 0.02 \times 8 \text{ blocks} = 40 \text{ kPa}$$

To compute the stress at other depths, the process is repeated by making other drawings for the different depths, changing the scale *each time* to correspond to the distance  $\overline{OQ}$  on the influence chart.

All of the preceding stress distribution solutions were integrations of the original Boussinesq equations for vertical stress in a homogeneous isotropic linearly elastic half-space. Natural soil deposits do not approach these ideal material conditions. In fact, many important sedimentary soil deposits were formed by the aggradation of alternate horizontal layers of silts and clays. These deposits are called *varved clays*, and the solution for stresses at a point developed by Westergaard (1938) may be more applicable. In this theory, an elastic soil is interspersed with infinitely thin but perfectly rigid layers that allow only vertical movement but no lateral movement. Westergaard's solution for the vertical stress for a *point load*

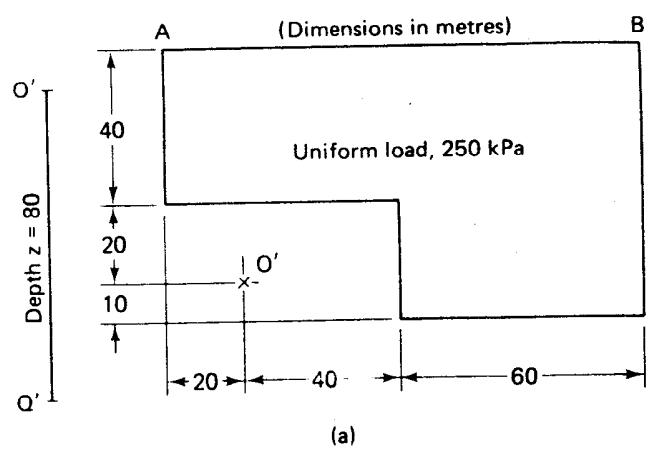


Fig. Ex. 8.22a (After Newmark, 1942.)

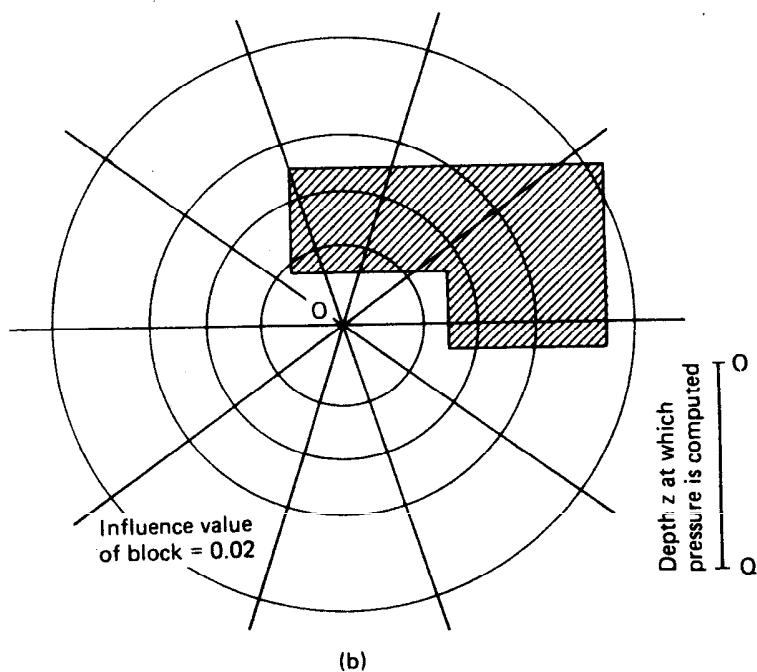


Fig. Ex. 8.22b (After Newmark, 1942.)

(for Poisson's ratio  $\nu = 0$ ) is

$$\sigma_z = \frac{Q}{z^2 \pi} \frac{1}{\left[ 1 + 2\left(\frac{r}{z}\right)^2 \right]^{3/2}} \quad (8-32)$$

where the terms were defined in Fig. 8.20 and Eq. 8-24. *Poisson's ratio*,  $\nu$ , is defined as the the ratio of the horizontal strain,  $\epsilon_h$ , to the vertical strain,  $\epsilon_v$ , or

$$\nu = \frac{\epsilon_h}{\epsilon_v} \quad (8-33)$$

Typical values of  $\nu$  for silts and sands range from 0.2 for loose materials to 0.4 for dense materials. Values for saturated clays vary from about 0.40 to 0.5. The theoretical maximum for a saturated clay undergoing no volume change when stressed (undrained) is 0.5.

Equation 8-32 may be written as

$$\sigma_z = \frac{Q}{z^2} N_w \quad (8-34)$$

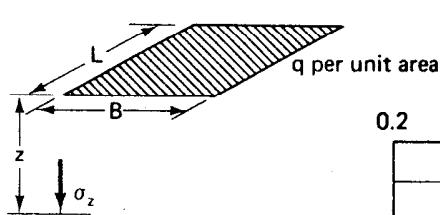
where  $N_w$  is an influence factor combining terms in Eq. 8-32 and is a function of  $r/z$ . Values of  $N_w$  are plotted in Fig. 8.20b.

The Boussinesq and Westergaard theories are compared in Fig. 8.20b. For  $r/z$  less than 1.5, Boussinesq indicates values larger than Westergaard. When  $r/z \geq 1.5$ , both theories provide about the same results. Which theory should you use? From a philosophical point of view, both theories are based on assumptions which are far from reality. It often boils down to a matter of personal preference, even though the assumptions of the Westergaard theory probably are closer to reality for a layered soil deposit. The 2:1 method, crude as it may be, is probably used about as often in practice as the solutions from the theory of elasticity for estimating vertical stresses.

A graph similar to Fig. 8.21 for influence values for vertical stress under a corner of a *uniformly loaded rectangular area* has been prepared for the Westergaard case (for Poisson's ratio = 0) and is shown as Fig. 8.26. You use it as you would use Fig. 8.21.

Tables 8-4 through 8-6 present the influence values for vertical stress under the center of a *square load*, under the center of an infinitely long *strip load*, and under the corner of a *uniformly loaded rectangular area*, respectively. These tables present influence coefficients for both the Boussinesq and Westergaard assumptions. You may find these charts useful in engineering practice.

It must be pointed out that once you have found the vertical stresses from the equations and charts provided in this section, they must be *added* to the existing in situ overburden effective stress, as was done in Example 8.17. This procedure is necessary because the elastic solutions consider the half-space to be weightless and only the stress due to an external loading is



Note:

$$m = B/z, n = L/z$$

$m$  and  $n$  are interchangeable

$$\sigma_z = qI_o$$

Poisson's ratio = 0

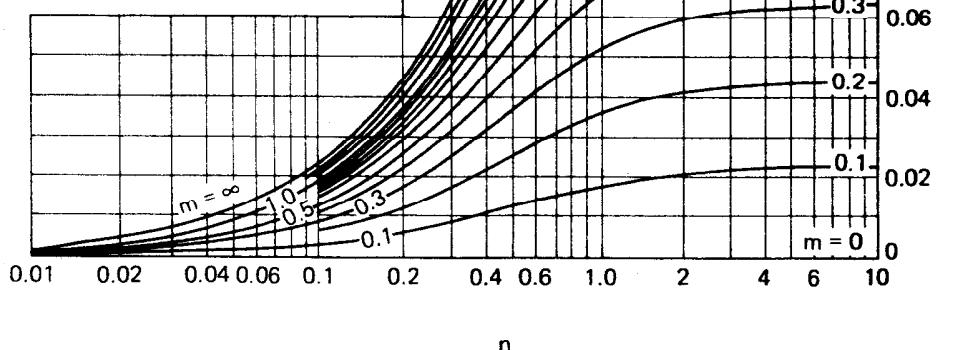
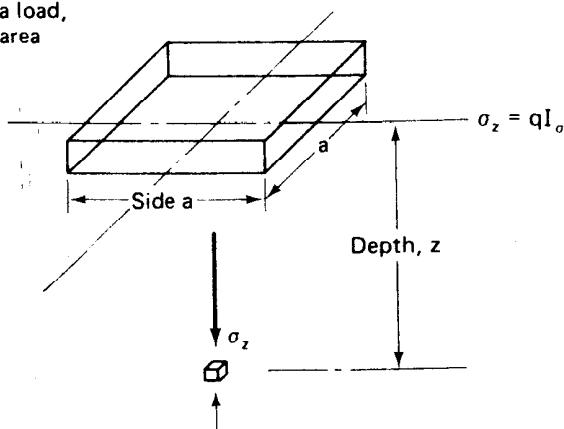


Fig. 8.26 Influence values for vertical stress under corners of a uniformly loaded rectangular area for the Westergaard theory (after Duncan and Buchignani, 1976).

**TABLE 8-4 Influence Values for Vertical Stress Under the Center of a Square Uniformly Loaded Area\***

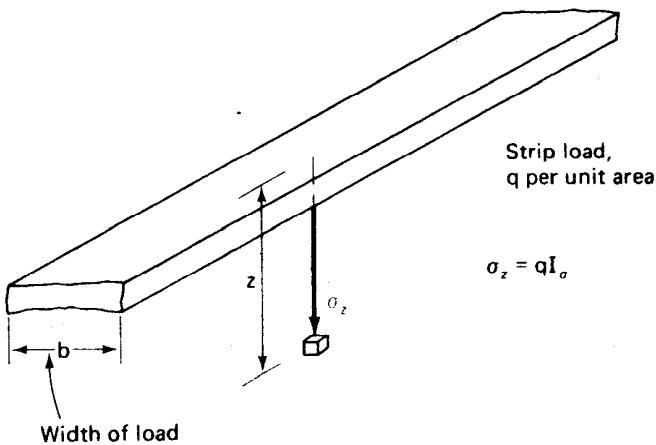
Square area load,  
q per unit area



$a/z$	$I_\sigma$	
	Boussinesq	Westergaard
$\infty$	1.0000	1.0000
20	0.9992	0.9365
16	0.9984	0.9199
12	0.9968	0.8944
10	0.9944	0.8734
8	0.9892	0.8435
6	0.9756	0.7926
5	0.9604	0.7525
4	0.9300	0.6971
3.6	0.9096	0.6659
3.2	0.8812	0.6309
2.8	0.8408	0.5863
2.4	0.7832	0.5328
2.0	0.7008	0.4647
1.8	0.6476	0.4246
1.6	0.5844	0.3794
1.4	0.5108	0.3291
1.2	0.4276	0.2858
1.0	0.3360	0.2165
0.8	0.2410	0.1560
0.6	0.1494	0.0999
0.4	0.0716	0.0477
0.2	0.0188	0.0127
0	0.0000	0.0000

\*After Duncan and Buchignani (1976).

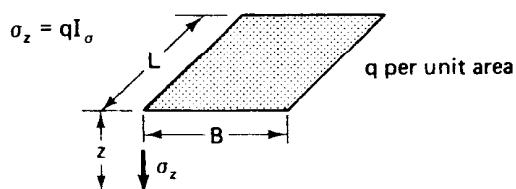
**TABLE 8-5 Influence Values for Vertical Stress Under the Center of an Infinitely Long Strip Load\***



$b/z$	$I_\sigma$	
	Boussinesq	Westergaard
$\infty$	1.000	1.000
100	1.000	0.990
10	0.997	0.910
9	0.996	0.901
8	0.994	0.888
7	0.991	0.874
6.5	0.989	0.864
6.0	0.986	0.853
5.5	0.983	0.835
5.0	0.977	0.824
4.5	0.970	0.807
4.0	0.960	0.784
3.5	0.943	0.756
3.0	0.920	0.719
2.5	0.889	0.672
2.0	0.817	0.608
1.5	0.716	0.519
1.2	0.624	0.448
1.0	0.550	0.392
0.8	0.462	0.328
0.5	0.306	0.216
0.2	0.127	0.089
0.1	0.064	0.045
0	0.000	0.000

\*After Duncan and Buchignani (1976).

**TABLE 8-6** Influence Values for Vertical Stress Under Corner of a Uniformly Loaded Rectangular Area\*



**Boussinesq Case**

$B/z$	$L/z$							
	0.1	0.2	0.4	0.6	0.8	1.0	2.0	$\infty$
0.1	0.005	0.009	0.017	0.022	0.026	0.028	0.031	0.032
0.2	0.009	0.018	0.033	0.043	0.050	0.055	0.061	0.062
0.4	0.017	0.033	0.060	0.080	0.093	0.101	0.113	0.115
0.6	0.022	0.043	0.080	0.107	0.125	0.136	0.153	0.156
0.8	0.026	0.050	0.093	0.125	0.146	0.160	0.181	0.185
1.0	0.028	0.055	0.101	0.136	0.160	0.175	0.200	0.205
2.0	0.031	0.061	0.113	0.153	0.181	0.200	0.232	0.240
$\infty$	0.032	0.062	0.115	0.156	0.185	0.205	0.240	0.250

**Westergaard Case**

$B/z$	$L/z$							
	0.1	0.2	0.4	0.6	0.8	1.0	2.0	$\infty$
0.1	0.003	0.006	0.011	0.014	0.017	0.018	0.021	0.022
0.2	0.006	0.012	0.021	0.028	0.033	0.036	0.041	0.044
0.4	0.011	0.021	0.039	0.052	0.060	0.066	0.077	0.082
0.6	0.014	0.028	0.052	0.069	0.081	0.089	0.104	0.112
0.8	0.017	0.033	0.060	0.081	0.095	0.105	0.125	0.135
1.0	0.018	0.036	0.066	0.089	0.105	0.116	0.140	0.152
2.0	0.021	0.041	0.077	0.104	0.125	0.140	0.174	0.196
$\infty$	0.022	0.044	0.082	0.112	0.135	0.152	0.196	0.250

\*After Duncan and Buchignani (1976).

considered. Further, for sites where a layered subsoil exists, that is, where there are large variations in the modulus of elasticity, other solutions must be used to take into account the relative rigidities of the layers. Solutions to these kinds of stress distributions may be found in Harr (1966) and Poulos and Davis (1974). These references also supply equations and charts for estimating the horizontal and shear stresses in elastic media.

## PROBLEMS

- 8-1. For the  $e$  versus  $\log \sigma$  curves of Fig. 8.8a, compute the compression indices. Explain why it is possible to get slightly different answers than those shown at the bottom of the figure.
- 8-2. Verify the values of the preconsolidation stress shown in Fig. 8.8a.
- 8-3. Determine the overconsolidation ratio (OCR) for the five fine-grained soils of Fig. 8.8a.
- 8-4. Verify that the values for the preconsolidation stress and the virgin compression index shown in Fig. 8.8b are correct.
- 8-5. What is the OCR of the clay till in Fig. 8.8c?
- 8-6. Estimate the preconsolidation stress for (a) the undisturbed Leda clay in Fig. 8.8d, (b) undisturbed Mexico City clay in Fig. 8.8e (c) undisturbed Chicago clay in Fig. 8.8f, and (d) the swelling clays from Texas in Fig. 8.8g.
- 8-7. Determine the compression indices for the four soils of Problem 8-6.
- 8-8. The pressure versus void ratio data determined from a consolidation test on an undisturbed clay specimen are as follows:

Pressure (kPa)	Void Ratio
20	0.953
40	0.948
80	0.938
160	0.920
320	0.878
640	0.789
1280	0.691
320	0.719
80	0.754
20	0.791
0	0.890

- (a) Plot the pressure versus void ratio curve on both arithmetic and semilogarithmic graphs.
- (b) Determine the equations for the virgin compression curve and for the rebound curve for unloading starting at 1280 kPa.
- (c) What are the corresponding modified compression and recompression indices for this soil?
- (d) Estimate the stress to which this clay has been preconsolidated. (After A. Casagrande.)
- 8-9. A building is to be constructed on a 6 m thick stratum of the clay for which consolidation data are given in Problem 8-8. The average existing effective overburden pressure on this clay stratum is 120 kPa. The average applied pressure on the clay after construction of the building is 270 kPa.
- (a) Estimate the decrease in thickness of the clay stratum caused by full consolidation under the building load.
- (b) Estimate the decrease in thickness due to the building load if the clay had never been preconsolidated under a load greater than the existing overburden.
- (c) Show on the  $e$  versus  $\log \sigma'$  plot of Problem 8-8 the values of  $\Delta e$  used for making the estimates in parts (a) and (b). (After A. Casagrande.)
- 8-10. The compression curve for a certain clay is a straight line on the semilogarithmic plot, and it passes through the point  $e = 1.21$ ,  $\sigma'_{vc} = 50$  kPa, and  $e = 0.68$ ,  $\sigma'_{vc} = 800$  kPa. Determine an equation for this relationship. (After Taylor, 1948.)
- 8-11. Show that Eqs. 8-9 and 8-15 are valid.
- 8-12. The following consolidation test data were obtained from undis-

Stress (kPa)	Dial Reading (mm)	Void Ratio
0	12.700	2.855
5	12.352	2.802
10	12.294	2.793
20	12.131	2.769
40	11.224	2.631
80	9.053	2.301
160	6.665	1.939
320	4.272	1.576
640	2.548	1.314
160	2.951	1.375
40	3.533	1.464
5	4.350	1.589

turbed San Francisco Bay Mud. For this clay,  $LL = 88$ ,  $PL = 43$ ,  $\rho_s = 2.70 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ , and  $w_n = 105.7\%$ . Initially, the specimen height was 2.54 cm and its volume was  $75.14 \text{ cm}^3$ . Plot the data as percent consolidation versus log pressure. Evaluate the preconsolidation pressure and the modified virgin compression index.

- 8-13. Plot the data of Problem 8-12, on a void ratio versus log pressure graph. Evaluate the preconsolidation pressure and the virgin compression index. Do these values agree with what you found in Problem 8-12? Comments?
- 8-14. The initial water content of the sample in Problem 8-12 is 105.7%, and the density of the solids,  $\rho_s$ , is  $2.70 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ . Compute the wet and dry density and degree of saturation of the consolidation test sample if the dry weight of the sample is 52.8 g. If the final water content is 59.6%, compute the degree of saturation and dry density at the end of consolidation.
- 8-15. A 7.5 m thick layer of soft San Francisco Bay Mud is to be loaded with a granular fill 3 m thick, on the average. The total density of the fill is about  $1.9 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ . Assume the test data in Problem 8-12 is typical of the clay layer, and that the layer is normally consolidated. What consolidation settlement will take place due to the weight of the fill? Make these calculations using (a) the  $C_{c\epsilon}$  determined in Problem 8-12, (b) the  $C_c$  determined in Problem 8-13, and (c) directly from the percent consolidation versus log pressure diagram you plotted in Problem 8-12.
- 8-16. Assume the laboratory test results in Problem 8-12 are typical of another San Francisco Bay Mud site, but where the clay is slightly overconsolidated. The present vertical effective overburden stress is calculated to be about 12 kPa, and the thickness of the clay is 4 m. At this location, the granular fill ( $\rho = 1.9 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ ) will be only about 1 m thick. Estimate the consolidation settlement due to the weight of the fill.
- 8-17. What settlement would you expect at the overconsolidated site in Problem 8-16 if the fill to be constructed were 3 m thick? Do this problem (a) directly from the percent consolidation plot and (b) using Eq. 8-18 or 8-19. How do the results compare?

- 8-18. Plot the following data and determine the preconsolidation pressure and the modified compression index.

% Consolidation (compression is +)	Pressure (kPa)
0.08	5
0.10	10
0.11	20
0.24	40
0.89	80
1.74	160
3.81	320
7.32	640
7.30	320
7.12	160
6.55	80
6.67	160
6.91	320
7.59	640
11.50	1280
15.83	2560
20.16	5120
19.68	1280
18.75	160
17.51	40
13.95	5

Specimen height is 25.4 mm,  $w_n = 29.3\%$ ,  $\rho_d = 1.50 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ . Sample is from a depth of -10.7 m.

- 8-19. At the site where the sample of Problem 8-18 was taken, the soil profile consists of about 6 m of sand and rubble fill and then 8.5 m of clay. The water table is about 2 m below the ground surface. Average densities of the sand and rubble fill are  $1.5 \text{ Mg/m}^3$  above the water table and  $1.65 \text{ Mg/m}^3$  below the water table. Estimate the consolidation settlement if the average stress increase in the compressible layer is (a) 50 kPa, (b) 100 kPa, and (c) 250 kPa. Use both Eq. 8-19 (or Eq. 8-17) and your percent compression plot from Problem 8-18, and compare the results. Comments?
- 8-20. Plot the following void ratio versus pressure data, and evaluate the compression index and the recompression index. Determine the preconsolidation stress.

Void Ratio, $e$	Pressure (kPa)
1.079	0
1.059	10
1.049	20
1.029	40
1.001	80
0.959	160
0.940	200
0.881	300
0.821	400
0.690	800
0.530	2000
0.570	500
0.620	160
0.717	20

- 8-21. Use the consolidation data from Problem 8-20 to compute the settlement of a structure that adds 150 kPa to the already existing overburden pressure of 120 kPa at the middle of a 6 m thick layer.
- 8-22. What would be the settlement of the same structure in Problem 8-21 if the overconsolidation ratio of the clay were 1.0 and  $\sigma'_{eo} + \Delta\sigma_o = 270$  kPa at the middepth of the clay layer? Show your work and assumptions on the  $e$  versus  $\log \sigma$  curve of Problem 8-20.
- 8-23. The consolidation curve of Fig. Ex. 8.9 is typical of a compressible layer 5 m thick. If the existing overburden pressure is 50 kPa, compute the settlement due to an additional stress of 150 kPa added by a structure.
- 8-24. For the test data of Problem 8-12, construct the field virgin compression curve using the Schmertmann procedure for an OCR of unity.
- 8-25. Do Problem 8-24 for an OCR = 2.0.
- 8-26. At the midpoint of a 7 m thick soil layer, the void ratio is 2.4. Find this point on the field virgin compression curve determined in Problem 8-24. What is the corresponding pressure? If this pressure is doubled over the entire site, compute the consolidation settlement of the layer.
- 8-27. Show that the field virgin compression curve shown on Fig. 8.8c ( $C_c = 0.19$ ) is correct.
- 8-28. Show that the point of intersection where the laboratory and field virgin compression curves meet for the percent consolidation versus

$\log \sigma'$  graph is equal to  $0.58e_o/(1 + e_o)$ . This intersection is equivalent to the  $0.42e_o$  point on the  $e$  versus  $\log \sigma'$  graph.

- 8-29. Using the appropriate empirical relationship from Sec. 8.11, estimate the compression and recompression indices and both modified indices for as many of the clays of Fig. 8.8 as you can. How well do the empirical relationships agree with the laboratory data?
- 8-30. Do Problem 8-29 for the clays in Problems 8-8, 8-12, 8-18, and 8-20. Again, how good is the agreement?
- 8-31. Compare the stress distribution with depth for (a) a point load of 1000 kN and (b) a 1000 kN load applied over an area of  $3 \times 3$  m. Plot the results.
- 8-32. If you used the Boussinesq (or Westergaard) theory for Problem 8-31, do the problem again but use the Westergaard (or Boussinesq) theory instead. Comment on the differences between the two theories.
- 8-33. Compute the data and draw a curve of  $\sigma_z/Q$  versus depth for points directly below a point load  $Q$ . On the same plot draw curves of  $\sigma_z/Q$  versus depth for points directly below the center of square footings with breadths of 5 m and 15 m, respectively, each carrying a uniformly distributed load  $Q$ . On the basis of this plot, make a statement relative to the range within which loaded areas may be considered to act as point loads. (After Taylor, 1948.)
- 8-34. The center of a rectangular area at ground surface has Cartesian coordinates (0, 0), and the corners have coordinates (6, 15). All dimensions are in metres. The area carries a uniform pressure of 150 kPa. Estimate the stresses at a depth of 20 m below ground surface at each of the following locations: (0, 0), (0, 15), (6, 0), (6, 15), and (10, 25); obtain values by both Boussinesq and Westergaard methods, and also determine the ratio of the stresses as indicated by the two methods. (After Taylor, 1948.)
- 8-35. Compare the results of Problem 8-34 with the 2:1 method. Comments?
- 8-36. Calculate the stress distribution with depth at a point 3 m from the corner (along the longest side) of a rectangularly loaded area 10 by 30 m with a uniform load of 60 kPa. Do by (a) the Boussinesq theory, (b) the Westergaard theory, and (c) the 2:1 method.
- 8-37. How far apart must two 20 m diameter tanks be placed such that

their stress overlap is not greater than 10% of the contact stress at depths of 10, 20, and 30 m?

- 8-38. Compute the stresses for the data of Example 8.19, parts (a) and (b), using the Newmark chart, Fig. 8.25.
- 8-39. Work Example 8.21, using superposition of the results of Figs. 8.24 and 8.21. How does your answer compare with the solution for Example 8.21?
- 8-40. Given the data of Example 8.22. Instead of a load on the surface, compute the depth of an excavation to cause a reduction in stress at the bottom of the excavation of 250 kPa if  $\rho = 2 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ . The excavation plan area is shown in Fig. Ex. 8.22a.
- 8-41. For the excavation of Problem 8-40, *estimate* the stress change at a depth of 65 m below the bottom of the excavation at point  $O'$ .
- 8-42. Is the 2:1 method usable for excavations? Why?
- 8-43. A strip footing 3 m wide is loaded on the ground surface with a pressure equal to 150 kPa. Calculate the stress distribution at depths of 3, 6, and 12 m under the center of the footing. If the footing rested on a normally consolidated cohesive layer whose LL was 84 and whose PL was 50, estimate the settlement of the footing.
- 8-44. How would the estimated settlement under the center of a  $3 \times 3 \text{ m}$  square footing compare with the settlement of the 3 m wide strip footing in the previous problem, assuming soil conditions were the same? Assume the footing is flexible enough to provide uniform contact pressure to the soil.
- 8-45. How much difference in the computed settlements is there in Problem 8-44 if the Westergaard theory is used instead of Boussinesq theory?
- 8-46. A large oil storage tank 100 m in diameter is to be constructed on the soil profile shown in Fig. P8-46. Average depth of the oil in the tank is 20 m, and the specific gravity of the oil is 0.92. Consolidation tests from the clay layer are similar to those given in Problem 8-18. Estimate the maximum total and differential consolidation settlement of the tank. Neglect any settlements in the sand. Work this problem assuming (a) conditions at the middepth of the clay are typical of the entire clay layer, and (b) dividing the clay layer into four or five thinner layers, computing the settlement of each thin layer and summing up by Eq. 8-14. Hint: See Example 9.12.

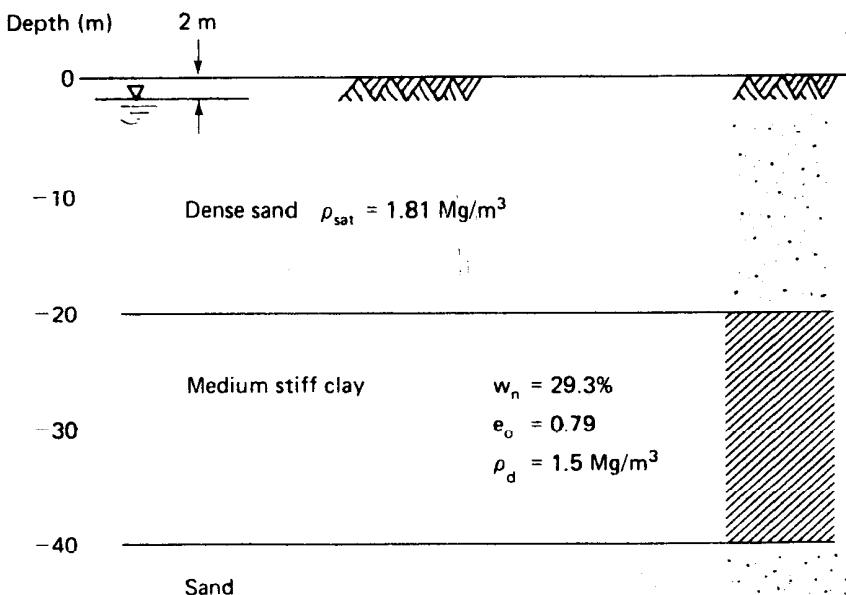


Fig. P8-46

- 8-47. Estimate the ultimate consolidation settlement under the centerline of a  $15 \times 15 \text{ m}$  mat foundation. The mat is 1 m thick reinforced concrete, and the average stress on the surface of the slab is 76 kPa. The soil profile is shown in Fig. P8-47. Oedometer tests on samples of the clay provide these average values:

$$\sigma'_p = 130 \text{ kPa}, \quad C_c = 0.40, \quad C_r = 0.03$$

Neglect any settlements due to the sand layer.

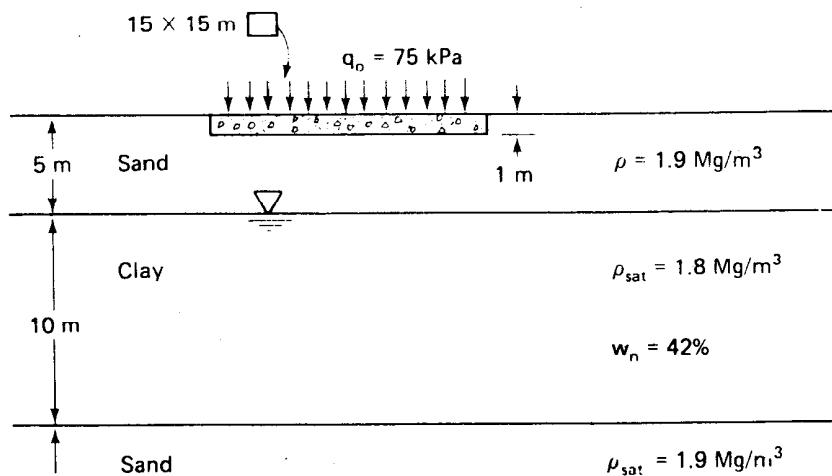


Fig. P8-47

- 8-48. Three uniformly distributed loads of 100 kPa each are applied to  $10 \times 10$  m square areas on the soil profile shown in Fig. P8-48. Undisturbed samples of the clay were taken prior to construction, and consolidation tests indicated that the average preconsolidation stress is about 110 kPa, the average compression index is 0.50, and the average recompression index is 0.02. Estimate the total consolidation settlement for the clay layer only under the center of the middle loaded area.

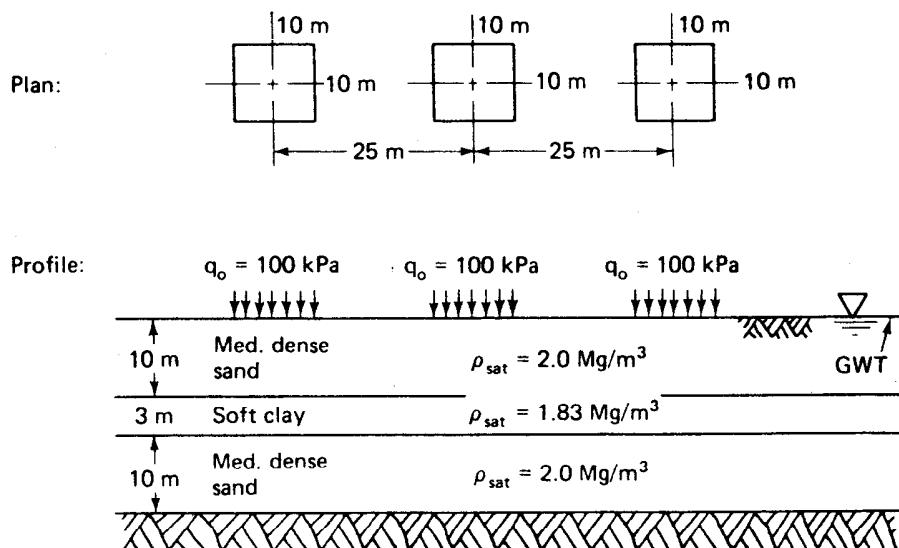


Fig. P8-48

- 8-49. A series of oil storage tanks are to be constructed near Mystic River power station in Boston, MA. The typical tank is 20 m in diameter, and it exerts an average foundation stress of about 100 kPa. The soil profile at the site is very similar to that shown in Fig. 8.14a. Estimate both the total and differential consolidation settlement under the average tank. Hint: See Example 9.12.

- 8-50. A new highway to Siracha, Thailand, is to be constructed east of Bangkok, across a region of deep deposits of very soft marine clay. A typical soil profile is shown in Fig. 8.16a. The average  $C_{c\epsilon} = 0.8$  below the drying crust. The proposed embankment is 15 m wide at the top, has three horizontal to one vertical side slope and is 2 m high. Estimate the ultimate consolidation settlement of the centerline of the embankment.

## Time Rate of Consolidation

---

### 9.1 INTRODUCTION

In Chapter 8 we showed how to calculate the magnitude of consolidation settlement that a clay layer under a structure will undergo before it reaches equilibrium with the external load. We described how the pore water pressure in excess of hydrostatic dissipates with time (consolidation) and how the effective stress ultimately becomes equal to the applied load. It was mentioned that the rate of consolidation would depend, among other things, on the permeability of the soil.

Sometimes consolidation is called *primary consolidation* to distinguish it from the other time-dependent component of total settlement, *secondary compression*. You will recall from Sec. 8.2 that secondary compression occurs after essentially all of the excess pore water pressure has dissipated; that is, it occurs at constant effective stress. In some soils, especially inorganic clays, primary consolidation is the largest component of total settlement, whereas secondary compression constitutes a major part of the total settlement of peats and other highly organic soils. In this chapter, the theories for estimating the time rate of both primary consolidation and secondary compression of fine-grained soils are discussed.

Why is it important to know how fast a structure will settle under the applied load? For example, if the design life of a structure is 50 years, and it is estimated that it will take 500 years for all the settlement to occur, then the foundation engineer would expect only minor settlement problems during the life of the structure. On the other hand, if the settlement is expected to take about the time required to build the structure, then most if not all of the settlement will have occurred by the time the structure is completed. If the structure is sensitive to rapid settlements (for example,

reinforced concrete frames or concrete pavement), then structural damage could result. Most structures on clay foundations experience gradual settlements during their lifetimes, which may or may not impair the performance of the structures. This chapter presents procedures for estimating the *rate* of foundation settlement. The engineer then can decide what effect, if any, the settlement may have on the structural integrity as well as the intended use of the structure.

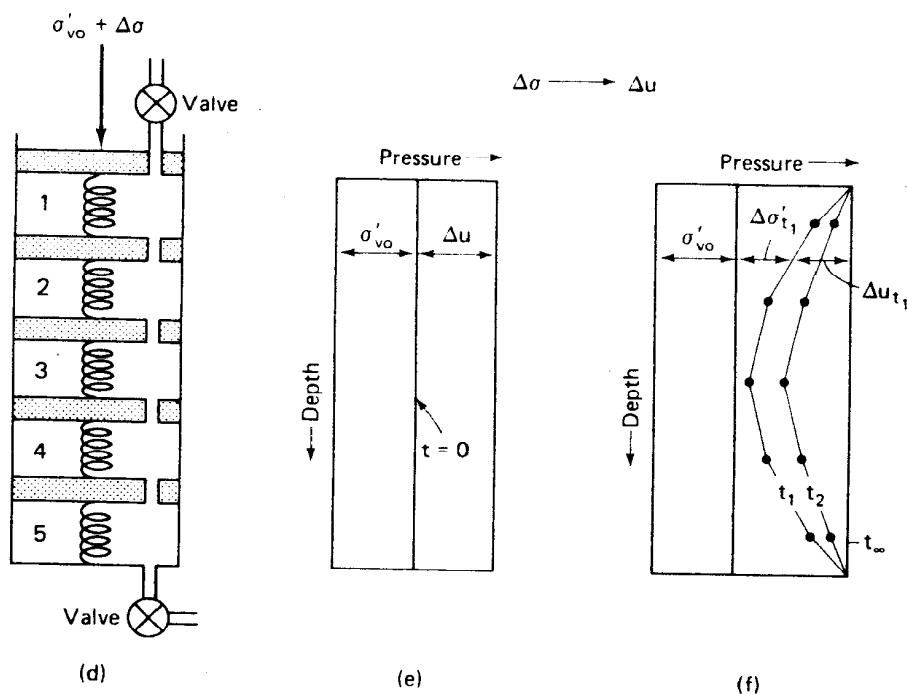
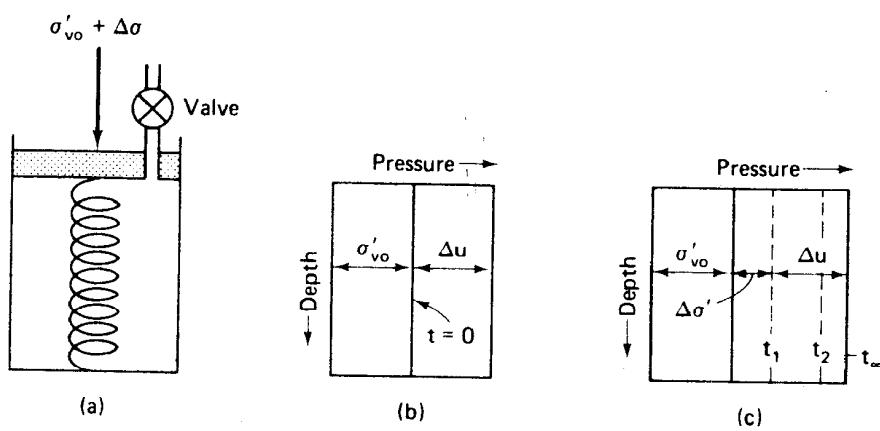
The following notation is introduced in this chapter.

Symbol	Dimension	Unit	Definition
$C_a$	—	—	Secondary compression index (Eq. 9-15)
$C_{ac}$	—	—	Modified secondary compression index (Eq. 9-16)
$c_o$	$L^2 T^{-1}$	$m^2/s$	Coefficient of consolidation (Eq. 9-3)
$H_{dr}$	$L$	$m$	Length of drainage path (Eq. 9-5)
$R_o$	$L$	$mm$	Initial dial reading (Eq. 9-13)
$R_n$	$L$	$mm$	Dial reading at time $t$ , $n = 1, 2, \dots$
$s(t)$	$L$	$m$	Consolidation settlement at time $t$
$T$	—	—	Time factor (Eq. 9-5)
$U_{avg}$ or $U$	—	(%)	Degree of consolidation
$U_z$	—	— (or %)	Consolidation ratio (Eq. 9-9)
$Z$	—	—	Depth factor (Eq. 9-9)

## 9.2 THE CONSOLIDATION PROCESS

It is useful to return to the spring analogy as presented in Chapter 8 (Fig. 8.2). Figure 9.1a shows a spring with a piston and a valve in a single cylinder. A pressure versus depth diagram is shown in Fig. 9.1b. The soil, represented by the spring, is at equilibrium with an initial effective stress  $\sigma'_{eo}$ . For the time being, we shall assume that all of the applied load on the piston,  $\Delta\sigma$ , is initially transferred to the excess pore water pressure  $\Delta u$  (excess above hydrostatic or initial  $u_o$ ). This is the case for one-dimensional loading, but later we shall see that this is not true for three-dimensional loading.

With time, water is squeezed out through the valve, and the excess pore water pressure decreases. Thus there is a gradual transfer of stress from the pore water to the soil skeleton and a concurrent increase in effective stress. Figure 9.1c shows the initial effective stress  $\sigma'_{eo}$ , the change (increase) in effective stress,  $\Delta\sigma'$ , and the pore pressure still to be dissipated,  $\Delta u$ , at  $t = t_1$ . The vertical dashed lines, labeled  $t_1$ ,  $t_2$ , etc., represent time from the start of load application. These lines are called



**Fig. 9.1 Spring analogy for consolidation: (a)–(c), model of a single soil layer; (d)–(f), model of multiple soil layers.**

*isochrones* because they are lines of equal times. (*Isobars* are either arctic taverns or contour lines of equal pressure found on a weather map; *isopachs* are lines of equal thickness of a geologic deposit; and *isotachs* are lines of equal velocity on wind maps.) Finally, at  $t \rightarrow \infty$  all of the excess pore water pressure  $\Delta u$  will be dissipated, and the effective stress will equal the initial stress  $\sigma'_{vo}$  plus the applied stress increment  $\Delta\sigma$ . During this time, the piston will have settled an amount that is directly related to how much water is squeezed out of the cylinder.

A typical soil layer is much more complex than the simple model shown in Figs. 9.1a-c. Let us increase the number of springs, pistons, and valves as shown Fig. 9.1d. As before, we can show the initial effective stress  $\sigma'_{vo}$  within the soil layer, and the corresponding induced pore water pressure  $\Delta u$ , due to the external load on the pistons,  $\Delta\sigma$ , in Fig. 9.1e. Let us allow drainage to occur through each piston and valve so that we have both internal as well as top and bottom drainage. In order for the water to be squeezed out of cylinders 2, 3, and 4, it is necessary for some of the water in cylinders 1 and 5 to escape beforehand. Likewise, before the water can be squeezed out of the soil in cylinder 3, it is necessary that some of the water in cylinders 2 and 4 be squeezed out first, etc. Because all valves are open, upon application of the external stress  $\Delta\sigma$ , water will start to flow out immediately from the top and bottom cylinders. This will result in an immediate reduction of the excess pore water pressure and an increase in effective stress in cylinders 1 and 5, etc. As shown in Fig. 9.1f, with time the pore pressure isochrones move to the right, and they are segmented lines because of the finite number of pistons and valves. With an infinite number of pistons, the isochrones would be smooth curves which rather accurately represent what is physically occurring with time in a consolidating soil deposit. At the center of a *doubly drained* layer, which is modeled by Figs. 9.1d-f, it can be seen that the decrease in the induced pore water pressure, for example at  $t_1$ , is small compared to the change at the top and bottom of the layer. This is because the *drainage path* for the center cylinder is considerably longer than for cylinders 1 and 5. As a result, it takes a longer time for the center of a doubly drained layer (or the bottom of a singly drained layer) to dissipate its excess pore pressure.

The flow of water out of the cylinders (soil voids) is physically due to the gradient  $i$ , which equals  $h/l = (\Delta u/\rho_w g)/\Delta z$ . The slope of the segmented isochrones in Fig. 9.1f is  $\Delta u/\Delta z$ . At the exact center of the clay layer, the flow is zero because the gradient  $\Delta u/\Delta z$  is zero. At the ends, the gradient approaches infinity and thus the flow is the largest right at the drainage surfaces.

The process just described is called *consolidation*. The amount of settlement the spring-piston system (or clay layer) experiences is directly related to how much water has squeezed out of the cylinders (or voids in

the clay). How much water has squeezed out and thus the change in void ratio of the clay is in turn directly proportional to the amount of excess pore water pressure that has dissipated. Thus the *rate* of settlement is directly related to the *rate* of excess pore pressure dissipation. What we need in order to predict the rate of settlement of a foundation is an equation or theory that predicts the pore pressure and void ratio at any point in time and space in the consolidating clay layer. Then the change in thickness or settlement of the layer after any time of loading can be determined by integration of the equation over the thickness of the clay layer. The theory of consolidation which is most commonly used in soil mechanics is a one-dimensional theory. It was first developed by Terzaghi in the 1920's and its derivation and solution are summarized in the following sections.

### 9.3 TERZAGHI'S ONE-DIMENSIONAL CONSOLIDATION THEORY

In this section, we will present the Terzaghi (1925) one-dimensional consolidation equation and discuss some of the assumptions necessary to derive the equation. A detailed derivation and the solution to the equation is given in Appendix B-2. In order to use the Terzaghi theory with some confidence, it is important that you understand the assumptions and therefore the limitations of the theory.

The compressible soil layer is assumed to be both homogeneous and completely saturated with water, and the mineral grains in the soil and the water in the pores are completely incompressible. Darcy's law is considered to govern the egress of water from the soil pores, and usually both drainage and compression are assumed to be one dimensional. Usually drainage is provided at both the top and bottom of the compressible layer, but we could just as easily assume drainage at only one surface. The Terzaghi theory is a *small strain* theory in that the applied load increment produces only small strains in the soil; therefore both the coefficient of compressibility,  $a_v$ , and the Darcy coefficient of permeability,  $k$ , remain essentially constant during the consolidation process. If  $a_v$  is a constant over the increment of applied stress, then there is a *unique* relationship between the change in void ratio,  $\Delta e$ , and the change in effective stress,  $\Delta\sigma'$ . This implies also that there is *no secondary compression*; if secondary compression occurs, then the relationship between  $\Delta e$  and  $\Delta\sigma'$  would not be unique, by definition. Recall that secondary compression is the change in void ratio that occurs at constant effective stress.

The derivation of the Terzaghi equation considers the volume of water flowing out of a differential compressible soil element. From Darcy's law, we know the quantity of flow depends on the hydraulic gradient as well as on the permeability of the soil. The hydraulic gradient causing flow can be related to the excess pore water pressure in the element by  $u/\rho_w g$ . Since the water is assumed incompressible, by continuity the volume change in the element must be the difference in flow in and out of the element in a differential time  $dt$ . This part of the equation can be written as

$$\frac{-k}{\rho_w g} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} dz dt$$

where  $z$  is the space or depth variable in the soil element. Everything else is as previously defined. Partial differentials must be used because  $u$  is a function of both the position  $z$  and time  $t$ .

The other part of the equation is obtained by relating the volume change or change in void ratio of the soil skeleton to the change in effective stress by means of the coefficient of compressibility  $a_v$ , which we determined in the oedometer test. (Thus  $a_v$  is really the stress-strain relationship or "modulus" of our soil.) From the effective stress principle, we can equate the change in effective stress to the change in pore pressure. In other words as long as the total stress is constant, as the excess pore pressure dissipates with time, there is a concurrent increase in effective stress, or  $\Delta\sigma' = -\Delta u$ . As before,  $u$  is a function of both  $z$  and  $t$ . This half of the equation is usually written as

$$\frac{-a_v}{1 + e_o} \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} dt dz$$

Putting the two parts together, we obtain

$$\frac{-k}{\rho_w g} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} dz dt = \frac{-a_v}{1 + e_o} \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} dt dz \quad (9-1)$$

Rearranging, we obtain

$$c_v \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} = \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} \quad (9-2)$$

where

$$c_v = \frac{k}{\rho_w g} \frac{1 + e_o}{a_v} \quad (9-3)$$

The coefficient  $c_v$  is called the *coefficient of consolidation* because it contains the material properties that govern the consolidation process. If you perform a dimensional analysis of Eq. 9-3, you will find that  $c_v$  has dimensions of  $L^2 T^{-1}$  or  $m^2/s$ .

Equation 9-2 is the *Terzaghi one-dimensional consolidation equation*. It could just as easily be written in three dimensions, but most of the time in engineering practice one-dimensional consolidation is assumed. Basically, the equation is a form of the diffusion equation from mathematical physics. Many physical diffusion phenomena are described by this equation, for example, heat flow in a solid body. The "diffusion constant" for the soil is the  $c_v$ . Note that we called the  $c_v$  a constant. It really isn't, but we must assume it is, that is, that  $k$ ,  $a_v$ , and  $e_o$  are constants, in order to make the equation linear and easily solvable.

So how do we solve the Terzaghi consolidation equation? Just like we solve all other second-order partial differential equations with constant coefficients. There are a variety of ways; some are mathematically exact; others are only approximate. For example, Harr (1966) presents an approximate solution by using the method of finite differences. Taylor (1948), following Terzaghi (1925), gives a mathematically rigorous solution in terms of a Fourier series expansion, and this is what we do in detail in Appendix B-2. Here we shall just give an outline of the solution. First, the boundary and initial conditions for the case of one-dimensional consolidation are:

1. There is complete drainage at the top and bottom of the compressible layer.
2. The initial excess hydrostatic pressure  $\Delta u = u_i$  is equal to the applied increment of stress at the boundary,  $\Delta\sigma$ .

We can write these boundary and initial conditions as follows:

When  $z = 0$  and when

$$z = 2H, u = 0$$

When  $t = 0, \Delta u = u_i = \Delta\sigma = (\sigma'_2 - \sigma'_1)$

We usually take the thickness of the consolidating layer to be  $2H$ , so that the *length of the longest drainage path* is equal to  $H$  or  $H_{dr}$ . Of course at  $t = \infty, \Delta u = 0$ , or complete dissipation of the pore pressure will have occurred.

Terzaghi (1925) was obviously familiar with the early work on heat transfer, and he adapted those closed-form solutions to the consolidation problem. The solution comes out in terms of a Fourier series expansion of the form

$$u = (\sigma'_2 - \sigma'_1) \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} f_1(Z) f_2(T) \quad (9-4)$$

where  $Z$  and  $T$  are dimensionless parameters (see also Taylor, 1948). The first term,  $Z$ , is a geometry parameter, and it is equal to  $z/H$ . The second term,  $T$ , is known as the *time factor*, and it is related to the coefficient of

consolidation  $c_v$  by

$$T = c_v \frac{t}{H_{dr}^2} \quad (9-5)$$

where  $t$  = time, and

$H_{dr}$  = length of the longest drainage path.

We have already mentioned that  $c_v$  has dimensions of  $L^2 T^{-1}$  or units of  $m^2/s$  (or equivalent).

From Eq. 9-3, the time factor can also be written as

$$T = \frac{k(1 + e_o)}{a_v \rho_w g} \frac{t}{H_{dr}^2} \quad (9-6)$$

Note that  $t$  has the same time units as  $k$ . That is, if  $k$  is in centimetres per second, then  $t$  must be in seconds. The drainage path for double drainage would be equal to half the thickness  $H$  of the clay layer, or  $2H/2 = H_{dr}$ . If we had only a singly drained layer, the drainage path would still be  $H_{dr}$ , but then it would be equal to the thickness  $H$  of the layer.

The progress of consolidation after some time  $t$  and at any depth  $z$  in the consolidating layer can be related to the void ratio at that time and the final change in void ratio. This relationship is called the *consolidation ratio*, and it is expressed as

$$U_z = \frac{e_1 - e}{e_1 - e_2} \quad (9-7)$$

where  $e$  is some intermediate void ratio, as shown on Fig. 9.2. What we are looking at graphically in that figure is the ratio of ordinates corresponding to  $AB$  and  $AC$ . In terms of stresses and pore pressures, Eq. 9-7 becomes

$$U_z = \frac{\sigma' - \sigma'_1}{\sigma'_2 - \sigma'_1} = \frac{\sigma' - \sigma'_1}{\Delta\sigma'} = \frac{u_i - u}{u_i} = 1 - \frac{u}{u_i} \quad (9-8)$$

where  $\sigma'$  and  $u$  are intermediate values corresponding to  $e$  in Eq. 9-7, and  $u_i$  is the initial excess pore pressure induced by the applied stress  $\Delta\sigma'$ . You should satisfy yourself that these equations are correct from the relationships shown in Fig. 9.2 and from  $\Delta\sigma' = -\Delta u$ . (See also Appendix B-2.)

From Eqs. 9-7 and 9-8, it is evident that  $U_z$  is zero at the start of loading, and it gradually increases to 1 (or 100%) as the void ratio decreases from  $e_1$  to  $e_2$ . At the same time, of course, as long as the total stress remains constant, the effective stress increases from  $\sigma'_1$  to  $\sigma'_2$  as the excess hydrostatic stress (pore water pressure) dissipates from  $u_i$  to zero. The consolidation ratio  $U_z$  is sometimes called the *degree or percent consolidation*, and it represents conditions *at a point* in the consolidating layer. It is now possible to put our solution for  $u$  in Eq. 9-4 in terms of the

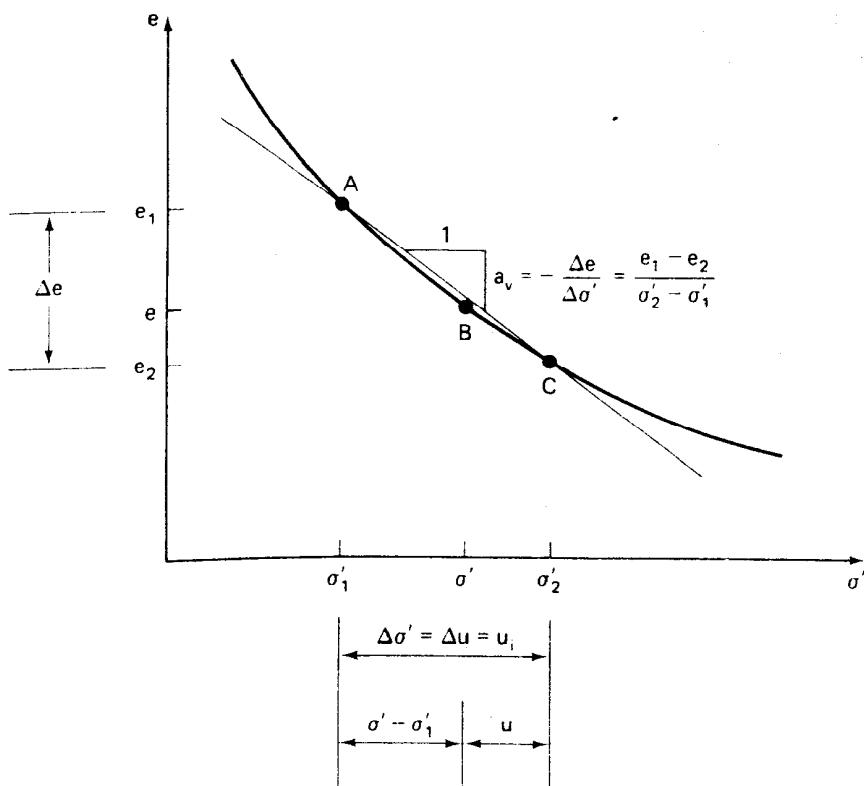


Fig. 9.2 Laboratory compression curve. Note:  $\sigma' - \sigma'_1 = (\sigma'_2 - \sigma'_1) - u = u_i - u$ .

consolidation ratio, Eq. 9-8, or

$$U_z = 1 - \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} f_1(Z) f_2(T) \quad (9-9)$$

The solution to this equation is shown graphically in Fig. 9.3 in terms of the dimensionless parameters already defined. The tedious calculations involved in solving Eq. 9-9 are no longer necessary. From Fig. 9.3 it is possible to find the amount or degree of consolidation (and therefore  $u$  and  $\sigma'$ ) for any real time after the start of loading and at any point in the consolidating layer. All you need to know is the  $c_v$  for the particular soil deposit, the total thickness of the layer, and boundary drainage conditions. With these items, the time factor  $T$  can be calculated from Eq. 9-5. It is applicable to any one-dimensional loading situation where the soil properties can be assumed to be the same throughout the compressible layer.

Figure 9.3 also is a picture of the *progress of consolidation*. The *isochrones* (lines of constant  $T$ ) in Fig. 9.3 represent the degree or percent

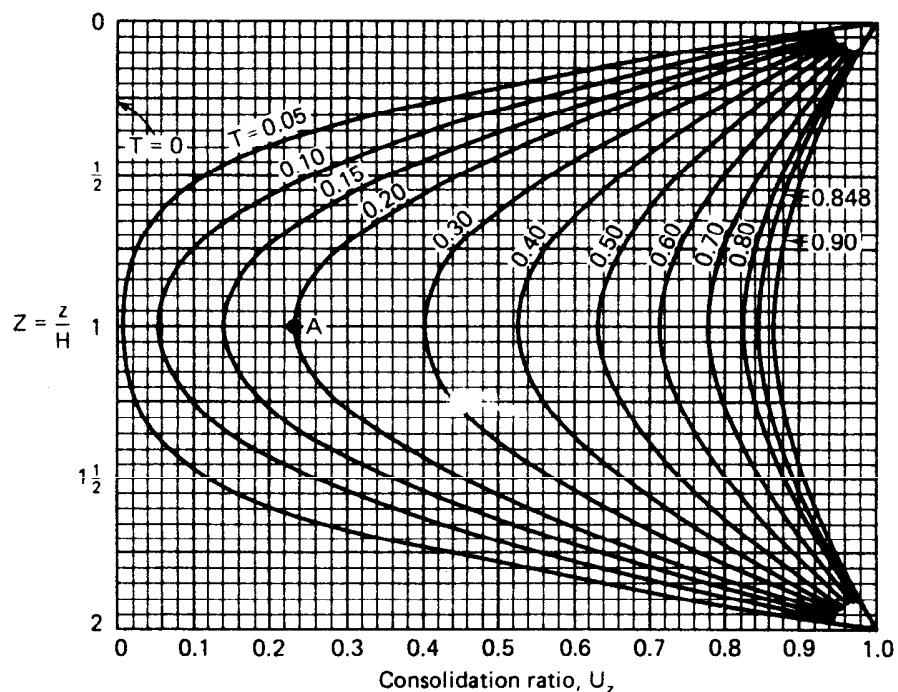


Fig. 9.3 Consolidation for any location and time factor in a doubly drained layer (after Taylor, 1948).

consolidation for a given time factor throughout the compressible layer. For example, the percent consolidation at midheight of a doubly drained layer (total thickness =  $2H$ ) for a time factor equal to 0.2 is approximately 23% (see point *A* in Fig. 9.3). However at the same time (and time factor) at other locations within the soil layer, the degree of consolidation is different. At 25% of the depth, for example,  $z/H = \frac{1}{2}$  and  $U_z = 44\%$ . Similarly, near the drainage surfaces at  $z/H = 0.1$ , for the same time factor, because the gradients are much higher, the clay is already 86% consolidated, which means that at that depth and time, 86% of the original excess pore pressure has dissipated and the effective stress has increased by a corresponding amount.

#### EXAMPLE 9.1

Given:

A 12 m thick layer of Chicago clay is *doubly drained*. (This means that a very pervious layer compared to the clay exists on top of and under the 12 m clay layer.) The coefficient of consolidation  $c_v = 8.0 \times 10^{-8} \text{ m}^2/\text{s}$ .

**Required:**

Find the degree or percent consolidation for the clay 5 yr after loading at depths of 3, 6, 9, and 12 m.

**Solution:**

First, compute the time factor. From Eq. 9-5,

$$T = \frac{c_v t}{H_{dr}^2}$$

$$= \frac{8.0 \times 10^{-8} \text{ m}^2/\text{s} (3.1536 \times 10^7 \text{ s/yr}) (5 \text{ yr})}{(6)^2} = 0.35$$

Note that  $2H = 12 \text{ m}$  and  $H_{dr} = 6 \text{ m}$  since there is double drainage.

Next, from Fig. 9.3 we obtain (by interpolation) for  $T = 0.35$ :

At $z = 3 \text{ m}$ ,	$z/H = 0.50$ ,	$U_z = 61\%$
At $z = 6 \text{ m}$ ,	$z/H = 1.0$ ,	$U_z = 46\%$
At $z = 9 \text{ m}$ ,	$z/H = 1.50$ ,	$U_z = 61\%$
At $z = 12 \text{ m}$ ,	$z/H = 2.0$ ,	$U_z = 100\%$

**EXAMPLE 9.2****Given:**

The soil conditions of Example 9.1.

**Required:**

If the structure applied an average vertical stress increase of 100 kPa to the clay layer, estimate the excess pore water pressure remaining in the clay after 5 yr for the depths in the clay layer of 3, 6, 9, and 12 m.

**Solution:**

Assuming one-dimensional loading, the induced excess pore water pressure at the beginning of consolidation is 100 kPa. From Eq. 9-8,

$$U_z = 1 - \frac{u}{u_i}$$

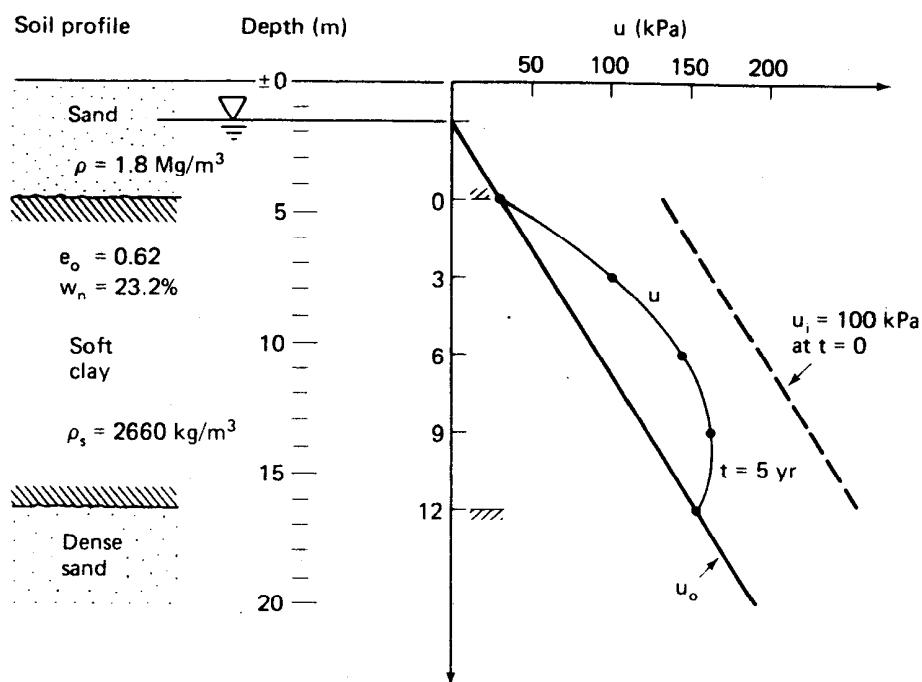


Fig. Ex. 9.2

or

$$u = u_i(1 - U_z)$$

From the solution in Example 9.1 we obtain:

At $z = 3 \text{ m}$ ,	$U_z = 61\%$ ,	$u = 39 \text{ kPa}$
At $z = 6 \text{ m}$ ,	$U_z = 46\%$ ,	$u = 54 \text{ kPa}$
At $z = 9 \text{ m}$ ,	$U_z = 61\%$ ,	$u = 39 \text{ kPa}$
At $z = 12 \text{ m}$ ,	$U_z = 100\%$ ,	$u = 0 \text{ kPa}$

Figure Ex. 9.2 shows these values versus depth. Note that they are *excess* pore pressures, that is, they are above the hydrostatic water pressure.

In most cases, we are not interested in how much a given point in a layer has consolidated. Of more practical interest is the *average degree or percent consolidation* of the entire layer. This value, denoted by  $U$  or  $U_{avg}$ , is a measure of how much the entire layer has consolidated and thus it can be directly related to the *total settlement* of the layer at a given time after loading. Note that  $U$  can be expressed as either a decimal or a percentage.

To obtain the average degree of consolidation over the entire layer corresponding to a given time factor we have to find the area under the  $T$

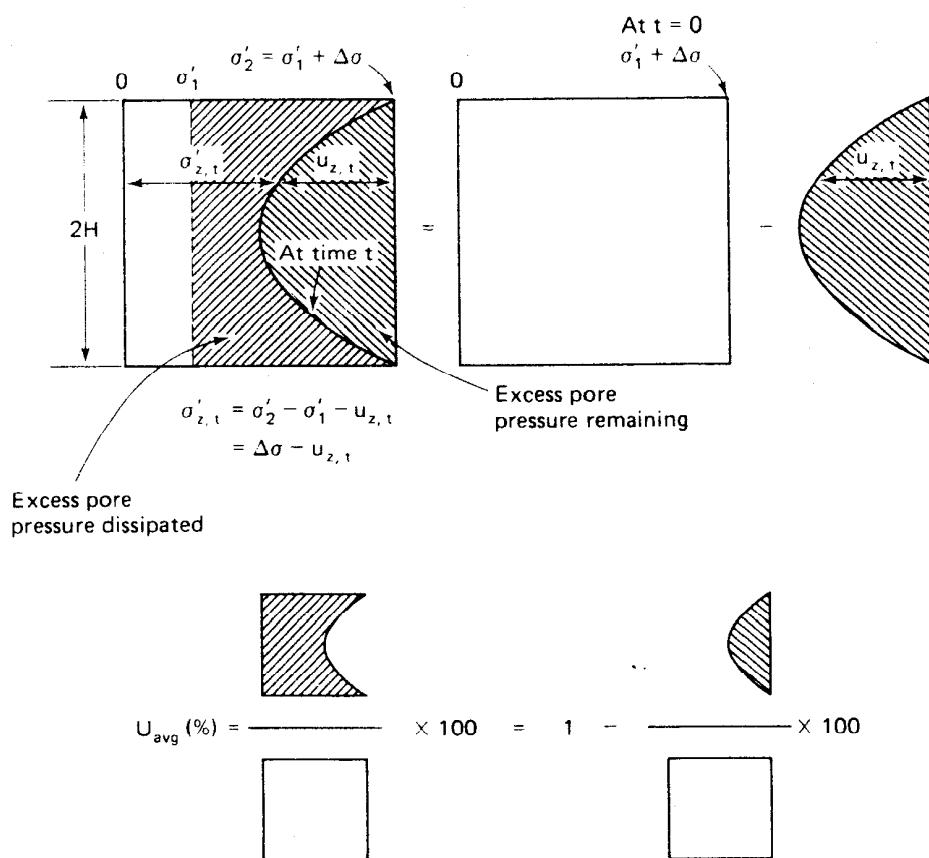


Fig. 9.4 Average degree of consolidation,  $U_{avg}$ , defined.

curve of Fig. 9.3. (Actually we obtain the area outside the  $T$  curve as shown in Fig. 9.4.) How the integration is done mathematically is shown in Appendix B-2. Table 9-1 presents the results of the integration for the case where a *linear* distribution of excess pore water pressure is assumed.

The results in Table 9-1 are shown graphically in Fig. 9.5. In Fig. 9.5a the relationship is shown arithmetically, whereas in Fig. 9.5b, the relationship between  $U$  and  $T$  is shown semilogarithmically. Another form of the relationship is found in Fig. 9.5c, where  $U$  is plotted versus  $\sqrt{T}$ . As discussed in the next section, Figs. 9.5b and 9.5c have been found to show certain characteristics of the theoretical  $U-T$  relationship to better advantage than Fig. 9.5a. Note that as  $T$  becomes very large,  $U$  asymptotically approaches 100%. This means that, theoretically, consolidation never stops but continues infinitely. It should also be pointed out that the solution for  $U$  versus  $T$  is dimensionless and applies to all types of problems where  $\Delta\sigma = \Delta u$  varies *linearly* with depth. Solutions for cases

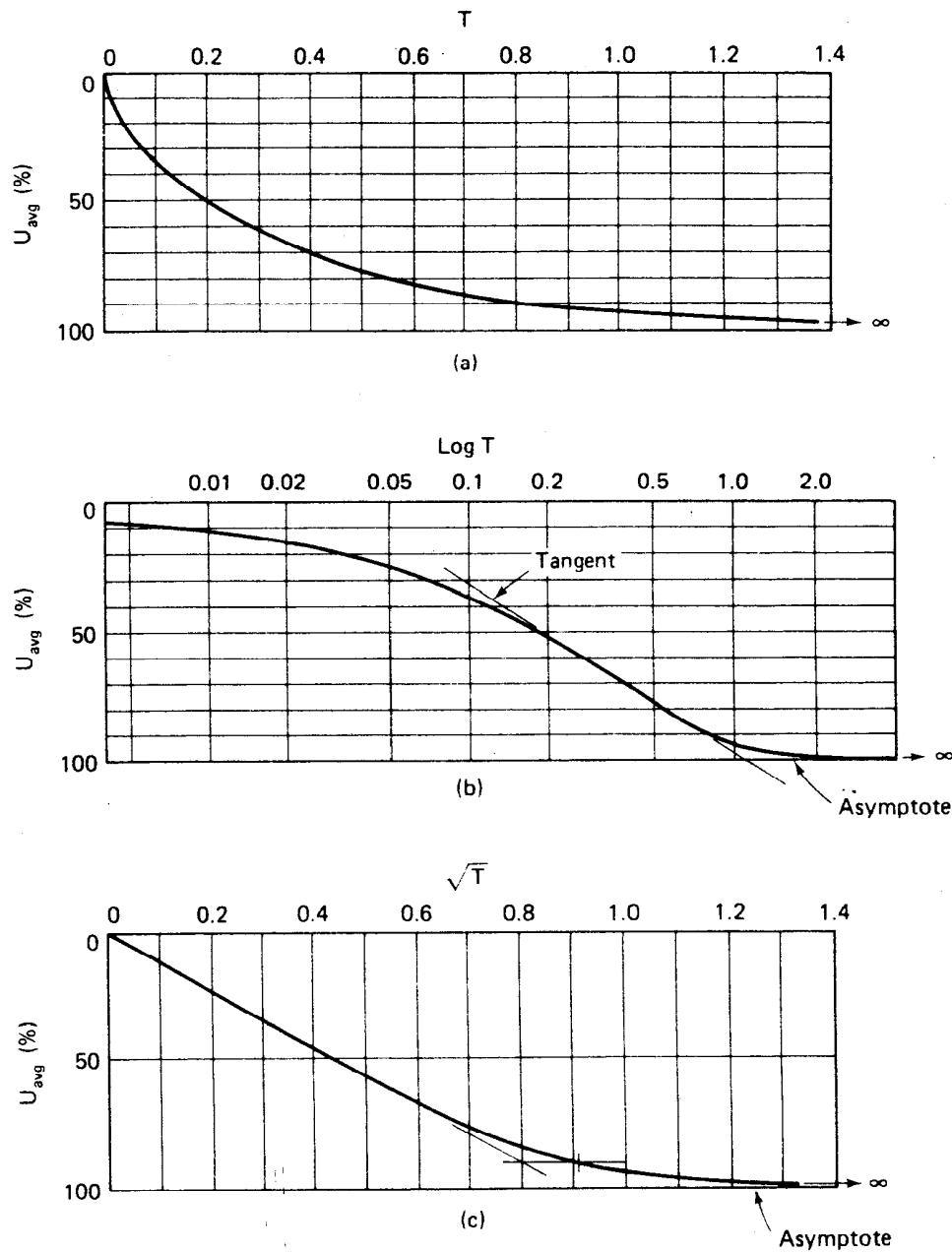


Fig. 9.5  $U_{\text{avg}}$  versus  $T$ : (a) arithmetic scale; (b) log scale; (c) square root scale.

TABLE 9-1

$U_{avg}$	$T$
0.1	0.008
0.2	0.031
0.3	0.071
0.4	0.126
0.5	0.197
0.6	0.287
0.7	0.403
0.8	0.567
0.9	0.848
0.95	1.163
1.0	$\infty$

where the initial pore pressure distribution is sinusoidal, half sine, and triangular are presented by Leonards (1962).

Casagrande (1938) and Taylor (1948) provide the following useful approximations:

For  $U < 60\%$ ,

$$T = \frac{\pi}{4} U^2 = \frac{\pi}{4} \left( \frac{U\%}{100} \right)^2 \quad (9-10)$$

For  $U > 60\%$ ,

$$T = 1.781 - 0.933 \log (100 - U\%) \quad (9-11)$$

### EXAMPLE 9.3

Given:

$T = 0.05$  for a compressible clay deposit.

Required:

Average degree of consolidation and the percent consolidation at the center and at  $z/H = 0.1$ .

Solution:

From Table 9-1 and Fig. 9.5,  $U_{avg} = 26\%$ . Therefore the clay is 26% consolidated, on the average. From Fig. 9.3 you can see that the center of

the layer is less than 0.5% consolidated, while at the "10%" depth ( $z/H = 0.1$ ) the clay is 73% consolidated. But, *on the average* throughout the layer, the clay is 26% consolidated.

**What does the average consolidation mean in terms of settlements?**  $U_{\text{avg}}$  can be expressed as

$$U_{\text{avg}} = \frac{s(t)}{s_c} \quad (9-12)$$

where  $s(t)$  is the settlement at any time, and  $s_c$  is the final or ultimate consolidation (primary) settlement at  $t = \infty$ .

#### EXAMPLE 9.4

**Given:**

The data of Example 9.3.

**Required:**

Find the settlement when  $U_{\text{avg}}$  is 26%, if the final consolidation settlement is 1 m.

**Solution:**

From Eq. 9-12,  $s(t) = U_{\text{avg}}(s_c)$ . Therefore

$$s(t) = 26\% (1 \text{ m}) = 0.26 \text{ m}$$

#### EXAMPLE 9.5

**Given:**

The soil profile and properties of Examples 9.1 and 9.2.

**Required:**

Compute the time required for the clay layer to settle 0.25 m.

**Solution:**

To compute the average degree of consolidation, you first must estimate the consolidation settlement  $s_c$ , as you did in Chapter 8. For Chicago clay, a reasonable value of  $C_c$  is about 0.25 (Tables 8-2 and 8-3). From Fig. Ex. 9.2,  $H_o = 12 \text{ m}$  and  $e_o = 0.62$ . Determine  $\rho$  for the soft clay and calculate  $\sigma'_{vo}$  at the middepth of layer from Eqs. 7-14c and 7-15. Assume the clay is normally consolidated. So

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma'_{vo} &= 1.8 \times 9.81 \times 1.5 + (1.8 - 1) \times 9.81 \times 3 \\ &\quad + (2.02 - 1) \times 9.81 \times 6 \\ &= 110 \text{ kPa}\end{aligned}$$

From Eq. 8-11,

$$s_c = 0.25 \frac{12 \text{ m}}{1 + 0.62} \log \frac{110 + 100}{110} = 0.52 \text{ m}$$

The average degree of consolidation  $U_{avg}$  when the clay layer settles 0.25 m is (Eq. 9-12):

$$U_{avg} = \frac{s(t)}{s_c} = \frac{0.25 \text{ m}}{0.52 \text{ m}} = 0.48, \text{ or } 48\%$$

To obtain  $T$  we can use either Table 9-1 or Fig. 9.5. Or since  $U_{avg} < 60\%$ , we can use Eq. 9-10.

$$T = \frac{\pi}{4} (0.48)^2 = 0.182$$

From Eq. 9.5,  $t = TH_{dr}^2/c_v$ , where  $H_{dr} = 6 \text{ m}$  for double drainage; or

$$\begin{aligned}t &= \frac{0.182 \times (6 \text{ m})^2}{8 \times 10^{-8} \text{ m}^2/\text{s} \times 3.1536 \times 10^7 \text{ s/yr}} \\ &= 2.6 \text{ yr}\end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.6**

**Given:**

The data of Examples 9.1 and 9.5.

**Required:**

How much time would be required for a settlement of 0.25 m to occur if the clay layer were singly drained?

**Solution:**

Use Eq. 9-5 directly.

$$c_v = 8 \times 10^{-8} \text{ m}^2/\text{s} \times 3.1536 \times 10^7 \text{ s/yr} = 2.523 \text{ m}^2/\text{yr}$$

$$t = \frac{TH_{dr}^2}{c_v}$$

where  $H_{dr} = 12 \text{ m}$  for single drainage.

$$t = \frac{0.182 \times (12 \text{ m})^2}{2.523 \text{ m}^2/\text{yr}} = 10.4 \text{ yr}$$

or four times as long as with double drainage.

### EXAMPLE 9.7

**Given:**

A 10 m thick clay layer with *single* drainage settles 9 cm in 3.5 yr. The coefficient of consolidation for this clay was found to be  $0.544 \times 10^{-2} \text{ cm}^2/\text{s}$ .

**Required:**

Compute the ultimate consolidation settlement, and find out how long it will take to settle to 90% of this amount.

**Solution:**

From Eq. 9-5 solve for  $T$ :

$$\begin{aligned} T &= \frac{tc_v}{H^2} \\ &= \frac{3.5 \text{ yr} (0.544 \times 10^{-2}) \text{ cm}^2}{(100 \text{ m}^2) \text{ s}} \left( \frac{1 \text{ m}^2}{10000 \text{ cm}^2} \right) \left( 3.1536 \times 10^7 \frac{\text{s}}{\text{yr}} \right) \\ &= 0.6 \end{aligned}$$

From Table 9-1 we see that the average degree of consolidation is between 0.8 and 0.9. Therefore we can use either Eq. 9-11 or Fig. 9.5a, or we can interpolate from Table 9-1. Using Eq. 9-11, we have

$$0.6 = 1.781 - 0.933 \log (100 - U\%)$$

$$1.27 = \log (100 - U\%)$$

or

$$U = 81.56\%, \text{ or } 82\%$$

Thus if 9 cm of settlement represents 82% of the total settlement, then the total consolidation settlement is (Eq. 9-12):

$$s_c = \frac{s(t)}{U_{avg}} = \frac{9 \text{ cm}}{0.82} = 11 \text{ cm}$$

For the time for 90% settlement to occur, find  $T = 0.848$  for  $U_{avg} = 0.9$ , from Table 9-1. Using Eq. 9-5 and solving for  $t$ , we find that:

$$\begin{aligned} t &= \frac{TH_{dr}^2}{c_v} = \frac{0.848 (10 \text{ m})^2}{0.544 \times 10^{-2} \text{ cm}^2/\text{s}} \frac{10000 \text{ cm}^2}{\text{m}^2} \\ &= 1.559 \times 10^8 \text{ s} \frac{\text{yr}}{3.1536 \times 10^7 \text{ s}} \\ &= 4.94 \text{ yr} \end{aligned}$$

### EXAMPLE 9.8

**Given:**

The data of Example 9.7.

**Required:**

Find the variation in the degree of consolidation throughout the layer when  $t = 3.5 \text{ yr}$ .

**Solution:**

When  $t = 3.5 \text{ yr}$ , the corresponding time factor = 0.6, from Example 9.7. Find the curve for  $T = 0.6$  in Fig. 9.3. (For a layer with single drainage, we use the top half or bottom half, depending on where the layer is drained. Assume for this problem that the layer is drained at the *top*.) The curve for  $T = 0.6$  represents the degree of consolidation at any depth  $z$ . Since  $T = 0.6$  and using Eq. 9-5 we find that this isochrone shows the variation of  $U_z$  for  $t = 3.5 \text{ yr}$ . It can be seen that at the bottom of the layer, where  $z/H = 1$ ,  $U_z = 71\%$ . At midheight of the 10 m thick layer, where  $z/H = 0.5$ ,  $U_z = 79.5\%$ . Thus the degree of consolidation varies through the depth of the clay layer, but the *average* degree of consolidation for the entire

layer is 82% (Example 9.7). Another interesting point about Fig. 9.3 is that the area to the left of the curve  $T = 0.6$  represents 82% of the area of the entire graph,  $2H$  versus  $U_z$ , whereas the area to the right of the curve  $T = 0.6$  represents 18%, or the amount of consolidation yet to take place. (See also Fig. 9.4.)

#### 9.4 DETERMINATION OF THE COEFFICIENT OF CONSOLIDATION $c_v$

How do we obtain the coefficient of consolidation  $c_v$ ? This coefficient is the only part of the solution to the consolidation equation that takes into account the soil properties which govern the rate of consolidation. In Chapter 8 we described the procedure for performing consolidation or oedometer tests to obtain the compressibility of the soil. We mentioned that each load increment usually remains on the test specimen an arbitrary length of time, until (we hope) essentially all of the excess pore pressure has dissipated. Deformation dial readings are obtained during this process, and the coefficient of consolidation  $c_v$  is determined from the time-deformation data.

The curves of actual deformation dial readings versus real time for a given load increment often have very similar shapes to the theoretical  $U-T$  curves shown in Fig. 9.5. We shall take advantage of this observation to determine the  $c_v$  by so-called "curve-fitting methods" developed by Casagrande and Taylor. These empirical procedures were developed to fit approximately the observed laboratory test data to the Terzaghi theory of consolidation. Many factors such as sample disturbance, load increment ratio (LIR), duration, temperature, and a host of test details have been found to strongly affect the value of  $c_v$  obtained by the curve-fitting procedures (Leonards and Ramiah, 1959; Leonards, 1962). But research by Leonards and Girault (1961) has shown that the Terzaghi theory is applicable to the laboratory test if large LIR's (Eq. 8-20), usually around unity, are used.

The curve-fitting procedures outlined in this section will enable you to determine values of the coefficient of consolidation  $c_v$  from laboratory test data. In addition, the procedures will allow you to separate the secondary compression from the primary consolidation.

Probably the easiest way to illustrate the curve-fitting methods is to work with time-deformation data from an actual consolidation test. We will use the data for the load increment from 10 to 20 kPa for the test shown in Fig. 8.5. This data is shown in Table 9-2 and plotted in Figs. 9.6a, b, and c. Note how similar the shapes of these curves are to the theoretical curves of Figs. 9.5a, b, and c.

**TABLE 9-2** Time-Deformation Data for Load Increment 10 to 20 kPa (Fig. 8.5)

Elapsed Time (min)	$\sqrt{t}$ ( $\sqrt{\text{min}}$ )	Dial Reading, $R$ (mm)	Displacement (mm)
0	0	6.627	0
0.1	0.316	6.528	0.099
0.25	0.5	6.480	0.147
0.5	0.707	6.421	0.206
1	1.0	6.337	0.290
2	1.41	6.218	0.409
4	2.0	6.040	0.587
8	2.83	5.812	0.815
15	3.87	5.489	1.138
30	5.48	5.108	1.519
60	7.75	4.775	1.852
120	10.95	4.534	2.093
240	15.5	4.356	2.271
480	21.9	4.209	2.418
1382	37.2	4.041	2.586

### (a) Casagrande's Logarithm of Time Fitting Method

In this method, the deformation dial readings are plotted versus the *logarithm of time*, as shown in Fig. 9.6b and to larger scale in Fig. 9.7. The idea is to find  $R_{50}$  and thus  $t_{50}$ , which is the time for 50% consolidation, by approximating  $R_{100}$ , the dial reading corresponding to the time for 100% primary consolidation,  $t_{100}$  or  $t_p$ . Refer to Fig. 9.5b, the theoretical  $U-T$  curve, for a moment. Note that the intersection of the tangent and the asymptote to the theoretical curve defines  $U_{\text{avg}} = 100\%$ . The time for 100% consolidation, of course, occurs at  $t = \infty$ . Casagrande (1938) suggested that  $R_{100}$  could be approximated rather arbitrarily by the intersection of the two corresponding tangents to the laboratory consolidation curve (Fig. 9.7). Later research (for example, Leonards and Girault, 1961) has shown this procedure defines to a good approximation the dial reading at which the excess pore water pressure approaches zero, especially when the LIR is large and the preconsolidation stress is exceeded by the applied load increment. Once  $R_{100}$  is defined, then it is fairly easy to determine  $R_{50}$  and  $t_{50}$ , once we find  $R_o$ , the initial dial reading.

How do we determine  $R_o$ , the dial reading corresponding to zero percent consolidation, on a semilog plot? Since  $T$  is proportional to  $U_{\text{avg}}^2$  up to  $U = 60\%$  (Eq. 9-10), the first part of the consolidation curve must be a parabola. To find  $R_o$ , choose any two times,  $t_1$  and  $t_2$ , in the ratio of 4 to 1, and note their corresponding dial readings. Then mark off a distance above  $R_1$  equal to the difference  $R_2 - R_1$ ; this defines the corrected zero

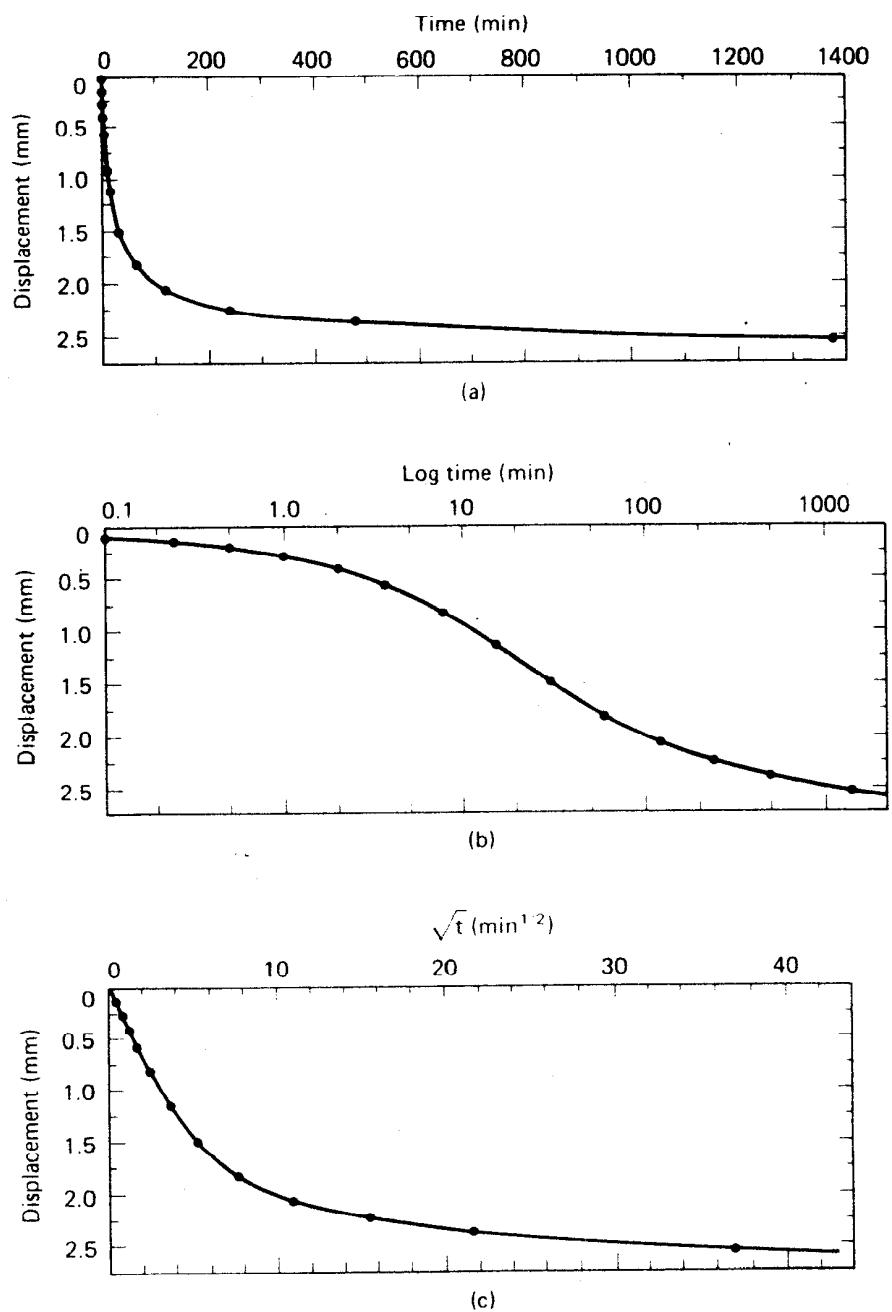


Fig. 9.6 Deformation-time curves for data from Table 9-2: (a) arithmetic scale; (b) log time scale; (c) square root of time scale.

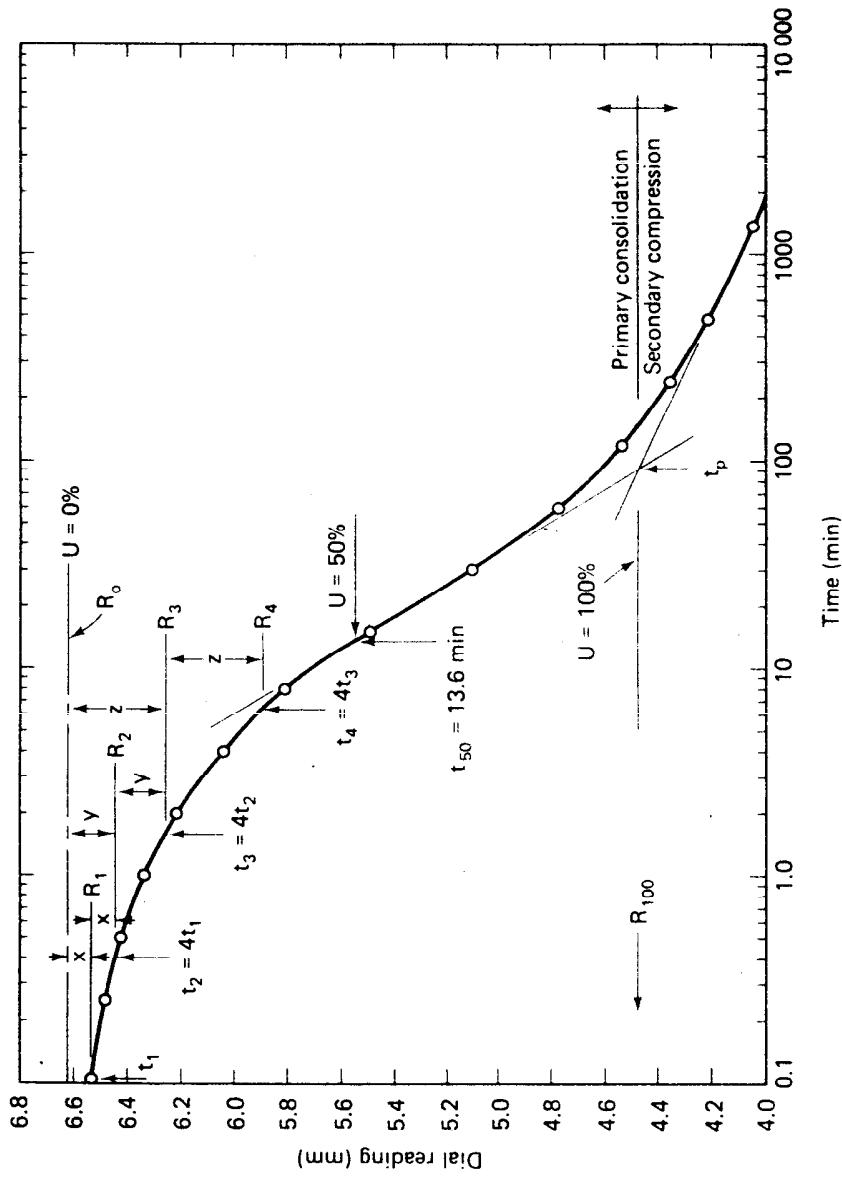


Fig. 9.7 Determination of  $t_{50}$  by the Casagrande method; data from Table 9-2.

point  $R_o$ . In equation form,

$$R_o = R_1 - (R_2 - R_1) \quad (9-13a)$$

Several trials are usually advisable to obtain a good average value of  $R_o$ , or

$$R_o = R_2 - (R_3 - R_2) \quad (9-13b)$$

and

$$R_o = R_3 - (R_4 - R_3) \quad (9-13c)$$

In Fig. 9.7, three different trials are shown for determining  $R_o$  from  $R_1$ ,  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ , and  $R_4$ . The distances  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  are marked off above the ordinates corresponding to times  $t_2$ ,  $t_3$ , and  $t_4$ , respectively. You should satisfy yourself that both the graphical procedure and using Eqs. 9-13 (a, b, c) indicate about the same value for  $R_o$  (6.62 mm in this case).

Once the initial and 100% primary consolidation points have been determined, find  $t_{50}$  by subdividing the vertical distance between  $R_o$  and  $R_{100}$  [or  $R_{50} = \frac{1}{2}(R_o - R_{100})$ ]. Then  $t_{50}$  is simply the time corresponding to the dial reading  $R_{50}$ . In Fig. 9.7,  $t_{50} = 13.6$  min. To evaluate  $c_v$ , we use Eq. 9-5 with  $T_{50} = 0.197$  (Table 9-1). We also need the average height of the specimen during the load increment. At the beginning of this increment,  $H_o$  was 21.87 mm. From the data of Table 9-2,

$$H_f = H_o - \Delta H = 21.87 - 2.59 = 19.28 \text{ mm}$$

Thus the average height of specimen during the increment is 20.58 mm (2.06 cm). Remember that in the standard oedometer test the specimen is doubly drained, so use  $H_{dr} = 2.06/2$  in Eq. 9-5. Thus we have

$$\begin{aligned} c_v &= \frac{TH_{dr}^2}{t} = \frac{T_{50}H_{dr}^2}{t_{50}} \\ &= \frac{0.197 \left( \frac{2.06}{2} \right)^2 \text{ cm}^2}{13.6 \text{ min} \left( 60 \frac{\text{s}}{\text{min}} \right)} \\ &= 2.56 \times 10^{-4} \frac{\text{cm}^2}{\text{s}} \left( 3.1536 \times 10^7 \frac{\text{s}}{\text{yr}} \right) \left( \frac{\text{m}^2}{10^4 \text{ cm}^2} \right) \\ &= 0.81 \text{ m}^2/\text{yr} \end{aligned}$$

Recall that the Casagrande fitting procedure found  $R_{50}$  and thus  $t_{50}$  by approximating  $R_{100}$ . This procedure did not find  $t_{100}$  since the time for any other degree of consolidation must be obtained from the classical consolidation theory in which  $t_{100} = \infty$ . But the procedure does define a  $t$  called  $t_p$  (for "primary") which is a practical time required to obtain a

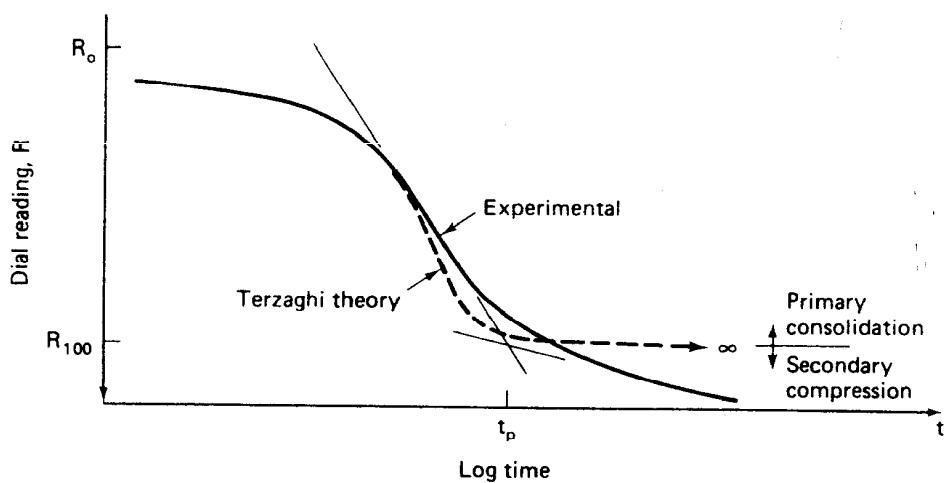


Fig. 9.8 Terzaghi consolidation theory and a typical experimental curve used to define  $t_p$ .

good usable value of  $R_{100}$ . Often, in practice,  $t_p$  is called  $t_{100}$ . The deviation of the experimental curve from the theoretical curve is shown in Fig. 9.8. Differences in the curves are the result of secondary compression and other effects such as the rate of effective stress increase (Leonards, 1977) not considered by the Terzaghi theory.

#### (b) Taylor's Square Root of Time Fitting Method

Taylor (1948) also developed a procedure for evaluating  $c_v$ , using the square root of time. As with Casagrande's fitting method, the procedure is based on the similarity between the shapes of the theoretical and experimental curves when plotted versus the square root of  $T$  and  $t$ . Refer to Fig. 9.5c and compare it with Fig. 9.6c. Note that in Fig. 9.5c the theoretical curve is a straight line to at least  $U \approx 60\%$  or greater. Taylor observed that the abscissa of the curve at 90% consolidation was about 1.15 times the abscissa of the extension of the straight line (Fig. 9.5c). He thus could determine the point of 90% consolidation on the laboratory time curve.

We will use the same data as before (Table 9-2) to illustrate the  $\sqrt{t}$  fitting method. These data are plotted in Fig. 9.9. Usually a straight line can be drawn through the data points in the initial part of the compression curve. The line is projected backward to zero time to define  $R_0$ . The common point at  $R_0$  may be slightly lower than the initial dial reading (at zero time) observed in the laboratory due to immediate compression of the specimen and apparatus. Draw a second line from  $R_0$  with all abscissas 1.15 times as large as corresponding values on the first line. The intersection of this second line and the laboratory curve defines  $R_{90}$  and is the point of 90% consolidation. Its time is, of course,  $t_{90}$ .

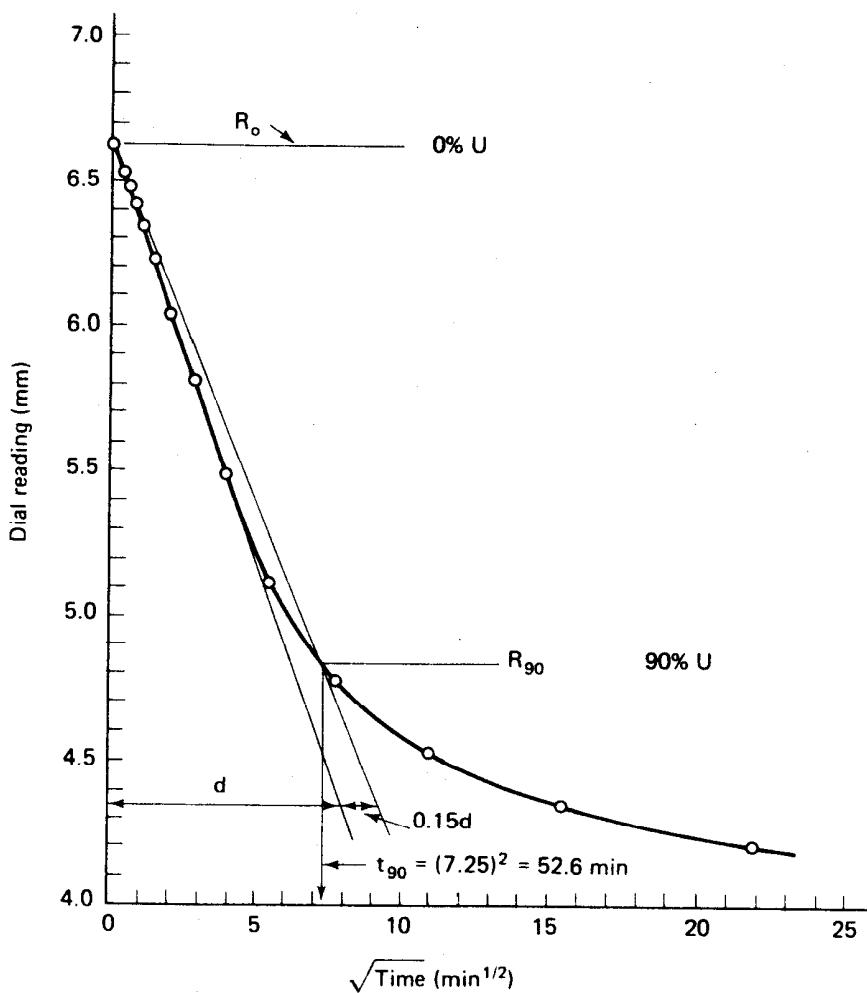


Fig. 9.9 Determination of  $c_v$ , using Taylor's square root of time method; data from Table 9-2.

The coefficient of consolidation is, as before, determined by using Eq. 9-5. From Table 9-1,  $T_{90} = 0.848$ . The average height of specimen is also used, as before. Therefore

$$c_v = \frac{0.848 (2.06/2)^2 \text{ cm}^2}{52.6 \text{ min} (60 \text{ s/min})} \\ = 2.85 \times 10^{-4} \text{ cm}^2/\text{s} \text{ or } 0.90 \text{ m}^2/\text{yr}$$

This value is reasonably close to the value obtained using the Casagrande method. Because both fitting methods are approximations of theory, you should not expect them to agree exactly. Often  $c_v$  as determined by the  $\sqrt{t}$  method is slightly greater than  $c_v$  by the  $\log t$  fitting method.

You should also note that  $c_v$  is not a constant for a test on a given soil, but it depends greatly on the load increment ratio and whether the preconsolidation stress has been exceeded or not (Leonards and Girault, 1961). For load increments less than the preconsolidation stress, consolidation occurs quite rapidly, and  $c_v$  values can be rather high. However, determinations of  $t_p$  for these increments is often difficult because the time-settlement curves do not have the "classical" shapes of Figs. 9.7 and 9.9. For undisturbed clays  $c_v$  is usually a minimum for increments near the preconsolidation pressure (Taylor, 1948). For design, this minimum value is often used. However, for some situations it may be more appropriate to use the  $c_v$  for the anticipated load increment in the field.

A strong advantage of the  $\sqrt{t}$  fitting method is that  $t_{90}$  can be determined without going too far beyond  $t_p$ . If dial readings are plotted as you go during the test, then it is possible to add the next increment of load as soon as  $t_{90}$  is reached. Not only is the time for testing significantly reduced compared to when the conventional 24 h increments are used, but also the contribution of secondary compression to the  $e$  versus  $\log \sigma'$  curve can be effectively minimized (see Leonards, 1976).

By now you should have noticed that the data do not exactly coincide with the initial starting point in either of Figs. 9.7 or 9.9; that is,  $R_o$  does not equal exactly the initial reading of Table 9-2. The reason for the difference between the initial laboratory dial reading and  $R_o$ , the "corrected dial reading" corresponding to 0% consolidation, is due to several factors. These may include:

1. Vertical elastic compression of the soil specimen, porous stones, and apparatus.
2. Lateral expansion of the soil specimen if it is not trimmed exactly to the diameter of the ring.
3. Deformation associated with lateral expansion of the oedometer ring.

You will have the opportunity to use the two curve-fitting methods to determine  $c_v$  in the problems at the end of this chapter.

## 9.5 DETERMINATION OF THE COEFFICIENT OF PERMEABILITY

You may recall from Fig. 7.6 that the coefficient of permeability,  $k$ , of the soil may also be obtained indirectly from the consolidation test. If you take Eq. 9-3 and solve for  $k$ , you obtain

$$k = \frac{c_v \rho_w g a_v}{1 + e_o} \quad (9-14)$$

The value of  $e_o$  is the void ratio at the start of the time rate readings for a given load increment.

### EXAMPLE 9.9

**Given:**

The time-deformation data for the load increment 10 to 20 kPa of the test in Fig. 8.4. From Table 9-2 and Fig. 9.7, a  $c_v$  value of  $0.81 \text{ m}^2/\text{yr}$  ( $2.56 \times 10^{-4} \text{ cm}^2/\text{s}$ ) can be determined.

**Required:**

Compute the coefficient of permeability, assuming the temperature of the water is  $20^\circ\text{C}$ .

**Solution:**

It is first necessary to compute the coefficient of compressibility from Eq. 8-5 and using Fig. 8.4b:

$$\begin{aligned} a_v &= \frac{e_1 - e_2}{\sigma'_2 - \sigma'_1} = \frac{2.12 - 1.76}{(20 - 10) \text{ kPa}} \\ &= 0.036/\text{kPa} = 3.6 \times 10^{-5} \frac{\text{m}^2}{\text{N}} \end{aligned}$$

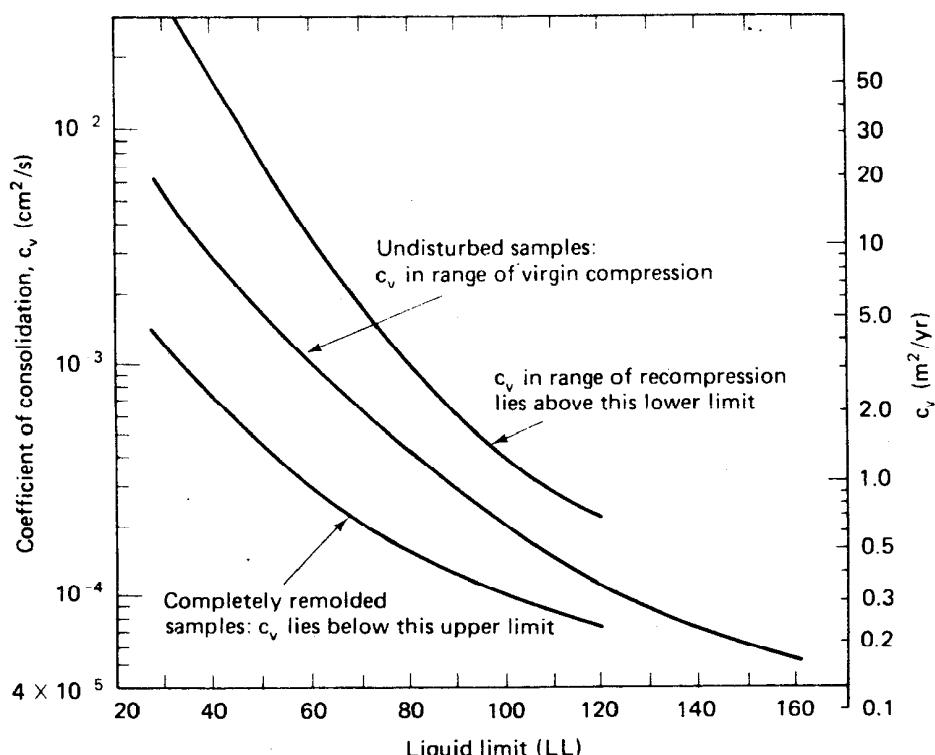
From Eq. 9-14,

$$\begin{aligned} k &= \frac{c_v \rho_w g a_v}{1 + e_o} \\ &= \frac{2.56 \times 10^{-4} \frac{\text{cm}^2}{\text{s}} \times 1000 \frac{\text{kg}}{\text{m}^3} \times 9.81 \frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}^2} \times 3.6 \times 10^{-5} \frac{\text{m}^2}{\text{N}} \frac{1 \text{ m}}{100 \text{ cm}}}{1 + 2.12} \\ &= 2.9 \times 10^{-7} \frac{\text{cm}}{\text{s}} = 2.9 \times 10^{-9} \frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}} \end{aligned}$$

Note that the  $e$  used in the equation is the void ratio at the start of the load increment rather than the original or in situ void ratio.

**TABLE 9-3** Typical Values of the Coefficient of Consolidation  $c_v$

Soil	$c_v$ $\text{cm}^2/\text{s}, \times 10^{-4}$	$c_v$ $\text{m}^2/\text{yr}$
Boston blue clay (CL) (Ladd and Luscher, 1965)	$40 \pm 20$	$12 \pm 6$
Organic silt (OH) (Lowe, Zacheo, and Feldman, 1964)	2–10	0.6–3
Glacial lake clays (CL) (Wallace and Otto, 1964)	6.5–8.7	2.0–2.7
Chicago silty clay (CL) (Terzaghi and Peck, 1967)	8.5	2.7
Swedish medium sensitive clays (CL-CH) (Holtz and Broms, 1972)		
1. laboratory	0.4–0.7	0.1–0.2
2. field	0.7–3.0	0.2–1.0
San Francisco Bay Mud (CL)	2–4	0.6–1.2
Mexico City clay (MH) (Leonards and Girault, 1961)	0.9–1.5	0.3–0.5



**Fig. 9.10** Approximate correlations of the coefficient of consolidation  $c_v$  with the liquid limit (after U.S. Navy, 1971).

## 9.6 TYPICAL VALUES OF $c_v$

Typical values of the coefficient of consolidation  $c_v$  for a variety of soils are listed in Table 9-3. Approximate correlations of  $c_v$  with the liquid limit are presented in Fig. 9.10.

## 9.7 EVALUATION OF SECONDARY SETTLEMENT

Thus far we have discussed how to compute the consolidation or primary settlement  $s_c$ , and how it varies with time. The other two components of total settlement as given by Eq. 8-1 were the immediate settlement  $s_i$  and secondary settlement  $s_s$ . Immediate settlement is calculated from elastic theory, and it involves an evaluation of the modulus of elasticity and Poisson's ratio of the compressible soils. In addition, the contact stress distribution in the soil under the loaded area must be considered. The estimation of immediate settlements is treated in foundation engineering textbooks and will not be discussed herein.

Secondary compression is a continuation of the volume change that started during primary consolidation, only it usually occurs at a much slower rate. Secondary compression is different from primary consolidation in that it takes place at a *constant effective stress*, that is, after essentially all the excess pore pressure has dissipated. This component of settlement seems to result from compression of the bonds between individual clay particles and domains, as well as other effects on the microscale which are not yet clearly understood. Another complicating factor is that in the field it is difficult to separate secondary compression from consolidation settlement, especially if the consolidating clay layer is relatively thick. Parts of the layer near the drainage surfaces may be fully consolidated, and therefore undergoing "secondary" compression, while portions near the center of the layer are still in "primary." Both types of settlements contribute to the total surface settlement, and separating the effects in order to predict the final surface settlement is not a simple matter. However, in this section we shall present a practical working hypothesis, acceptable for engineering practice, for estimating secondary compression, and we shall show you how to make estimates of secondary settlement for some simple cases.

There is, unfortunately, a lot of confusion in the geotechnical literature as to the best way to describe the magnitudes and rates of secondary compression. In this section, we shall follow Raymond and Wahls (1976)

and Mesri and Godlewski (1977), who define the *secondary compression index*  $C_a$  as

$$C_a = \frac{\Delta e}{\Delta \log t} \quad (9-15)$$

where  $\Delta e$  = the change in void ratio along a part of the void ratio versus the logarithm of time curve between times  $t_1$  and  $t_2$ , and  
 $\Delta t$  = the time between  $t_2$  and  $t_1$ .

This definition is analogous, of course, to the primary compression index  $C_c$ , defined as  $\Delta e / \Delta \log \sigma'$  (Eq. 8-7). In addition, we will define the modified secondary compression index  $C_{ac}$ , analogous to Eq. 8-9, as

$$C_{ac} = \frac{C_a}{1 + e_p} \quad (9-16)$$

where  $C_a$  = the secondary compression index, Eq. 9-15,  
 $e_p$  = the void ratio at the start of the *linear portion* of the  $e$  versus  $\log t$  curve. (One could also use  $e_o$ , the in situ void ratio, with no appreciable loss of accuracy.)

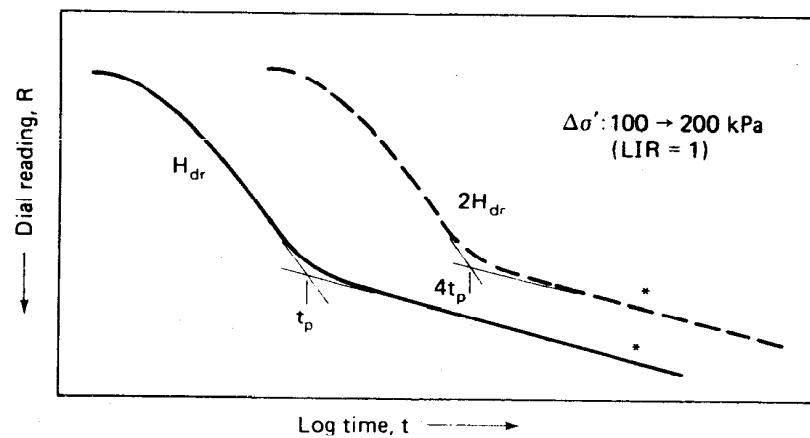
Sometimes  $C_{ac}$  is called the *secondary compression ratio*, or the *rate of secondary consolidation*. As Ladd et al. (1977) note,  $C_{ac} = \Delta e / \Delta \log t$ .

The secondary compression index,  $C_a$ , and the modified secondary compression index,  $C_{ac}$ , can be determined from the slope of the straight line portion of the dial reading versus log time curve which occurs after primary consolidation is complete (see, for example, Fig. 9.7). Usually the  $\Delta R$  is determined over one log cycle of time. The corresponding change in void ratio is calculated from the settlement equation (Eq. 8-3) since you know the height of specimen for that increment and  $e_o$ .

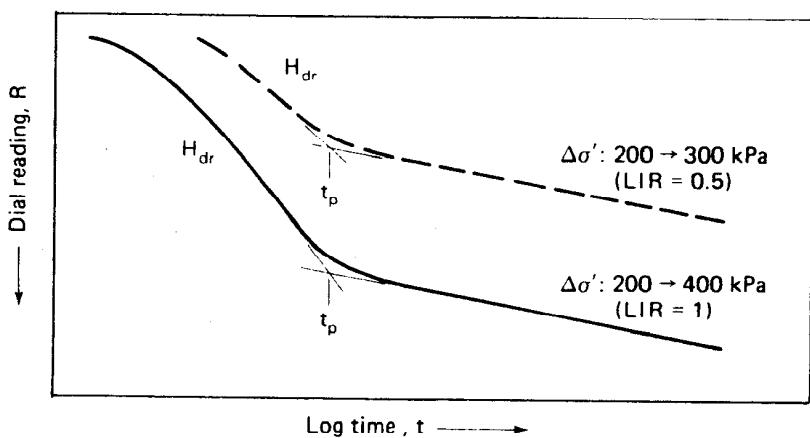
To provide a working hypothesis for estimating secondary settlements, we shall make the following *assumptions* about the behavior of fine-grained soils in secondary compression. These assumptions, based on the work of Ladd (1971a) and others and summarized by Raymond and Wahls (1976), are as follows:

1.  $C_a$  is independent of time (at least during the time span of interest).
2.  $C_a$  is independent of the thickness of the soil layer.
3.  $C_a$  is independent of the LIR, as long as some primary consolidation occurs.
4. The ratio  $C_a/C_c$  is approximately constant for many normally consolidated clays over the normal range of engineering stresses.

Typical dial reading versus log time behavior curves illustrating these assumptions for a normally consolidated clay are shown in Fig. 9.11. You



(a) Effect of drainage distance.



(b) Effect of load increment ratio and consolidation stress

Fig. 9.11 Typical secondary compression behavior from the working hypothesis by Raymond and Wahls (1976).

can see that the rate of secondary compression expressed in terms of settlement ( $\Delta R$ ) per log cycle is assumed to be independent of the thickness of the specimen as well as the load increment. There is some effect however of the consolidation stress, and as Mesri and Godlewski (1977) point out,  $C_a$  is strongly dependent on the final effective stress.

The working hypothesis is useful as a first approximation for estimating secondary settlements. However you should expect some aberrations in the actual long-term settlement response of the foundation because the

assumptions are admittedly an oversimplification of real behavior. For example, the secondary compression curves of Fig. 9.11 may not be actually parallel or even have a constant slope. There is some evidence that  $C_a$  may change with time, both in the laboratory (Mesri and Godlewski, 1977) and in the field (Leonards, 1973). Also, the duration and therefore the magnitude of secondary settlement is a function of the time required for completion of primary consolidation ( $t_p$ ), and from earlier work in this chapter you know that the thicker the consolidating layer, the longer is the time required for primary consolidation. Even though the strain at the end of primary consolidation for both thin and thick layers is about the same (as shown in Fig. 9.11a), there is limited evidence (Aboshi, 1973) that the slopes may not be parallel and that  $C_a$  may decrease as the thickness of the soil layer increases.

Assumptions 3 and 4 are approximately correct. Assumption 3 was verified by Leonards and Girault (1961) and Mesri and Godlewski (1977), except that the load increment must be sufficient to go well beyond the preconsolidation stress. The fourth assumption, that the ratio  $C_a/C_c$  is approximately a constant, has also been verified by Mesri and Godlewski (1977) for a wide variety of natural soils. Their work is summarized in Table 9-4. The average value of  $C_a/C_c$  is about 0.05, and in no case did they find a value of that ratio to exceed 0.1. The range for inorganic soils is 0.025 to 0.06, while the range for organic soils and peats is somewhat higher. They also showed that this ratio holds at any time, effective stress, and void ratio during secondary compression. The only exception, as shown by Leonards and Girault (1961, Fig. 3) seems to be the load increment that straddles the preconsolidation stress,  $\sigma'_p$ . Obviously, many questions remain to be answered concerning the topic of secondary compression.

TABLE 9-4 Values of  $C_a/C_c$  for Natural Soils\*

Soil	$C_a/C_c$
Organic silts	0.035–0.06
Amorphous and fibrous peat	0.035–0.085
Canadian muskeg	0.09–0.10
Leda clay (Canada)	0.03–0.06
Post-glacial Swedish clay	0.05–0.07
Soft blue clay (Victoria, B.C.)	0.026
Organic clays and silts	0.04–0.06
Sensitive clay, Portland, ME	0.025–0.055
San Francisco Bay Mud	0.04–0.06
New Liskeard (Canada) varved clay	0.03–0.06
Mexico City clay	0.03–0.035
Hudson River silt	0.03–0.06
New Haven organic clay silt	0.04–0.075

\*Modified after Mesri and Godlewski (1977).

If, for some reason, you do not want to or cannot determine  $C_s$  from laboratory test data, you can use the  $C_s/C_c$  data of Table 9-4 for similar soils, or simply use an average  $C_s/C_c$  value of 0.05, which is acceptable for preliminary calculations. Mesri (1973) has provided another method to obtain the secondary compression index, actually the modified secondary compression index, and it is shown in Fig. 9.12. Here the  $C_{ss}$  is plotted versus natural water content of the soil.

We will illustrate how to estimate secondary settlement in Examples 9.10, 9.11, and 9.12.

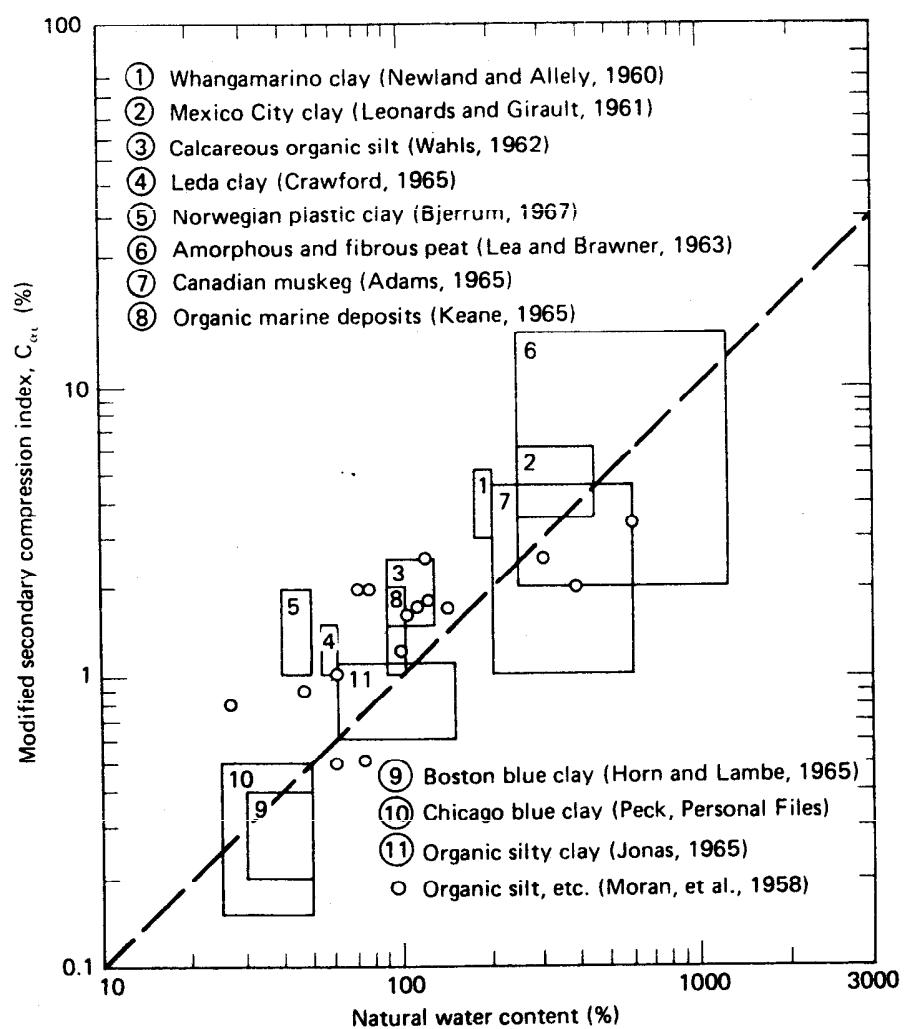


Fig. 9.12 Modified secondary compression index versus natural water content. (After Mesri, 1973. See Mesri, 1973 for details of the references included in this figure.)

## EXAMPLE 9.10

Given:

The data for Problem 8-12 plus the following time rate of consolidation data for the load increment of 40 to 80 kPa. (This load increment represents the anticipated load in the field.) Assume the consolidation settlement,  $s_c$ , is 30 cm and that it occurs after 25 yr. The thickness of the compressible layer is 10 m. The initial void ratio  $e_o$  is 2.855, and the initial height of the test specimen is 25.4 mm, and the initial dial reading is 12.700 mm.

(1) Dial Reading (mm)	(2) Elapsed Time (min)	(3) Void Ratio
11.224	0	2.631
11.151	0.1	2.620
11.123	0.25	2.616
11.082	0.5	2.609
11.019	1.0	2.600
10.942	1.8	2.588
10.859	3.0	2.576
10.711	6	2.553
10.566	10	2.531
10.401	16	2.506
10.180	30	2.473
9.919	60	2.433
9.769	100	2.410
9.614	180	2.387
9.489	300	2.368
9.373	520	2.350
9.223	1350	2.327
9.172	1800	2.320
9.116	2850	2.311
9.053	4290	2.301

Required:

Compute the amount of secondary compression that would occur from 25 to 50 years after construction. Assume the time rate of deformation for the load range in the test approximates that occurring in the field.

**Solution:**

The solution to this problem requires an evaluation of  $C_a$  (Eq. 9-15). So a void ratio versus  $\log t$  curve must be plotted from the given data. We can readily calculate the void ratio at any height or thickness of the specimen during the consolidation test by using the following method. By definition,  $e = V_v/V_s$ , and, for a constant specimen area,  $e = H_v/H_s$ , which is the ratio of height of voids to the height of solids. Then, from the phase diagram (Fig. Ex. 9.10a), the void ratio at any dial reading  $R$  may be obtained from

$$\begin{aligned} e &= \frac{H_v}{H_s} = \frac{H_o - H_s}{H_s} = \frac{H_o - (R_o - R) - H_s}{H_s} \\ &= \frac{(H_o - H_s) - (R_o - R)}{H_s} \end{aligned} \quad (9-17)$$

where  $H_o$  = the height of voids at time  $t$ ,

$H_s$  = the height of solids,

$H_o$  = the original height of specimen,

$R_o$  = the initial dial reading, and

$R$  = dial reading at time  $t$ .

From the phase diagram and the initial conditions of this problem,

$$H_s = \frac{H_o}{1 + e_o} = \frac{25.4}{1 + 2.855} = 6.589 \text{ mm}$$

For the load increment 40 to 80 kPa, the initial dial reading is 11.224; the dial reading  $R_o$  at the very beginning of the test (corresponding to specimen height  $H_o$ ) is 12.700. Thus for the beginning of this load increment,  $e$  from Eq. 9-17 is

$$e = \frac{(25.4 - 6.589) - (12.700 - 11.224)}{6.589} = 2.631$$

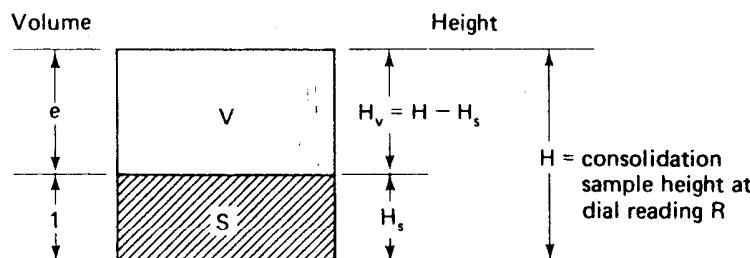


Fig. Ex. 9.10a For initial conditions,  $e = e_o$ ,  $H = H_o$ , and  $R = R_o$ .

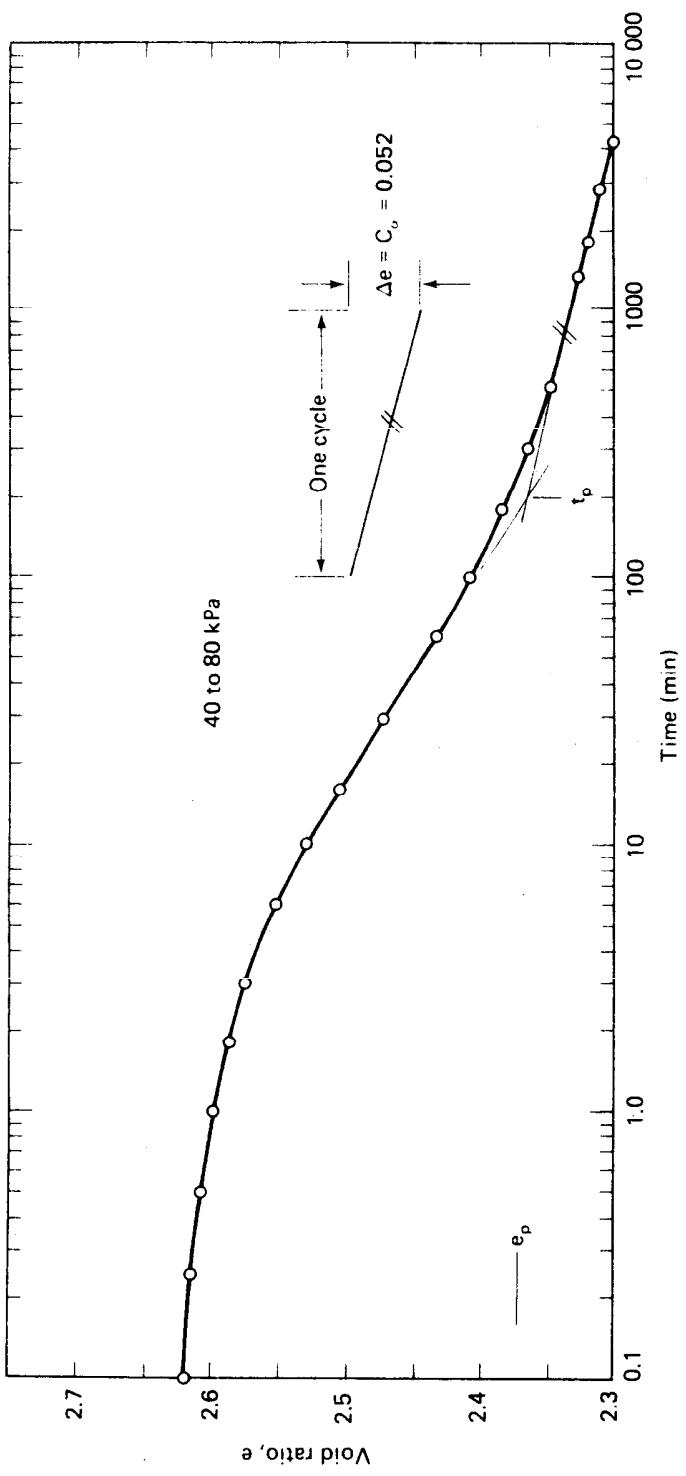


Fig. Ex. 9.10b

This value of  $e$  at  $R = 11.224$  is shown in column 3 of the given data. The remainder of column 3 can be calculated by substituting the other values of  $R$  into Eq. 9-17.

Next, plot the void ratio, column 3, and the elapsed time, column 2, on semilog paper, as shown in Fig. Ex. 9.10b.  $C_a$  is then found to be 0.052. Note that  $C_a \equiv \Delta e$  when  $\Delta \log t$  covers one full log cycle. The corresponding modified secondary compression index  $C_{ae}$  (Eq. 9-16) is  $0.052/(1 + e_p) = 0.052/(1 + 2.372) = 0.0154$ ;  $e_p$  is obtained from Fig. Ex. 9.10b at the end of primary consolidation.

To calculate secondary settlement  $s_s$ , use our basic settlement equation, Eq. 8-4:

$$s = \frac{\Delta e}{1 + e_o} H_o \quad (8-4)$$

Now, however,  $\Delta e$  is a function of *time* and not stress. Substituting  $\Delta e$  from Eq. 9-15 into Eq. 8-4 and using  $e_p$  for  $e_o$ , we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} s_s &= \frac{C_a}{1 + e_p} (H_o)(\Delta \log t) \\ &= \frac{0.052}{1 + 2.372} (10 \text{ m}) \log \frac{50}{25} \\ &= 0.046 \text{ m} = 4.6 \text{ cm} \end{aligned} \quad (9-18)$$

Thus  $s = s_c + s_s = 30 + 4.6 = 34.6$  cm in 50 years. This excludes any immediate settlement  $s_i$  that may also have occurred.

The secondary settlement may also be computed by means of Eqs. 8-4 and 9-16, where

$$\begin{aligned} s_s &= C_{ae} H_o (\Delta \log t) \\ &= 0.0154 (10 \text{ m}) \log \frac{50}{25} \\ &= 0.046 \text{ m, as before} \end{aligned} \quad (9-19)$$

A detailed example illustrating the computations for both  $s_c$  and  $s_s$  is presented at the end of this chapter.

### EXAMPLE 9.11

**Given:**

Data given in Example 9.10 (Problem 8-12). The initial water content of the specimen is 105.7%.

**Required:**

From the data listed in Table 9-4 and Fig. 9.12, estimate the (a)  $C_a$  and (b)  $C_{ae}$ . (c) Compare with the values calculated in Example 9.10.

**Solution:**

From Problem 8-12, the value of  $C_c$  is 1.23 and the value of  $C_{ce}$  is 0.32.

- a. For San Francisco Bay Mud, use an average value of  $C_a/C_c$  of 0.05. Therefore

$$C_a = 0.05(C_c) = 0.05(1.23) = 0.062$$

- b. From Eq. 9-16,  $C_{ae} = C_a/1 + e_p$ . From Fig. Ex. 9.10b,  $e_p = 2.372$ . Therefore

$$C_{ae} = \frac{0.062}{1 + 2.372} = 0.018$$

A second way to estimate the modified secondary compression index is to use Fig. 9.12, where  $C_{ae}$  is plotted versus natural water content. For our example, the initial water content was 105.7%. From Fig. 9.12, a value of  $C_{ae}$  of about 0.01 (or higher) is obtained if you use the dashed line.

- c. Compare with the calculated values. From Example 9.10,  $C_a = 0.052$  and  $C_{ae} = 0.015$ . The agreement using the approximate values is certainly acceptable for preliminary design estimates.

## 9.8 COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE OF A TIME RATE OF SETTLEMENT PROBLEM

### EXAMPLE 9.12

**Given:**

A brown silty sand fill 5 m thick was placed over a 15 m thick layer of compressible gray silty clay. Underlying the clay layer is brown sandy gravel. The soil profile is shown in Fig. Ex. 9.12a. Assume for this problem that the settlement of the fill and the sandy gravel is small compared to the

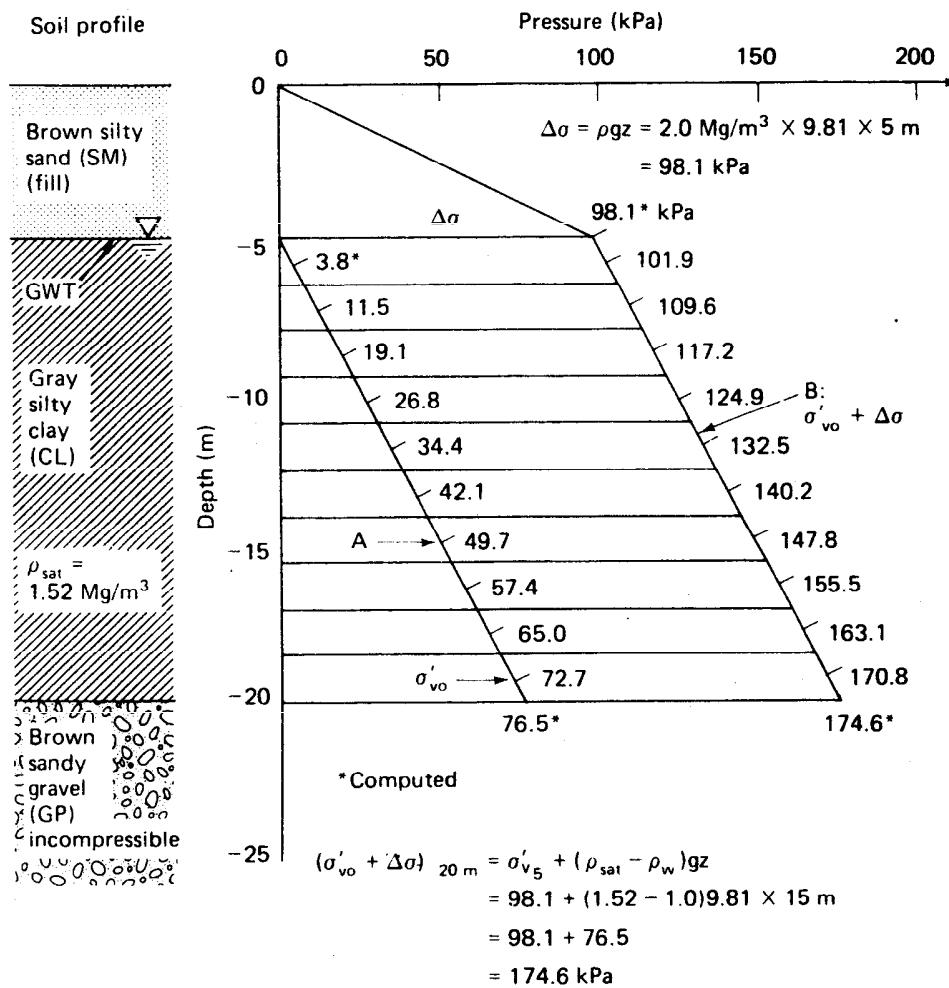


Fig. Ex. 9.12a Soil profile and effective stress versus depth.

settlement of the silty clay layer. Properties of the normally consolidated silty clay layer are:

Initial void ratio,  $e_o = 1.1$ .

Compression index,  $C_c = 0.36$ .

Secondary compression index,  $C_s = 0.06$ .

Saturated density,  $\rho_{sat} = 1.52 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ .

Coefficient of consolidation,  $c_v = 0.858 \text{ m}^2/\text{yr}$ .

The density of the silty sand fill,  $\rho$ , is  $2.0 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ , and the ground water table is at the interface of the fill and clay, at -5 m.

**Required:**

- Part I. Compute the consolidation settlement of the silty clay layer due to the weight of the 5 m of new fill,
- Part II. Compute the time rate of settlement.
- Part III. Compute and plot  $\sigma'(z)$  when  $U = 50\%$ .
- Part IV. Compute the secondary settlement.

**Solution:**

Part I: The procedure for this part is (1) compute the initial effective overburden pressures of soil layers, (2) compute the increase in vertical stress due to external load, (3) compute the final effective vertical stress, and (4) compute settlement.

1. Initial effective stress:  $\sigma'_{vo} = \rho'gz$ , prior to fill placement.

$$\sigma'_{vo}(0 \text{ m}) = 0$$

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma'_{vo}(-15 \text{ m}) &= (1.52 - 1.0) \text{ Mg/m}^3 \times 9.81 \text{ m/s}^2 \times 15 \text{ m} \\ &= 76.5 \text{ kPa}\end{aligned}$$

2. Increase in  $\sigma$  due to fill =  $\rho gh_{\text{fill}}$ .

$$\Delta\sigma_{\text{fill}} = 2.0 \text{ Mg/m}^3 \times 9.81 \text{ m/s}^2 \times 5 \text{ m} = 98.1 \text{ kPa}$$

3. Final effective stress = initial effective stress +  $\Delta\sigma_{\text{fill}}$ .

$$\sigma'_v(\text{top of silty clay}) = 0 + \Delta\sigma = 98.1 \text{ kPa}$$

$$\sigma'_v(\text{bottom of silty clay}) = 76.5 + 98.1 = 174.6 \text{ kPa}$$

The above stresses are plotted in Fig. Ex. 9.12a. Curve A represents the initial vertical effective overburden stresses  $\sigma'_{vo}$  prior to the placement of the 5 m of silty sand fill. Curve B represents the final vertical effective overburden stress due to the fill after complete consolidation of the silty clay layer has taken place. Curve B equals  $\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma$ , where  $\Delta\sigma$  is the increase in pressure due to the fill. We will assume that  $\Delta u = \Delta\sigma$  (one-dimensional compression) and that the load is placed all at once. (Actually 5 m of fill may take days to weeks to place and compact but, for purposes of our example, let us assume it was placed instantaneously in one load increment.)

4. Recall that the silty clay is normally consolidated. Thus the consolidation settlement of the layer is given by Eq. 8-11.

$$s_c = C_c \frac{H_o}{1 + e_o} \log \frac{\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v}{\sigma'_{vo}} \quad (8-11)$$

For the middepth of the layer,  $\sigma'_{vo} = 38.3 \text{ kPa}$  and  $\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma_v = 136.4 \text{ kPa}$ .

Thus

$$s_c = 0.36 \frac{15 \text{ m}}{1 + 1.1} \log \frac{136.4}{38.3} = 1.42 \text{ m}$$

Since the silty clay layer is 15 m thick, it is prudent to divide the total thickness into thinner layers to improve the accuracy of results. A 1.5 m thick layer is chosen. The settlement of each of these layers is summed up to obtain the total consolidation settlement of the silty clay layer. To assist in the computations, Fig. Ex. 9.12b is employed, and the corresponding pressures  $\sigma'_{vo}$  and  $\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma$  are indicated at the *middepth* of each of the

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)	(10)	(11)
DEPTH BELOW GROUND SURFACE	AVERAGE DEPTH BELOW GROUND SURFACE	SOIL TYPE	$\sigma'_{vo}$	$\Delta\sigma$	$\frac{\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma}{\sigma'_{vo}}$	LOG COL. (6)	$C_c$	$\frac{C_c}{1 + e_0}$	THICKNESS OF DEPTH INCREMENT	SETTLEMENT
m	m		kPa	kPa					m	m
5	5.75	(CL)	3.8	98.1	101.9 3.8	1.43	0.36	0.36 1 + 1.1	1.5	0.367
6.5	7.25		11.5		109.6 11.5	0.979				0.252
8	8.75		19.1		117.2 19.1	0.788				0.203
9.5	10.25		26.8		124.9 26.8	0.668				0.172
11	11.75		34.4		132.5 34.4	0.586				0.151
12.5	13.25		42.1		140.2 42.1	0.522				0.134
14	14.75		49.7		147.8 49.7	0.473				0.122
15.5	16.25		57.4		155.5 57.4	0.433				0.111
17	17.75		65.0		163.1 65.0	0.400				0.103
18.5	19.25		72.7		170.8 72.7	0.371				0.095
20									$s_c = \sum \Delta H = 1.71 \text{ m}$	
									$\epsilon_v \geq 11\%$	

Fig. Ex. 9.12b Settlement computations.

layers. For example, the average depth of the sixth layer is  $-13.25\text{ m}$ ;  $\sigma'_{vo} = 42.1\text{ kPa}$  while  $\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma = 140.2\text{ kPa}$ . These values are simply scaled off of Fig. Ex. 9.12a. Inserting the appropriate values into Eq. 8-11, we obtain

$$s_c = 0.36 \frac{1.5\text{ m}}{1 + 1.1} \log \frac{140.2}{42.1} = 0.134\text{ m}$$

The computations for each layer are listed in Fig. Ex. 9.12b. The total consolidation settlement of the  $15\text{ m}$  thick layer is  $1.71\text{ m}$ , or about 11% strain. This value of  $s_c$  is about 20% larger than the settlement calculated above for a single  $15\text{ m}$  thick layer. All things considered, it probably is a more accurate prediction. Although the answer is given to two decimal places, there is seldom justification for such precision in settlement computations. An estimate of "approximately  $1.7\text{ m}$ " would usually be of sufficient accuracy. Research (for example, Holtz and Broms, 1972; Leonards, 1977) has shown that consolidation settlements can be predicted within a range of about 20%.

Note that a settlement of  $1.7\text{ m}$  means that  $1.7\text{ m}$  of the fill would settle below the ground water table, which is at the original ground surface, and a decrease in the density of the fill due to buoyancy would result. Thus the actual settlement will be somewhat less than  $1.7\text{ m}$ . This condition has been ignored in this example.

In part II of this example you are asked to compute the time rate of settlement. We can construct Table Ex. 9.12a incorporating  $U_{avg}$ ,  $T$ ,  $s_c$ , and  $t$  by using Eqs. 9-5, 9-12, and Table 9-1. We usually assume  $H$  remains constant at  $15\text{ m}$  (see Sec. 9.3 and Appendix B-2). Since the clay layer has double drainage, the value of  $H_{dr}$  in Eq. 9-5 is  $15\text{ m}/2$ , or  $7.5\text{ m}$ . The  $c_v$  is given as  $0.858\text{ m}^2/\text{yr}$ .

TABLE EX. 9.12a Time Rate of Settlement

(1) $U_{avg}$	(2) $T$	(3) $s_c$ (m)	(4) $t$ (yr)
0.1	0.008	0.17	0.52
0.2	0.031	0.34	2.03
0.3	0.071	0.51	4.65
0.4	0.126	0.68	8.26
0.5	0.197	0.86	12.92
0.6	0.287	1.03	18.82
0.7	0.403	1.20	26.42
0.8	0.567	1.37	37.17
0.9	0.848	1.54	55.59
0.95	1.163	1.62	76.25
1.00	$\infty$	1.71	$\infty$

Values of  $T$  for given values of  $U_{\text{avg}}$  from Table 9-1 are substituted into this equation and solved for  $t$ , column 4 in Table Ex. 9.12a. The settlement in column 3 is obtained from Eq. 9-12 by multiplying the total consolidation settlement for this example, 1.71 m, by column 1. The data in columns 3 and 4 are plotted (similar to Fig. 9.6a) in Fig. Ex. 9.12c.

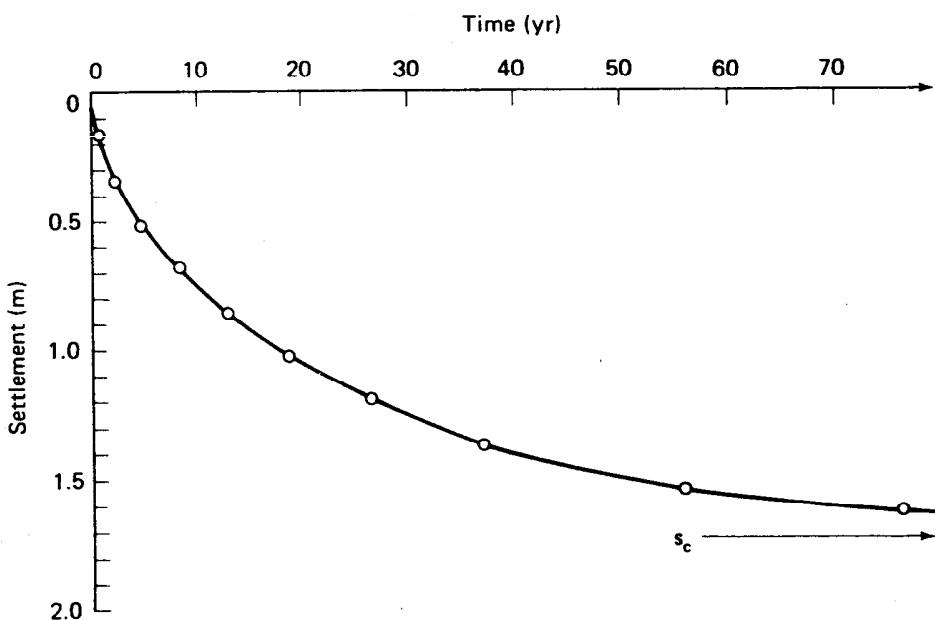


Fig. Ex. 9.12c Data from Table Ex. 9.12a.

In engineering practice, only *estimates* of the time rate of settlement can be made because of the great dependence that the rate of settlement has on the drainage path. If there were *continuous* layers of permeable soil, for example thin sand seams, interbedded in the 15 m clay layer, then the rate of settlement would be significantly greater (see for instance, Example 9.6). Another factor is our inability to accurately predict  $c_v$ . If possible, estimates should be field checked, especially for important jobs.

In part III of this example you are asked to determine the effective stress with depth when  $U_{\text{avg}} = 50\%$ . The computations start with the evaluation of  $U_z$  from Fig. 9.3 and the construction of Table Ex. 9.12b.

The depths in column 1 of Table Ex. 9.12b represent evenly spaced elevations within the 15 m thick clay layer. Column 2 is the ratio of the depth to layer thickness. The time factor for  $U_{\text{avg}}$  of 50% is found from Table 9-1 to be 0.197 (use 0.2 for convenience). Using Fig. 9.3 along the time factor curve for  $T = 0.2$  and the various ratios of  $z/H$  in column 2 of Table Ex. 9.12b, find the values of the degree of consolidation  $U_z$  at these ratios. For example, at  $z/H = 0$  (and 2.0), the value of  $U_z$  is 1.0, or 100%

**TABLE EX. 9.12b** Isochrone Data for  $U_{avg} = 50\%$ 

(1) Depth (m)	(2) $z/H$	(3) $U_z$	(4) $\Delta\sigma'_z$ (kPa)
-5	0	1.00	98.1
-6.88	0.25	0.70	68.7
-8.75	0.5	0.455	44.6
-10.63	0.75	0.285	28.0
-12.5	1.0	0.23	22.6
-14.38	1.25	0.285	28.0
-16.25	1.5	0.455	44.6
-18.13	1.75	0.70	68.7
-20	2.0	1.00	98.1

consolidation at the top and bottom of the clay layer. At a ratio of 0.25  $z/H$  (and 1.75  $z/H$ ) the degree of consolidation is 70%, etc. These values are placed in column 3. The effective stress is found by multiplying  $U_z$  in column 3 by the amount of  $\Delta\sigma$ , the weight of added fill, or 98.1 kPa. A plot of the isochrone for  $U_{avg} = 50\%$  is shown in Fig. Ex. 9.12d. You should compare this figure with Fig. Ex. 9.12a. From Table Ex. 9.12a, you can see that it takes about 13 years to develop this isochrone. The isochrone represents the dividing line between the amount of  $\Delta\sigma$  that has gone into effective stress and the amount of pore pressure in the clay layer that remains to be dissipated. If the clay layer were sampled and a consolidation test were performed at a depth of -12.5 m (the middle of the clay layer), the value of the preconsolidation pressure,  $\sigma'_p$ , would be 60.9 kPa ( $\sigma'_{vo} + \Delta\sigma$ , 38.3 + 22.6 kPa). This value is obtained from Fig. Ex. 9.12d.

There are practical implications to be derived from part III. If a foundation engineer wanted to reduce the consolidation settlement of a structure, the site could be *preloaded* with fill and the fill removed later. The time the preload should be applied may be calculated as in this example. After the fill was removed, if the stress distribution of the new structure was about the same or less than the 50% isochrone shown in Fig. Ex. 9.12d, then the consolidation settlement would be calculated by using the recompression index  $C_r$ , and the settlements would be substantially less (Sec. 8.7).

Part IV, the final part, illustrates the computation for time rate of secondary compression. First plot the consolidation settlement data in Table Ex. 9.12a,  $s_c$  versus log time, shown in Fig. Ex. 9.12e. Note that this is a theoretical settlement-log time relationship. Solving for the secondary

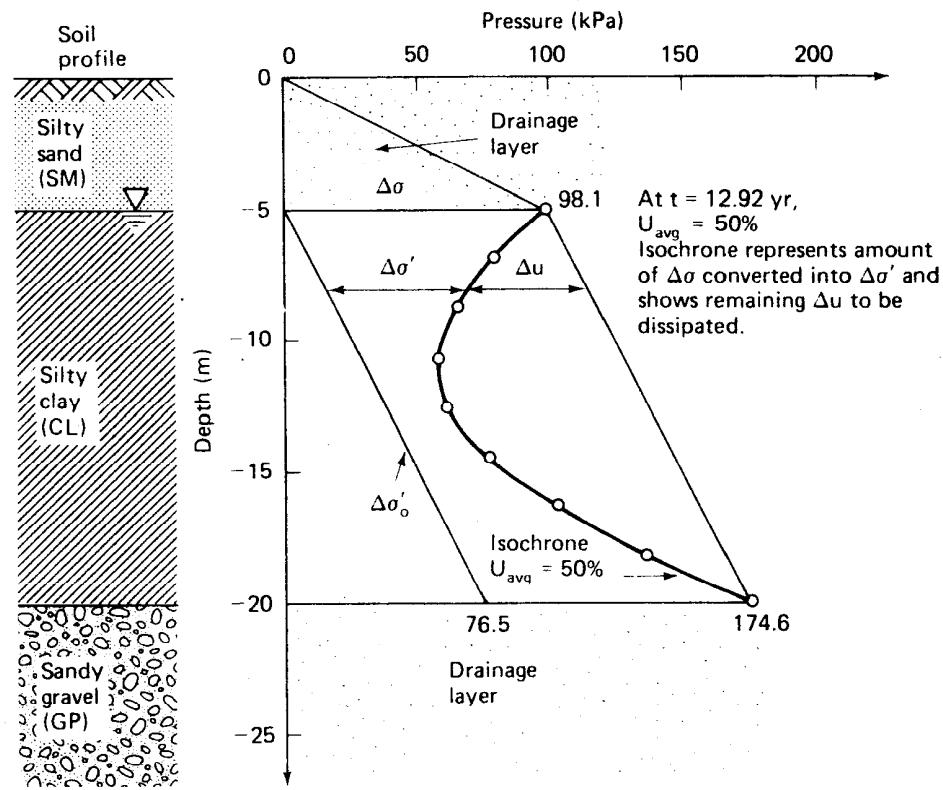


Fig. Ex. 9.12d Data from Fig. Ex. 9.12a and Table Ex. 9.12b.

settlement (Eq. 9-18) for one log cycle, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
 s_s &= \frac{C_a}{1 + e_p} (H_o)(\Delta \log t) \\
 &= \frac{0.06}{1 + 1.1} (15 \text{ m})(1) \\
 &= 0.429 \text{ m}/\text{log cycle of time}
 \end{aligned}$$

This slope is shown in Fig. Ex. 9.12e. This same rate of secondary compression starts at point  $a$  on the theoretical settlement-time curve. Point  $a$  corresponds to the settlement at 100% primary consolidation ( $s_c = 1.71$  m). Note that the primary consolidation curve has been extrapolated slightly to point  $a$ . Thus, from Fig. Ex. 9.12e, the total settle-

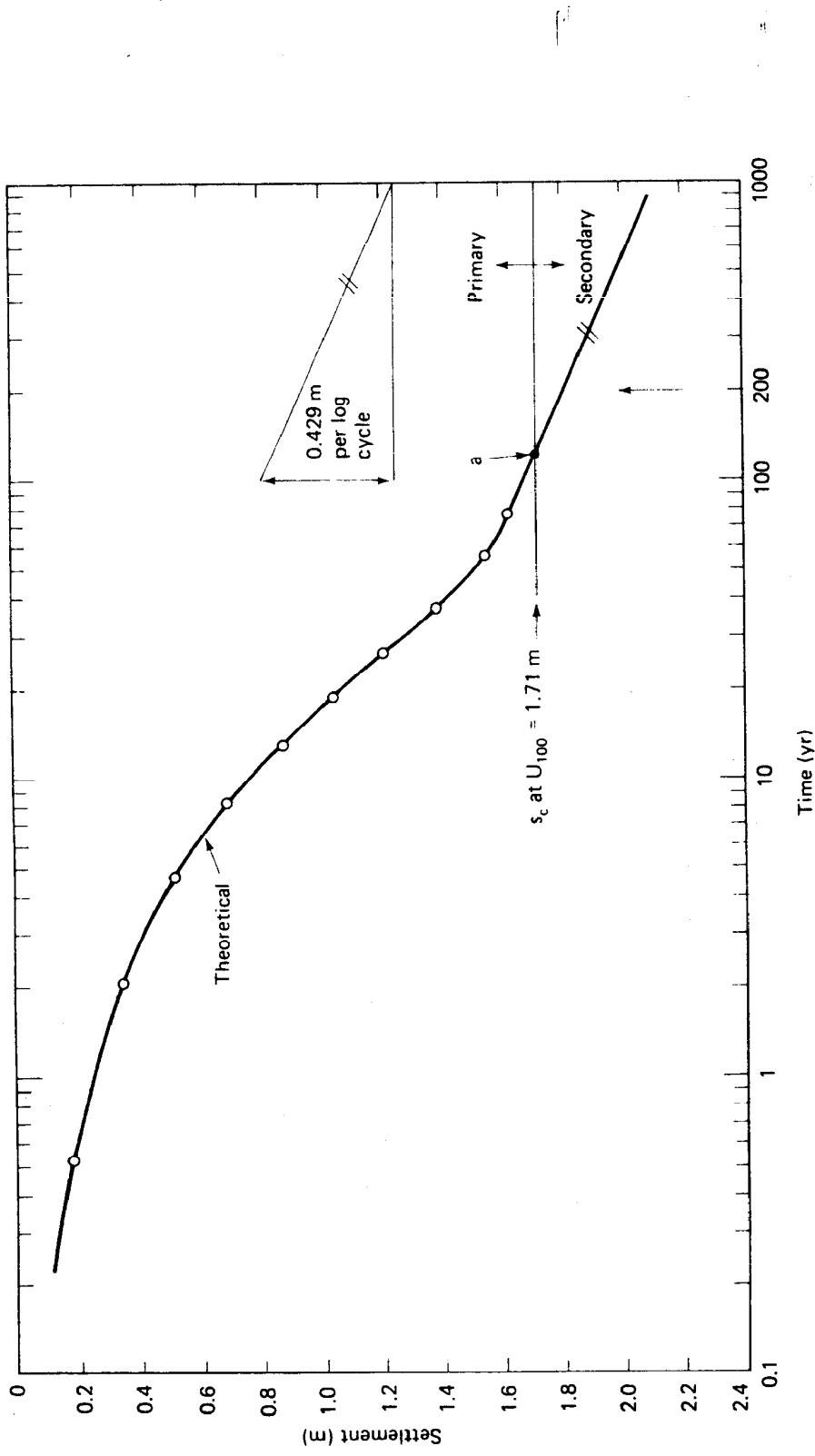


Fig. Ex. 9.12e Data from Table Ex. 9.12a.

ment at the end of, say, 200 years is expected to be about 1.8 m. To be more precise than this in predicting settlements is beyond our ability to accurately evaluate soil properties and field drainage conditions.

The preceding example illustrates some of the computational details of a time rate of settlement analysis for the simple case of one-dimensional loading and for a normally consolidated clay. If the loaded area were of limited extent, then you would have to take into account the stress distribution with depth at key points under the loaded area. You would use the techniques discussed in Sec. 8.12 to establish curve *B* in a diagram, similar to Fig. Ex. 9.12a. You might even have to do this for several sections under the foundation, for example in the center, at the edge, and under the corner of the loaded area.

Because the clay in Example 9.12 was normally consolidated, computation of the consolidation settlement (part I) was relatively straightforward. If the clay had been overconsolidated, that is, if  $\sigma'_{vo} < \sigma'_p$ , then you would use Eqs. 8-16 through 8-19, as the case may be. Sometimes the upper part of the layer is overconsolidated, and the lower part is normally consolidated, and you have to take this into account in your computations. Another complication that often occurs is that the soil and consolidation properties ( $C_c, e_o$ ) vary throughout the soil profile. In that case, when you break up the profile into smaller layers, as we did in Fig. Ex. 9.12a, the layers will not necessarily be evenly spaced. In this case, tables, such as illustrated in Fig. Ex. 9.12b, are very helpful for making the actual computations.

Procedures for handling complex settlement problems in engineering practice are treated in depth in foundation engineering textbooks.

When soil permeability and therefore  $c_v$  varies within the compressible layer, or when boundary layers impede drainage, the problem of time rate of consolidation becomes very complex and numerical techniques such as found in Scott (1963) and Harr (1966) are called for.

## PROBLEMS

- 9-1. The time factor for a clay layer undergoing consolidation is 0.2. What is the degree of consolidation (consolidation ratio) at the center and at the quarter points (that is,  $z/H = 0.25$  and 0.75)? What is the average degree of consolidation for the layer?
- 9-2. If the final consolidation settlement for the clay layer of Problem 9-1

- is expected to be 1.0 m, how much settlement has occurred when the time factor is (a) 0.2 and (b) 0.7?
- 9-3. If the clay layer of Example 9.1 were singly drained, would there be any difference in the calculated  $U_z$  values? If so, how much difference?
  - 9-4. Plot a graph of excess pore pressure versus depth, similar to Fig. Ex. 9.2, for the soil and loading conditions given in Example 9.2, but for the case of single drainage. Assume that under the clay there is impervious shale instead of a dense sand.
  - 9-5. For the soil and loading conditions of Examples 9.1 and 9.2, estimate how long it would take for 0.1, 0.25, and 0.4 m of settlement to occur. Consider both single and double drainage.
  - 9-6. By evaluation of the series expression (Eq. B-2-23 in Appendix B-2) for the solution to the consolidation equation, determine the average degree of consolidation  $U$  to the nearest 0.001 for time factors 0.2, 0.5, 0.9 and infinity. Verify your computations by referring to Table 9-1 and Fig. 9.5a. Also check by Eqs. 9-10 and 9-11. (After Taylor, 1948.)
  - 9-7. How much difference would there be in the (a) computed ultimate settlement and (b) the time required for 90% consolidation for the soil conditions of Example 9.7 if the clay layer were doubly drained?
  - 9-8. A deposit of Swedish clay is 12 m thick, on the average, and apparently drained on the bottom. The coefficient of consolidation for the clay was estimated to be  $1 \times 10^{-4} \text{ cm}^2/\text{s}$  from laboratory tests. A settlement analysis based on oedometer tests predicted an ultimate consolidation settlement under the applied load in the field to be 1.2 m. (a) How long would it take for settlements of 40 and 70 cm to occur? (b) How much settlement would you expect to occur in 5 yr? 10 yr? 50 yr? (c) How long will it take for the ultimate settlement of 1.2 m to occur?
  - 9-9. A conventional laboratory consolidation test on a 20 mm thick sample gave a time for 90% consolidation equal to 12 min. Calculate  $c_v$  in  $\text{cm}^2/\text{s}$ ,  $\text{m}^2/\text{s}$ , and  $\text{ft}^2/\text{d}$ .
  - 9-10. List the assumptions of the Terzaghi one-dimensional consolidation theory. List them in the order of their importance in terms of (a) mathematical convenience and (b) practical engineering significance.
  - 9-11. The time rate of settlement data shown below is for the increment from 20 to 40 kPa from the test in Fig. 8.5. The initial sample height is 2.54 cm, and there are porous stones on the top and at the bottom

of the sample. Determine  $c_v$  by (a) the log time-fitting procedure and (b) the square root of time procedure. (c) Compare the results of (a) and (b).

Elapsed Time (min)	Dial Reading (mm)
0	4.041
0.1	3.927
0.25	3.879
0.5	3.830
1	3.757
2	3.650
4	3.495
8	3.282
15	3.035
30	2.766
60	2.550
120	2.423
240	2.276
505	2.184
1485	2.040

9-12. An oedometer test (Taylor, 1948) was conducted on a sample of soft Chicago silty clay. The specimen had a dry weight of 329.99 g and a density of solids of  $2.70 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ . The area of the ring was  $93.31 \text{ cm}^2$ . An old-fashioned dial indicator was used, which measured ten-thousandths of an inch ( $10^{-4}$  in. per division), and the incremental stresses applied to the specimen were recorded in  $\text{kgt/cm}^2$ . Direct measurements of the thickness of the specimen were as follows:

- 1.254 in. when under  $1/8 \text{ kg/cm}^2$  (dial reading 2843)
- 1.238 in. when under  $1/2 \text{ kg/cm}^2$  (dial reading 2694)
- 1.215 in. when under  $1 \text{ kg/cm}^2$  (dial reading 2458)

Dial readings in  $10^{-4}$  in. recorded during the test are listed in Table P9-12.

- (a) Plot the  $e$  versus  $\log \sigma'$  and/or the  $\epsilon$  versus  $\log \sigma'$  curve for this test. Determine the preconsolidation stress and the appropriate compression index.
- (b) Plot dial reading versus  $\sqrt{t}$  for each increment and determine  $c_v$ . Plot  $c_v$  versus  $\log \sigma'$ .
- (c) Same as part (b), only use the Casagrande log time-fitting method.
- (d) For two increments, one before the preconsolidation stress and one after the preconsolidation stress, compare the values of  $c_v$  as determined by the two fitting procedures.

**TABLE P9-12 Dial Readings in  $10^{-4}$  in.\***

Elapsed Time (min)	Loading Increment ( $\text{kg}/\text{cm}^2$ )						
	$\frac{1}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$ to 1	1 to 2	2 to 4	4 to 8	8 to 16
0	2843	2796	2694	2458	1500	3100	3102
$\frac{1}{4}$	2834	2780	2664	2421	1451	3047	3040
1	2829	2768	2647	2379	1408	2999	2985
$2\frac{1}{4}$	2824	2761	2629	2337	1354	2946	2931
4	2820	2751	2610	2288	1304	2896	2873
$6\frac{1}{4}$	2817	2742	2592	2239	1248	2841	2822
9	2813	2735	2576	2190	1197	2791	2768
$12\frac{1}{4}$	2811	2729	2562	2142	1143	2743	2728
16	2809	2724	2553	2098	1093	2701	2690
$20\frac{1}{4}$	2808	2720	2546	2044	1043	2660	2658
25	2807	2717	2540	2013	999	2630	2636
$30\frac{1}{4}$	2806	2715	2533	1969	956	2602	—
36	2805	2713	2529	1937	922	2575	2602
$42\frac{1}{4}$	2804	2710	—	1905	892	—	—
60	2803	2709	2517	1837	830	2525	2568
100	2802	2706	2508	1740	765	2496	2537
200	2801	2702	2493	1640	722	2471	2518
400	2799	2699	2478	1585	693	2446	2499
1440	2796	2694	2458	1500	642	2399	2468
(reset to)	—	—	—	—	3100	3102	—

\*After Taylor (1948).

- 9-13. A consolidation test is performed on the specimen with these characteristics:

Height of specimen = 38.10 mm  
 Area of specimen =  $90.1 \text{ cm}^2$   
 Wet weight of specimen = 621.5 g  
 Dry weight of specimen = 475.1 g  
 Density of solids =  $2.80 \text{ Mg/m}^3$

The consolidation data (after A. Casagrande) are summarized in Table P9-13.

- Plot the effective stress versus void ratio curve for both arithmetic and semilogarithmic scales.
- Estimate the preconsolidation pressure.
- Compute the compression index for virgin consolidation.
- Plot the time curve for the load increment from 256 to 512 kg for both arithmetic and semilogarithmic scales.
- Compute the coefficient of compressibility  $a_v$ , the coefficient of permeability, and the coefficient of consolidation  $c_v$ , for the load increment from 256 kg to 512 kg.

**TABLE P9-13** Consolidation Test Data\*

Temp. (°C)	Date	Time	Load (kg)	Elapsed Time (min)	Dial Reading (mm)
	5/16/84		0		0
			16		0.787
			32		1.176
			64		1.854
			128		2.896
			256		4.204
23.0	5/22/84	0933	512	Sudden	4.305
				0.10	4.343
				1.00	4.460
				4.00	4.663
				10.00	4.890
				28—	5.235
				72—	5.481
				182—	5.598
22.7		1733		480—	5.669
22.6		2240			5.700
23.4	5/23/84	1055			5.730
22.8	5/24/84	1100			5.753
	5/24/84		1024		7.366
	5/30/84		1024		7.447
			512		7.239
			256		6.949
			128		6.612
			32		5.878
	6/7/84		0.27		4.115
	6/30/84		0.27		3.693

\*Modified after A. Casagrande.

- 9-14. A certain compressible layer has a thickness of 4 m. After 1 yr when the clay is 50% consolidated, 8 cm of settlement has occurred. For a similar clay and loading conditions, how much settlement would occur at the end of 1 yr and 4 yr if the thickness of this new layer were 40 m?
- 9-15. In a laboratory consolidation test on a representative sample of cohesive soil, the original height of a doubly drained sample was 25.4 mm. Based on the log time versus dial reading data, the time for 50% consolidation was 9 min. The laboratory sample was taken from a soil layer which is 12 m thick in the field, doubly drained, and is subjected to a similar loading. (a) How long will it take until the layer consolidates 50%? (b) If the final consolidation settlement is predicted to be 18 cm, how long will it take for a settlement of 4 cm to take place?

- 9-16. A layer of normally consolidated clay 3.5 m thick has an average void ratio of 1.3. Its compression index is 0.6 and its coefficient of consolidation is  $1 \text{ m}^2/\text{yr}$ . When the existing vertical pressure on the clay layer is doubled, what change in thickness of the clay layer will result?
- 9-17. The settlement analysis for a proposed structure indicates that 6 cm of settlement will occur in 4 yr and that the ultimate total settlement will be about 25 cm. The analysis is based on the assumption that the compressible clay layer is drained at both its top and bottom surfaces. However it is suspected that there may not be drainage at the bottom surface. For the case of single drainage, estimate (a) the ultimate total settlement and (b) the time required for 6 cm of settlement. (After Taylor, 1948.)
- 9-18. The structure of Problem 9-17 was constructed and performed essentially as expected during the first 4 yr (that is, the settlement of the building was about 6 cm). The owner decides to build a duplicate of the first structure nearby. During foundation investigations, it is discovered that the clay layer under the new building would be about 20% thicker than under the first structure. Otherwise, the properties of the clay are the same. Estimate for the new structure (a) the ultimate total settlement, and (b) the settlement in 4 yr. (After Taylor, 1948.)
- 9-19. A certain doubly drained clay layer has an expected ultimate settlement  $s_c$  of 15 cm. The clay layer, which is 17 m thick, has a coefficient of consolidation of  $5 \times 10^{-3} \text{ cm}^2/\text{s}$ . Plot the  $s_c$ -time relationship to (a) an arithmetic time scale and (b) a semilog time scale.
- 9-20. Given the same soil data as for Problem 9-19. After 3 yr, an identical load is placed, causing an additional 15 cm of consolidation settlement. Compute and plot the time rate of settlement under these conditions, assuming that the load causing consolidation settlement is placed instantaneously.
- 9-21. Given the same data as for Problem 9-19. The load causing the 15 cm ultimate settlement was placed over a period of 2 yr. Although we haven't discussed how to handle this kind of problem, describe the approach you would use to compute the time history of settlement.
- 9-22. A specimen of clay in a special oedometer (with drainage at the top only) has a height of 2.065 cm when fully consolidated under a pressure of 50 kPa. A pressure transducer is located at the base of the sample to measure the pore water pressure. (a) When another stress increment of 50 kPa is applied, what would you expect the

initial reading on the transducer to be? (b) If, after 15 min had elapsed, the transducer records a pressure of 25 kPa, what would you expect it to read 45 min later (total elapsed time of 1 h)? (After G. A. Leonards.)

- 9-23. The total consolidation settlement for a compressible layer 7 m thick is estimated to be about 30 cm. After about 6 mo (180 d) a point 2 m below the top of the singly drained layer has a degree of consolidation of 60%. (a) Compute the coefficient of consolidation of the material in  $\text{m}^2/\text{d}$ . (b) Compute the settlement for 180 d.
- 9-24. A 20 m thick normally consolidated clay layer has a load of 100 kPa applied to it over a large areal extent. The clay layer is located below a granular fill ( $\rho = 2.0 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ ) 3 m thick. A dense sandy gravel is found below the clay. The ground water table is located at the top of the clay layer, and the submerged density of the soil is  $0.90 \text{ Mg/m}^3$ . Consolidation tests performed on 2.20 cm thick doubly drained samples indicate  $t_{50} = 9 \text{ min}$  for a load increment close to that of the loaded clay layer. Compute the effective stress in the clay layer at a depth of 18 m below the ground surface 4 yr after application of the load.
- 9-25. Given the same data as for Problem 9-24. At  $t = 4 \text{ yr}$ , what is the average degree of consolidation for the clay layer?
- 9-26. Again, given the same data as for Problem 9-24. If the clay layer were *singly drained* from the top only, compute the effective stress at a depth of 18 m below the ground surface and 4 yr after placement of the external load. Comments?
- 9-27. Determine the average coefficient of permeability, corrected to  $20^\circ\text{C}$ , of a clay specimen for the following consolidation increment:

$$\sigma_1 = 150 \text{ kPa}, e_1 = 1.30$$

$$\sigma_2 = 300 \text{ kPa}, e_2 = 1.18$$

Height of specimen = 20 mm

Drainage at both top and bottom faces

Time required for 50% consolidation = 20 min

Test temperature =  $23^\circ\text{C}$

(After A. Casagrande.)

- 9-28. The following data were obtained from a consolidation test on an undisturbed clay sample:

$$\sigma_1 = 165 \text{ kPa}, \quad e_1 = 0.895$$

$$\sigma_2 = 310 \text{ kPa}, \quad e_2 = 0.732$$

The average value of the coefficient of permeability of the clay in

this pressure increment range is  $3.5 \times 10^{-9}$  cm/s. Compute and plot the decrease in thickness with time for a 10 m layer of this clay which is drained (a) on the upper surface only and (b) on the upper surface, and at a depth of 3 m by a thin horizontal sand layer that provides free drainage. (After A. Casagrande.)

- 9-29. Given the data of Problem 9-11. Evaluate (a) the secondary compression index and (b) the modified secondary compression index if

$$e_o = 2.60$$

$$H_o = 2.54 \text{ cm}$$

$$\rho_s = 2.75 \text{ Mg/m}^3$$

$$\text{At } t = 0, e = 1.74, H = 1.928 \text{ cm}$$

$$\text{At } t = 1485 \text{ min}, e = 1.455, H = 1.728 \text{ cm}$$

Weight of technician = 7 stone; moon phase = full

- 9-30. Show that  $C_{ac} = \frac{C_a}{1 + e_p} = \frac{\Delta\epsilon}{\Delta \log t}$  is valid.

- 9-31. Show that  $s_s = \frac{C_a}{1 + e_p} (H_o) \Delta \log t$  is true.

- 9-32. Estimate the secondary compression per log cycle of time for Problem 9-24.

- 9-33. The liquid limit of a soil is 80. Estimate the value of the modified secondary compression index.

- 9-34. Given the information of Example 9.12. What would be the settlement of the silty clay layer if *one* layer were chosen instead of the 10 layers actually used? What would be the settlement if 2, 5, and 7 layers represented the 15 m thick layer? Plot  $s_c$  versus the number of layers.

- 9-35. Given the data and information of Example 9.12. After 10 yr of consolidation, an additional areal fill load of 49 kPa is placed on the site. Compute the amount of additional settlement, and prepare a plot of settlement similar to Fig. Ex. 9.12c.

- 9-36. Given the data and information of Example 9.12. Subsequent subsurface investigation reveals a thin pervious layer at a depth of -9.5 m (that is, 4.5 m into the silty clay layer), which provides drainage throughout the silty clay. Compute the time rate of settlement for these new conditions, and plot the results on a graph similar to Fig. Ex. 9.12c.

## ten

# The Mohr Circle, Failure Theories, Stress Paths

---

## 10.1 INTRODUCTION

Before we discuss the stress-deformation and shear strength properties of soils, we need to introduce some new definitions and concepts about stress and failure. From Chapters 8 and 9, you know something about the load-settlement-time characteristics of cohesive soils, at least those due to one-dimensional loading. In this chapter and the next, we shall describe the reaction of sands and clays to types of loading other than one dimensional.

If the load or stress in a foundation or earth slope is increased until the deformations become unacceptably large, we say that the soil in the foundation or slope has "failed." In this case we are referring to the *strength* of the soil, which is really the maximum or ultimate stress the material can sustain. In geotechnical engineering, we are generally concerned with the *shear strength* of soils because, in most of our problems in foundations and earthwork engineering, failure results from excessive applied shear stresses.

The following notation is introduced in this chapter.

Symbol	Dimension	Unit	Definition
$a$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Intercept of the $K_f$ line on the $p-q$ diagram (Eq. 10-23)
$c$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Intercept of the Mohr failure envelope (Eq. 10-8)
$CD$	—	—	Consolidated drained (triaxial test)
$CU$	—	—	Consolidated undrained (triaxial test)

Symbol	Dimension	Unit	Definition
$p$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	$(\sigma_o + \sigma_h)/2$ (Eq. 10-19)
$q$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	$(\sigma_o - \sigma_h)/2$ (Eq. 10-18)
$UU$	—	—	Unconsolidated undrained (triaxial test)
$\alpha$	—	(degree)	An angle
$\alpha_f$	—	(degree)	Angle of the failure plane
$\beta$	—	(degree)	$\text{Arctan } (q/p)$ (Eq. 10-21)
$\gamma$	—	(%)	Shear strain (angle of rotation in DSS test)
$\delta$	$L$	m	Horizontal displacement
$\theta$	—	(degree)	An angle
$\sigma$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Normal stress
$\sigma_1$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Major principal stress
$\sigma_2$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Intermediate principal stress
$\sigma_3$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Minor principal stress
$\sigma_{ff}$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Normal stress on the failure plane at failure (Eq. 10-7)
$\tau$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Shear stress
$\tau_{ff}$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Shear stress on the failure plane at failure (Eq. 10-7)
$\psi$	—	(degree)	Slope of the $K_f$ line on the $p-q$ diagram (Eq. 10-23)
$\phi$	—	(degree)	Slope of the Mohr failure envelope (sometimes called the <i>angle of internal friction</i> ) (Eq. 10-8)

Note: A prime on an angle or stress denotes effective stress.

## 10.2 STRESS AT A POINT

As we mentioned when we discussed effective stresses in Chapter 7, the concept of stress at a point in a soil is really fictitious. The point of application of a force within a soil mass could be on a particle or in a void. Clearly, a void cannot support any force, but if the force were applied to a particle, the stress could be extremely large. Thus when we speak about stress in the context of soil materials we are really speaking about a force per unit area, in which the area under consideration is the gross cross-sectional or engineering area. This area contains both grain-to-grain contacts as well as voids. The concept is similar to the "engineering area" used in seepage and flow problems (Chapter 7).

Consider a soil mass that is acted upon by a set of forces  $F_1, F_2, \dots, F_n$ , as shown in Fig. 10.1. For the time being, let's assume that these

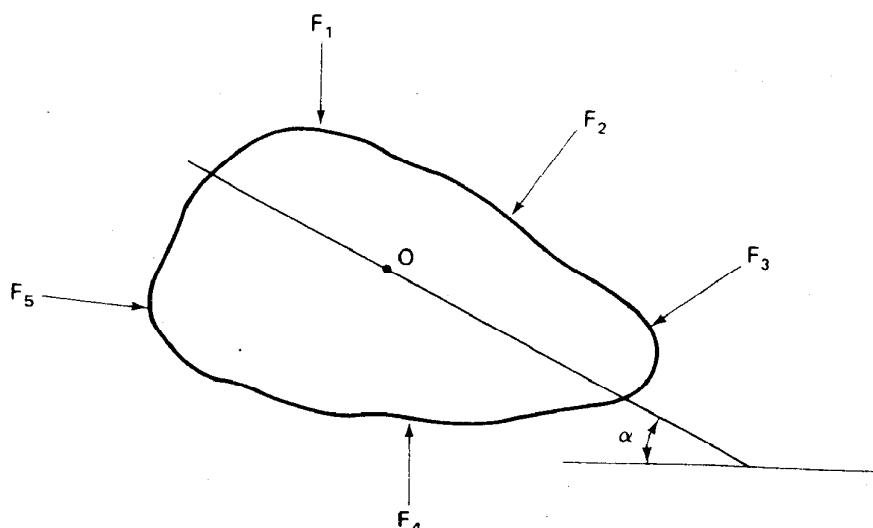


Fig. 10.1 A soil mass acted upon by several forces.

forces act in a two-dimensional plane. We could resolve these forces into components on a small element at any point within the soil mass, such as point  $O$  in that figure. The resolution of these forces into normal and shear components acting, for example, on a plane passing through point  $O$  at an angle  $\alpha$  from the horizontal is shown in Fig. 10.2, which is an expanded view of a small element at point  $O$ . Note that for convenience our sign convention has *compressive forces and stresses positive* because most normal stresses in geotechnical engineering are compressive. This convention then requires that a *positive* shear stress produce *couterclockwise* couples on our element. Put another way: *positive* shears produce *clockwise* moments about a point just *outside* the element, as shown by the insert in Fig. 10.2. *Clockwise* angles are also taken to be *positive*. These conventions are the *opposite* of those normally assumed in structural mechanics.

To begin, let's assume that the distance  $AC$  along the inclined plane in Fig. 10.2 has unit length, and that the figure has a unit depth perpendicular to the plane of the paper. Thus the vertical plane  $BC$  has the dimension of  $1 \sin \alpha$ , and the horizontal dimension  $AB$  has a dimension equal to  $1 \cos \alpha$ . At equilibrium, the sum of the forces in any direction must be zero. So summing in the horizontal and vertical directions, we obtain

$$\Sigma F_h = H - T \cos \alpha - N \sin \alpha = 0 \quad (10-1a)$$

$$\Sigma F_v = V + T \sin \alpha - N \cos \alpha = 0 \quad (10-1b)$$

Dividing the forces in Eq. 10-1 by the areas upon which they act, we obtain the normal and shear stresses. (We shall denote the horizontal

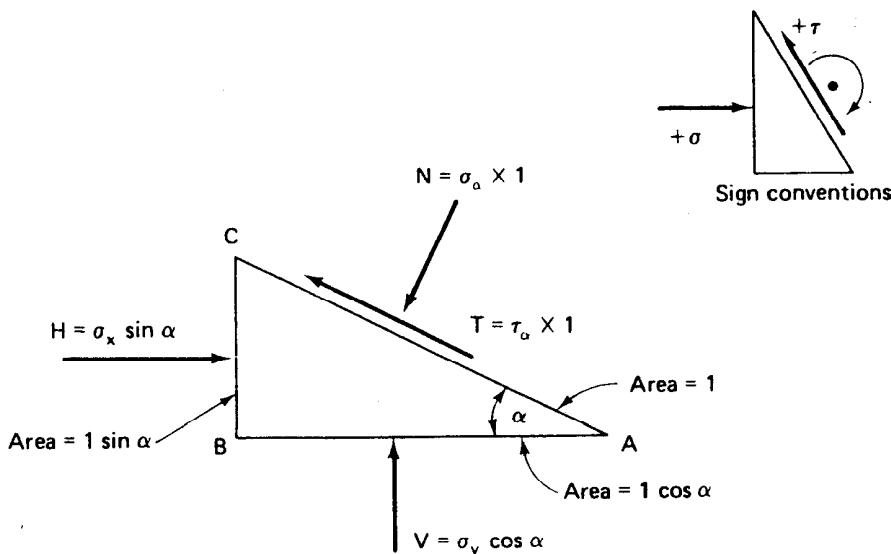


Fig. 10.2 Resolution of the forces of Fig. 10.1 into components on a small element at point  $O$ . Sign conventions are shown in the small inset figure.

normal stress by  $\sigma_x$  and the vertical normal stress by  $\sigma_y$ ; the stresses on the  $\alpha$ -plane are the normal stress  $\sigma_\alpha$  and the shear stress  $\tau_\alpha$ )

$$\sigma_x \sin \alpha - \tau_\alpha \cos \alpha - \sigma_\alpha \sin \alpha = 0 \quad (10-2a)$$

$$\sigma_y \cos \alpha + \tau_\alpha \sin \alpha - \sigma_\alpha \cos \alpha = 0 \quad (10-2b)$$

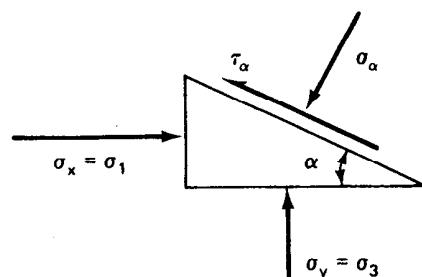
Solving Eqs. 10-2a and 10-2b simultaneously for  $\sigma_\alpha$  and  $\tau_\alpha$ , we obtain

$$\sigma_\alpha = \sigma_x \sin^2 \alpha + \sigma_y \cos^2 \alpha = \frac{\sigma_x + \sigma_y}{2} + \frac{\sigma_x - \sigma_y}{2} \cos 2\alpha \quad (10-3)$$

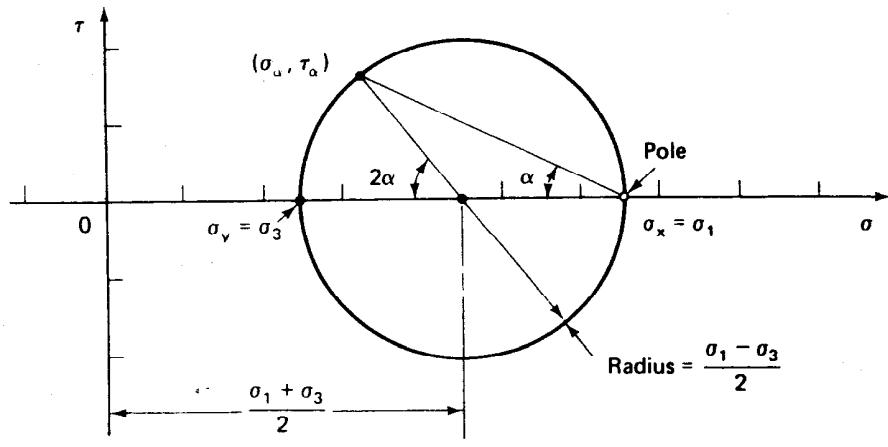
$$\tau_\alpha = (\sigma_x - \sigma_y) \sin \alpha \cos \alpha = \frac{\sigma_x - \sigma_y}{2} \sin 2\alpha \quad (10-4)$$

If you square and add these equations, you will obtain the equation for a *circle* with a radius of  $(\sigma_x - \sigma_y)/2$  and its center at  $[(\sigma_x + \sigma_y)/2, 0]$ . When this circle is plotted in  $\tau$ - $\sigma$  space, as shown in Fig. 10.3b for the element in Fig. 10.3a, it is known as the *Mohr circle of stress* (Mohr, 1887). It represents the state of stress *at a point at equilibrium*, and it applies to any material, not just soil. Note that the scales for  $\tau$  and  $\sigma$  have to be the same to obtain a circle from these equations.

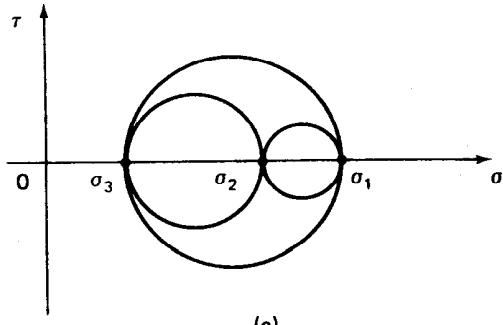
Since the vertical and horizontal planes in Fig. 10.2 and Fig. 10.3a have no shearing stresses acting on them, they are by definition *principal planes*. Thus the stresses  $\sigma_x$  and  $\sigma_y$  are really *principal stresses*. You may recall from your study of strength of materials that principal stresses act on planes where  $\tau = 0$ . The stress with the largest magnitude is called the



(a)



(b)



(c)

Fig. 10.3 The Mohr circle of stress: (a) element at equilibrium; (b) the Mohr circle; (c) Mohr circles including  $\sigma_2$ .

*major principal stress*, and denoted by the symbol  $\sigma_1$ . The smallest principal stress is called the *minor principal stress*,  $\sigma_3$ , and the stress in the third dimension is the *intermediate principal stress*,  $\sigma_2$ . In Fig. 10.3b,  $\sigma_2$  is neglected since our derivation was for two-dimensional (plane stress) conditions. We could, however, construct two additional Mohr circles for  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$  and  $\sigma_2$  and  $\sigma_3$  to make a complete Mohr diagram, as shown in Fig. 10.3c.

Now we can write Eqs. 10-3 and 10-4 in terms of principal stresses.

$$\sigma_\alpha = \frac{\sigma_1 + \sigma_3}{2} + \frac{\sigma_1 - \sigma_3}{2} \cos 2\alpha \quad (10-5)$$

$$\tau_\alpha = \frac{\sigma_1 - \sigma_3}{2} \sin 2\alpha \quad (10-6)$$

Here we have arbitrarily assumed that  $\sigma_x = \sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_y = \sigma_3$ . You should verify that the coordinates of  $(\sigma_\alpha, \tau_\alpha)$  in Fig. 10.3b can be determined by Eqs. 10-5 and 10-6. From these equations, also verify that the coordinates of the center of the circle are  $[(\sigma_1 + \sigma_3)/2, 0]$ , and that the radius is  $(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)/2$ .

It is now possible to calculate the normal stress  $\sigma_\alpha$  and shear stress  $\tau_\alpha$  on any plane  $\alpha$ , as long as we know the principal stresses. In fact, we could almost as easily derive equations for the general case where  $\sigma_x$  and  $\sigma_y$  are not principal planes. These equations are known as the *double angle equations*, and they are the ones generally presented in strength of materials textbooks. The analytical procedure is sometimes awkward to use in practice because of the double angles; we prefer to use a graphical procedure based on a unique point on the Mohr circle called the *pole* or the *origin of planes*. This point has a very useful property: *any straight line drawn through the pole will intersect the Mohr circle at a point which represents the state of stress on a plane inclined at the same orientation in space as the line*. This concept means that if you know the state of stress,  $\sigma$  and  $\tau$ , on some plane in space, you can draw a line parallel to that plane through the *coordinates* of  $\sigma$  and  $\tau$  on the Mohr circle. The pole then is the point where that line intersects the Mohr circle. Once the pole is known, the stresses on *any plane* can readily be found by simply drawing a line from the pole parallel to that plane; the coordinates of the point of intersection with the Mohr circle determine the stresses on that plane. A few examples will illustrate how the pole method works.

---

### EXAMPLE 10.1

Given:

Stresses on an element as shown in Fig. Ex. 10.1a.

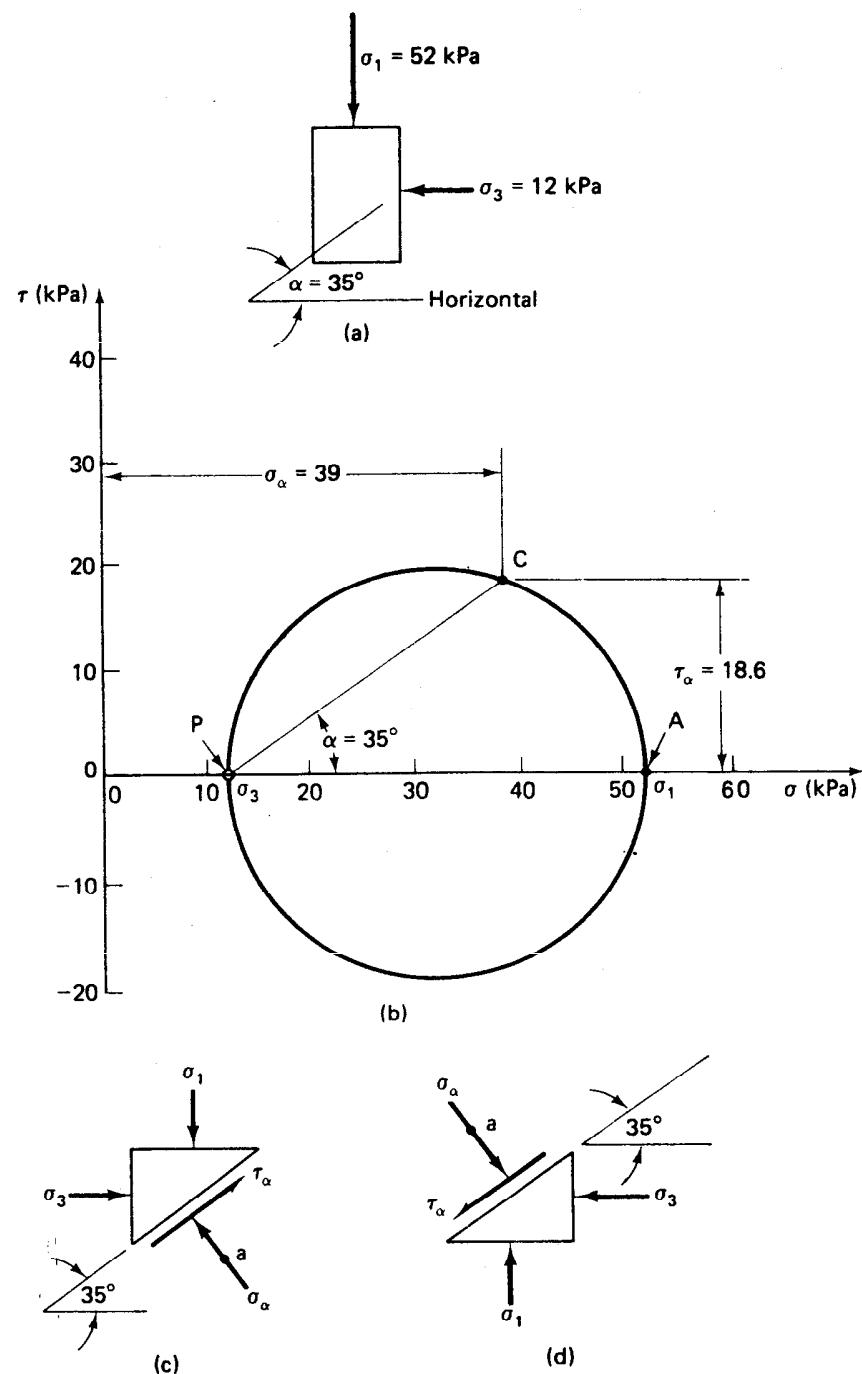


Fig. Ex. 10.1

**Required:**

The normal stress  $\sigma_a$  and the shear stress  $\tau$  on the plane inclined at  $\alpha = 35^\circ$  from the horizontal reference plane.

**Solution:**

1. Plot the Mohr circle to some convenient scale (see Fig. Ex. 10.1b).

$$\text{center of circle} = \frac{\sigma_1 + \sigma_3}{2} = \frac{52 + 12}{2} = 32 \text{ kPa}$$

$$\text{radius of circle} = \frac{\sigma_1 - \sigma_3}{2} = \frac{52 - 12}{2} = 20 \text{ kPa}$$

2. Establish the origin of planes or the pole. It is probably easier to use the horizontal plane upon which  $\sigma_1$  acts. The state of stress on this plane is indicated by point *A* in Fig. Ex. 10.1b. Draw a line parallel to the plane upon which this state of stress ( $\sigma_1, 0$ ) acts (the horizontal plane) through the point representing  $\sigma_1$  and 0. By definition, the pole *P* is where this line intersects the Mohr circle. [By coincidence, it intersects at  $(\sigma_3, 0)$ ]. A line through the pole inclined at an angle  $\alpha = 35^\circ$  from the horizontal plane would be parallel to the plane on the element in Fig. Ex. 10.1a, and this is the plane on which we require the normal and shear stress. The intersection is at point *C* in Fig. Ex. 10.1b, and we find that  $\sigma_a = 39 \text{ kPa}$  and  $\tau_a = 18.6 \text{ kPa}$ .

You should verify these results by using Eqs. 10-5 and 10-6. Note that  $\tau_a$  is positive since point *C* occurs above the abscissa. Thus the sense of  $\tau_a$  on the  $35^\circ$  plane is determined as indicated in Figs. Ex. 10.1c and d, which represent the top and bottom parts of the given element. For both parts, the direction or sense of the shear stress  $\tau_a$  is equal and opposite (as it should be). However, they are both positive shear stresses, which is consistent with our sign convention (Fig. 10.2).

---

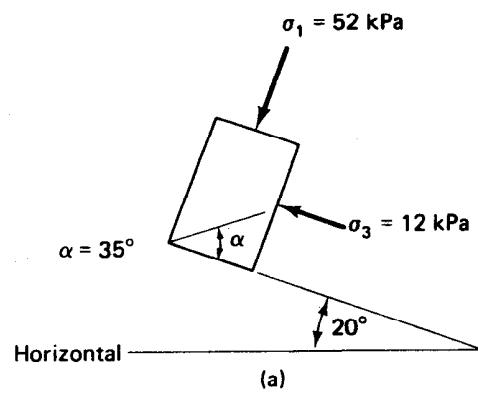
## EXAMPLE 10.2

**Given:**

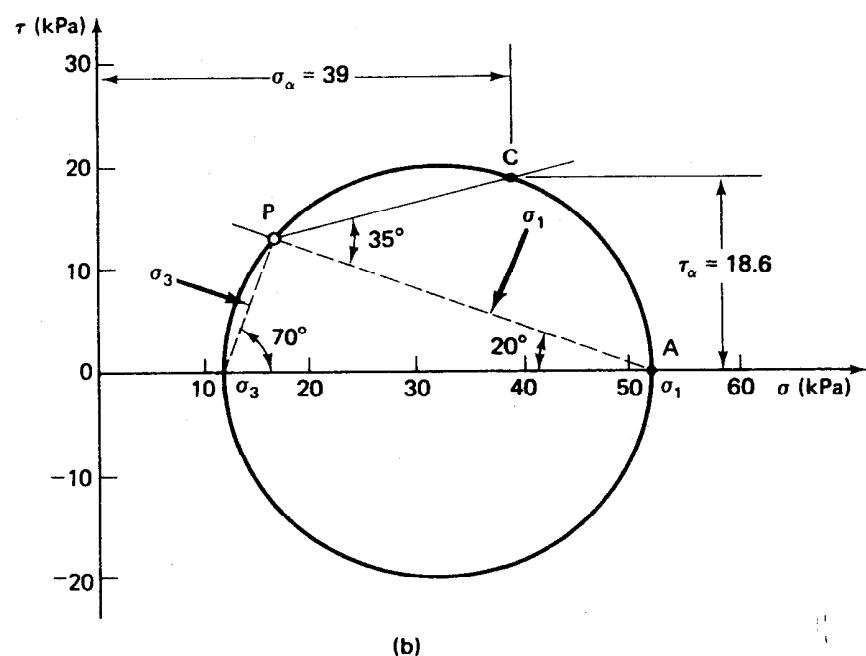
The same element and stresses as in Fig. Ex. 10.1a, except that the element is rotated  $20^\circ$  from the horizontal, as shown in Fig. Ex. 10.2a.

**Required:**

As in Example 10.1, find the normal stress  $\sigma_a$  and the shear stress  $\tau_a$  on the plane inclined at  $\alpha = 35^\circ$  from the base of the element.



(a)



(b)

Fig. Ex. 10.2

**Solution:**

1. Plot the Mohr circle (Fig. Ex. 10.2b). Since the principal stresses are the same, the Mohr circle will be the same as in Example 10.1.

2. Find the pole of the circle. As in the previous example, draw a line parallel to a plane on which you know the stresses. If we again begin with the major principal plane, this plane is inclined at an angle of  $20^\circ$  to the horizontal. Start at point  $A$ , and where this line intersects the Mohr circle, defines the pole  $P$  of this circle.

3. Now find the stresses on the  $\alpha$ -plane, which as before is inclined at  $35^\circ$  to the base of the element. From line  $AP$ , turn an angle in the same direction as in the element,  $35^\circ$ , and the stresses on that plane are defined by the point of intersection of the line with the Mohr circle (in this case at point  $C$ ). Scale off the coordinates of point  $C$  to determine  $\sigma_\alpha$  and  $\tau_\alpha$ . Note that these stresses are the same as in Example 10.1. Why is this? Because nothing has changed except the orientation in space of the element.

For step 2, we could just as well have used the minor principal plane as our starting point. In this case a line from  $(\sigma_3, 0)$  could be drawn at  $70^\circ$  from the horizontal (parallel to the  $\sigma_3$ -plane), and it would intersect the Mohr circle at the same point as before, point  $P$ . We now have a check on the step—if we have done everything correctly, we should obtain the same pole. Since line  $AP$  is parallel to the major principal plane, we can show the direction of  $\sigma_1$  right on this line in Fig. Ex. 10.2; similarly, the dashed line from the pole to  $\sigma_3$  is parallel to the  $\sigma_3$ -plane.

Now you probably can begin to see what is really happening with the pole. It is just a way of relating the Mohr circle of stress to the geometry or orientation of our element in the real world. We could just as well rotate the  $\tau$ - $\sigma$  axes to coincide with the directions of the principal stresses in space, but traditionally  $\tau$  versus  $\sigma$  is plotted with the axes horizontal and vertical.

---

**EXAMPLE 10.3**

---

**Given:**

The stress shown on the element in Fig. Ex. 10.3a.

**Required:**

- a. Evaluate  $\sigma_\alpha$  and  $\tau_\alpha$  when  $\alpha = 30^\circ$ .
- b. Evaluate  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_3$  when  $\alpha = 30^\circ$ .

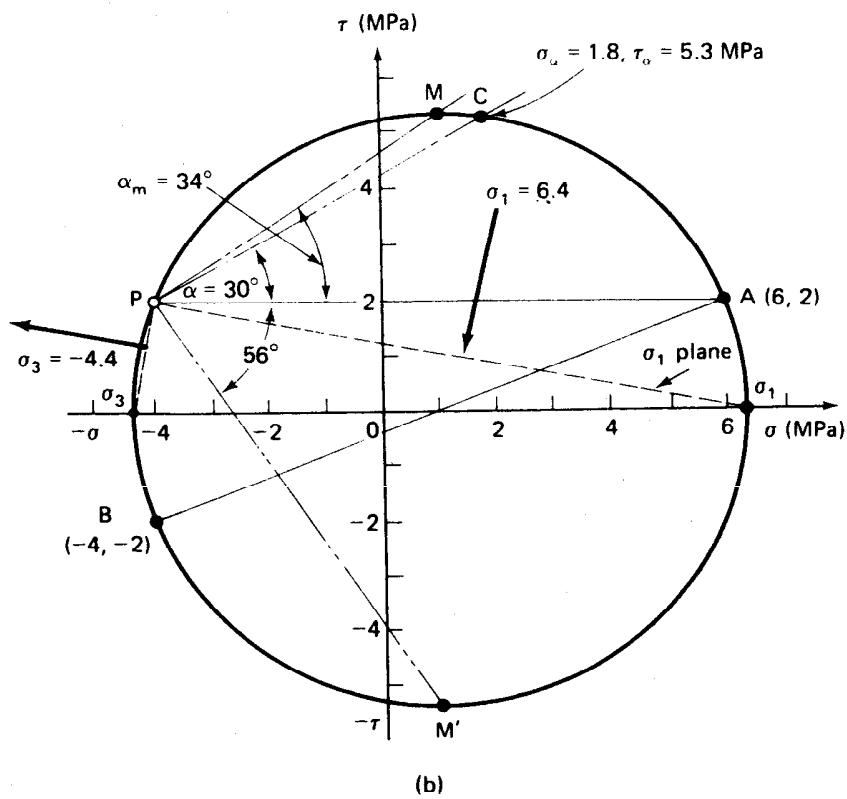
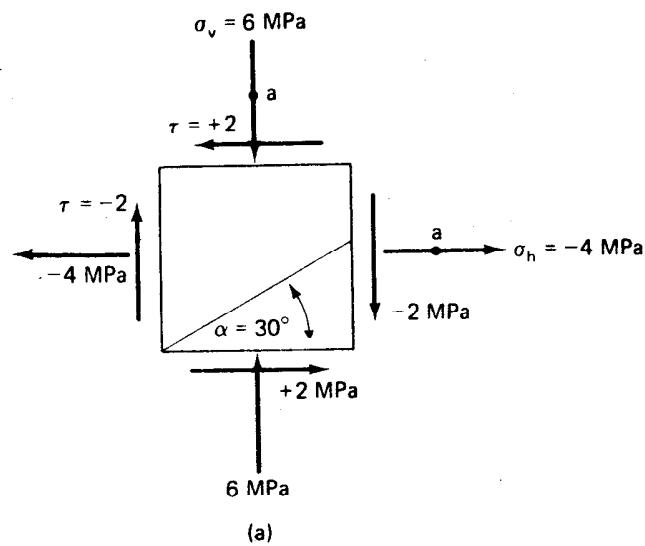


Fig. Ex. 10.3

- c. Determine the orientation of the major and minor principal planes.
- d. Find the maximum shear stress and the orientation of the plane on which it acts.

**Solution:**

Construct the Mohr circle, as shown in Fig. Ex. 10.3, according to the following steps:

1. Plot the state of stress on the horizontal plane (6, 2) at point *A*. Note that the shear stress makes a clockwise moment about *a* and therefore is positive.
2. In a similar manner, plot point *B* (-4, -2). The shear stress on the vertical plane is negative since it makes a counterclockwise moment.
3. Points *A* and *B* are two points on a circle (a diameter in this case since their planes are 90° apart); the center of the circle has coordinates of  $[(\sigma_x + \sigma_y)/2, 0]$ . Construct the Mohr circle with center at (1, 0).
4. To find the pole, remember that a line drawn parallel to the plane (horizontal in this example) upon which a known state of stress acts, point *A*, intersects the Mohr circle at the pole *P*. As a check, you could also draw a line in the vertical direction from point *B* (-4, -2) and find the same pole.
5. To find the state of stress on the plane inclined at angle  $\alpha = 30^\circ$  from the horizontal, draw the line *PC* at an angle  $30^\circ$  from the horizontal (see Fig. Ex. 10.3b). The state of stress on this plane is given by the coordinates at point *C* (1.8, 5.3) MPa.
6. Lines drawn from *P* to  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_3$  establish the orientation of the major and minor principal planes. The values of  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_3$  are determined automatically once the circle is drawn; here they are 6.4 and -4.4 MPa, respectively. Of course  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_3$  are perpendicular to their respective planes, which are oriented at  $11^\circ$  and  $101^\circ$  to the horizontal, respectively.
7. The maximum shear stress can be calculated by Eq. 10-6 when  $2\alpha = 90^\circ$ . This is  $(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)/2$  or  $\pm 5.4$  MPa (see points *M* or *M'*). You can also simply scale off the maximum value of  $\tau$  from the Mohr diagram. The orientation of  $\tau_{\max}$  is the line *PM* or *PM'*, depending on which mutually perpendicular plane you desire. (Actually  $\tau = -5.4$  MPa is the minimum shear stress.)

---

#### EXAMPLE 10.4

**Given:**

Two planes, *a* and *b*, are separated by an unknown angle  $\theta$ . On plane *a*,  $\sigma_a = 10$  kPa and  $\tau_a = +2$  kPa. Plane *a* lies  $15^\circ$  from the horizontal, as

shown in Fig. Ex. 10.4a. The stresses on plane *b* are  $\sigma_b = 9$  kPa and  $\tau_b = -3$  kPa.

**Required:**

- Find the major and minor principal stresses and their orientation.
- Find the stresses on the horizontal plane.
- Find the angle between planes *a* and *b*.

**Solution:**

1. Plot the coordinates of the stresses on planes *a* and *b*. If you assume the body or element is in equilibrium, then these coordinates are *on* the circumference of the Mohr circle. To find the center, construct a perpendicular to the line *AB*, which joins the two points. The intersection of the horizontal  $\sigma$ -axis and the perpendicular bisector to *AB* is the center of the circle *C*.

2. Establish the pole by drawing a line from point *A* parallel to the plane ( $15^\circ$  from the horizontal) upon which the stresses at point *A* act to where it intersects the Mohr circle. The intersection of this line and the Mohr circle is the pole *P*.

3. Lines from the pole *P* to  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_3$  indicate the orientation of the major and minor principal planes. The principal stresses act perpendicular to these planes. The scaled-off value of  $\sigma_1$  is equal to 10.65 kPa, and  $\sigma_3$  is found to be 3.61 kPa.

4. The stresses on the horizontal plane are found by drawing a horizontal line from the pole until it intersects the Mohr circle at point *H*; the stresses on this plane are (8.6, 3.18) kPa.

5. To find the angle between the two planes *a* and *b*, draw the line *PB* from the pole to *B*. This line is the actual orientation in space of plane *B*. The angle  $\theta$  then represents the true angle between planes *A* and *B*, or  $\theta = 46^\circ$ .

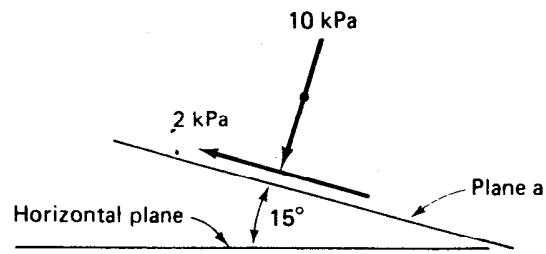
### EXAMPLE 10.5

**Given:**

The stresses on an element shown in Fig. Ex. 10.5a.

**Required:**

Find the magnitude and direction of the major and minor principal stresses.



On plane b:  $\sigma_b = 9 \text{ kPa}$ ,  $\tau_b = -3 \text{ kPa}$ ,  $\theta^\circ = ?$  from plane a

(a)

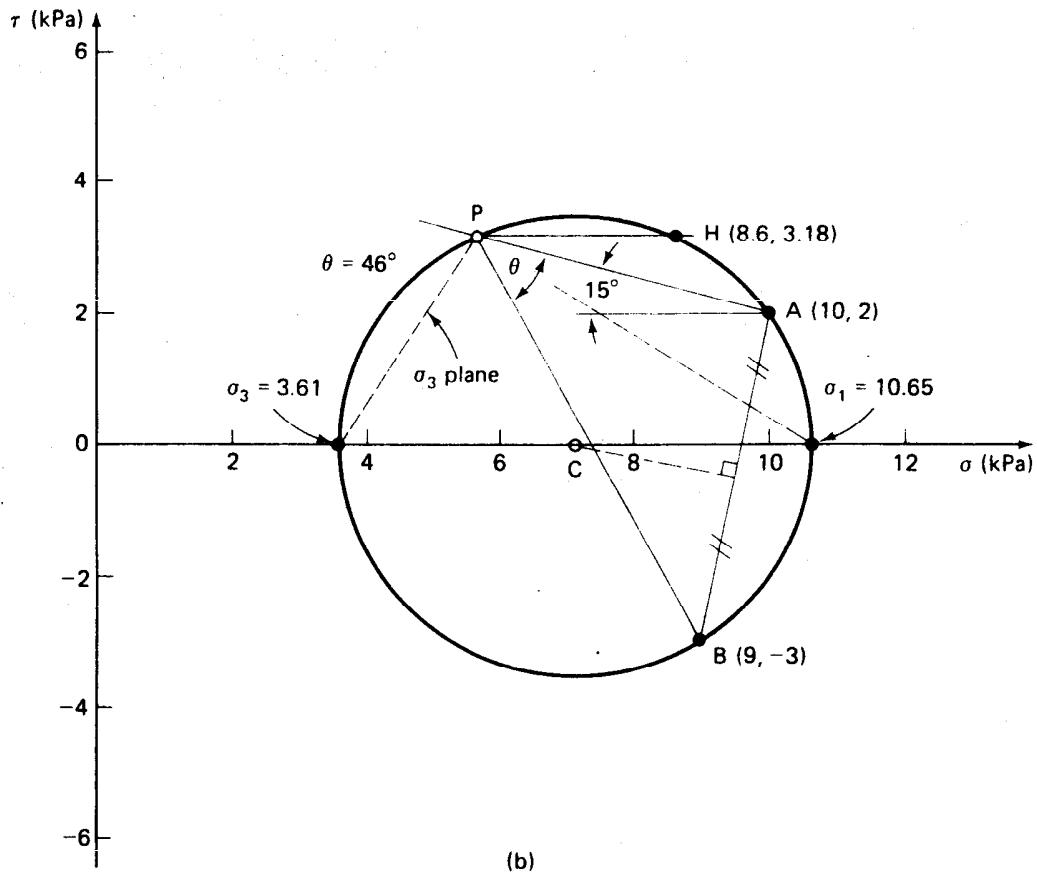
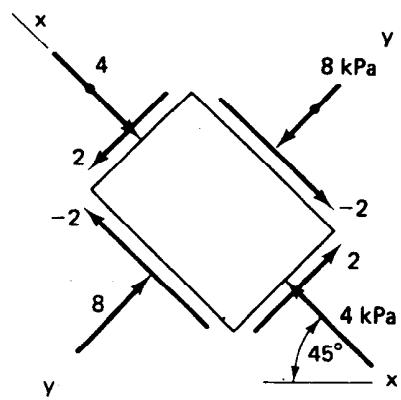
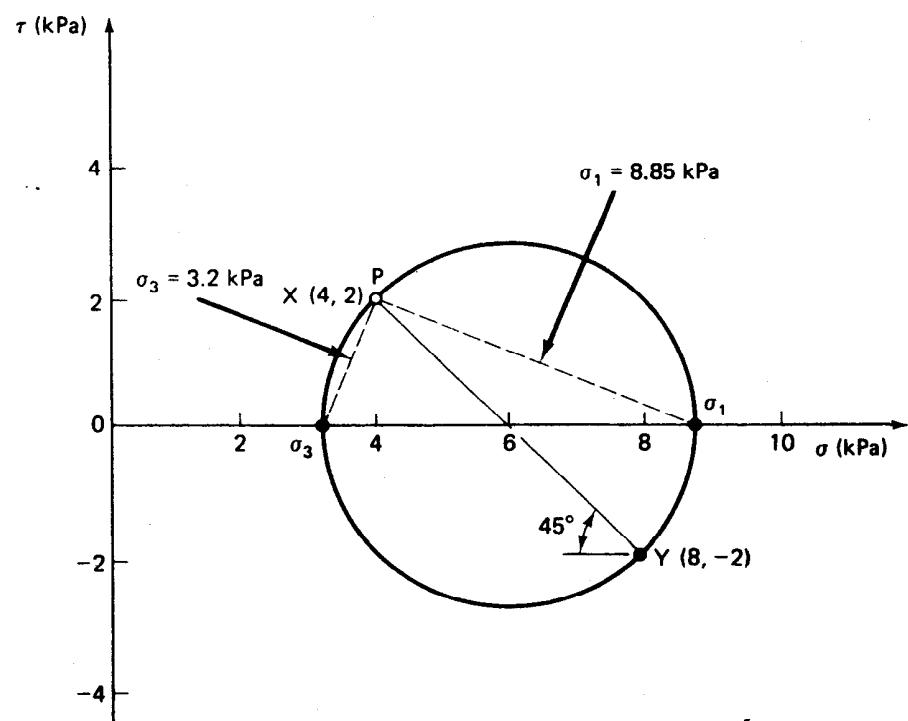


Fig. Ex. 10.4



(a)



(b)

Fig. Ex. 10.5

**Solution:**

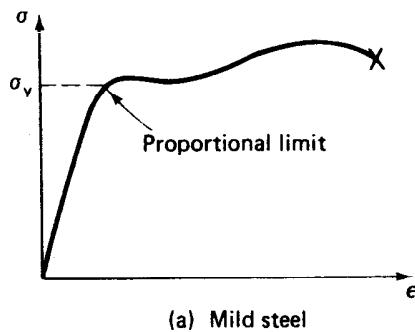
Refer to Fig. Ex. 10.5b for the following steps.

1. Plot the two points  $X$  and  $Y$  from the given stress coordinates. These two points lie on the circumference of the circle. Where the line  $XY$  intersects the  $\sigma$ -axis establishes the center of the Mohr circle at  $(6, 0)$ .
2. Locate the pole by drawing a line from point  $Y$  parallel to the plane on which the stress at  $Y$  acts. This line is at  $45^\circ$  from the horizontal, and it intersects the Mohr circle at the pole  $P$ , which is the same point as point  $X$ .
3. To find the direction of the principal stresses, draw a line from the pole to  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_3$ ; these lines are shown dashed on Fig. Ex. 10.5b. The direction (arrows) of  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_3$  are shown in the figure. The values of  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_3$  are scaled off the figure and found to be 8.85 kPa and 3.2 kPa, respectively.

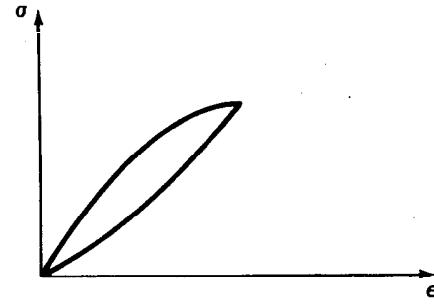
By now you can see that the Mohr circle of stress represents the complete two-dimensional state of stress *at equilibrium* in an element or at a point. The pole simply couples the Mohr circle to the orientation of the element in the real world. The Mohr circle and the concept of the pole are very useful in geotechnical engineering; we shall use them throughout the rest of this text.

### 10.3 STRESS-STRAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND FAILURE CRITERIA

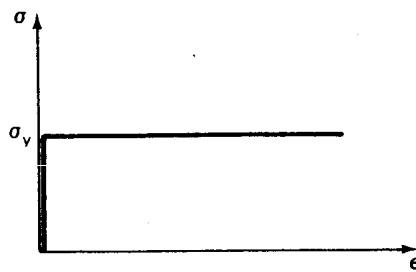
Earlier, in the introduction to Chapter 8, we briefly mentioned some stress-strain relationships. Now we want to elaborate on, as well as illustrate, some of those ideas. The stress-strain curve for mild steel is shown in Fig. 10.4a. The initial portion up to the proportional limit or yield point is *linearly elastic*. This means that the material will return to its original shape when the stress is released, as long as the applied stress is below the yield point. It is possible, however, for a material to have a *nonlinear* stress-strain curve and still be elastic, as shown in Fig. 10.4b. Note that both these stress-strain relationships are independent of time. If time is a variable, then the material is called *visco-elastic*. Some real materials such as most soils and polymers are visco-elastic. Why, then, don't we use a visco-elastic theory to describe the behavior of soils? The problem is that soils have a highly nonlinear stress-strain-time behavior, and unfortunately only a mathematically well-developed linear theory of visco-elasticity is available.



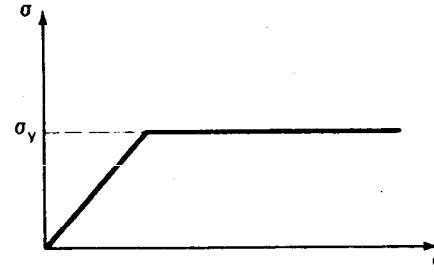
(a) Mild steel



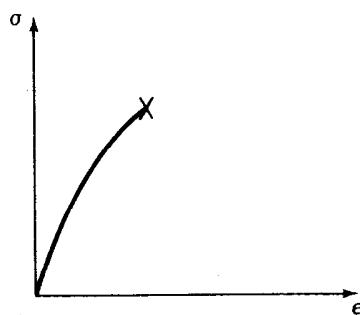
(b) Nonlinear elastic



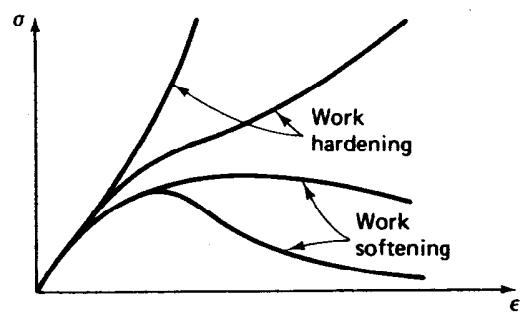
(c) Perfectly plastic



(d) Elasto-plastic



(e) Brittle



(f) Work hardening and work softening

Fig. 10.4 Examples of stress-strain relationships for ideal and real materials: (a) mild steel, (b) nonlinear elastic, (c) perfectly plastic, (d) elasto-plastic, (e) brittle, and (f) work-hardening and work-softening.

Note that so far we've said nothing about failure or yield. Even linearly elastic materials yield, as indicated in Fig. 10.4a, if sufficient stress is applied. At the proportional limit, the material is said to become *plastic* or to *yield plastically*. The behavior of real materials can be idealized by several plastic stress-strain relationships, as shown in Figs. 10.4c, d, and f. *Perfectly plastic* materials (Fig. 10.4c), sometimes called *rigid-plastic*, can be treated relatively easily mathematically, and thus are popular subjects of study by mechanicians and mathematicians. A more realistic stress-strain relationship is *elasto-plastic* (Fig. 10.4d). The material is linearly elastic up to the yield point  $\sigma_y$ ; then it becomes perfectly plastic. Note that both perfectly plastic and elasto-plastic materials continue to strain even without any additional stress applied. The stress-strain curve for mild steel can be approximated by an elasto-plastic stress-strain curve, and this theory is very useful in, for example, working, punching, and machining of metals. Sometimes materials such as cast iron, concrete, and a lot of rocks are *brittle*, in that they exhibit very little strain as the stress increases. Then, at some point, the material suddenly collapses or crushes (Fig. 10.4e). More complex but also realistic for many materials are the stress-strain relations shown in Fig. 10.4f. *Work-hardening* materials, as the name implies, become stiffer (higher modulus) as they are strained or "worked." The little hump in the stress-strain curve for mild steel after yield (Fig. 10.4a) is an example of work-hardening. Many soils are also work-hardening, for example, compacted clays and loose sands. *Work-softening* materials (Fig. 10.4f) show a decrease in stress as they are strained beyond a peak stress. Sensitive clay soils and dense sands are examples of work-softening materials.

At what point on the stress-strain curve do we have failure? We could call the yield point "failure" if we wanted to. In some situations, if a material is stressed to its yield point, the strains or deflections are so large that for all practical purposes the material has failed. This means that the material cannot satisfactorily continue to carry the applied loads. The stress at "failure" is often very arbitrary, especially for nonlinear materials. With brittle-type materials, however, there is no question when failure occurs—it's obvious. Even with work-softening materials (Fig. 10.4f), the peak of the curve or the maximum stress is usually defined as failure. On the other hand, with some plastic materials it may not be obvious. Where would you define failure if you had a work-hardening stress-strain curve (Fig. 10.4f)? With materials such as these, we usually define failure at some arbitrary percent strain, for example, 15 or 20%, or at a strain or deformation at which the function of the structure might be impaired.

Now we can also define the *strength* of a material. It is the maximum or yield stress or the stress at some strain which we have defined as "failure."

As suggested by the above discussion, there are many ways of defining failure in real materials; or put another way, there are many *failure criteria*. Most of the criteria don't work for soils, and in fact the one we do use, which is the subject of the next section, doesn't always work so well either. Even so, the most common failure criterion applied to soils is the *Mohr-Coulomb failure criterion*.

#### 10.4 THE MOHR-COULOMB FAILURE CRITERION

Mohr is the same Otto Mohr of Mohr circle fame. Coulomb you know from coulombic friction, electrostatic attraction and repulsion, among other things. Around the turn of this century, Mohr (1900) hypothesized a criterion of failure for real materials in which he stated that materials fail when the *shear stress on the failure plane at failure reaches some unique function of the normal stress on that plane*, or

$$\tau_{ff} = f(\sigma_{ff}) \quad (10-7)$$

where  $\tau$  is the shear stress and  $\sigma$  is the normal stress. The first subscript *f* refers to the plane on which the stress acts (in this case the *failure plane*) and the second *f* means "at failure."

$\tau_{ff}$  is called the *shear strength* of the material, and the relationship expressed by Eq. 10-7 is shown in Fig. 10.5a. Figure 10.5b shows an element at failure with the principal stresses that caused failure and the resulting normal and shear stresses on the failure plane.

For the present, we will assume that a failure plane exists, which is not a bad assumption for soils, rocks, and many other materials. Also, we won't worry now about how the principal stresses at failure are applied to the element (test specimen or representative element in the field) or how they are measured.

Anyway, if we know the principal stresses at failure, we can construct (draw, sketch) a Mohr circle to represent this state of stress for this particular element. Similarly, we could conduct several tests to failure or measure failure stresses in several elements at failure, and construct Mohr circles for each element or test at failure. Such a series is plotted in Fig. 10.6. Note that only the top half of the Mohr circles are drawn, which is conventionally done in soil mechanics for convenience only. Since the Mohr circles are determined at failure, it is possible to construct the limiting or failure envelope of the shear stress. This envelope, called the *Mohr failure envelope*, expresses the functional relationship between the shear stress  $\tau_{ff}$  and the normal stress  $\sigma_{ff}$  at failure (Eq. 10-7).

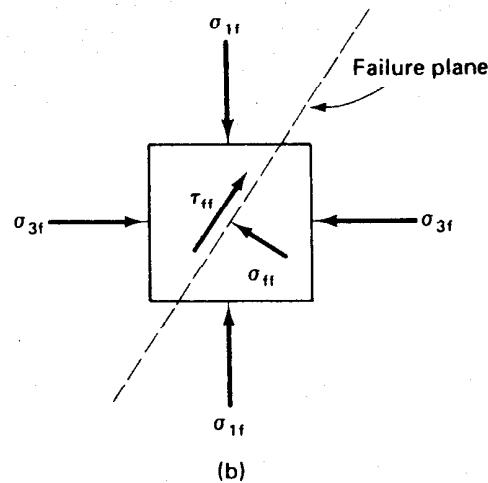
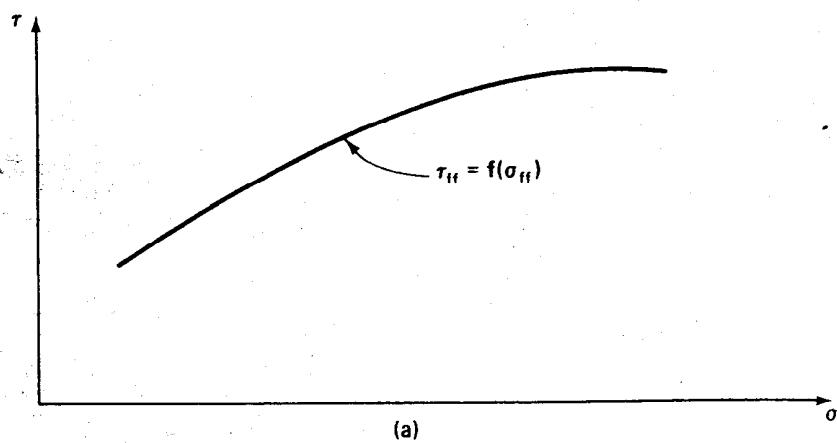


Fig. 10.5 (a) Mohr failure criterion; (b) element at failure, showing the principal stresses and the stresses on the failure plane.

Note that any Mohr circle lying below the Mohr failure envelope (such as circle *A* in Fig. 10.6) represents a stable condition. Failure occurs only when the combination of shear and normal stress is such that the Mohr circle is *tangent* to the Mohr failure envelope. Note also that circles lying above the Mohr failure envelope (such as circle *B* in Fig. 10.6) cannot exist. The material would fail before reaching these states of stress. If this envelope is unique for a given material, then the point of tangency of the Mohr failure envelope gives the stress conditions on the failure plane at failure. Using the pole method, we can therefore determine the angle of the failure plane from the point of tangency of the Mohr circle and the Mohr

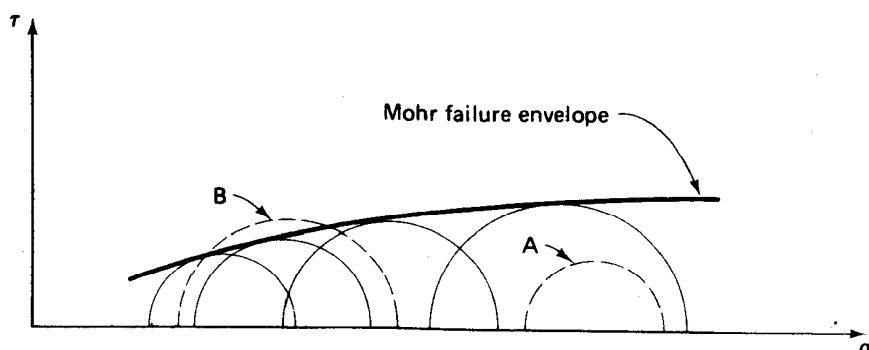


Fig. 10.6 The Mohr circles at failure define the Mohr failure envelope.

failure envelope. The hypothesis, that the point of tangency defines the angle of the failure plane in the element or test specimen, is the *Mohr failure hypothesis*. You should distinguish this hypothesis from the Mohr failure theory. The Mohr failure hypothesis is illustrated in Fig. 10.7a for the element at failure shown in Fig. 10.7b. Stated another way: the Mohr failure hypothesis states that the point of tangency of the Mohr failure envelope with the Mohr circle at failure determines the inclination of the failure plane.

Another thing you should note from Fig. 10.7a is that even though in soil mechanics we commonly draw only the top half of the Mohr circle, there is a bottom half, and also a "bottom-half" Mohr failure envelope. This also means, if the Mohr failure hypothesis is valid, that it is equally likely that a failure plane will form at an angle of  $-\alpha_f$ , as shown in Fig. 10.7a. In fact, it is the nonuniform stress conditions on the ends of a test specimen and small inhomogeneities within the specimen itself that we think cause a single failure plane to often form in a test specimen. Ever wonder why a cone forms at failure in the top and bottom of a concrete cylinder when it is failed in compression? Shear stresses between the testing machine and specimen caps cause nonuniform stresses to develop within the specimen. If everything is homogeneous and uniform stress conditions are applied to a specimen, then multiple failure planes form at conjugate angles,  $\pm\alpha_f$ , as shown in Fig. 10.7c.

Now we are going to involve Monsieur Dr. Coulomb in our story. In addition to his famous experiments with cat's fur and ebony rods, M. Coulomb (1776) was also concerned with military defense works such as revetments and fortress walls. At that time, these constructions were built by rule of thumb, and unfortunately for the French military defenses many of these works failed. Coulomb became interested in the problem of the lateral pressures exerted against retaining walls, and he devised a system for analysis of earth pressures against retaining structures that is still used

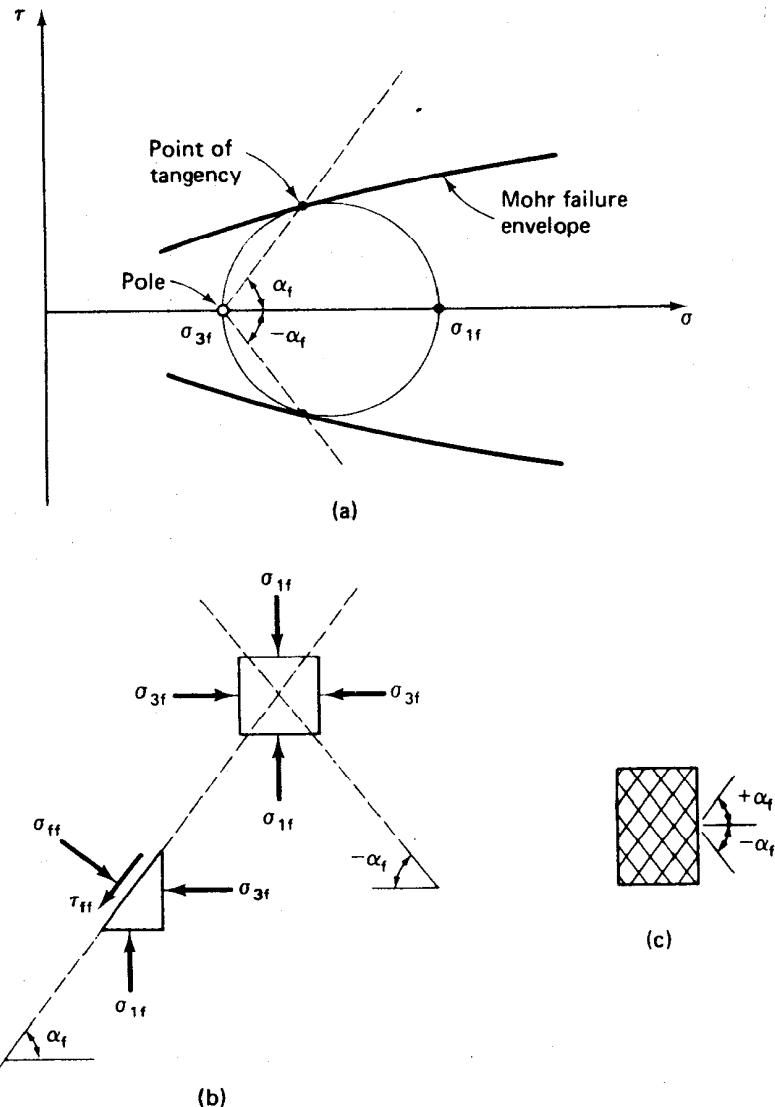


Fig. 10.7 (a) Mohr failure hypothesis for determining the angle of the failure plane in the (b) element; (c) conjugate failure planes.

today. One of the things he needed for design was the shearing strength of the soil. Being also interested in the sliding friction characteristics of different materials, he set up a device for determining the shear resistance of soils. He observed that there was a stress-independent component of shear strength and a stress-dependent component. The stress-dependent component is similar to sliding friction in solids, so he called this component the *angle of internal friction*, denoting it by the symbol  $\phi$ . The other

component seemed to be related to the intrinsic *cohesion* of the material and it is commonly denoted by the symbol  $c$ . Coulomb's equation is, then,

$$\tau_f = \sigma \tan \phi + c \quad (10-8)$$

where  $\tau_f$  is the shear strength of the soil,  $\sigma$  is the applied normal stress, and  $\phi$  and  $c$  are called the *strength parameters* of the soil as defined above. This relationship gives a straight line and is, therefore, easy to work with. As is explained in the next chapter, neither  $\phi$  nor  $c$  are inherent properties of the material; on the contrary they are dependent on the conditions operative in the test. We could, much as M. Coulomb probably did, plot the results of a shear test on soil to obtain the strength parameters  $\phi$  and  $c$  (Fig. 10.8). Note that either strength parameter could be zero for any particular stress condition; that is,  $\tau = c$  when  $\phi = 0$ , or  $\tau = \sigma \tan \phi$  when  $c = 0$ . As we shall see in Chapter 11, these relationships are valid for certain specific test conditions for some soils.

Although who first did so is unknown, it would seem reasonable to combine the Coulomb equation, Eq. 10-8, with the Mohr failure criterion, Eq. 10-7. Engineers traditionally prefer to work with straight lines since anything higher than a first-order equation (straight line) is too complicated! So the natural thing to do was to straighten out that curved Mohr failure envelope, or at least approximate the curve by a straight line over some given stress range; then the equation for that line in terms of the Coulomb strength parameters could be written. Thus was born the *Mohr-Coulomb strength criterion*, which is by far the most popular strength criterion applied to soils. The Mohr-Coulomb criterion can be written as

$$\tau_{ff} = \sigma_{ff} \tan \phi + c \quad (10-9)$$

the terms having been defined previously. This is a simple, easy-to-use criterion that has many distinct advantages over other failure criteria. It is the only failure criterion which predicts the stresses on the failure plane at failure, and since soil masses have been observed to fail on rather distinct surfaces, we would like to be able to estimate the state of stress on

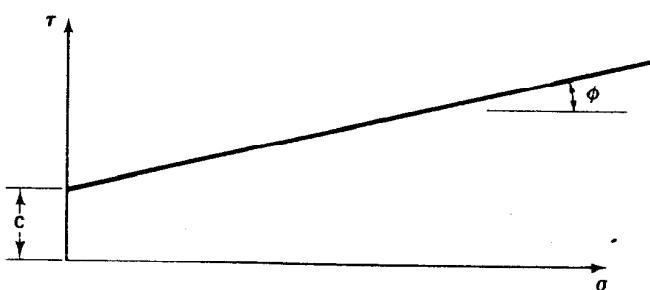


Fig. 10.8 The Coulomb strength equation presented graphically.

potential sliding surfaces. So the Mohr-Coulomb criterion is very useful for analyses of the stability of earth slopes and foundations.

Before we discuss the kinds of tests used to determine the Mohr-Coulomb strength parameters, we should look a little more carefully at some Mohr circles, both before failure and at failure. They have several interesting characteristics that will be useful later on.

First, if we know the angle of inclination of the Mohr failure envelope or have determined it from laboratory tests, then it is possible to write the angle of the failure plane  $\alpha_f$  in terms of the slope  $\phi$  of the Mohr failure envelope. To do this, we have to invoke the Mohr failure hypothesis. Then the failure angle measured relative to the plane of the major principal stress is

$$\alpha_f = 45^\circ + \frac{\phi}{2} \quad (10-10)$$

A proof of this equation is requested in one of the problems at the end of the chapter.

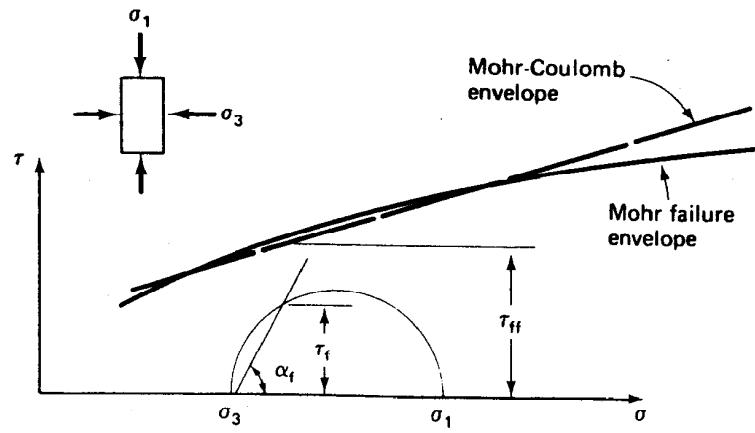
Second, let's look at a soil element subjected to principal stresses which are *less* than the stresses required to cause failure. Such a state of stress might be represented by the Mohr circle shown in Fig. 10.9a. In this case  $\tau_f$  is the *mobilized* shear resistance on the *potential* failure plane, and  $\tau_{ff}$  is the shear strength available (shear stress on the failure plane at failure). Since we haven't reached failure yet, there is some reserve strength remaining, and this really is a definition of the *factor of safety* in the material. Or

$$\text{factor of safety (F.S.)} = \frac{\tau_{ff} \text{ (available)}}{\tau_f \text{ (applied)}} \quad (10-11)$$

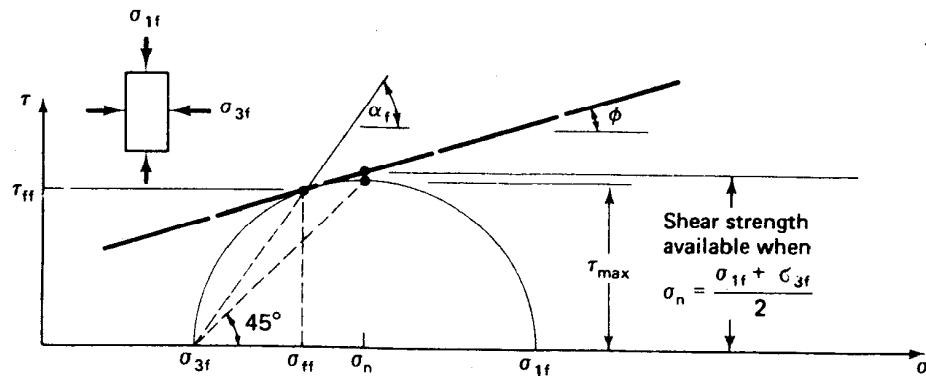
Now, if the stresses increase so that failure occurs, then the Mohr circle becomes tangent to the Mohr failure envelope. According to the Mohr failure hypothesis, failure occurs on the plane inclined at  $\alpha_f$  and with shear stress on that plane of  $\tau_{ff}$ . Note that this is not the largest or maximum shear stress in the element! The maximum shear stress acts on the plane inclined at  $45^\circ$  and is equal to

$$\tau_{\max} = \frac{\sigma_{1f} - \sigma_{3f}}{2} > \tau_{ff} \quad (10-12)$$

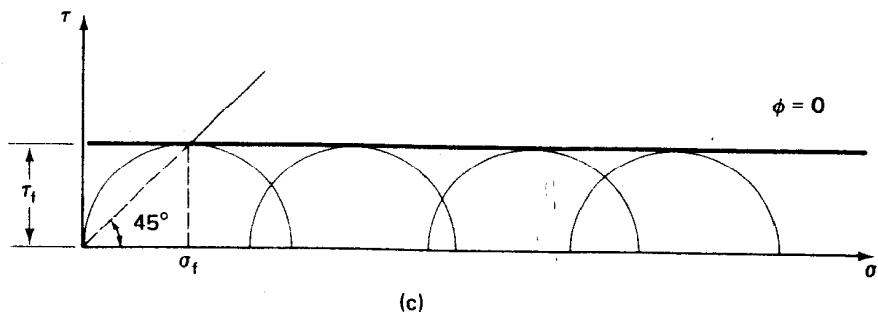
Then why doesn't failure occur on the  $45^\circ$  plane? Well, it cannot, because on that plane the shear strength available is greater than  $\tau_{\max}$ , so failure cannot occur. This condition is represented by the distance from the maximum point on the Mohr circle up to the Mohr failure envelope in Fig. 10.9b. That would be the shear strength available when the normal stress  $\sigma_n$  on the  $45^\circ$  plane was  $(\sigma_{1f} + \sigma_{3f})/2$ .



(a)



(b)



(c)

Fig. 10.9 (a) Stress conditions before failure; (b) stress conditions at failure; (c) Mohr failure envelope for a purely cohesive material (after Hirschfeld, 1963).

The only exception to the above discussion would be when the shear strength is independent of the normal stress; that is, when the Mohr failure envelope is horizontal and  $\phi = 0$ . This situation is shown in Fig. 10.9c, and it is valid for special conditions which are discussed in Chapter 11. Such materials are called *purely cohesive* for obvious reasons. For the case shown in Figure 10.9c, failure *theoretically* occurs on the  $45^\circ$  plane (it doesn't really, as is explained in Chapter 11). The shear strength is  $\tau_f$ , and the normal stress on the theoretical failure plane at failure is  $(\sigma_{1f} + \sigma_{3f})/2$ .

Another useful thing that we should do before going on is to write the Mohr-Coulomb failure criterion in terms of principal stresses at failure, rather than as in Eq. 10-9 in terms of  $\tau_{ff}$  and  $\sigma_{ff}$ . Look at Fig. 10.10 and note that  $\sin \phi = R/D$ , or

$$\sin \phi = \frac{\frac{\sigma_{1f} - \sigma_{3f}}{2}}{\frac{\sigma_{1f} + \sigma_{3f}}{2} + c \cot \phi}$$

or  $(\sigma_{1f} - \sigma_{3f}) = (\sigma_{1f} + \sigma_{3f}) \sin \phi + 2c \cos \phi$ . If  $c = 0$ , then  $(\sigma_{1f} - \sigma_{3f}) = (\sigma_{1f} + \sigma_{3f}) \sin \phi$ , which can be written as

$$\sin \phi = \frac{(\sigma_{1f} - \sigma_{3f})}{(\sigma_{1f} + \sigma_{3f})} \quad (10-13)$$

Rearranging, we have

$$\frac{\sigma_1}{\sigma_3} = \frac{1 + \sin \phi}{1 - \sin \phi} \quad (10-14)$$

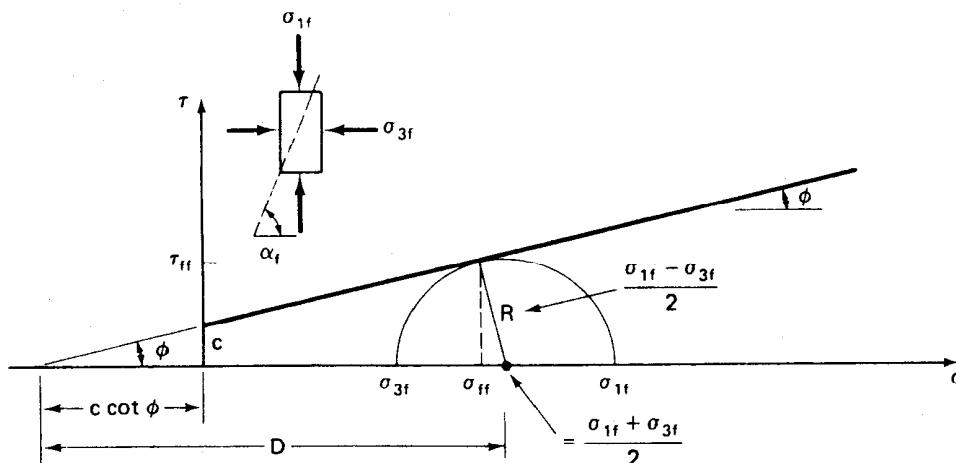


Fig. 10.10 Mohr-Coulomb strength envelope with one Mohr circle at failure.

or the reciprocal is

$$\frac{\sigma_3}{\sigma_1} = \frac{1 - \sin \phi}{1 + \sin \phi} \quad (10-15)$$

Using some trigonometric identities we can express Eqs. 10-14 and 10-15 as

$$\frac{\sigma_1}{\sigma_3} = \tan^2\left(45^\circ + \frac{\phi}{2}\right) \quad (10-16)$$

$$\frac{\sigma_3}{\sigma_1} = \tan^2\left(45^\circ - \frac{\phi}{2}\right) \quad (10-17)$$

Equations 10-14 through 10-17 are called the *obliquity relationships* because the maximum inclination, or obliquity, of the Mohr failure envelope occurs where  $c$  is equal to zero. These four equations are, of course, only valid where  $c = 0$ . Inspection of these equations and Fig. 10.10 shows that the coordinates of the point of tangency of the Mohr failure envelope and the Mohr circle ( $\sigma_{ff}$ ,  $\tau_{ff}$ ) are the stresses on the plane of maximum obliquity in the soil element. In other words, the ratio  $\tau_{ff}/\sigma_{ff}$  is a maximum on this plane. As we pointed out before, this plane is not the plane of maximum shear stress. On that plane ( $\alpha = 45^\circ$ ), the obliquity will be less than the maximum value since the ratio of  $\tau_{max}$  to  $(\sigma_1 + \sigma_3)/2$  is less than  $\tau_{ff}/\sigma_{ff}$ . The obliquity relationships are very useful for evaluating triaxial test data and in theories of lateral earth pressure.

The last factor we should consider is the effect of the intermediate principal stress  $\sigma_2$  on conditions at failure. Since by definition  $\sigma_2$  lies somewhere between the major and minor principal stresses, the Mohr circles for the three principal stresses look like those shown in Fig. 10.3c and again in Fig. 10.11. It is obvious that  $\sigma_2$  can have no influence on the

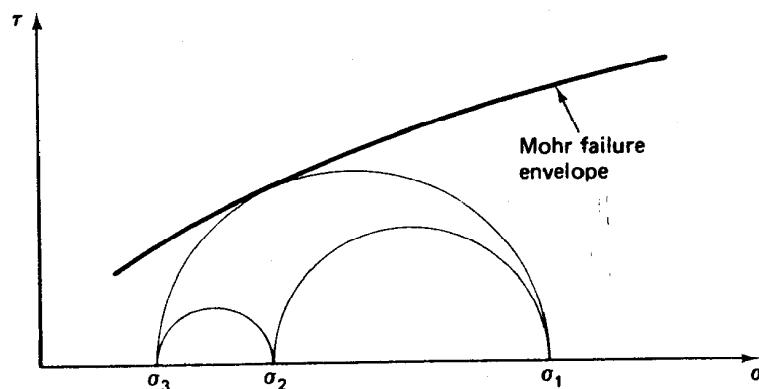


Fig. 10.11 Mohr circles for a three-dimensional state of stress.

conditions at failure for the Mohr failure criterion, no matter what magnitude it has. The intermediate principal stress  $\sigma_2$  probably does have an influence in real soils, but the Mohr-Coulomb failure theory does not consider it.

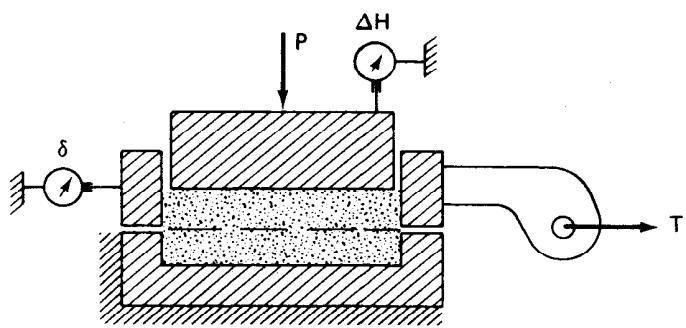
## 10.5 TESTS FOR THE SHEAR STRENGTH OF SOILS

In this section we shall briefly describe some of the more common tests for determining the shearing strength of soils. Some of the tests are rather complicated, and for further details you should consult manuals and books on laboratory testing, especially those by the ASTM (1980), U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (1970), U.S. Bureau of Reclamation (1974), and Bishop and Henkel (1962).

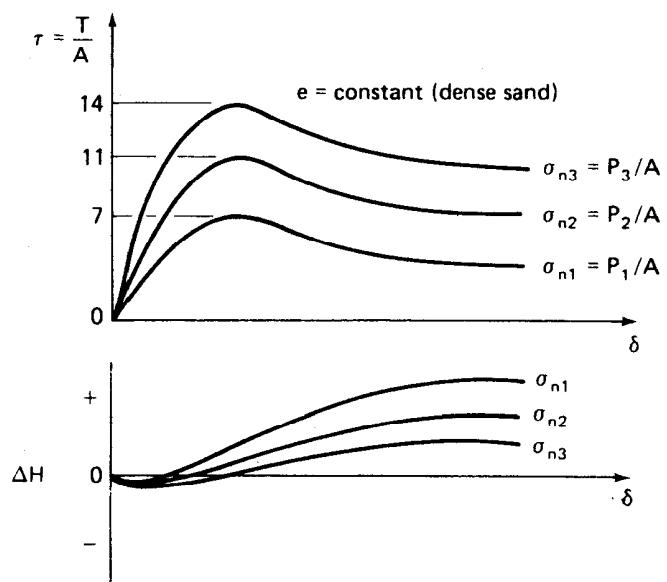
### Direct Shear Test

This test is probably the oldest strength test because Coulomb used a type of shear box test more than 200 years ago to determine the necessary parameters for his strength equation. The test in principle is quite simple. Basically, there is a specimen container, or "shear box," which is separated horizontally into halves. One-half is fixed; with respect to that half the other half is either pushed or pulled horizontally. A normal load is applied to the soil specimen in the shear box through a rigid loading cap. The shear load, horizontal deformation, and vertical deformation are measured during the test. Dividing the shear force and the normal force by the *nominal* area of the specimen, we obtain the shear stress as well as the normal stress on the failure plane. Remember that the failure plane is *forced* to be horizontal with this apparatus.

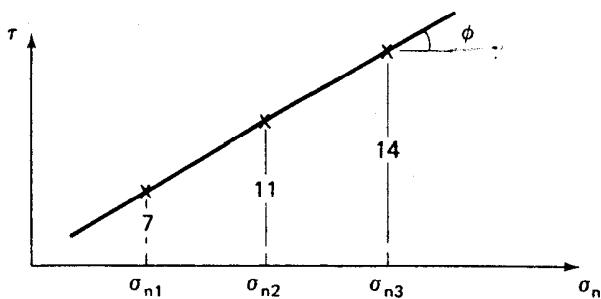
A cross-sectional diagram of the essential features of the apparatus is shown in Fig. 10.12a, while Fig. 10.12b shows some typical test results. The Mohr-Coulomb diagram for conditions at failure appears in Fig. 10.12c. As an example, if we were to test three samples of a sand at the same relative density just before shearing, then as the normal stress  $\sigma_n$  was increased, we would expect from our knowledge of sliding friction a concurrent increase in the shear stress on the failure plane at failure (the shear strength). This condition is shown in the typical shear stress versus deformation curves for a dense sand in Fig. 10.12b for  $\sigma_{n1} < \sigma_{n2} < \sigma_{n3}$ . When these results are plotted on a Mohr diagram, Fig. 10.12c, the angle of internal friction  $\phi$  can be obtained.



(a) Apparatus



(b) Test results



(c) Mohr diagram

Fig. 10.12 (a) Cross-sectional schematic diagram of direct shear apparatus; (b) typical test results (dense sand); and (c) Mohr diagram for specimens at the same relative density.

Typical results of vertical deformation  $\Delta H$  for a dense sand are shown in the lower portion of Fig. 10.12b. At first there is a slight reduction in height or volume of the soil specimen, followed by a dilation or increase in height or volume. As the normal stress  $\sigma_n$  increases, the harder it is for the soil to dilate during shear, which seems reasonable.

We do not obtain the principal stresses directly in the direct shear test. Instead, if they are needed, they may be inferred if the Mohr-Coulomb failure envelope is known. Then, as is shown in Example 10.6, the angle of rotation of the principal stresses may be determined. Why is there rotation of the principal planes? Initially, the horizontal plane (potential failure plane) is a principal plane (no shear stress), but after the shearing stress is applied and at failure, by definition, it cannot be a principal plane. Therefore, rotation of the principal planes must occur in the direct shear test. How much do the planes rotate? It depends on the slope of the Mohr failure envelope, but it is fairly easy to determine, as is shown in Example 10.6, if you make some simple assumptions.

### EXAMPLE 10.6

**Given:**

The initial and failure conditions in a direct shear test, as shown in Fig. Ex. 10.6.

**Required:**

Plot the Mohr circles for both initial conditions and at failure, assuming  $\phi$  is known. Find the principal stresses at failure and their angles of rotation at failure.

**Solution:**

The Mohr circles for both initial conditions and at failure are shown on the right side of Fig. Ex. 10.6. At failure, you know the normal stress on the failure plane,  $\sigma_{ff}$ , is the same as the initial normal stress,  $\sigma_n$ . Since  $\phi$  is known (assume  $c$  is small or zero), from the Mohr failure hypothesis (Fig. 10.7) the shear stress on the failure plane at failure is determined by the point of tangency of the Mohr circle at failure. The center of the failure circle can be found by drawing a perpendicular to the Mohr failure envelope from the point of tangency. The radial distance is, of course, equal to  $[(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)/2]_f$ . Another way to find the Mohr circle at failure is

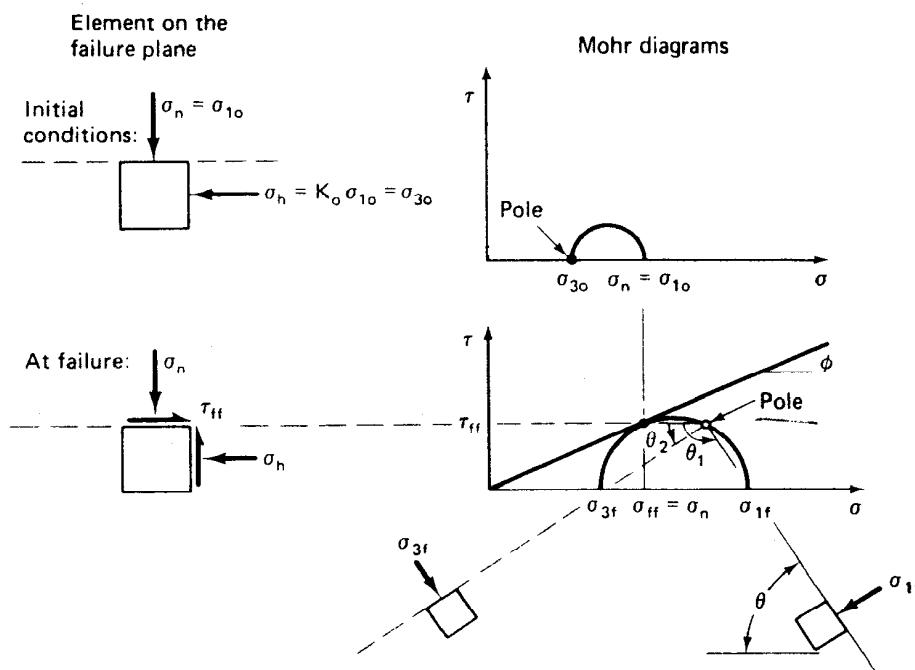


Fig. Ex. 10.6

graphically by trial and error. Find the only circle which is tangent at  $(\sigma_{ff}, \tau_{ff})$  and whose diameter lies on the  $\sigma$ -axis. Once the failure circle is drawn, the values of  $\sigma_{1f}$  and  $\sigma_{3f}$  can be scaled off. From the pole method, the angles of rotation of these stresses are readily found, as shown in Fig. Ex. 10.6.

There are, of course, several advantages and disadvantages of the direct shear test. Primarily, the test is inexpensive, fast, and simple, especially for granular materials. We do observe shear planes and thin failure zones in nature, so it seems alright to actually shear a specimen of soil along some plane to see what the stresses are on that plane. Disadvantages include the problem of controlling drainage—it is very difficult if not impossible, especially for fine-grained soils. Consequently, the test is not so suitable for other than completely drained conditions. When we force the failure plane to occur, how can we be sure that it is the weakest direction or even at the same critical direction as occurs in the field? We don't know. Another flaw in the direct shear test is that there are rather serious stress concentrations at the sample boundaries, which lead to highly nonuniform stress conditions within the test specimen itself. And finally, as shown by Example 10.6, an uncontrolled rotation of principal

planes and stresses occurs between the start of the test and failure. To accurately model the in situ loading conditions, the amount of this rotation should be known and accounted for, but it isn't. The Mohr circles for the direct shear test are further illustrated by Example 10.7.

### EXAMPLE 10.7

**Given:**

A direct shear test is run on a medium dense sandy silt, with the normal stress  $\sigma_n = 65 \text{ kPa}$ .  $K_o = 0.5$ . At failure, the normal stress is still 65 kPa and the shear stress is 41 kPa.

**Required:**

Draw the Mohr circles for the initial conditions and at failure and determine:

- The principal stresses at failure.
- The orientation of the failure plane.
- The orientation of the major principal plane at failure.
- The orientation of the plane of maximum shear stress at failure.

**Solution:**

a. The initial conditions are shown in Fig. Ex. 10.7 by circle *i*. Since  $K_o = 0.5$ , the initial horizontal stress is 32.5 kPa. The normal stress on the specimen is held constant at 65 kPa during the test, so  $\sigma_{1i}$  is also  $\sigma_{ff}$ . Since the shear stress at failure is 41 kPa, the failure point (as in Fig. 10.12c) is plotted as point *F*. The  $\phi$  is determined to be  $32^\circ$ . What happens between the initial Mohr circle *i* and at failure *f* is unknown. The construction of circle *f* was described in Example 10.6. The center of circle *f* is found to be at (91 kPa, 0). So  $\sigma_{1f} = 139 \text{ kPa}$  and  $\sigma_{3f} = 43 \text{ kPa}$ .

- The state of stress at failure point *F* is (65, 41) kPa, and the failure plane is assumed to be horizontal, a good assumption for the direct shear test.
- A line drawn horizontally from the known state of stress at point *F* intersects the Mohr circle at *P*, the pole. Line  $P\sigma_{1f}$  indicates the orientation of the major principal plane. It makes an angle of about  $60.5^\circ$  with the horizontal.

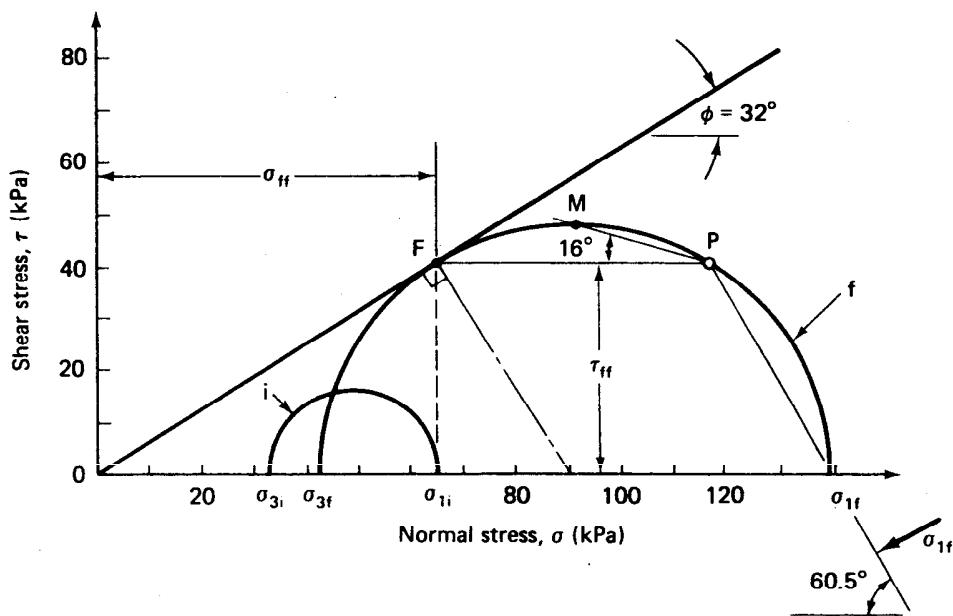


Fig. Ex. 10.7

d. Line  $\overline{PM}$  is the orientation of the plane of maximum shear stress; it is about  $16^\circ$  from the horizontal.

Note that in this example, if we didn't assume that the Mohr failure envelope passed through the origin of the Mohr diagram, more than one test at different  $\sigma_{1i}$ 's would be required to establish the Mohr envelope.

#### Triaxial Test

During the early history of soil mechanics, the direct shear test was the most popular shear test. Then, about 1930, A. Casagrande while at M.I.T. began research on the development of cylindrical compression tests in an attempt to overcome some of the serious disadvantages of the direct shear test. Now this test, commonly called the *triaxial test*, is by far the more popular of the two. The triaxial test is much more complicated than the direct shear but also much more versatile. We can control drainage quite well, and there is no rotation of  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_3$ . Stress concentrations still exist, but they are significantly less than in the direct shear test. Also, the failure plane can occur anywhere. An added advantage: we can control the stress paths to failure reasonably well, which means that complex stress paths in

the field can more effectively be modeled in the laboratory with the triaxial test. Stress paths are explained in the next section.

The principle of the triaxial test is shown in Fig. 10.13a. The soil specimen is usually encased in a rubber membrane to prevent the pressurized cell fluid (usually water) from penetrating the pores of the soil. Axial load is applied through a piston, and often the volume change of the specimen during a drained test or the induced pore water pressure during an undrained test is measured. As mentioned above, we can control the

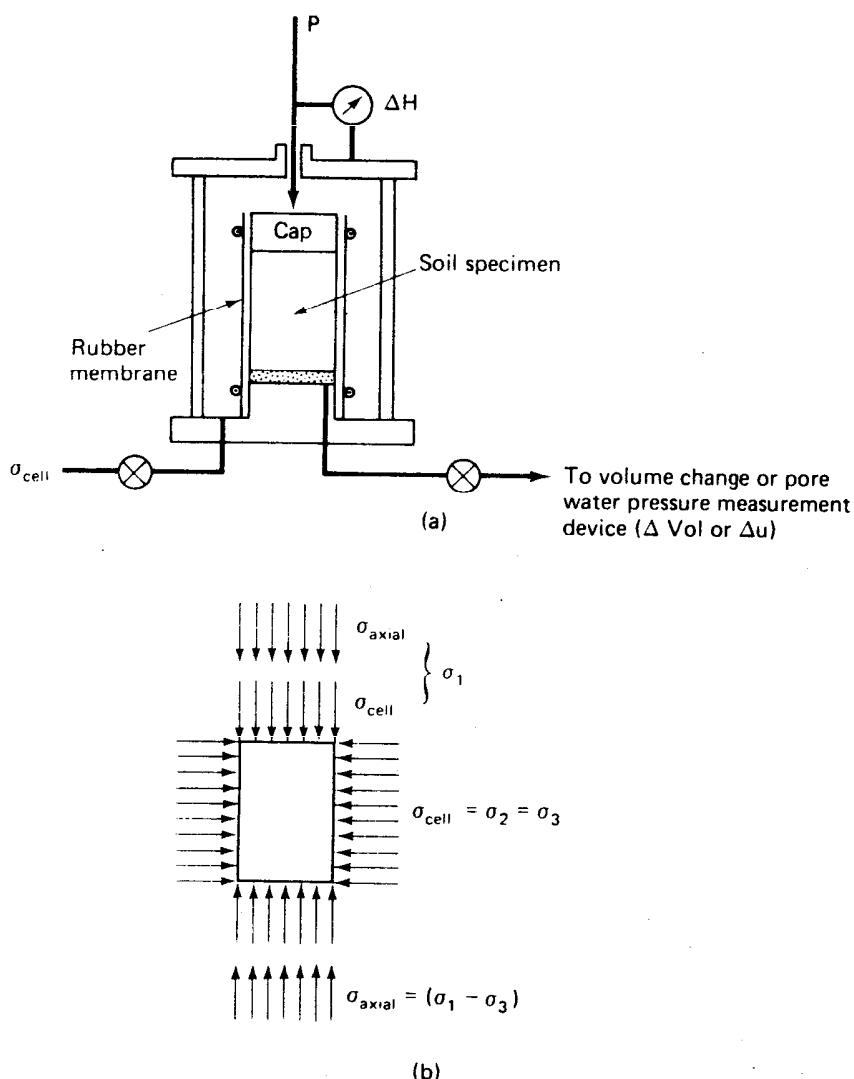


Fig. 10.13 (a) Schematic diagram of the triaxial apparatus; (b) assumed stress conditions on the triaxial specimen.

drainage to and from the specimen, and it is possible, with some assumptions, to control the stress paths applied to the specimen. Basically, we assume the stresses on the boundary of the specimen are principal stresses (Fig. 10.13b). This is not really true because of some small shear stresses acting on the ends of the specimen. Also, as mentioned before, the failure plane is not forced—the specimen is free to fail on any weak plane or, as sometimes occurs, to simply bulge.

You will note that the  $\sigma_{\text{axial}}$  in Fig. 10.13b is the difference between the major and minor principal stresses; it is called the *principal stress difference* (or sometimes, wrongly, the deviator stress). Note also that for the conditions shown in the figure,  $\sigma_2 = \sigma_3 = \sigma_{\text{cell}}$ . Sometimes we will assume that  $\sigma_{\text{cell}} = \sigma_1 = \sigma_2$  for special types of stress path tests. Common triaxial stress paths are discussed in the next section.

The triaxial test is far more complex than the direct shear test; entire books have been written on test details and interpretation of the results (see, for example, Bishop and Henkel, 1962). Most of the data and test results described in Chapter 11 were derived from triaxial tests.

Drainage conditions or paths followed in the triaxial test are models of specific critical design situations required for the analysis of stability in engineering practice. These are commonly designated by a two-letter symbol. The first letter refers to what happens *before shear*—that is, whether the specimen is consolidated. The second letter refers to the drainage conditions *during shear*. The three permissible drainage paths in the triaxial test are as follows:

Drainage Path	
Before Shear-During Shear	Symbol
Unconsolidated-Undrained	UU
Consolidated-Undrained	CU
Consolidated-Drained	CD

For reasons explained in Chapter 11, the unconsolidated-drained test defies interpretation and is therefore meaningless. Triaxial test results for the three drainage paths are described in detail in Chapter 11.

### EXAMPLE 10.8

Given:

A conventional consolidated-drained (CD) triaxial test is conducted on a sand. The cell pressure is 100 kPa, and the applied axial stress at failure is 200 kPa.

**Required:**

- Plot the Mohr circles for both the initial and failure stress conditions.
- Determine  $\phi$  (assume  $c = 0$ ).
- Determine the shear stress on the failure plane at failure  $\tau_{ff}$ , and find the theoretical angle of the failure plane in the specimen. Also determine the orientation of the plane of maximum obliquity.
- Determine the maximum shear stress at failure  $\tau_{max}$  and the angle of the plane on which it acts; calculate the available shear strength on this plane and the factor of safety on this plane.

**Solution:**

a. Refer to Fig. 10.13b and Fig. Ex. 10.8. The initial conditions are shown at the top of Fig. Ex. 10.8 for the conventional triaxial test. The initial stress is equal to the cell pressure  $\sigma_{cell}$ , and it is equal in all directions (hydrostatic). Therefore the Mohr circle for the initial stress conditions is a point at 100 kPa, as shown in the Mohr diagram of Fig. Ex. 10.8. At failure, the  $\sigma_{axial} = (\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)_f = 200$  kPa. So

$$\sigma_{1f} = (\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)_f + \sigma_{3f} = 200 + 100 = 300 \text{ kPa}$$

Now we can plot the Mohr circle at failure;  $\sigma_{1f} = 300$  and  $\sigma_{3f} = 100$ . The center is at  $(\sigma_1 + \sigma_3)/2 = 200$ , and the radius is  $(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)/2 = 100$ . The circle at failure is shown in Fig. Ex. 10.8.

b. We find  $\phi$  graphically to be  $30^\circ$ . We can also use Eq. 10-13 if we prefer an analytical solution. Thus

$$\phi = \arcsin \frac{\sigma_{1f} - \sigma_{3f}}{\sigma_{1f} + \sigma_{3f}} = \arcsin \frac{200}{400} = 30^\circ$$

c. From the Mohr failure hypothesis, the coordinates of the point of tangency of the Mohr failure envelope and the Mohr circle at failure are  $(\sigma_{ff}, \tau_{ff})$ . From Eq. 10-9, we know that  $\tau_{ff} = \sigma_{ff} \tan \phi$ , but unlike the direct shear test we don't know  $\sigma_{ff}$  in the triaxial test. Look carefully at Fig. 10.10. The small angle near the top of the Mohr circle is  $\phi$  (by a theorem from high school geometry). Therefore, since  $c = 0$ ,  $D - \sigma_{ff} = R \sin \phi$ . Solving for  $\sigma_{ff}$ , we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_{ff} &= \frac{\sigma_{1f} + \sigma_{3f}}{2} - \frac{\sigma_{1f} - \sigma_{3f}}{2} \sin \phi \\ &= 200 - 100 \sin 30^\circ = 150 \text{ kPa} \\ \tau_{ff} &= \sigma_{ff} \tan \phi = 150 \tan 30^\circ = 86.6 \text{ kPa}\end{aligned}$$

The theoretical angle of inclination of the failure plane can be found

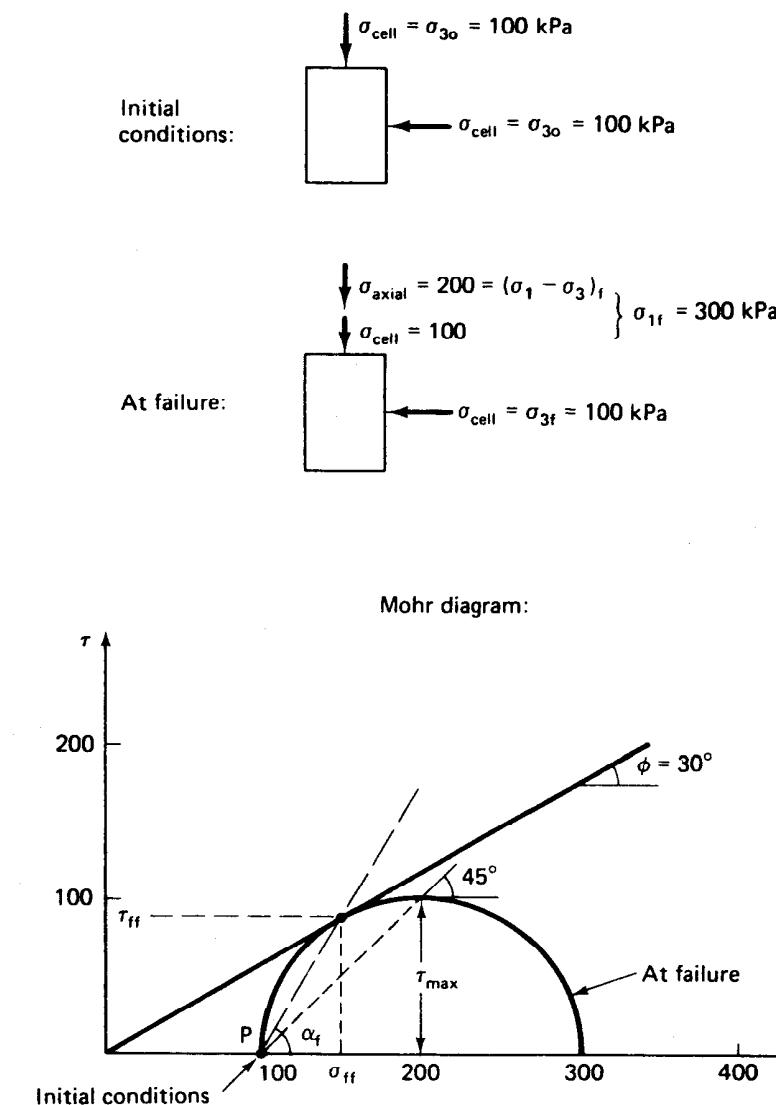


Fig. Ex. 10.8

graphically by the pole method or analytically. From the stress conditions at failure shown in Fig. Ex. 10.8, the pole is at  $(100, 0)$ , and  $\alpha_f$  can be measured to be  $60^\circ$ . For the analytical solution, use Eq. 10-10.

$$\alpha_f = 45^\circ + \frac{\phi}{2} = 60^\circ$$

The plane of maximum obliquity is oriented at this angle also since the maximum inclination of the Mohr failure envelope is  $30^\circ$  and the point of

tangency determines the condition of maximum obliquity. In other words, the ratio  $\tau_{ff}/\sigma_{ff}$  is a maximum at this point on the Mohr circle and on the plane in the specimen inclined at  $60^\circ$  from the horizontal.

d.  $\tau_{max} = R = \frac{\sigma_{1f} - \sigma_{3f}}{2} = 100$  kPa. From the pole, the plane of  $\tau_{max}$  is inclined at  $45^\circ$  from the horizontal. The obliquity at this orientation is  $\tau_{max}/\sigma_{45^\circ} = 100/200 = 0.5$ . The maximum obliquity (part c) is  $86.6/150 = 0.58 > 0.5$ . The available  $\tau$  (see Fig. 10.9b) can be determined from

$$\begin{aligned}\tau_{available} &= \sigma_n \tan \phi = \frac{\sigma_{1f} + \sigma_{3f}}{2} \tan \phi \\ &= 200 \tan 30^\circ = 115.5 \text{ kPa}\end{aligned}$$

which is greater than  $\tau_{max} = 100$  kPa. Therefore the factor of safety on the  $45^\circ$  plane (Eq. 10-11) is

$$F.S. = \frac{\tau_{available}}{\tau_{max}} = \frac{115.5}{100} = 1.16$$

Note that the factor of safety on the  $\alpha_f = 60^\circ$  plane is

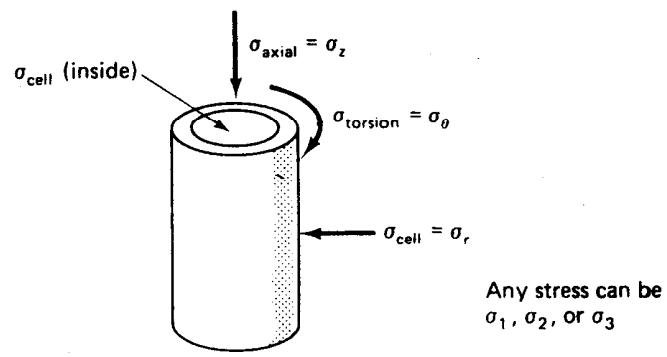
$$F.S. = \frac{\tau_{available}}{\tau_{ff}} = \frac{86.6}{86.6} = 1$$


---

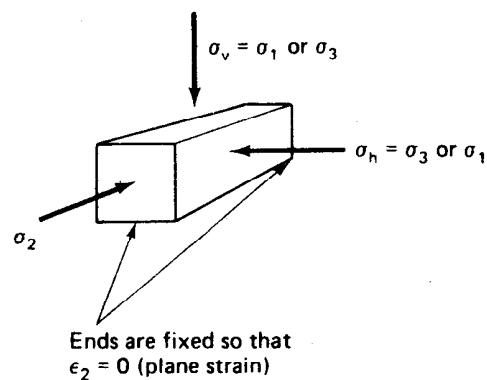
### Special Laboratory Tests

Other types of laboratory strength tests that you may hear about include *hollow cylinder tests*, *plane strain tests*, and so called *true triaxial* or *cuboidal shear tests*. These tests are schematically illustrated in Fig. 10.14. In the common triaxial test, the intermediate principal stress can only be equal to either the major or minor principal stress—nothing in between. With these other tests it is possible to vary  $\sigma_2$ , which probably models the stress conditions in real problems more accurately. Today, however, these tests are primarily used for research rather than for practical engineering applications.

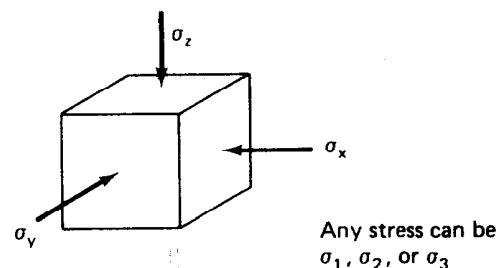
A couple of other tests of the direct shear type must also be mentioned. *Torsional* or *ring shear* tests (Fig. 10.15a) have been developed so that the test specimen may be sheared to very large deformations. This approach is sometimes necessary to obtain the *residual* or *ultimate shear strength* of certain materials, which is easier to obtain with a ring shear device than by repeatedly reversing the direct shear box. A more common



(a)



(b)



(c)

Fig. 10.14 Schematic diagrams for the: (a) hollow cylinder test; (b) plane strain test; and (c) true triaxial or cuboidal shear test.

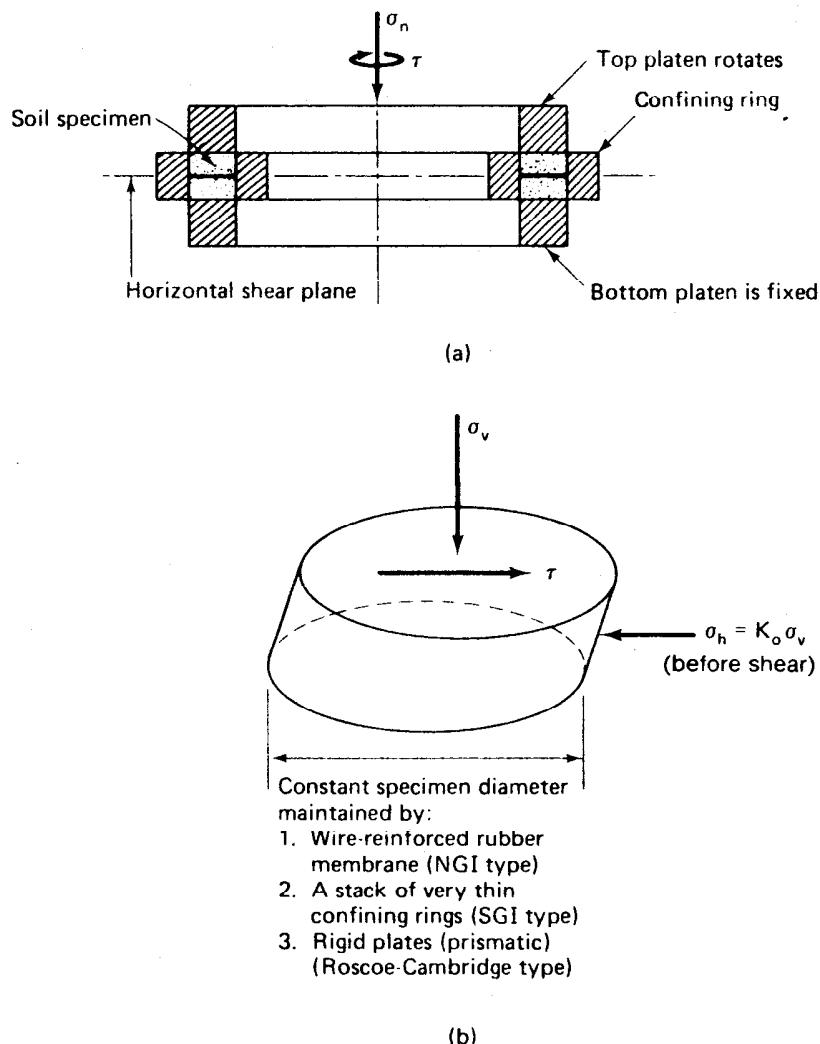


Fig. 10.15 Schematic diagrams of: (a) torsional or ring shear; (b) direct simple shear apparatus.

test used in both Scandinavia and in the United States for static and dynamic testing is the *direct simple shear* (DSS) test (Fig. 10.15b). In this test, a fairly homogeneous state of shear stress is applied, thereby avoiding the stress concentrations which exist in the ordinary direct shear apparatus. Since stress conditions in the DSS test are not the same as those shown in Examples 10.6 and 10.7 for the direct shear box, they are described in Example 10.9.

## EXAMPLE 10.9

**Given:**

The DSS test.

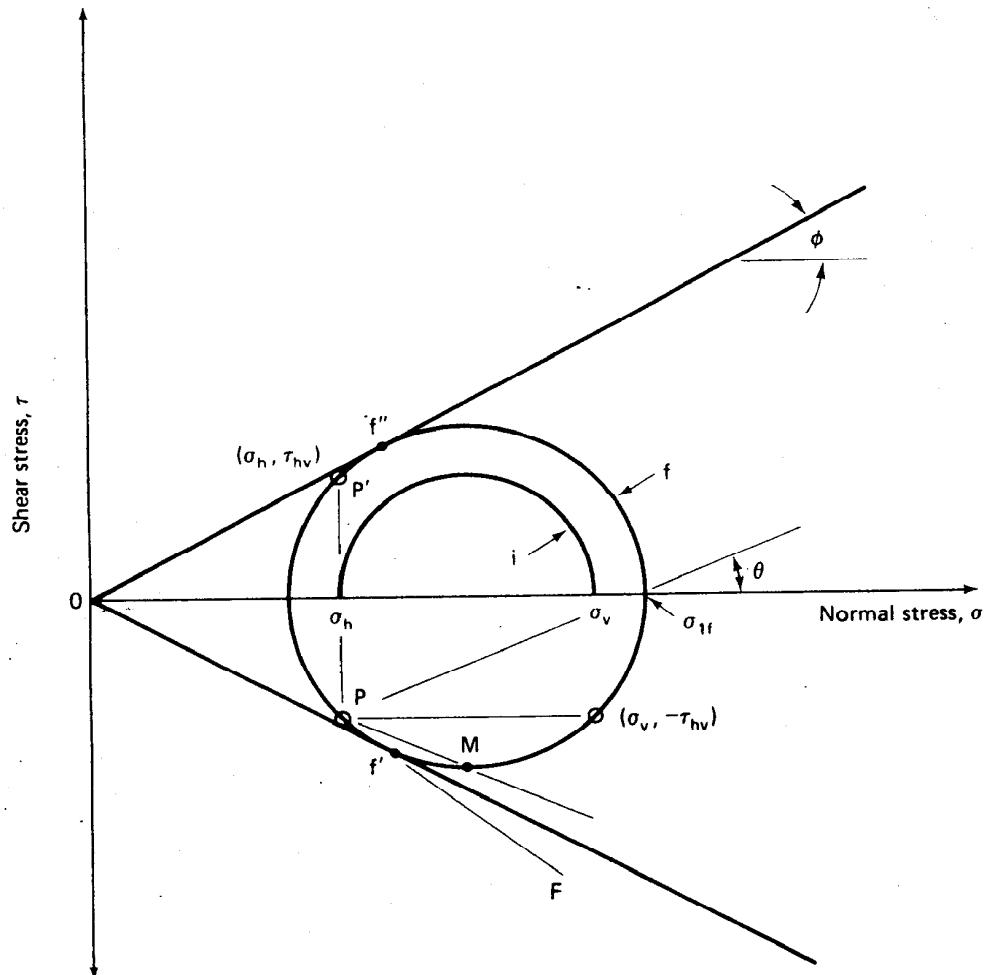
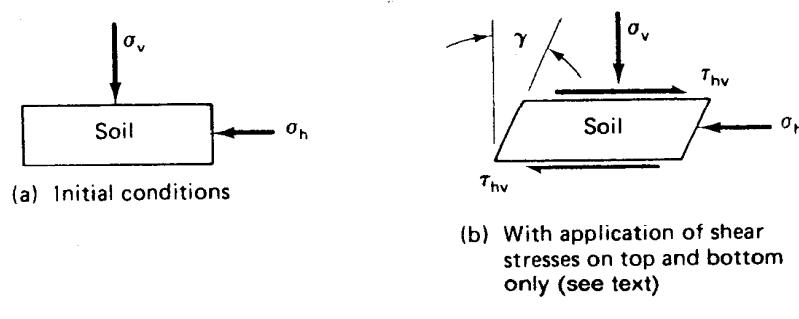
**Required:**

Illustrate the stress conditions in the test, and draw the Mohr circles for both initial and failure conditions.

**Solution:**

The initial conditions for the DSS test shown in Fig. Ex. 10.9a are the same as those for the direct shear box test shown in Fig. Ex. 10.6 and Fig. Ex. 10.7. The sides of the soil sample are forced to rotate through an angle  $\gamma$  by the application of a horizontal shear stress,  $\tau_{hv}$ . These stress conditions are shown in Fig. Ex. 10.9b. Note the absence of complementary shear stresses on the outside of the soil sample; this is necessary for simple shear. Inside the sample, however, the applied stress system is assumed to be *pure* shear, and complementary stresses are necessary for equilibrium. With the application of  $\tau_{hv}$ , and  $\sigma_v$  and  $\sigma_h$  constant, the Mohr circle enlarges about the same center as the initial Mohr circle  $i$ . At failure, the Mohr circle is just tangent to the Mohr failure envelope, and the Mohr circle looks like circle  $f$  of Fig. Ex. 10.9c.

For this condition, the pole  $P$  is found by extending a line from  $(\sigma_v, -\tau_{hv})$  horizontally (the plane on which these stresses act) to where it intersects the Mohr circle. Lines drawn from the pole represent the orientations of different states of stress within the soil sample. The line  $PM$  represents the plane of maximum (absolute value) shear stress; the line  $PF$  represents the orientation of the failure plane—it is *not* horizontal as in the direct shear test. The line  $P\sigma_{1f}$  represents the orientation of the  $\sigma_1$  planes when  $\tau_{hv}$  is negative on the horizontal surface. When (and if) the sign of  $\tau_{hv}$  becomes positive on the horizontal plane, as in a *cyclic simple shear* test, then the pole is located at  $P'$  for that part of the circle. The line  $P'\sigma_{1f}$  becomes the new orientation of the principal plane with a negative  $\theta$ , the angle of principal stress rotation.



(c) Mohr circles  
Fig. Ex. 10.9

## Field Tests

Because of all the problems associated with sampling and laboratory testing, it sometimes is better to measure the strength directly in the field. The most common field tests for soft clays are the *vane shear test* and the *Dutch cone penetrometer*. The latter test is also very effective when used for sandy soils. The *standard penetration test* (SPT) is used for granular materials and sometimes for cohesive soils, but it is less accurate in especially soft clays. The *Iowa borehole shear test* has been developed for use in loess soils. The *pressuremeter* and *screw plate* tests are also becoming increasingly popular for determining, among other things, the strength and deformation properties of soils. Field test equipment and test methods are described briefly in Chapter 11 and in detail in most textbooks on foundation engineering. Ladd, et al. (1977) have a good discussion of the applicability of both laboratory and field tests in geotechnical engineering practice.

## 10.6 STRESS PATHS

As you know from the first part of this chapter, states of stress at a point in equilibrium can be represented by a Mohr circle in a  $\tau$ - $\sigma$  coordinate system. Sometimes it is convenient to represent that state of stress by a *stress point*, which has the coordinates  $(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)/2$  and  $(\sigma_1 + \sigma_3)/2$ , as shown in Fig. 10.16. For many situations in geotechnical engineering, we

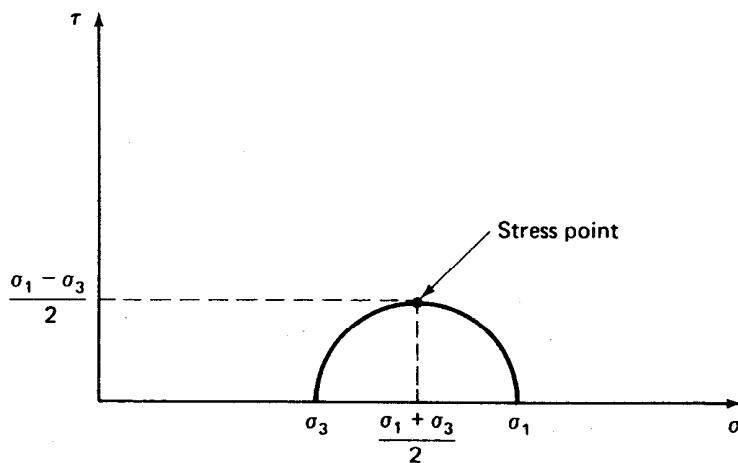


Fig. 10.16 A Mohr circle of stress and corresponding stress point.

assume  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_3$  act on vertical and horizontal planes, so the coordinates of the stress point become  $(\sigma_v - \sigma_h)/2$  and  $(\sigma_v + \sigma_h)/2$ , or simply  $q$  and  $p$ , respectively; or

$$q = \frac{\sigma_v - \sigma_h}{2} \quad (10-18)$$

$$p = \frac{\sigma_v + \sigma_h}{2} \quad (10-19)$$

Both  $q$  and  $p$  could, of course, be defined in terms of the principal stresses. By convention,  $q$  is considered positive when  $\sigma_v > \sigma_h$ ; otherwise it is negative.

We often want to show successive states of stress which a test specimen or a typical element in the field undergoes during loading or unloading. A diagram showing the successive states with a series of Mohr circles could be used (Fig. 10.17a), but it might be confusing, especially if the stress path were complicated. Therefore it is simpler to show only the locus of the stress points. This locus is called the *stress path*, and it is plotted on what we call a *p-q diagram* (Fig. 10.17b). Note that both  $p$  and  $q$  could be defined either in terms of total stresses or effective stresses. As before, a prime mark is used to indicate effective stresses. So from Eqs. 10-18 and 10-19 and the effective stress equation (Eq. 7-13), we know that  $q' = q$  while  $p' = p - u$ , where  $u$  is the excess hydrostatic or pore water pressure.

Although the concept of a stress path has been around for a long time, Prof. T. W. Lambe of M.I.T. demonstrated its usefulness as a teaching device (Lambe and Whitman, 1969) and developed the method into a practical engineering tool for the solution of stability and deformation problems (Lambe, 1964 and 1967; Lambe and Marr, 1979). Very often in geotechnical engineering practice, if you understand the complete stress

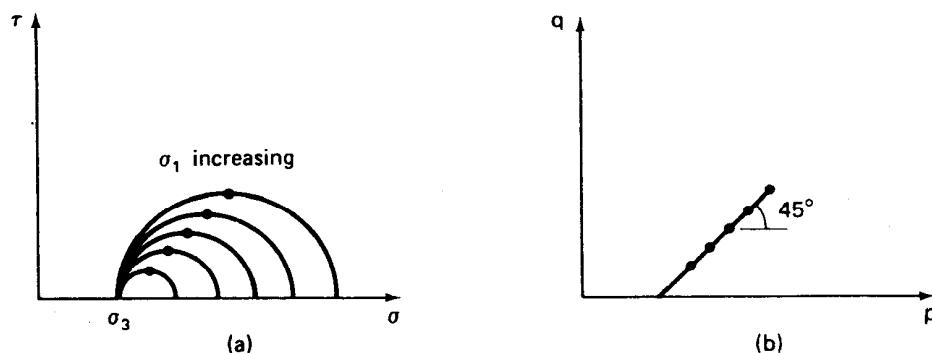


Fig. 10.17 (a) Successive Mohr circles; (b) stress path for constant  $\sigma_3$  and increasing  $\sigma_1$  (after Lambe and Whitman, 1969).

path of your problem, you are well along the way towards the solution of that problem.

A simple case to illustrate stress paths is the common triaxial test in which  $\sigma_3$  remains fixed as we increase  $\sigma_1$ . Some Mohr circles for this test are shown in Fig. 10.17a along with their stress points. The corresponding stress path shown in Fig. 10.17b is a straight line at an angle of  $45^\circ$  from the horizontal because the stress point represents the state of stress on the

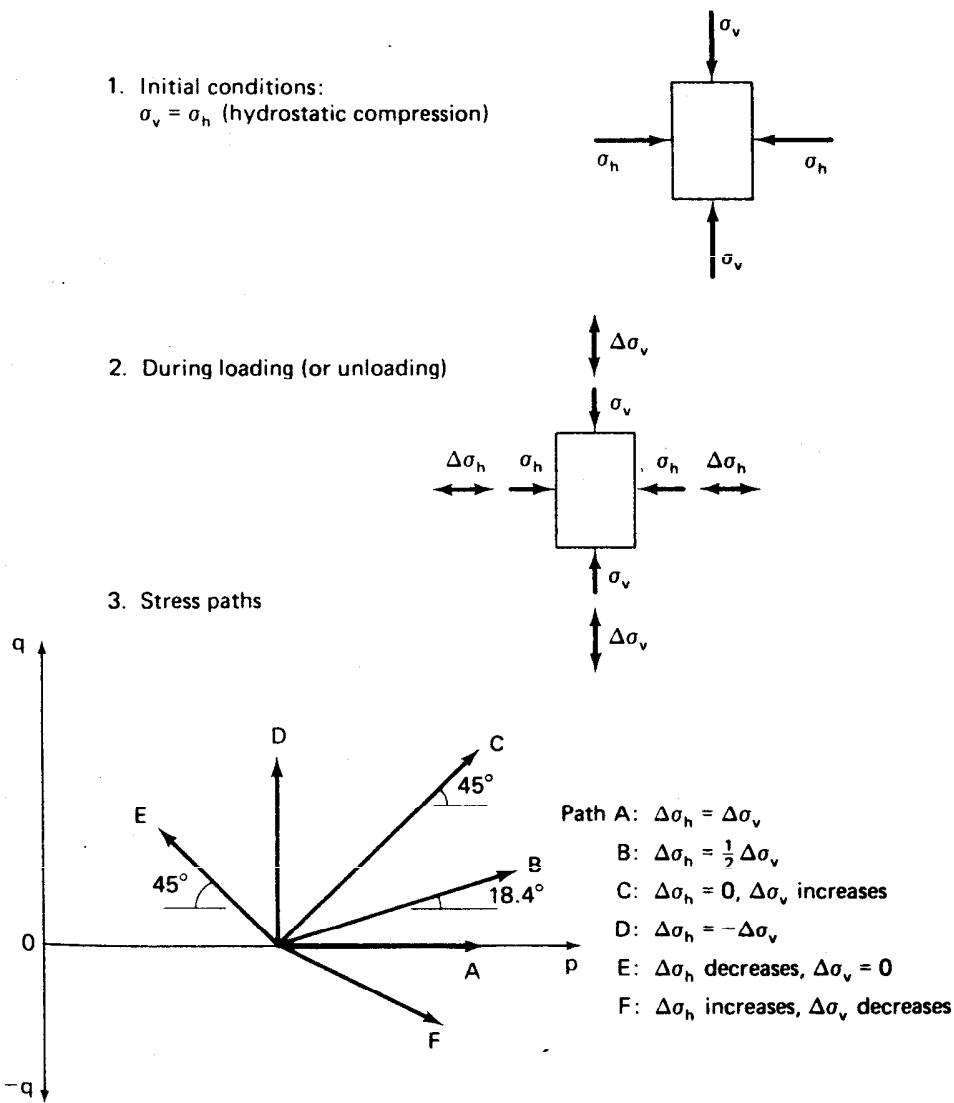


Fig. 10.18 Different stress paths for initially hydrostatic stress conditions (after Lambe and Whitman, 1969).

plane oriented  $45^\circ$  from the principal planes. (Note that this is the plane of maximum shear stress.)

Some examples of stress paths are shown in Figs. 10.18 and 10.19. In Fig. 10.18 the initial conditions are  $\sigma_v = \sigma_h$ , an equal-all-around or hydrostatic state of stress. Those in Fig. 10.19, where the initial vertical stress is not the same as the initial horizontal stress, represent a non-hydrostatic

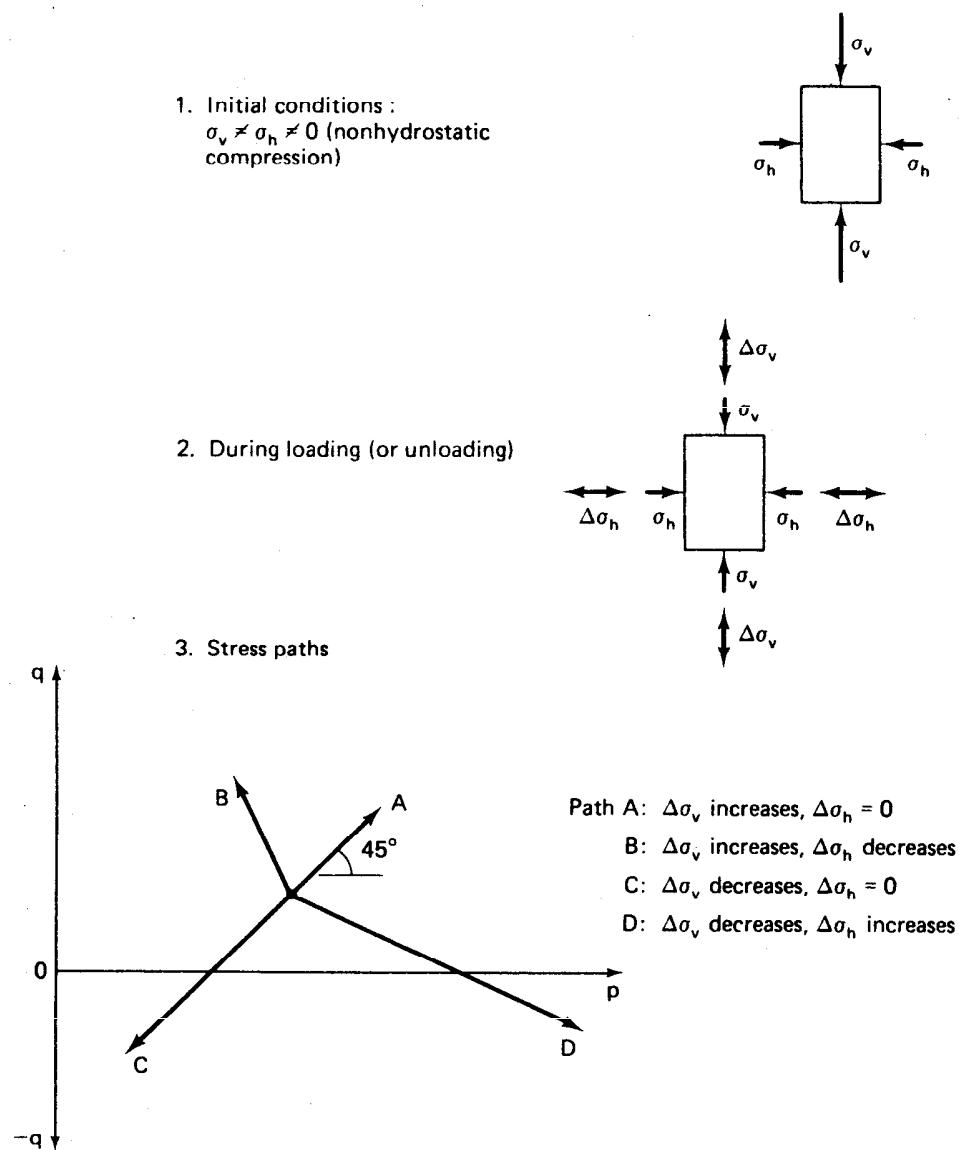


Fig. 10.19 Different stress paths for initially non-hydrostatic stress conditions (after Lambe and Whitman, 1969).

state of stress. You should verify that each stress path in Figs. 10.18 and 10.19 has in fact the direction as indicated in the figures. We shall show you how to do this in Example 10.10.

### EXAMPLE 10.10

**Given:**

Figures 10.18 and 10.19.

**Required:**

Verify that stress paths *A*, *B*, and *C* of Fig. 10.18 and *A* and *D* of Fig. 10.19 are correct as shown.

**Solution:**

The initial conditions for all stress paths in Fig. 10.18 are  $p_o = (\sigma_v + \sigma_h)/2 = \sigma_v = \sigma_h$  and  $q_o = 0$ . Final conditions are (Eqs. 10-18 and 10-19)

$$q_f = \frac{(\sigma_v + \Delta\sigma_v) - (\sigma_h + \Delta\sigma_h)}{2}$$

$$p_f = \frac{(\sigma_v + \Delta\sigma_v) + (\sigma_h + \Delta\sigma_h)}{2}$$

For stress path *A*,  $\Delta\sigma_v = \Delta\sigma_h$ ; so

$$q_f = \frac{\sigma_v + \Delta\sigma_v - \sigma_v - \Delta\sigma_v}{2} = 0$$

$$p_f = \frac{\sigma_v + \Delta\sigma_v + \sigma_v + \Delta\sigma_v}{2} = \sigma_v + \Delta\sigma_v$$

Thus the stress path *A* moves out on the *p*-axis by an amount  $\Delta\sigma_v = \Delta\sigma_h$ .

For stress path *B*,  $\Delta\sigma_h = \frac{1}{2}\Delta\sigma_v$ ; so

$$q_f = \frac{\sigma_v + \Delta\sigma_v - \sigma_v - \frac{1}{2}\Delta\sigma_v}{2} = \frac{1}{4}\Delta\sigma_v$$

$$p_f = \frac{\sigma_v + \Delta\sigma_v + \sigma_v + \frac{1}{2}\Delta\sigma_v}{2} = \sigma_v + \frac{3}{4}\Delta\sigma_v$$

These values are the (*p*, *q*) coordinates of the end of stress path *B*. Thus the *q* and *p* both increase by an amount  $\Delta q = \frac{1}{4}\Delta\sigma_v$  and  $\Delta p = \frac{3}{4}\Delta\sigma_v$ , which

means that the stress path has a slope of  $\frac{1}{3}$  or is inclined at  $18.4^\circ$  as shown in Fig. 10.18.

For stress path *C*,  $\Delta\sigma_h = 0$  and  $\Delta\sigma_v$  increases by some amount.

$$q_f = \frac{\sigma_v + \Delta\sigma_v - \sigma_h}{2} = \frac{1}{2}\Delta\sigma_v$$

$$p_f = \frac{\sigma_v + \Delta\sigma_v + \sigma_h}{2} = \sigma_v + \frac{1}{2}\Delta\sigma_v$$

So  $\Delta q = \frac{1}{2}\Delta\sigma_v$  and  $\Delta p = \frac{1}{2}\Delta\sigma_v$ . Therefore the slope of the stress path must be 1 or inclined at  $45^\circ$ . This solution also holds for stress path *A* in Fig. 10.19. Here initial conditions are non-hydrostatic, so

$$q_o = \frac{\sigma_v - \sigma_h}{2}$$

$$p_o = \frac{\sigma_v + \sigma_h}{2}$$

The final coordinates for path *A* are

$$q_f = \frac{\sigma_v + \Delta\sigma_v - \sigma_h}{2}$$

$$p_f = \frac{\sigma_v + \Delta\sigma_v + \sigma_h}{2}$$

So  $\Delta q = \frac{1}{2}\Delta\sigma_v$  and  $\Delta p = \frac{1}{2}\Delta\sigma_v$ , which is the same as for stress path *C* in Fig. 10.18.

For stress path *D* in Fig. 10.19,  $\Delta\sigma_v$  decreases while  $\Delta\sigma_h$  increases. Initial ( $p_o, q_o$ ) are the same as path *A* in this figure, while the final values of ( $p_f, q_f$ ) are

$$q_f = \frac{(\sigma_v - \Delta\sigma_v) - (\sigma_h + \Delta\sigma_h)}{2}$$

$$p_f = \frac{(\sigma_v - \Delta\sigma_v) + (\sigma_h + \Delta\sigma_h)}{2}$$

So

$$\Delta q = -\frac{1}{2}\Delta\sigma_v - \frac{1}{2}\Delta\sigma_h \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta p = -\frac{1}{2}\Delta\sigma_v + \frac{1}{2}\Delta\sigma_h$$

The actual slope of the stress path depends on the relative magnitudes of  $\Delta\sigma_v$  and  $\Delta\sigma_h$ , but in general it trends down and out as shown in Fig. 10.19.

It is often convenient to consider *stress ratios*. In Chapter 7 we defined a lateral stress ratio *K*, which is the ratio of horizontal to vertical

stress,

$$K = \frac{\sigma_h}{\sigma_v} \quad (7-18)$$

In terms of *effective* stresses, this ratio is

$$K_o = \frac{\sigma'_h}{\sigma'_v} \quad (7-19)$$

where  $K_o$  is called the *coefficient of lateral earth pressure at rest* for conditions of no lateral strain. Finally, we can define a ratio  $K_f$  for the stress conditions at failure.

$$K_f = \frac{\sigma'_{hf}}{\sigma'_{vf}} \quad (10-20)$$

where  $\sigma'_{hf}$  = the horizontal effective stress at failure, and  
 $\sigma'_{vf}$  = the vertical effective stress at failure.

Usually  $K_f$  is defined in terms of effective stresses, but it may just as well be in terms of total stresses. Constant stress ratios appear as straight lines on a  $p-q$  diagram (Fig. 10.20). These lines could also be stress paths for initial conditions of  $\sigma_o = \sigma_h = 0$  with loadings of  $K$  equal to a constant (that is, constant  $\sigma_h/\sigma_v$ ). Other initial conditions are, of course, possible, such as those shown in Figs. 10.18 and 10.19.

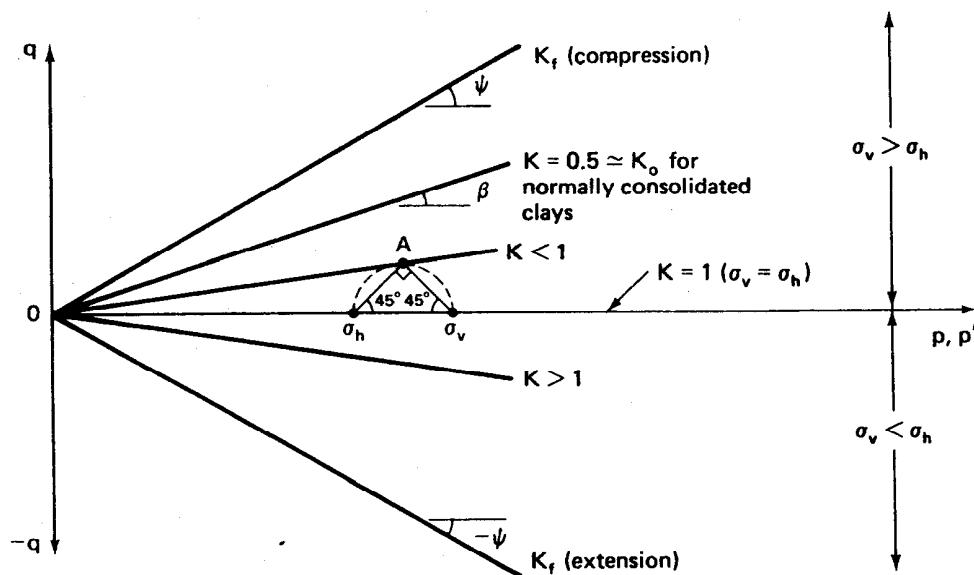


Fig. 10.20 Different constant stress ratios and examples of stress paths, starting from  $\sigma_v = \sigma_h = 0$  (after Lambe and Whitman, 1969).

Note that

$$\frac{q}{p} = \tan \beta = \frac{1 - K}{1 + K} \quad (10-21)$$

or in terms of  $K$

$$K = \frac{1 - \tan \beta}{1 + \tan \beta} \quad (10-22)$$

where  $\beta$  is the slope of the line of constant  $K$  when  $K < K_f$ . At failure, the slope of the  $K_f$  line is indicated by the symbol  $\psi$ . Note also that for any point where you know  $p$  and  $q$ , (for example point  $A$  in Fig. 10.20),  $\sigma_h$  and  $\sigma_v$  can readily be found graphically; that is, lines at  $45^\circ$  from the stress point intersect the  $\sigma$ -axis at  $\sigma_h$  and  $\sigma_v$ . Finally, there is no reason why  $\sigma_v$  must always be greater than  $\sigma_h$ . It usually is, but there are many important situations in geotechnical engineering where  $\sigma_h > \sigma_v$ . In these cases, by convention  $q$  is negative and  $K > 1$ , as shown in Fig. 10.20.

Now we shall describe some stress paths which are important in geotechnical engineering. When soils are deposited in a sedimentary environment like a lake or the sea, there is a gradual build up of overburden stress as additional material is deposited from above. As this stress increases, the sediments consolidate and decrease in volume (Chapters 8 and 9). If the area of deposition is relatively large compared with the thickness of the deposit, then it seems reasonable that the compression is essentially one dimensional. In this case the stress ratio would be constant and equal to  $K_o$ , and the stress path during sedimentation and consolidation would be similar to path  $AB$  in Fig. 10.21. Typical values of  $K_o$  for granular materials range from about 0.4 to 0.6, whereas for normally consolidated clays  $K_o$  can be a little less than 0.5 up to 0.8 or 0.9. A good average value is about 0.5. (See Sec. 11.7 and 11.11.) When a sample of the soil is taken, stress decrease occurs because the overburden stress  $\sigma'_{vo}$  has to be removed to get at the sample. The stress path follows approximately line  $BC$  in Fig. 10.21, and the soil specimen ends up someplace on the hydrostatic ( $\sigma_h = \sigma_v$ ) or  $K = 1$  axis. This stress path and its relation to the strength of clays is discussed in Chapter 11.

If, instead of sampling, the overburden stress was decreased by erosion or some other geologic process, an unloading stress path similar to  $BC$  would be followed. If the vertical stress continued to be removed, the path could extend to a point well below the  $p$ -axis. The soil would then be overconsolidated and  $K_o$  would be greater than 1.0.

Sometimes in engineering practice a test specimen is reconsolidated in the laboratory under  $K_o$  conditions so as to reinstate the estimated in situ stresses. Such conditions are shown in Fig. 10.19 and at point  $A$  in Fig. 10.22. After consolidation, the loading (or unloading) path followed to

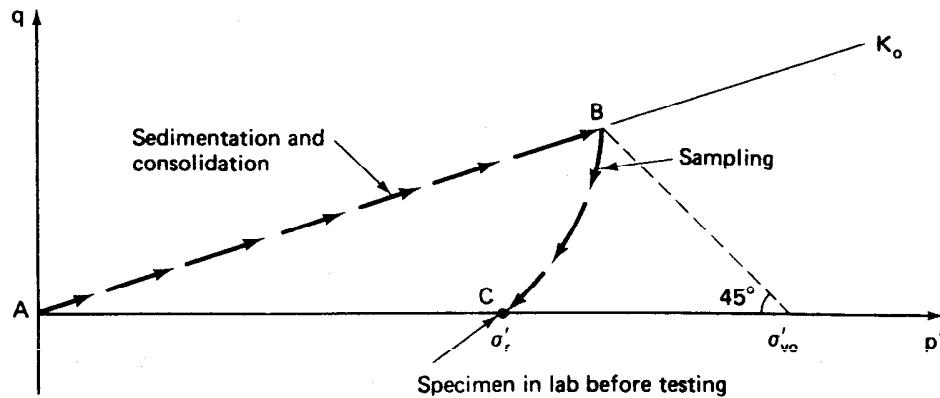
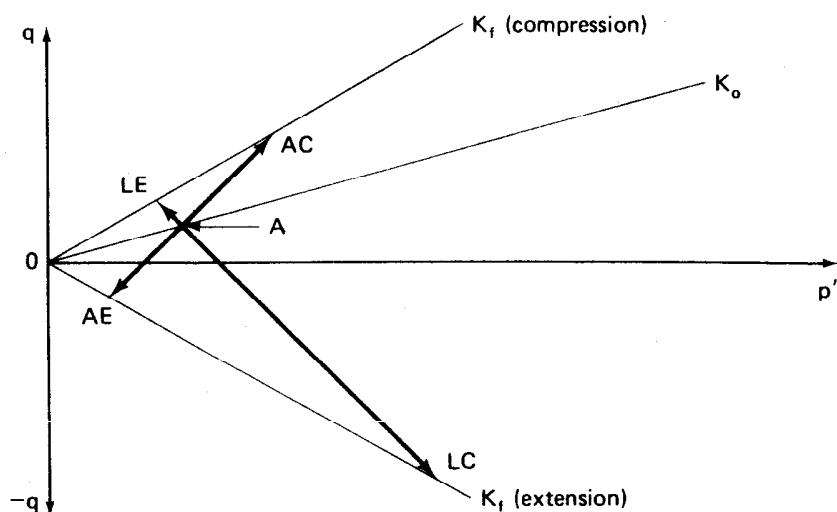


Fig. 10.21 Stress paths during sedimentation and sampling of normally consolidated clay, where  $K_o < 1$ .



Symbol	Geotechnical Engineering example
AC:	Axial Compression
LE:	Foundation loading — increase $\sigma_v$ , $\sigma_h$ constant
AE:	Active earth pressure — decrease $\sigma_h$ , $\sigma_v$ constant
LC:	Unloading (excavation) — decrease $\sigma_v$ , $\sigma_h$ constant
	Passive earth pressure — increase $\sigma_h$ , $\sigma_v$ constant

Fig. 10.22 Stress paths during drained loadings on normally consolidated clays and sand (after Lambe, 1967).

failure depends on the field loading conditions one wishes to model. Four common field conditions and the laboratory stress paths which model them are shown in Fig. 10.22. Note that these stress paths are for *drained* loading (discussed in the next chapter) in which there is *no* excess pore water pressure; therefore total stresses equal effective stresses and the total stress path (TSP) for a given loading is identical to the effective stress path (ESP).

As suggested by Eq. 10-20, we are often interested in conditions at failure, and it is useful to know the relationship between the  $K_f$  line and the Mohr-Coulomb failure envelope. Consider the two Mohr circles shown in Fig. 10.23. The circle on the left, drawn for illustrative purposes only, represents failure in terms of the  $p$ - $q$  diagram. The identical circle on the right is the same failure circle on the Mohr  $\tau$ - $\sigma$  diagram. To establish the slopes of the two lines and their intercepts, several Mohr circles and stress paths, determined over a range of stresses, were used. The equation of the  $K_f$  line is

$$q_f = a + p_f \tan \psi \quad (10-23)$$

where  $a$  = the intercept on the  $q$ -axis, in stress units, and

$\psi$  = the angle of the  $K_f$  line with respect to the horizontal, in degrees.

The equation of the Mohr-Coulomb failure envelope is

$$\tau_{ff} = c + \sigma_{ff} \tan \phi \quad (10-9)$$

From the geometries of the two circles, it can be shown that

$$\sin \phi = \tan \psi \quad (10-24)$$

and

$$c = \frac{a}{\cos \phi} \quad (10-25)$$

So, from a  $p$ - $q$  diagram the shear strength parameters  $\phi$  and  $c$  may readily be computed.

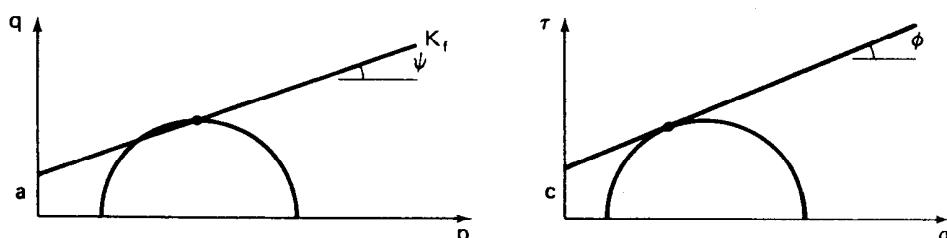


Fig. 10.23 Relationship between the  $K_f$  line and the Mohr-Coulomb failure envelope.

Another useful aspect of the  $p-q$  diagram is that it may be used to show both total and effective stress paths on the same diagram. We said before that for drained loading, the total stress path (TSP) and the effective stress path (ESP) were identical. This is because the pore water pressure induced by loading was approximately equal to zero at all times during shear. However, in general, during *undrained* loading the TSP is not equal to the ESP because excess pore water pressure develops. For axial compression (AC) loading of a normally consolidated clay ( $K_o < 1$ ), a *positive* excess pore water pressure  $\Delta u$  develops. Therefore the ESP lies to the *left* of the TSP because  $\sigma' = \sigma - \Delta u$ . At any point during the loading, the pore water pressure  $\Delta u$  may be scaled off any horizontal line between the TSP and ESP, as shown in Fig. 10.24.

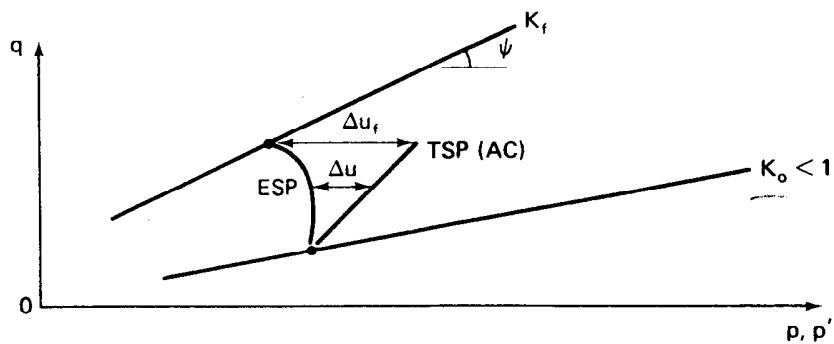


Fig. 10.24 Stress paths during undrained axial compression loading of a normally consolidated clay.

If a clay is overconsolidated ( $K_o > 1$ ), then *negative* pore water pressure ( $-\Delta u$ ) develops because the clay *tends* to expand during shear, but it can't. (Remember: we are talking about undrained loading in which no volume change is allowed.) For AC loading on an overconsolidated clay, stress paths like those shown in Fig. 10.25 will develop. Similarly, we can plot total and effective stress paths for other types of loadings and unloadings, for both normally and overconsolidated soils, and we shall show some of these in Chapter 11.

In most practical situations in geotechnical engineering, there exists a static ground water table; thus an initial pore water pressure  $u_o$ , is acting on the element in question. So there are really three stress paths we should consider, the ESP, the TSP, and the  $(T - u_o)$ SP. These three paths are shown in Fig. 10.26 for a normally consolidated clay with an initial pore water pressure  $u_o$  undergoing AC loading. Note that as long as the ground water table remains at the same elevation,  $u_o$  does not affect either the ESP or the conditions at failure.

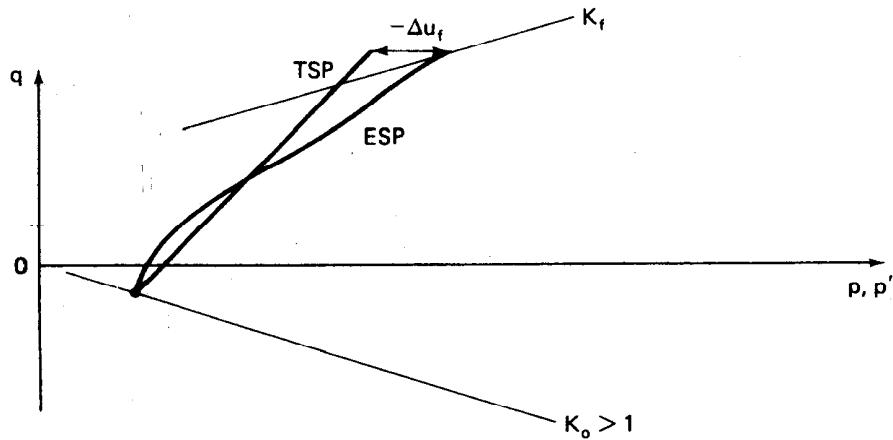


Fig. 10.25 Stress paths during axial compression of a heavily overconsolidated clay.

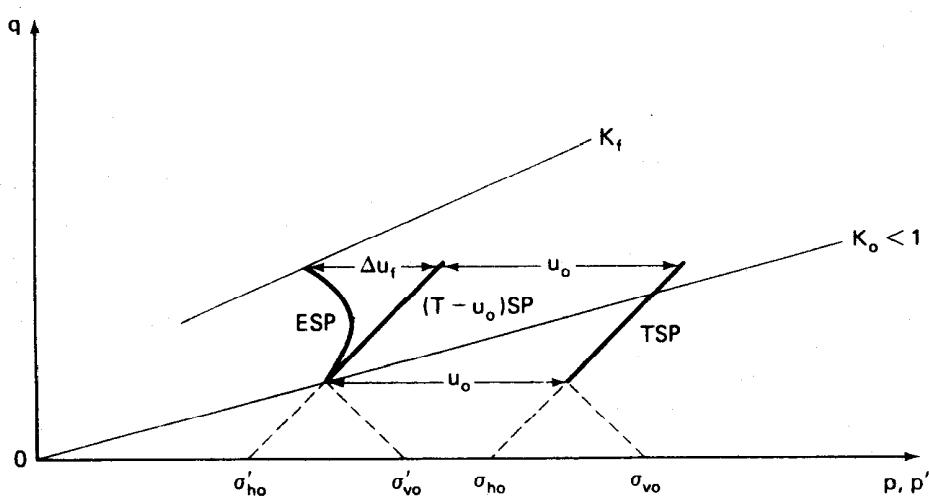


Fig. 10.26 ESP, TSP, and  $(T - u_o)SP$  for a normally consolidated clay (after Lambe, 1967).

## PROBLEMS

- 10-1. Given an element with stresses as indicated in Fig. P10-1. Find:
- The major and minor principal stresses and the planes on which they act.
  - The stresses on a plane inclined at  $30^\circ$  from the horizontal.
  - The maximum shear stress and the inclination of the plane on which it acts.

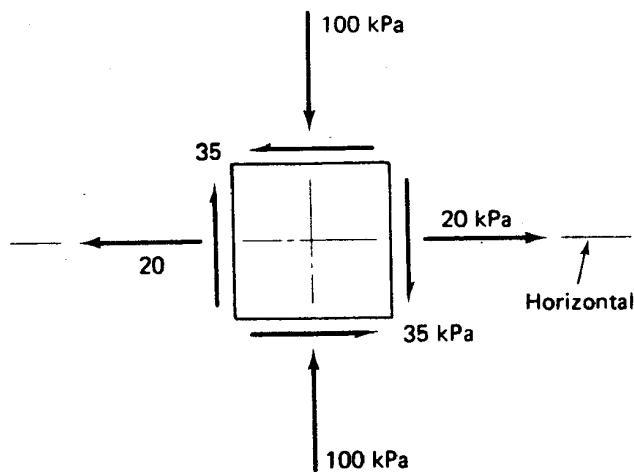


Fig. P10-1

- 10-2. Work Problem 10-1 with the element rotated  $30^\circ$  clockwise from the horizontal.
- 10-3. With the element of Problem 10-2 rotated  $30^\circ$ , find the magnitude and direction of the stresses on the *horizontal* plane.
- 10-4. Work Example 10-3 with the element rotated  $20^\circ$  clockwise from the horizontal. In addition, find the stresses (magnitude and direction) on the vertical plane.
- 10-5. Equations 10-5 and 10-6 were derived from Fig. 10.2, with  $\sigma_x$  and  $\sigma_y$  as principal stresses. Derive the more general equations for the Mohr circle when  $\sigma_x$  and  $\sigma_y$  are *not* acting on principal planes.
- 10-6. The state of plane stress in a body is described by the following stresses:  $\sigma_1 = 9000 \text{ kN/m}^2$  compression,  $\sigma_3 = 2000 \text{ kN/m}^2$  tension. Determine by means of the Mohr circle the normal stress and shear stress on a plane inclined at  $10^\circ$  to the plane on which the minor principal stress acts. Check the results analytically. (After A. Casagrande.)

- 10-7. At a certain critical point in a steel beam, on a vertical plane the compressive stress is 126 MPa and the shearing stress is 34.5 MPa. There is no normal stress on the longitudinal (horizontal) plane. Find the stresses acting on the principal planes and the orientation of principal planes with the horizontal. (After Taylor, 1948.)
- 10-8. A soil sample is under a biaxial state of stress. On plane 1, the stresses are (26, 8), while on plane 2, the stresses are (11.6, -4). Find the major and minor principal stresses.
- 10-9. For the element shown in Fig. P10-9: (a) Find the magnitude of the unknown stresses  $\sigma_h$  and  $\tau_h$  on the horizontal plane. (b) Find the orientation of the principal stresses; clearly indicate their orientation in a small sketch. (c) Show the orientation of the planes of maximum as well as minimum shear.

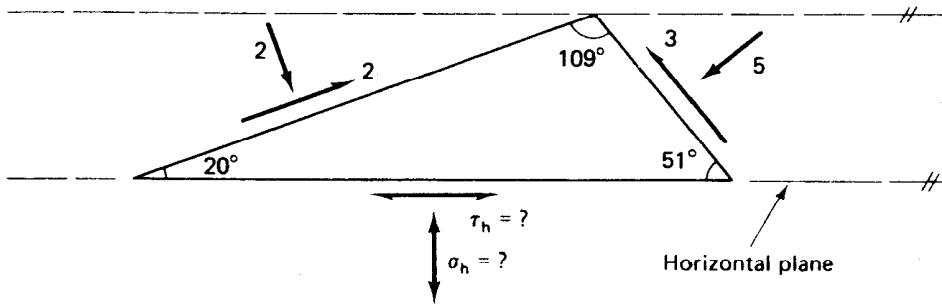


Fig. P10-9

- 10-10. Given the element with stresses as shown in Fig. P10-10: (a) Find the magnitude and direction of  $\sigma_H$  and  $\tau_H$ . (b) Find the magnitude and direction of  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_3$ . Be sure to clearly indicate these stresses and their directions on a separate sketch.

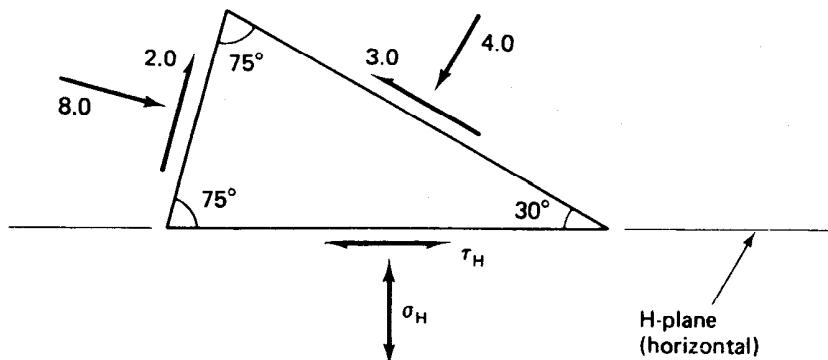


Fig. P10-10

- 10-11. Given the data of Example 10.5. (a) Find the magnitude and direction of the stresses on the horizontal plane. (b) Find the

maximum shear stress and determine the angle between the plane on which it acts and the major principal plane.

- 10-12. The state of stress on a small element is  $\sigma_v = 28 \text{ kPa}$ ,  $\sigma_h = 14 \text{ kPa}$ , and the shear stress on the horizontal plane is  $+4 \text{ kPa}$ . (a) Find the magnitude and directions of the major and minor principal stresses. (b) If the material is a loose sand, can you say whether the element is in a state of failure? If it isn't, how close is it? Why? State your assumptions clearly. (Assume  $\phi = 30^\circ$  for the loose sand.)
- 10-13. Given the vertical and horizontal normal stresses of Problem 10-12. Find the maximum values of shear stress on the horizontal and vertical planes to cause failure in a medium dense sand. Assume the angle of internal friction for the sand is  $36^\circ$ .
- 10-14. The state plane stress in a mass of dense cohesionless sand is described by the following stresses:

Normal stress on horizontal plane = 370 kPa

Normal stress on vertical plane = 200 kPa

Shear stress on horizontal and vertical planes =  $\pm 80 \text{ kPa}$

Determine by means of the Mohr circle the magnitude and direction of the principal stresses. Is this state of stress safe against failure? (After A. Casagrande.)

- 10-15. At a given point within a sand deposit the major, intermediate, and minor principal stresses are 5, 3, and 2 MN/m<sup>2</sup>, respectively. Construct the Mohr diagram, and from it scale the normal and shearing stresses and the obliquity angles on planes at  $30^\circ$ ,  $45^\circ$ ,  $60^\circ$ , and  $75^\circ$  from the major principal plane. (After Taylor, 1948.)
- 10-16. A 1 m cube within a mass of stressed soil has a stress of 100 kPa on its top and bottom faces, 50 kPa on one pair of vertical faces, and 30 kPa on the other pair of vertical faces. There is no shear stress on any face. Fill in the numerical values for each stress and angle in the following table. (After Taylor, 1948.)

	$\sigma(\text{kPa})$	$\tau(\text{kPa})$	$\alpha$
Major principal plane:			
Intermediate principal plane:			
Minor principal plane:			
Plane of maximum shearing stress:			
Plane of maximum obliquity:			

Note:  $\alpha$  is the angle of orientation of the required plane with respect to the horizontal plane.

- 10-17. In Problem 10-16 what is  $\phi$ , assuming  $c = 0$ ?

- 10-18. Show that on a plane inclined at  $45^\circ$  with respect to the principal planes, the ratio of  $\tau_{\max}$  to  $(\sigma_1 + \sigma_3)/2$  is in fact less than  $\tau_{ff}/\sigma_{ff}$ . Hint: Assume a  $\phi$ ,  $\sigma_1$ , and  $\sigma_3$ .
- 10-19. Prove that Eq. 10-10 is true, assuming that the Mohr-Coulomb failure criterion is valid. Does it matter if  $c = 0$ ? Hint: Derive the equation first with  $c = 0$ , then with  $c \neq 0$ .
- 10-20. Show that Eq. 10-13 is identical to Eq. 10-14.
- 10-21. Equation 10-14 is true if  $c = 0$ . Derive the expression for the principal stress ratio, including the strength parameter  $c$ .
- 10-22. Show that Eq. 10-17 is true from Eq. 10-16.
- 10-23. Show that Eqs. 10-16 and 10-17 are identical to Eqs. 10-14 and 10-15. (This is a good review of trigonometric identities!)
- 10-24. In a direct shear test on a specimen of cohesionless sand, the vertical normal stress on the specimen is  $300 \text{ kN/m}^2$  and the horizontal shear stress at failure is  $200 \text{ kN/m}^2$ . (a) Assuming uniform stress distribution within the failure zone and a straight line failure envelope which goes through the origin, determine by means of the Mohr circle the magnitude and direction of the principal stresses at failure. (b) Explain why it is not possible to determine the principal stresses in a direct shear specimen for an applied horizontal shear stress which is not large enough to cause failure. (After A. Casagrande.)

- 10-25. A specimen of sand is tested in direct simple shear. The stress conditions in the test are as shown in Fig. Ex. 10.9.

Initial conditions:

$$\sigma_v = 4.16 \text{ kg/cm}^2, K_o = 0.5$$

At failure:

$$\sigma_v = 4.16 \text{ kg/cm}^2, \quad \tau_{hv} = 2.40 \text{ kg/cm}^2$$

- (a) Draw the Mohr circles for both initial and final stress conditions.
- (b) Show clearly the locations of the poles of these circles.
- (c) Determine the magnitude and orientation of the principal stresses at failure.
- (d) What is the orientation of the failure plane?
- (e) If the shear strain at failure is  $10^\circ$  as shown in the figure, what are the stresses  $\sigma_s$  and  $\tau_s$  on the sides of the specimen at failure?  
Note:  $\tau_s \neq \tau_{hv}$ .

- 10-26. Two conventional CD triaxial compression tests were conducted on a dense angular dry sand at the same void ratio. Test *A* had a confining pressure of  $100 \text{ kPa}$ , while in test *B* the confining pressure

was 400 kPa; these stresses were held constant throughout the test. At failure, tests *A* and *B* had maximum principal stress differences of 400 and 1700 kPa, respectively.

- (a) Plot the Mohr circles for both tests at initial conditions and at failure.
- (b) Assuming  $c = 0$ , determine  $\phi$ .
- (c) What is the shear stress on the failure plane at failure for both tests?
- (d) Determine the theoretical orientation of the failure plane in each specimen.
- (e) What is the orientation of the plane of maximum obliquity?

10-27. Show that stress paths *D*, *E*, and *F* in Fig. 10.18 are correct.

10-28. Show that stress paths *B* and *C* in Fig. 10.19 are correct.

10-29. Prove that Eqs. 10-21 and 10-22 are valid.

10-30. A soil sample is subjected to an initial equal-all-around hydrostatic state of stress of 50 kPa. Sketch the stress paths for the loading conditions when (a)  $\sigma_h$  remains constant and  $\sigma_v$  increases to 100 kPa; (b)  $\sigma_v$  is held constant while  $\sigma_h$  increases to 100 kPa; (c) both  $\sigma_h$  and  $\sigma_v$  are increased to 100 kPa; (d)  $\sigma_v$  remains constant while  $\sigma_h$  decreases to 10 kPa; and (e)  $\sigma_v$  is increased by 25 kPa at the same time that  $\sigma_h$  is decreased by 25 kPa.

10-31. Given the same initial conditions as for Problem 10-30, draw the stress paths for loading when (a)  $\Delta\sigma_h = \Delta\sigma_v/3$  and (b)  $\Delta\sigma_h = \Delta\sigma_v/4$ .

10-32. If the initial stress conditions in a soil sample are  $\sigma_v = 10$  MPa and  $\sigma_h = 5$  MPa, draw the stress paths for  $\sigma_v$  being held constant while (a)  $\sigma_h$  increases to 10 MPa and (b)  $\sigma_h$  decreases to 0 MPa.

10-33. Evaluate the  $K_o$  and  $\beta$  for the conditions shown in Fig. 10.21. Are these values reasonable? Why?

10-34. A triaxial sample of loose sand is tested in lateral extension (LE) (see Fig. 10.22). The sample is first consolidated non-hydrostatically, with  $\sigma_1 = 15$  kPa and  $\sigma_3 = 10$  kPa. The sample is then failed in LE, and the angle of internal friction is  $30^\circ$  ( $c = 0$ ). (a) Draw the Mohr circles for both initial and "at failure" conditions. (b) What will be the major and minor principal stresses at failure? (c) On a  $p$ - $q$  diagram draw the stress paths for both the consolidation (see Fig. 10.21) and shearing phases of this test. Show the  $K_f$  line.

10-35. Another sample of the same sand tested in Problem 10-34 is tested in lateral compression (LC). Complete parts (a) through (c) requested in Problem 10-34 for this test.

## **eleven**

# **Shear Strength of Sands and Clays**

---

### **11.1 INTRODUCTION**

The shear strength of soils is a most important aspect of geotechnical engineering. The bearing capacity of shallow or deep foundations, slope stability, retaining wall design and, indirectly, pavement design are all affected by the shear strength of the soil in a slope, behind a retaining wall, or supporting a foundation or pavement. Structures and slopes must be stable and secure against total collapse when subjected to maximum anticipated applied loads. Thus *limiting equilibrium* methods of analysis are conventionally used for their design, and these methods require determination of the ultimate or limiting shear resistance (shear strength) of the soil.

In Chapter 10, we defined the shear strength of a soil as the ultimate or maximum shear stress the soil can withstand. We mentioned that sometimes the limiting value of shear stress was based on a maximum allowable strain or deformation. Very often, this allowable deformation actually controls the design of a structure because with the large safety factors we use, the actual shear stresses in the soil produced by the applied loads are much less than the stresses causing collapse or failure.

The shear strength can be determined in several different ways; we described some of the more common laboratory and field tests in Sec. 10.5. In situ methods such as the vane shear test or penetrometers avoid some of the problems of disturbance associated with the extraction of soil samples from the ground. However, these methods only determine the shear strength indirectly through correlations with laboratory results or backcalculated from actual failures. Laboratory tests, on the other hand, yield the shear strength directly. In addition, valuable information about the stress-strain behavior and the development of pore pressures during shear can often be

obtained. In this chapter, we shall illustrate the fundamental stress-deformation and shear strength response of soils with the results of laboratory tests for typical soils. In this way, we hope you can gain some understanding of how soils actually behave when sheared.

A word about the scope of this chapter. It is purposely kept as simple as possible. Only test results of typical "well-behaved" sands and clay soils are illustrated; special soils such as cemented sands, stiff fissured clays, highly sensitive ("quick") clays, and organic soils are not considered in detail herein. Special topics such as strength anisotropy, the Hvorslev parameters, complex stress systems, and creep are not included in this chapter. The approach is admittedly classical and we hope not oversimplified. The interested student may wish to consult advanced textbooks and the geotechnical literature on soil behavior for additional information about the real behavior of sands and clays.

In this chapter we draw heavily on the work of our teachers and colleagues. We gratefully acknowledge the important contributions made by A. Casagrande, R. C. Hirschfeld, C. C. Ladd, K. L. Lee, G. A. Leonards, J. O. Osterberg, S. J. Poulos, and H. B. Seed. Our discussion of shear strength of soils starts with sands and is followed by the strength properties of cohesive soils.

The following notation is introduced in this chapter.

Symbol	Dimension	Unit	Definition
$A, \bar{A}, B$	—	—	Skempton's pore pressure parameters
$a$	—	—	Henkel's pore pressure parameter
$A_o, A_s$	$L^2$	$m^2$	Initial specimen area and area at some strain, respectively (Eq. 11-8)
$C_{sk}, C_v, C_w$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	1/kPa	Compressibility of the soil skeleton, pore fluid, and water, respectively (Eq. 11-11)
$c, c_T$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	"Cohesion" or intercept on $\tau$ axis when $\sigma = 0$
$E_s$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Secant modulus
$E_t$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Initial tangent modulus
$E_u$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Undrained modulus of linear deformation (Young's modulus)
ESP	—	—	Effective stress path
$e_c$	—	(decimal)	Void ratio after consolidation
$e_{crit}$	—	(decimal)	Critical void ratio
$e_{cd}$	—	(decimal)	$e_{crit}$ -dense
$e_{cl}$	—	(decimal)	$e_{crit}$ -loose
$e_d$	—	(decimal)	$e$ -dense
$e_l$	—	(decimal)	$e$ -loose
$h$	—	—	An empirical exponent (Eq. 11-7)
$S_i$	—	—	Sensitivity (Eq. 11-9)
TSP	—	—	Total stress path
$u_o$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Initial pore water pressure; back pressure

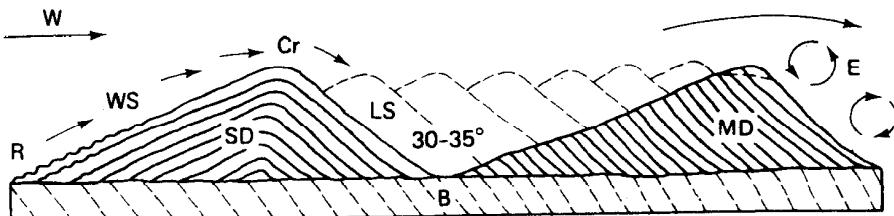
Symbol	Dimension	Unit	Definition
$u_r$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Residual (capillary) pore water pressure after sampling
$V_o$	$L^3$	$m^3$	Initial volume (Eq. 11-4)
$\Delta V$	$L^3$	$m^3$	Change in volume (Eq. 11-4)
$\epsilon_v$	—	(%)	Vertical or axial strain
$\epsilon_1, \epsilon_2, \epsilon_3$	—	(%)	Major, intermediate, and minor principal strains
$\mu$	—	—	Correction factor to vane shear strength
$\sigma_{hc}$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Total horizontal consolidation stress
$\sigma_{vc}$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Total vertical consolidation stress
$\sigma_{oct}$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Octahedral normal stress (Eq. 11-23)
$\sigma'_3c$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Effective consolidation pressure
$\sigma'_{3c}$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Critical effective confining pressure
$\sigma'_{3f}$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Effective confining pressure at failure
$\sigma'_1/\sigma'_3$	—	—	Principal effective stress ratio (Eq. 11-1)
$(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Principal stress difference (Eq. 11-2)
$\tau_f$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Undrained shear strength
$\tau_{oct}$	$ML^{-1}T^{-2}$	kPa	Octahedral shear stress (Eq. 11-24)
$\phi'_d$	—	(degree)	Angle of internal friction from CD tests
$\phi', \phi_T$	—	(degree)	Angle of internal friction in terms of effective stress and total stress, respectively
$\phi_{ps}, \phi_{tx}$	—	(degree)	Angle of internal friction from plane strain tests and triaxial tests, respectively (Eq. 11-5)

Note: A prime mark on an angle or stress indicates *effective stresses*. Subscripts o, c, and f indicate initial, consolidation, and failure conditions, respectively.

## 11.2 ANGLE OF REPOSE OF SANDS

If we were to deposit a granular soil by pouring it from a single point above the ground, it would form a conical pile. As more and more granular material was deposited on the pile, the slope for a short period of time might appear to be steeper, but then the soil particles would slip and slide down the slope to the *angle of repose*. This angle of the slope with respect to the horizontal plane would remain constant at some *minimum* value. Refer for a moment to Fig. 6.7 for an illustration of the angle of repose. Since this angle is the steepest *stable* slope for very loosely packed sand, the angle of repose represents the angle of internal friction of the granular material at its *loosest* state.

Sand dunes are an example from nature of the angle of repose. Figure 11.1 shows how both a stationary dune (SD) as well as a migrating dune (MD) are formed. On the leeward side (LS), the slope of the dune



Deposition of sand by wind. Ideal structure of stationary or fixed dunes (SD) and migrating live dunes (MD). The arrows indicate the direction of air currents (W). E shows eddies. WS is the windward slope of the dune, LS the leeward, or down-wind slope. R marks ripples, and Cr is the crest of the dune. Dashed lines show the former positions of live dune MD. B is the base rock. (After A. Holmes.)

Fig. 11.1 Formation of sand dunes and illustration of the angle of repose. After Aerogeology by Horst F. von Bandat. Copyright © 1962 by Gulf Publishing Company, Houston, TX. Used with permission. All rights reserved.

will have an angle (of repose) which varies from  $30^\circ$  to  $35^\circ$ , depending on factors that are discussed later in this chapter. If the slope on the leeward side becomes steeper than  $30^\circ$  to  $35^\circ$ , then the slope is unstable and sand grains will roll down the slope until the angle of repose is reached. An unstable condition is shown on the slope at the far right-hand side of Fig. 11.1; eventually a smooth slope at the angle of repose will form. The angle of repose depends on the type of materials and other factors, and it represents the angle of internal friction or shearing resistance  $\phi$  at its loosest state. Recall that the terms *loose* or *dense* are only relative terms (see Sec. 4.9), especially with respect to their behavior in shear. As we shall soon see, the stress-strain and volume change response depends on the confining pressure as well as on the relative density.

### 11.3 BEHAVIOR OF SATURATED SANDS DURING DRAINED SHEAR

To illustrate the behavior of sands during shear, let's start by taking two samples of sand, one at a very high void ratio, the "loose" sand, and the other at a very low void ratio, the "dense" sand. We could perform direct shear tests (Fig. 10.12), but to better measure the volume changes we shall use the triaxial apparatus, as shown in Fig. 10.13a and Fig. 11.2. We shall run the two tests under consolidated drained (CD) conditions, which

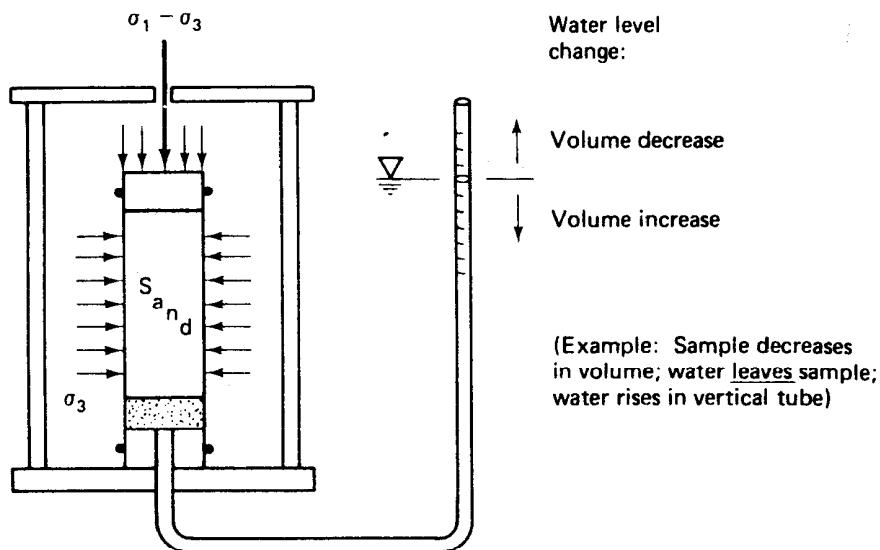


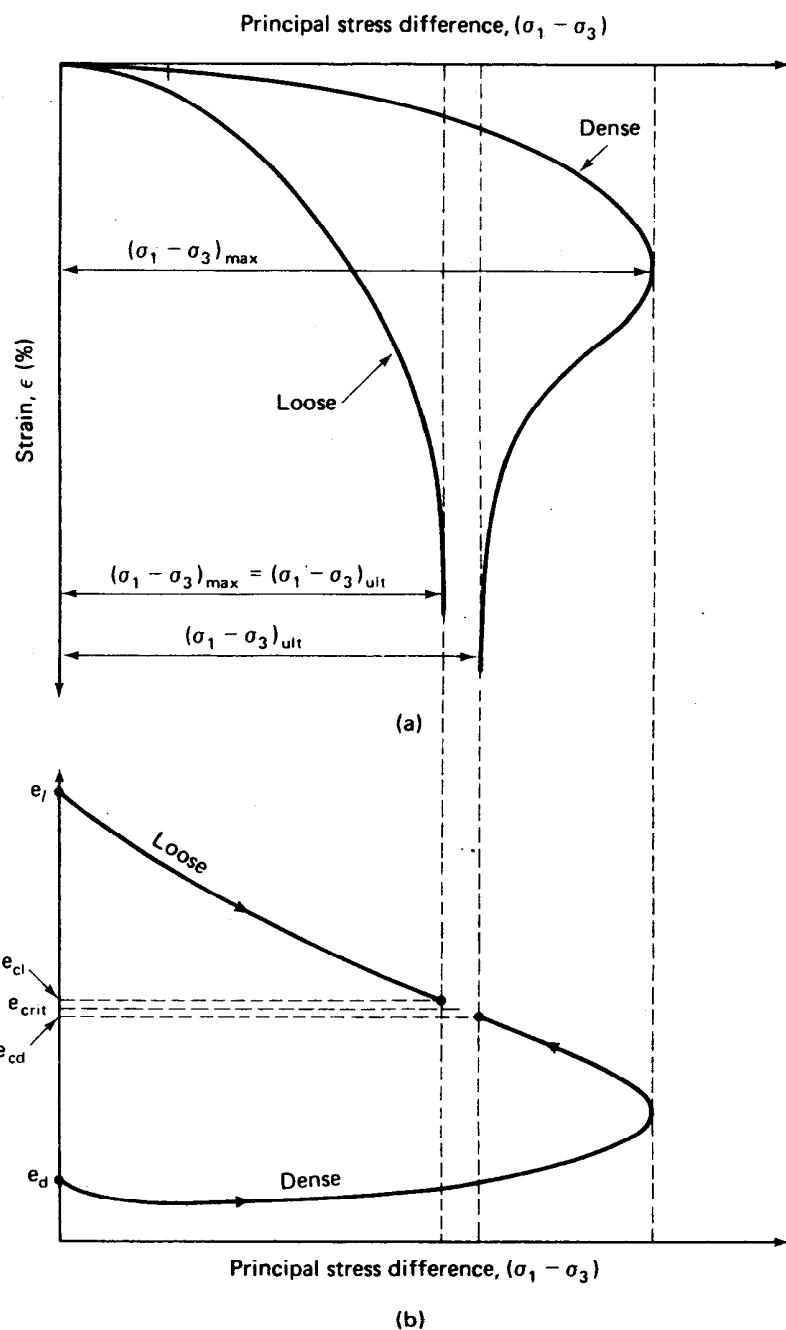
Fig. 11.2 Consolidated-drained triaxial test with volume change measurements.

means we will allow water to freely enter or leave the sample during shear without interference. If we have a saturated sample, we can easily monitor the amount of water that enters or leaves the sample and equate this to the volume change and thus the void ratio change in the sample. Water leaving the sample during shear indicates a volume decrease, and vice versa. In both our tests the confining pressure,  $\sigma_c$ , equals  $\sigma_3$ , is held constant and the axial stress is increased until failure occurs. Failure may be defined as:

1. Maximum principal stress difference,  $(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)_{\max}$ .
2. Maximum principal effective stress ratio,  $(\sigma'_1/\sigma'_3)_{\max}$ .
3.  $\tau = [(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)/2]$  at a prescribed strain.

Most of the time, we will define failure as the *maximum principal stress difference*, which is the same as the *compressive strength* of the specimen. Typical stress-strain curves for loose and dense sand are shown in Fig. 11.3a, while the corresponding stress versus void ratio curves are presented in Fig. 11.3b.

When the loose sand is sheared, the principal stress difference gradually increases to a maximum or ultimate value  $(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)_{\text{ult}}$ . Concurrently, as the stress is increased the void ratio *decreases* from  $e_l$  (*e*-loose) down to  $e_{c,l}$  ( $e_c$ -loose), which is very close to the *critical void ratio*  $e_{\text{crit}}$ . Casagrande (1936a) called the ultimate void ratio at which continuous deformation occurs with no change in principal stress difference the *critical void ratio*.



**Fig. 11.3** Triaxial tests on "loose" and "dense" specimens of a typical sand: (a) stress-strain curves; (b) void ratio changes during shear (after Hirschfeld, 1963).

When the dense specimen is sheared, the principal stress difference reaches a peak or maximum, after which it decreases to a value very close to  $(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)_{ult}$  for the loose sand. The void ratio-stress curve shows that the dense sand decreases in volume slightly at first, then *expands* or *dilates* up to  $e_{cd}$  ( $e_c$ -dense). Notice that the void ratio at failure  $e_{cd}$  is very close to  $e_{cl}$ . Theoretically, they both should be equal to the *critical void ratio*  $e_{crit}$ . Similarly, the values of  $(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)_{ult}$  for both tests should be the same. The differences are usually attributed to difficulties in precise measurement of ultimate void ratios as well as nonuniform stress distributions in the test specimens (Hirschfeld, 1963). Evidence of this latter phenomenon is illustrated by the different ways in which the samples usually fail. The loose sample just *bulges*, while the dense sample often fails along a distinct plane oriented approximately  $45^\circ + \phi'/2$  from the horizontal ( $\phi'$  is, of course, the *effective angle of shearing resistance* of the dense sand). Note that it is at least theoretically possible to set up a sample at an initial void ratio such that the volume change at failure would be zero. This void ratio would, of course, be the critical void ratio  $e_{crit}$ .

#### 11.4 EFFECT OF VOID RATIO AND CONFINING PRESSURE ON VOLUME CHANGE

Thus far, in describing the behavior of the two drained triaxial tests on loose and dense sands shown in Fig. 11.3, we have mentioned the following physical quantities:

- principal stress difference
- strain
- volume change
- critical void ratio  $e_{crit}$  and, indirectly,
- relative density (Eqs. 4-2 and 4-3)

We have purposely avoided defining the terms *loose* and *dense* because the volume change behavior during shear depends not only on the initial void ratio and relative density but also on the confining pressure. In this section we shall consider the effect of confining pressure on the stress-strain and volume change characteristics of sands in drained shear.

We can assess the effects of  $\sigma_3$  (and, remember, in a drained test  $\sigma_3 = \sigma'_3$ , as the excess pore water pressure is always zero) by preparing several samples at the same void ratio and testing them at different confining pressures. We would find that the shear strength increases with  $\sigma_3$ . A convenient way to plot the principal stress difference versus strain

data is to *normalize* it by plotting the *principal stress ratio*  $\sigma_1/\sigma_3$  versus strain. For a drained test, of course,  $\sigma_1/\sigma_3 = \sigma'_1/\sigma'_3$ . At failure, the ratio is  $(\sigma'_1/\sigma'_3)_{\max}$ . From Eqs. 10-14 and 10-16,

$$\left(\frac{\sigma'_1}{\sigma'_3}\right)_{\max} = \frac{1 + \sin\phi'}{1 - \sin\phi'} = \tan^2\left(45 + \frac{\phi'}{2}\right) \quad (11-1)$$

where  $\phi'$  is the *effective angle of internal friction*. The principal stress difference is related to the principal stress ratio by

$$\sigma_1 - \sigma_3 = \sigma'_3 \left( \frac{\sigma'_1}{\sigma'_3} - 1 \right) \quad (11-2)$$

At failure, the relationship is

$$(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)_f = \sigma'_{3f} \left[ \left( \frac{\sigma'_1}{\sigma'_3} \right)_{\max} - 1 \right] \quad (11-3)$$

Let's look first at the behavior of loose sand. Typical drained triaxial test results are shown for loose Sacramento River sand in Fig. 11.4a. The principal stress ratio is plotted versus axial strain for different effective consolidation pressures  $\sigma'_{3c}$ . Note that none of the curves has a distinct peak, and they have a shape similar to the loose curve shown in Fig. 11.3a. The volume change data is also normalized by dividing the volume change  $\Delta V$  by the original volume  $V_o$  to obtain the volumetric strain, or

$$\text{volumetric strain, \%} = \frac{\Delta V}{V_o} \times 100 \quad (11-4)$$

To better appreciate what is going on in Fig. 11.4a, let us compute the principal stress difference  $(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)$  at a strain of 5% for  $\sigma'_{3c} = 3.9$  MPa and  $\sigma'_{3c} = 0.1$  MPa. The principal stress ratios for these conditions are 2.0 and 3.5, respectively, as indicated by the arrows in Fig. 11.4a. Utilizing Eq. 11-2, we obtain the following results:

$\sigma'_{3c}$ (MPa)	$\sigma'_1/\sigma'_3$	$(\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)$ (MPa)	$\sigma'_1$ (MPa)
0.1	3.5	0.25	0.35
3.9	2.0	3.9	7.8

It is interesting to look at the shapes of the volumetric strain versus axial strain curves in Fig. 11.4b. As the strain increases, the volumetric strain decreases for the most part. This is consistent with the behavior of a loose sand, as shown in Fig. 11.3b. However at low confining pressures (for